Electric Power Engineering Handbook

Second Edition

Edited by

Leonard L. Grigsby

Electric Power Generation, Transmission, and Distribution

Edited by Leonard L. Grigsby

Electric Power Transformer Engineering, Second Edition

Edited by James H. Harlow

Electric Power Substations Engineering, Second Edition

Edited by John D. McDonald

Power Systems

Edited by Leonard L. Grigsby

Power System Stability and Control

Edited by Leonard L. Grigsby

The Electrical Engineering Handbook Series

Series Editor
Richard C. Dorf
University of California, Davis

Titles Included in the Series

The Handbook of Ad Hoc Wireless Networks, Mohammad Ilyas
The Biomedical Engineering Handbook, Third Edition, Joseph D. Bronzino
The Circuits and Filters Handbook, Second Edition, Wai-Kai Chen
The Communications Handbook, Second Edition, Jerry Gibson
The Computer Engineering Handbook, Second Edtion, Vojin G. Oklobdzija
The Control Handbook, William S. Levine
The CRC Handbook of Engineering Tables, Richard C. Dorf
The Digital Avionics Handbook, Second Edition Cary R. Spitzer
The Digital Signal Processing Handbook, Vijay K. Madisetti and Douglas Williams
The Electrical Engineering Handbook, Third Edition, Richard C. Dorf
The Electric Power Engineering Handbook, Second Edition, Leonard L. Grigsby
The Electronics Handbook, Second Edition, Jerry C. Whitaker
The Engineering Handbook, Third Edition, Richard C. Dorf
The Handbook of Formulas and Tables for Signal Processing, Alexander D. Poularikas
The Handbook of Nanoscience, Engineering, and Technology, Second Edition, William A. Goddard, III, Donald W. Brenner, Sergey E. Lyshevski, and Gerald J. Iafrate
The Handbook of Optical Communication Networks, Mohammad Ilyas and Hussein T. Mouftah
The Industrial Electronics Handbook, J. David Irwin
The Measurement, Instrumentation, and Sensors Handbook, John G. Webster
The Mechanical Systems Design Handbook, Osita D.I. Nwokah and Yidirim Hurmuzlu
The Mechatronics Handbook, Second Edition, Robert H. Bishop
The Mobile Communications Handbook, Second Edition, Jerry D. Gibson
The Ocean Engineering Handbook, Ferial El-Hawary
The RF and Microwave Handbook, Second Edition, Mike Golio
The Technology Management Handbook, Richard C. Dorf
The Transforms and Applications Handbook, Second Edition, Alexander D. Poularikas
The VLSI Handbook, Second Edition, Wai-Kai Chen

Electric Power Engineering Handbook

Second Edition

POWER SYSTEM STABILITY and CONTROL

Edited by

Leonard L. Grigsby

CRC Press
Taylor & Francis Group
Boca Raton London New York

CRC Press is an imprint of the
Taylor & Francis Group, an informa business

CRC Press
Taylor & Francis Group
6000 Broken Sound Parkway NW, Suite 300
Boca Raton, FL 33487-2742

Printed in the United States of America on acid-free paper
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

International Standard Book Number-10: 0-8493-9291-8 (Hardcover)
International Standard Book Number-13: 978-0-8493-9291-7 (Hardcover)

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Power system stability and control / editor, Leonard Lee Grigsby.
p. cm.
Includes bibliographical references and index.
ISBN-13: 978-0-8493-9291-7 (alk. paper)
ISBN-10: 0-8493-9291-8 (alk. paper)
1. Electric power system stability. 2. Electric power systems--Control. I. Grigsby, Leonard L. II. Title.

TK1010.P68 2007
621.31--dc22 2007006226

Visit the Taylor & Francis Web site at
http://www.taylorandfrancis.com

and the CRC Press Web site at
http://www.crcpress.com

Table of Contents

Preface

The generation, delivery, and utilization of electric power and energy remain one of the most challenging and exciting fields of electrical engineering. The astounding technological developments of our age are highly dependent upon a safe, reliable, and economic supply of electric power. The objective of *Electric Power Engineering Handbook*, 2nd Edition is to provide a contemporary overview of this far-reaching field as well as to be a useful guide and educational resource for its study. It is intended to define electric power engineering by bringing together the core of knowledge from all of the many topics encompassed by the field. The chapters are written primarily for the electric power engineering professional who is seeking factual information, and secondarily for the professional from other engineering disciplines who wants an overview of the entire field or specific information on one aspect of it.

The handbook is published in five volumes. Each is organized into topical sections and chapters in an attempt to provide comprehensive coverage of the generation, transformation, transmission, distribution, and utilization of electric power and energy as well as the modeling, analysis, planning, design, monitoring, and control of electric power systems. The individual chapters are different from most technical publications. They are not journal-type chapters nor are they textbook in nature. They are intended to be tutorials or overviews providing ready access to needed information while at the same time providing sufficient references to more in-depth coverage of the topic. This work is a member of the Electrical Engineering Handbook Series published by CRC Press. Since its inception in 1993, this series has been dedicated to the concept that when readers refer to a handbook on a particular topic they should be able to find what they need to know about the subject most of the time. This has indeed been the goal of this handbook.

This volume of the handbook is devoted to the subjects of electric power generation by both conventional and nonconventional methods, transmission systems, distribution systems, power utilization, and power quality. If your particular topic of interest is not included in this list, please refer to the list of companion volumes seen at the beginning of this book.

In reading the individual chapters of this handbook, I have been most favorably impressed by how well the authors have accomplished the goals that were set. Their contributions are, of course, most key to the success of the work. I gratefully acknowledge their outstanding efforts. Likewise, the expertise and dedication of the editorial board and section editors have been critical in making this handbook possible. To all of them I express my profound thanks. I also wish to thank the personnel at Taylor & Francis who have been involved in the production of this book, with a special word of thanks to Nora Konopka, Allison Shatkin, and Jessica Vakili. Their patience and perseverance have made this task most pleasant.

Leo Grigsby
Editor-in-Chief

Editor

Leonard L. ("Leo") Grigsby received his BS and MS in electrical engineering from Texas Tech University and his PhD from Oklahoma State University. He has taught electrical engineering at Texas Tech, Oklahoma State University, and Virginia Polytechnic Institute and University. He has been at Auburn University since 1984 first as the Georgia power distinguished professor, later as the Alabama power distinguished professor, and currently as professor emeritus of electrical engineering. He also spent nine months during 1990 at the University of Tokyo as the Tokyo Electric Power Company endowed chair of electrical engineering. His teaching interests are in network analysis, control systems, and power engineering.

During his teaching career, Professor Grigsby has received 13 awards for teaching excellence. These include his selection for the university-wide William E. Wine Award for Teaching Excellence at Virginia Polytechnic Institute and University in 1980, his selection for the ASEE AT&T Award for Teaching Excellence in 1986, the 1988 Edison Electric Institute Power Engineering Educator Award, the 1990–1991 Distinguished Graduate Lectureship at Auburn University, the 1995 IEEE Region 3 Joseph M. Beidenbach Outstanding Engineering Educator Award, the 1996 Birdsong Superior Teaching Award at Auburn University, and the IEEE Power Engineering Society Outstanding Power Engineering Educator Award in 2003.

Professor Grigsby is a fellow of the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE). During 1998–1999 he was a member of the board of directors of IEEE as director of Division VII for power and energy. He has served the Institute in 30 different offices at the chapter, section, regional, and international levels. For this service, he has received seven distinguished service awards, the IEEE Centennial Medal in 1984, the Power Engineering Society Meritorious Service Award in 1994, and the IEEE Millennium Medal in 2000.

During his academic career, Professor Grigsby has conducted research in a variety of projects related to the application of network and control theory to modeling, simulation, optimization, and control of electric power systems. He has been the major advisor for 35 MS and 21 PhD graduates. With his students and colleagues, he has published over 120 technical papers and a textbook on introductory network theory. He is currently the series editor for the Electrical Engineering Handbook Series published by CRC Press. In 1993 he was inducted into the Electrical Engineering Academy at Texas Tech University for distinguished contributions to electrical engineering.

Contributors

Bajarang L. Agrawal
Arizona Public Service Company
Phoenix, Arizona

Alexander Apostolov
AREVA T&D Automation
Los Angeles, California

John Appleyard
S&C Electric Company
Sauk City, Wisconsin

Miroslav Begovic
Georgia Institute of Technology
Atlanta, Georgia

Gabriel Benmouyal
Schweitzer Engineering Laboratories, Ltd.
Longueuil, Quebec, Canada

Anjan Bose
Washington State University
Pullman, Washington

John R. Boyle
Power System Analysis
Signal Mountain, Tennessee

Jim W. Burns
Bonneville Power Administration
Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada

Claudio Cañizares
University of Waterloo
Waterloo, Ontario, Canada

Charles Concordia
Consultant
Venice, Florida

Mohamed E. El-Hawary
Dalhousie University
Halifax, Nova Scotia, Canada

Ahmed Elneweihi
British Columbia Hydro & Power Authority
Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada

Richard G. Farmer
Arizona State University
Tempe, Arizona

Jay C. Giri
AREVA T&D Corporation
Bellevue, Washington

Robert Haas
Haas Engineering
Villa Hills, Kentucky

Nouredine Hadjsaid
Institut National Polytechnique
de Grenoble (INPG)
Grenoble, France

John F. Hauer
Pacific Northwest National Laboratory
Richland, Washington

Stanley H. Horowitz
Consultant
Columbus, Ohio

Danny Julian
ABB Power T&D Company
Raleigh, North Carolina

Prabha Kundur
University of Toronto
Toronto, Ontario, Canada

Einar Larsen
GE Energy
Schenectady, New York

Harry Lee
British Columbia Hydro & Power Authority
Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada

Yakout Mansour
California ISO
Folsom, California

Ken E. Martin
Bonneville Power Administration
Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada

William A. Mittelstadt
Bonneville Power Administration
Vancouver, Washington

Kip Morison
Powertech Labs, Inc.
Surrey, British Columbia, Canada

John Paserba
Mitsubishi Electric Power Products, Inc.
Warrendale, Pennsylvania

Arun Phadke
Virginia Polytechnic Institute
Blacksburg, Virginia

William W. Price
GE Energy
Schenectady, New York

Donald G. Ramey
Consultant
Raleigh, North Carolina

Charles W. Richter, Jr.
AREVA T&D Corporation
Ames, Iowa

Juan Sanchez-Gasca
GE Energy
Schenectady, New York

Peter W. Sauer
University of Illinois at
Urbana-Champaign
Urbana, Illinois

Neil K. Stanton
Stanton Associates
Medina, Washington

Glenn W. Swift
APT Power Technologies
Winnipeg, Manitoba, Canada

Carson W. Taylor
Carson Taylor Seminars
Portland, Oregon

James S. Thorp
Virginia Polytechnic Institute
Blacksburg, Virginia

Kevin L. Tomsovic
Washington State University
Pullman, Washington

Vijay Vittal
Arizona State University
Tempe, Arizona

Bruce F. Wollenberg
University of Minnesota
Minneapolis, Minnesota

I

Power System Protection

Arun Phadke
Virginia Polytechnic Institute

1

Transformer Protection

Alexander Apostolov
AREVA T&D Automation

John Appleyard
S&C Electric Company

Ahmed Elneweihi
British Columbia Hydro & Power Authority

Robert Haas
Haas Engineering

Glenn W. Swift
APT Power Technologies

1.1 Types of Transformer Faults

Any number of conditions have been the reason for an electrical transformer failure. Statistics show that winding failures most frequently cause transformer faults (ANSI/IEEE, 1985). Insulation deterioration, often the result of moisture, overheating, vibration, voltage surges, and mechanical stress created during transformer through faults, is the major reason for winding failure.

Voltage regulating load tap changers, when supplied, rank as the second most likely cause of a transformer fault. Tap changer failures can be caused by a malfunction of the mechanical switching mechanism, high resistance load contacts, insulation tracking, overheating, or contamination of the insulating oil.

Transformer bushings are the third most likely cause of failure. General aging, contamination, cracking, internal moisture, and loss of oil can all cause a bushing to fail. Two other possible reasons are vandalism and animals that externally flash over the bushing.

Transformer core problems have been attributed to core insulation failure, an open ground strap, or shorted laminations.

Other miscellaneous failures have been caused by current transformers, oil leakage due to inadequate tank welds, oil contamination from metal particles, overloads, and overvoltage.

1.2 Types of Transformer Protection

1.2.1 Electrical

Fuse: Power fuses have been used for many years to provide transformer fault protection. Generally it is recommended that transformers sized larger than 10 MVA be protected with more sensitive devices such as the differential relay discussed later in this section. Fuses provide a low maintenance, economical solution for protection. Protection and control devices, circuit breakers, and station batteries are not required.

There are some drawbacks. Fuses provide limited protection for some internal transformer faults. A fuse is also a single phase device. Certain system faults may only operate one fuse. This will result in single phase service to connected three phase customers.

Fuse selection criteria include: adequate interrupting capability, calculating load currents during peak and emergency conditions, performing coordination studies that include source and low side protection equipment, and expected transformer size and winding configuration (ANSI/IEEE, 1985).

Overcurrent Protection: Overcurrent relays generally provide the same level of protection as power fuses. Higher sensitivity and fault clearing times can be achieved in some instances by using an overcurrent relay connected to measure residual current. This application allows pick up settings to be lower than expected maximum load current. It is also possible to apply an instantaneous overcurrent relay set to respond only to faults within the first 75% of the transformer. This solution, for which careful fault current calculations are needed, does not require coordination with low side protective devices.

Overcurrent relays do not have the same maintenance and cost advantages found with power fuses. Protection and control devices, circuit breakers, and station batteries are required. The overcurrent relays are a small part of the total cost and when this alternative is chosen, differential relays are generally added to enhance transformer protection. In this instance, the overcurrent relays will provide backup protection for the differentials.

Differential: The most widely accepted device for transformer protection is called a restrained differential relay. This relay compares current values flowing into and out of the transformer windings. To assure protection under varying conditions, the main protection element has a multislope restrained characteristic. The initial slope ensures sensitivity for internal faults while allowing for up to 15% mismatch when the power transformer is at the limit of its tap range (if supplied with a load tap changer). At currents above rated transformer capacity, extra errors may be gradually introduced as a result of CT saturation.

However, misoperation of the differential element is possible during transformer energization. High inrush currents may occur, depending on the point on wave of switching as well as the magnetic state of the transformer core. Since the inrush current flows only in the energized winding, differential current results. The use of traditional second harmonic restraint to block the relay during inrush conditions may result in a significant slowing of the relay during heavy internal faults due to the possible presence of second harmonics as a result of saturation of the line current transformers. To overcome this, some relays use a waveform recognition technique to detect the inrush condition. The differential current waveform associated with magnetizing inrush is characterized by a period of each cycle where its magnitude is very small, as shown in Fig. 1.1. By measuring the time of this period of low current, an inrush condition can be identified. The detection of inrush current in the differential current is used to inhibit that phase of the low set restrained differential algorithm. Another high-speed method commonly used to detect high-magnitude faults in the unrestrained instantaneous unit is described later in this section.

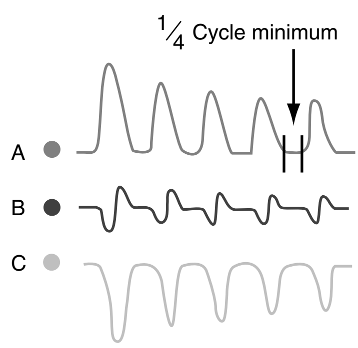


FIGURE 1.1 Transformer inrush current waveforms.

When a load is suddenly disconnected from a power transformer, the voltage at the input terminals of the transformer may rise by 10–20% of the rated value causing an appreciable increase in transformer steady state excitation current. The resulting excitation current flows in one winding only and hence appears as differential current that may rise to a value high enough to operate the differential protection. A waveform of this type is characterized by the presence of fifth harmonic. A Fourier technique is used to measure the level of fifth harmonic in the differential current. The ratio of fifth harmonic to fundamental is used to detect excitation and inhibits the restrained differential protection function. Detection of overflux conditions in any phase blocks that particular phase of the low set differential function.

Transformer faults of a different nature may result in fault currents within a very wide range of magnitudes. Internal faults with very high fault currents require fast fault clearing to reduce the effect of current transformer saturation and the damage to the protected transformer. An unrestrained instantaneous high set differential element ensures rapid clearance of such faults. Such an element essentially measures the peak value of the input current to ensure fast operation for internal faults with saturated CTs. Restrained units generally calculate an rms current value using more waveform samples. The high set differential function is not blocked under magnetizing inrush or over excitation conditions, hence the setting must be set such that it will not operate for the largest inrush currents expected.

At the other end of the fault spectrum are low current winding faults. Such faults are not cleared by the conventional differential function. Restricted ground fault protection gives greater sensitivity for ground faults and hence protects more of the winding. A separate element based on the high impedance circulating current principle is provided for each winding.

Transformers have many possible winding configurations that may create a voltage and current phase shift between the different windings. To compensate for any phase shift between two windings of a transformer, it is necessary to provide phase correction for the differential relay (see section on Special Considerations).

In addition to compensating for the phase shift of the protected transformer, it is also necessary to consider the distribution of primary zero sequence current in the protection scheme. The necessary filtering of zero sequence current has also been traditionally provided by appropriate connection of auxiliary current transformers or by delta connection of primary CT secondary windings. In microprocessor transformer protection relays, zero sequence current filtering is implemented in software when a delta CT connection would otherwise be required. In situations where a transformer winding can produce zero sequence current caused by an external ground fault, it is essential that some form of zero sequence current filtering is employed. This ensures that ground faults out of the zone of protection will not cause the differential relay to operate in error. As an example, an external ground fault on the wye side of a delta/wye connected power transformer will result in zero sequence current flowing in the current transformers associated with the wye winding but, due to the effect of the delta winding, there will be no corresponding zero sequence current in the current transformers associated with the delta winding, i.e., differential current flow will cause the relay to operate. When the virtual zero sequence current filter is applied within the relay, this undesired trip will not occur.

Some of the most typical substation configurations, especially at the transmission level, are breaker-and-a-half or ring-bus. Not that common, but still used are two-breaker schemes. When a power transformer is connected to a substation using one of these breaker configurations, the transformer protection is connected to three or more sets of current transformers. If it is a three winding transformer or an auto transformer with a tertiary connected to a lower voltage sub transmission system, four or more sets of CTs may be available.

It is highly recommended that separate relay input connections be used for each set used to protect the transformer. Failure to follow this practice may result in incorrect differential relay response. Appropriate testing of a protective relay for such configuration is another challenging task for the relay engineer.

Overexcitation: Overexcitation can also be caused by an increase in system voltage or a reduction in frequency. It follows, therefore, that transformers can withstand an increase in voltage with a corresponding increase in frequency but not an increase in voltage with a decrease in frequency. Operation cannot be sustained when the ratio of voltage to frequency exceeds more than a small amount.

Protection against overflux conditions does not require high-speed tripping. In fact, instantaneous tripping is undesirable, as it would cause tripping for transient system disturbances, which are not damaging to the transformer.

An alarm is triggered at a lower level than the trip setting and is used to initiate corrective action. The alarm has a definite time delay, while the trip characteristic generally has a choice of definite time delay or inverse time characteristic.

1.2.2 Mechanical

There are two generally accepted methods used to detect transformer faults using mechanical methods. These detection methods provide sensitive fault detection and compliment protection provided by differential or overcurrent relays.

Accumulated Gases: The first method accumulates gases created as a by product of insulating oil decomposition created from excessive heating within the transformer. The source of heat comes from either the electrical arcing or a hot area in the core steel. This relay is designed for conservator tank transformers and will capture gas as it rises in the oil. The relay, sometimes referred to as a Buchholz relay, is sensitive enough to detect very small faults.

Pressure Relays: The second method relies on the transformer internal pressure rise that results from a fault. One design is applicable to gas-cushioned transformers and is located in the gas space above the oil. The other design is mounted well below minimum liquid level and responds to changes in oil pressure. Both designs employ an equalizing system that compensates for pressure changes due to temperature (ANSI/IEEE, 1985).

1.2.3 Thermal

Hot Spot-Temperature: In any transformer design, there is a location in the winding that the designer believes to be the *hottest* spot within that transformer (ANSI/IEEE, 1995). The significance of the "hot-spot temperature" measured at this location is an assumed relationship between the temperature level and the rate-of-degradation of the cellulose insulation. An instantaneous alarm or trip setting is often used, set at a judicious level above the full load rated hot-spot temperature (110°C for 65°C rise transformers). [Note that "65°C rise" refers to the full load rated *average* winding temperature rise.] Also, a relay or monitoring system can mathematically integrate the rate-of-degradation, i.e., rate-of-loss-of-life of the insulation for overload assessment purposes.

Heating Due to Overexcitation: Transformer core flux density (B), induced voltage (V), and frequency (f) are related by the following formula.

$$B = k_1 \cdot \frac{V}{f} \tag{1.1}$$

where K_1 is a constant for a particular transformer design. As B rises above about 110% of normal, that is, when saturation starts, significant heating occurs due to stray flux eddy-currents in the nonlaminated structural metal parts, including the tank. Since it is the voltage/hertz quotient in Eq. (1.1) that defines the level of B, a relay sensing this quotient is sometimes called a "volts-per-hertz" relay. The expressions "overexcitation" and "overfluxing" refer to this same condition. Since temperature rise is proportional to the integral of power with respect to time (neglecting cooling processes) it follows that an inverse-time characteristic is useful, that is, *volts-per-hertz* versus *time*. Another approach is to use definite-time-delayed alarm or trip at specific per unit flux levels.

Heating Due to Current Harmonic Content (ANSI/IEEE, 1993): One effect of nonsinusoidal currents is to cause current rms magnitude (I_{RMS}) to be incorrect if the method of measurement is not "true-rms."

$$I_{RMS}^2 = \sum_{n=1}^{N} I_n^2 \tag{1.2}$$

where n is the harmonic order, N is the highest harmonic of significant magnitude, and I_n is the harmonic current rms magnitude. If an overload relay determines the I^2R heating effect using the fundamental component of the current only [I_1], then it will underestimate the heating effect. Bear in mind that "true-rms" is only as good as the pass-band of the antialiasing filters and sampling rate, for numerical relays.

A second effect is heating due to high-frequency eddy-current loss in the copper or aluminum of the windings. The winding eddy-current loss due to each harmonic is proportional to the square of the harmonic amplitude and the square of its frequency as well. Mathematically,

$$P_{EC} = P_{EC-RATED} \cdot \sum_{n=1}^{N} I_n^2 n^2 \tag{1.3}$$

where P_{EC} is the winding eddy-current loss and $P_{EC\text{-}RATED}$ is the rated winding eddy-current loss (pure 60 Hz), and I_n is the n^{th} harmonic current in per-unit based on the fundamental. Notice the fundamental difference between the effect of harmonics in Eq. (1.2) and their effect in Eq. (1.3). In the latter, higher harmonics have a proportionately greater effect because of the n^2 factor. IEEE Standard C57.110-1986 (R1992), *Recommended Practice for Establishing Transformer Capability When Supplying Nonsinusoidal Load Currents* gives two empirically-based methods for calculating the derating factor for a transformer under these conditions.

Heating Due to Solar Induced Currents: Solar magnetic disturbances cause geomagnetically induced currents (GIC) in the earth's surface (EPRI, 1993). These DC currents can be of the order of tens of amperes for tens of minutes, and flow into the neutrals of grounded transformers, biasing the core magnetization. The effect is worst in single-phase units and negligible in three-phase core-type units. The core saturation causes second-harmonic content in the current, resulting in increased *security* in second-harmonic-restrained transformer differential relays, but decreased *sensitivity.* Sudden gas pressure relays could provide the necessary alternative internal fault tripping. Another effect is increased stray heating in the transformer, protection for which can be accomplished using gas accumulation relays for transformers with conservator oil systems. Hot-spot tripping is not sufficient because the commonly used hot-spot simulation model does not account for GIC.

Load Tap-changer Overheating: Damaged current carrying contacts within an underload tap-changer enclosure can create excessive heating. Using this heating symptom, a way of detecting excessive wear is to install magnetically mounted temperature sensors on the tap-changer enclosure and on the main tank. Even though the method does not accurately measure the internal temperature at each location, the *difference* is relatively accurate, since the error is the same for each. Thus, excessive wear is indicated if a relay/monitor detects that the temperature difference has changed significantly over time.

1.3 Special Considerations

1.3.1 Current Transformers

Current transformer ratio selection and performance require special attention when applying transformer protection. Unique factors associated with transformers, including its winding ratios, magnetizing inrush current, and the presence of winding taps or load tap changers, are sources of difficulties in engineering a dependable and secure protection scheme for the transformer. Errors resulting from CT saturation and load-tap-changers are particularly critical for differential protection schemes where the currents from more than one set of CTs are compared. To compensate for the saturation/mismatch errors, overcurrent relays must be set to operate above these errors.

CT Current Mismatch: Under normal, non-fault conditions, a transformer differential relay should ideally have identical currents in the secondaries of all current transformers connected to the relay so that no current would flow in its operating coil. It is difficult, however, to match current transformer ratios exactly to the transformer winding ratios. This task becomes impossible with the presence of transformer off-load and on-load taps or load tap changers that change the voltage ratios of the transformer windings depending on system voltage and transformer loading.

The highest secondary current mismatch between all current transformers connected in the differential scheme must be calculated when selecting the relay operating setting. If time delayed overcurrent protection is used, the time delay setting must also be based on the same consideration. The mismatch calculation should be performed for maximum load and through-fault conditions.

CT Saturation: CT saturation could have a negative impact on the ability of the transformer protection to operate for internal faults (dependability) and not to operate for external faults (security).

For internal faults, dependability of the harmonic restraint type relays could be negatively affected if current harmonics generated in the CT secondary circuit due to CT saturation are high enough to restrain the relay. With a saturated CT, 2^{nd} and 3^{rd} harmonics predominate initially, but the even harmonics gradually disappear with the decay of the DC component of the fault current. The relay may then operate eventually when the restraining harmonic component is reduced. These relays usually include an instantaneous overcurrent element that is not restrained by harmonics, but is set very high (typically 20 times transformer rating). This element may operate on severe internal faults.

For external faults, security of the differentially connected transformer protection may be jeopardized if the current transformers' unequal saturation is severe enough to produce error current above the relay setting. Relays equipped with restraint windings in each current transformer circuit would be more secure. The security problem is particularly critical when the current transformers are connected to bus breakers rather than the transformer itself. External faults in this case could be of very high magnitude as they are not limited by the transformer impedance.

1.3.2 Magnetizing Inrush (Initial, Recovery, Sympathetic)

Initial: When a transformer is energized after being de-energized, a transient magnetizing or exciting current that may reach instantaneous peaks of up to 30 times full load current may flow. This can cause operation of overcurrent or differential relays protecting the transformer. The magnetizing current flows in only one winding, thus it will appear to a differentially connected relay as an internal fault.

Techniques used to prevent differential relays from operating on inrush include detection of current harmonics and zero current periods, both being characteristics of the magnetizing inrush current. The former takes advantage of the presence of harmonics, especially the second harmonic, in the magnetizing inrush current to restrain the relay from operation. The latter differentiates between the fault and inrush currents by measuring the zero current periods, which will be much longer for the inrush than for the fault current.

Recovery Inrush: A magnetizing inrush current can also flow if a voltage dip is followed by recovery to normal voltage. Typically, this occurs upon removal of an external fault. The magnetizing inrush is usually less severe in this case than in initial energization as the transformer was not totally de-energized prior to voltage recovery.

Sympathetic Inrush: A magnetizing inrush current can flow in an energized transformer when a nearby transformer is energized. The offset inrush current of the bank being energized will find a parallel path in the energized bank. Again, the magnitude is usually less than the case of initial inrush.

Both the recovery and sympathetic inrush phenomena suggest that restraining the transformer protection on magnetizing inrush current is required at all times, not only when switching the transformer in service after a period of de-energization.

1.3.3 Primary-Secondary Phase-Shift

For transformers with standard delta-wye connections, the currents on the delta and wye sides will have a 30° phase shift relative to each other. Current transformers used for traditional differential relays must be connected in wye-delta (opposite of the transformer winding connections) to compensate for the transformer phase shift.

Phase correction is often internally provided in microprocessor transformer protection relays via software virtual interposing CTs for each transformer winding and, as with the ratio correction, will depend upon the selected configuration for the restrained inputs. This allows the primary current transformers to all be connected in wye.

1.3.4 Turn-to-Turn Faults

Fault currents resulting from a turn-to-turn fault have low magnitudes and are hard to detect. Typically, the fault will have to evolve and affect a good portion of the winding or arc over to other parts of the transformer before being detected by overcurrent or differential protection relays.

For early detection, reliance is usually made on devices that can measure the resulting accumulation of gas or changes in pressure inside the transformer tank.

1.3.5 Through Faults

Through faults could have an impact on both the transformer and its protection scheme. Depending on their severity, frequency, and duration, through fault currents can cause mechanical transformer damage, even though the fault is somewhat limited by the transformer impedance.

For transformer differential protection, current transformer mismatch and saturation could produce operating currents on through faults. This must be taken into consideration when selecting the scheme, current transformer ratio, relay sensitivity, and operating time. Differential protection schemes equipped with restraining windings offer better security for these through faults.

1.3.6 Backup Protection

Backup protection, typically overcurrent or impedance relays applied to one or both sides of the transformer, perform two functions. One function is to backup the primary protection, most likely a differential relay, and operate in event of its failure to trip.

The second function is protection for thermal or mechanical damage to the transformer. Protection that can detect these external faults and operate in time to prevent transformer damage should be considered. The protection must be set to operate before the through-fault withstand capability of the transformer is reached. If, because of its large size or importance, only differential protection is applied to a transformer, clearing of external faults before transformer damage can occur by other protective devices must be ensured.

1.4 Special Applications

1.4.1 Shunt Reactors

Shunt reactor protection will vary depending on the type of reactor, size, and system application. Protective relay application will be similar to that used for transformers.

Differential relays are perhaps the most common protection method (Blackburn, 1987). Relays with separate phase inputs will provide protection for three single phase reactors connected together or for a single three phase unit. Current transformers must be available on the phase and neutral end of each winding in the three phase unit.

Phase and ground overcurrent relays can be used to back up the differential relays. In some instances, where the reactor is small and cost is a factor, it may be appropriate to use overcurrent relays as the only protection. The ground overcurrent relay would not be applied on systems where zero sequence current is negligible.

As with transformers, turn-to-turn faults are most difficult to detect since there is little change in current at the reactor terminals. If the reactor is oil filled, a sudden pressure relay will provide good protection. If the reactor is an ungrounded dry type, an overvoltage relay (device 59) applied between the reactor neutral and a set of broken delta connected voltage transformers can be used (ABB, 1994).

Negative sequence and impedance relays have also been used for reactor protection but their application should be carefully researched (ABB, 1994).

1.4.2 Zig-Zag Transformers

The most common protection for zig-zag (or grounding) transformers is three overcurrent relays that are connected to current transformers located on the primary phase bushings. These current transformers must be connected in delta to filter out unwanted zero sequence currents (ANSI/IEEE, 1985).

It is also possible to apply a conventional differential relay for fault protection. Current transformers in the primary phase bushings are paralleled and connected to one input. A neutral CT is used for the other input (Blackburn, 1987).

An overcurrent relay located in the neutral will provide backup ground protection for either of these schemes. It must be coordinated with other ground relays on the system.

Sudden pressure relays provide good protection for turn-to-turn faults.

1.4.3 Phase Angle Regulators and Voltage Regulators

Protection of phase angle and voltage regulators varies with the construction of the unit. Protection should be worked out with the manufacturer at the time of order to insure that current transformers are installed inside the unit in the appropriate locations to support planned protection schemes. Differential, overcurrent, and sudden pressure relays can be used in conjunction to provide adequate protection for faults (Blackburn, 1987; ABB, 1994).

1.4.4 Unit Systems

A unit system consists of a generator and associated step-up transformer. The generator winding is connected in wye with the neutral connected to ground through a high impedance grounding system. The step-up transformer low side winding on the generator side is connected delta to isolate the generator from system contributions to faults involving ground. The transformer high side winding is connected in wye and solidly grounded. Generally there is no breaker installed between the generator and transformer.

It is common practice to protect the transformer and generator with an overall transformer differential that includes both pieces of equipment. It may be appropriate to install an additional differential to protect only the transformer. In this case, the overall differential acts as secondary or backup protection for the transformer differential. There will most likely be another differential relay applied specifically to protect the generator.

A volts-per-hertz relay, whose pickup is a function of the ratio of voltage to frequency, is often recommended for overexcitation protection. The unit transformer may be subjected to overexcitation during generator startup and shutdown when it is operating at reduced frequencies or when there is major loss of load that may cause both overvoltage and overspeed (ANSI/IEEE, 1985).

As with other applications, sudden pressure relays provide sensitive protection for turn-to-turn faults that are typically not initially detected by differential relays.

Backup protection for phase faults can be provided by applying either impedance or voltage controlled overcurrent relays to the generator side of the unit transformer. The impedance relays must be connected to respond to faults located in the transformer (Blackburn, 1987).

1.4.5 Single Phase Transformers

Single phase transformers are sometimes used to make up three phase banks. Standard protection methods described earlier in this section are appropriate for single phase transformer banks as well. If one or both sides of the bank is connected in delta and current transformers located on the transformer bushings are to be used for protection, the standard differential connection cannot be used. To provide proper ground fault protection, current transformers from each of the bushings must be utilized (Blackburn, 1987).

1.4.6 Sustained Voltage Unbalance

During sustained unbalanced voltage conditions, wye-connected core type transformers without a delta-connected tertiary winding may produce damaging heat. In this situation, the transformer case may produce damaging heat from sustained circulating current. It is possible to detect this situation by using either a thermal relay designed to monitor tank temperature or applying an overcurrent relay connected to sense "effective" tertiary current (ANSI/IEEE, 1985).

1.5 Restoration

Power transformers have varying degrees of importance to an electrical system depending on their size, cost, and application, which could range from generator step-up to a position in the transmission/distribution system, or perhaps as an auxiliary unit.

When protective relays trip and isolate a transformer from the electric system, there is often an immediate urgency to restore it to service. There should be a procedure in place to gather system data at the time of trip as well as historical information on the individual transformer, so an informed decision can be made concerning the transformer's status. No one should re-energize a transformer when there is evidence of electrical failure.

It is always possible that a transformer could be incorrectly tripped by a defective protective relay or protection scheme, system backup relays, or by an abnormal system condition that had not been considered. Often system operators may try to restore a transformer without gathering sufficient evidence to determine the exact cause of the trip. An operation should always be considered as legitimate until proven otherwise.

The more vital a transformer is to the system, the more sophisticated the protection and monitoring equipment should be. This will facilitate the accumulation of evidence concerning the outage.

History—Daily operation records of individual transformer maintenance, service problems, and relayed outages should be kept to establish a comprehensive history. Information on relayed operations should include information on system conditions prior to the trip out. When no explanation for a trip is found, it is important to note all areas that were investigated. When there is no damage determined, there should still be a conclusion as to whether the operation was correct or incorrect. Periodic gas analysis provides a record of the normal combustible gas value.

Oscillographs, Event Recorder, Gas Monitors—System monitoring equipment that initiates and produces records at the time of the transformer trip usually provide information necessary to determine if there was an electrical short-circuit involving the transformer or if it was a "through-fault" condition.

Date of Manufacture—Transformers manufactured before 1980 were likely not designed or constructed to meet the severe through-fault conditions outlined in ANSI/IEEE C57.109, *IEEE Guide for Transformer Through-Fault Current Duration* (1985). Maximum through-fault values should be calculated and compared to short-circuit values determined for the trip out. Manufacturers should be contacted to obtain documentation for individual transformers in conformance with ANSI/IEEE C57.109.

Magnetizing Inrush—Differential relays with harmonic restraint units are typically used to prevent trip operations upon transformer energizing. However, there are nonharmonic restraint differential relays in service that use time delay and/or percentage restraint to prevent trip on magnetizing inrush. Transformers so protected may have a history of falsely tripping on energizing inrush which may lead system operators to attempt restoration without analysis, inspection, or testing. There is always the possibility that an electrical fault can occur upon energizing which is masked by historical data.

Relay harmonic restraint circuits are either factory set at a threshold percentage of harmonic inrush or the manufacturer provides predetermined settings that should prevent an unwanted operation upon transformer energization. Some transformers have been manufactured in recent years using a grain-oriented steel and a design that results in very low percentages of the restraint harmonics in the inrush current. These values are, in some cases, less than the minimum manufacture recommended threshold settings.

Relay Operations—Transformer protective devices not only trip but prevent reclosing of all sources energizing the transformer. This is generally accomplished using an auxiliary "lockout" relay. The lockout relay requires manual resetting before the transformer can be energized. This circuit encourages manual inspection and testing of the transformer before reenergization decisions are made.

Incorrect trip operations can occur due to relay failure, incorrect settings, or coordination failure. New installations that are in the process of testing and wire-checking are most vulnerable. Backup relays, by design, can cause tripping for upstream or downstream system faults that do not otherwise clear properly.

References

Blackburn, J.L., *Protective Relaying: Principles and Applications*, Marcel Decker, Inc., New York, 1987.

Mason, C.R., *The Art and Science of Protective Relaying*, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1996.

IEEE Guide for Diagnostic Field Testing of Electric Power Apparatus—Part 1: Oil Filled Power Transformers, Regulators, and Reactors, ANSI/IEEE Std. 62-199S.

Guide for the Interpretation of Gases Generated in oil-Immersed Transformers, ANSI/IEEE C57.104-1991.

IEEE Guide for Loading Mineral Oil-Immersed Transformers, ANSI/IEEE C57.91-1995.

IEEE Guide for Protective Relay Applications to Power Transformers, ANSI/IEEE C37.91-1985.

IEEE Guide for Transformer Through Fault Current Duration, ANSI/IEEE C57.109-1985.

IEEE Standard General Requirements for Liquid-Immersed Distribution, Power, and Regulating Transformers, ANSI/IEEE C57.12.00-1993.

Protective Relaying, Theory & Application, ABB, Marcel Dekker, Inc., New York, 1994.

Protective Relays Application Guide, GEC Measurements, Stafford, England, 1975.

Recommended Practice for Establishing Transformer Capability When Supplying Nonsinusoidal Load Currents, IEEE Std. C57.110-1986(R1992).

Rockefeller, G., et al., Differential relay transient testing using EMTP simulations, paper presented to the 46th annual Protective Relay Conference (Georgia Tech.), April 29–May 1, 1992.

Solar magnetic disturbances/geomagnetically-induced current and protective relaying, *Electric Power Research Institute* Report TR-102621, Project 321-04, August 1993.

Warrington, A.R. van C., *Protective Relays, Their Theory and Practice*, Vol. 1, Wiley, New York, 1963, Vol. 2, Chapman and Hall Ltd., London, 1969.

2

The Protection of Synchronous Generators

Gabriel Benmouyal
Schweitzer Engineering Laboratories, Ltd.

In an apparatus protection perspective, generators constitute a special class of power network equipment because faults are very rare but can be highly destructive and therefore very costly when they occur. If for most utilities, generation integrity must be preserved by avoiding erroneous tripping, removing a generator in case of a serious fault is also a primary if not an absolute requirement. Furthermore, protection has to be provided for out-of-range operation normally not found in other types of equipment such as overvoltage, overexcitation, limited frequency or speed range, etc.

It should be borne in mind that, similar to all protective schmes, there is to a certain extent a "philosophical approach" to generator protection and all utilities and all protective engineers do not have the same approach. For instance, some functions like overexcitation, backup impedance elements, loss-of-synchronism, and even protection against inadvertant energization may not be applied by some organizations and engineers. It should be said, however, that with the digital multifunction generator protective packages presently available, a complete and extensive range of functions exists within the same "relay": and economic reasons for not installing an additional protective element is a tendancy which must disappear.

The nature of the prime mover will have some definite impact on the protective functions implemented into the system. For instance, little or no concern at all will emerge when dealing with the abnormal frequency operation of hydaulic generators. On the contrary, protection against underfrequency operation of steam turbines is a primary concern.

The sensitivity of the motoring protection (the capacity to measure very low levels of negative real power) becomes an issue when dealing with both hydro and steam turbines. Finally, the nature of the prime mover will have an impact on the generator tripping scheme. When delayed tripping has no detrimental effect on the generator, it is common practice to implement sequential tripping with steam turbines as described later.

The purpose of this article is to provide an overview of the basic principles and schemes involved in generator protection. For further information, the reader is invited to refer to additional resources dealing with generator protection. The ANSI/IEEE guides (ANSI/IEEE, C37.106, C37.102, C37.101) are particularly recommended. The *IEEE Tutorial on the Protection of Synchronous Generators* (IEEE, 1995) is a detailed presentation of North American practices for generator protection. All these references have been a source of inspiration in this writing.

2.1 Review of Functions

Table 2.1 provides a list of protective relays and their functions most commonly found in generator protection schemes. These relays are implemented as shown on the single-line diagram of Fig. 2.1.

As shown in the Relay Type column, most protective relays found in generator protection schemes are not specific to this type of equipment but are more generic types.

2.2 Differential Protection for Stator Faults (87G)

Protection against stator phase faults are normally covered by a high-speed differential relay covering the three phases separately. All types of phase faults (phase-phase) will be covered normally by this type of protection, but the phase-ground fault in a high-impedance grounded generator will not be covered. In this case, the phase current will be very low and therefore below the relay pickup.

TABLE 2.1 Most Commonly Found Relays for Generator Protection

Identification Number	Function Description	Relay Type
87G	Generator phase phase windings protection	Differential protection
87T	Step-up transformer differential protection	Differential protection
87U	Combined differential transformer and generator protection	Differential protection
40	Protection against the loss of field voltage or current supply	Offset mho relay
46	Protection against current imbalance. Measurement of phase negative sequence current	Time-overcurrent relay
32	Anti-motoring protection	Reverse-power relay
24	Overexcitation protection	Volt/Hertz relay
59	Phase overvoltage protection	Overvoltage relay
60	Detection of blown voltage transformer fuses	Voltage balance relay
81	Under- and overfrequency protection	Frequency relays
51V	Backup protection against system faults	Voltage controlled or voltage-restrained time overcurrent relay
21	Backup protection against system faults	Distance relay
78	Protection against loss of synchronization	Combination of offset mho and blinders

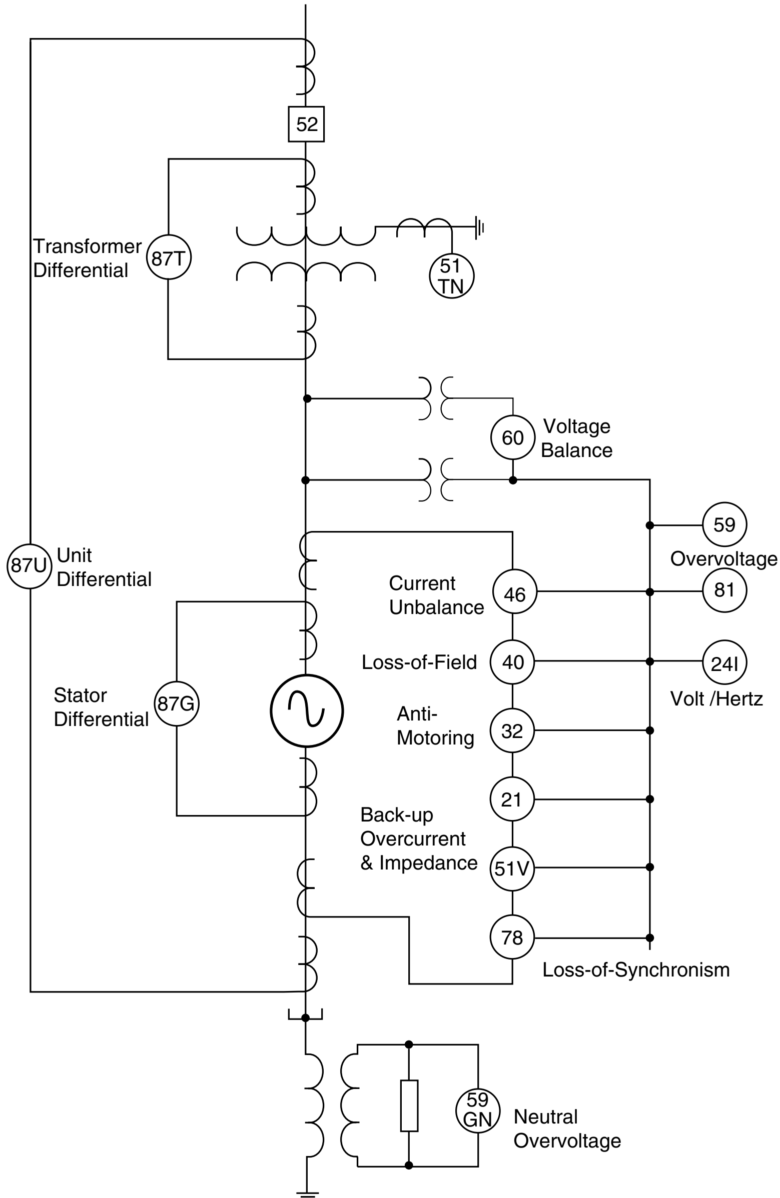


FIGURE 2.1 Typical generator-transformer protection scheme.

Contrary to transformer differential applications, no inrush exists on stator currents and no provision is implemented to take care of overexcitation. Therefore, stator differential relays do not include harmonic restraint (2nd and 5th harmonic). Current transformer saturation is still an issue, however, particularly in generating stations because of the high X/R ratio found near generators.

The most common type of stator differential is the percentage differential, the main characteristics of which are represented in Fig. 2.2.

For a stator winding, as shown in Fig. 2.3, the restraint quantity will very often be the absolute sum of the two incoming and outgoing currents as in:

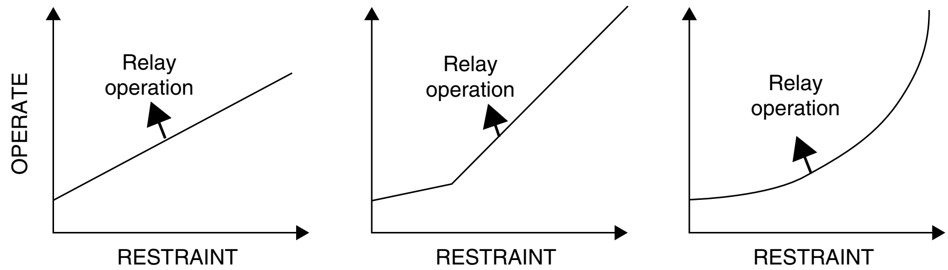


FIGURE 2.2 Single, dual, and variable-slope percentage differential characteristics.

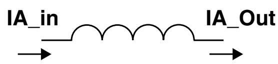


FIGURE 2.3 Stator winding current configuration.

$$Irestraint = \frac{|IA\_in| + |IA\_out|}{2}, \qquad (2.1)$$

whereas the operate quantity will be the absolute value of the difference:

$$Ioperate = |IA\_in - IA\_out| \qquad (2.2)$$

The relay will output a fault condition when the following inequality is verified:

$$\text{Irestraint} \geq \text{K} \bullet \text{Ioperate} \qquad (2.3)$$

where K is the differential percentage. The dual and variable slope characteristics will intrinsically allow CT saturation for an external fault without the relay picking up.

An alternative to the percentage differential relay is the high-impedance differential relay, which will also naturally surmount any CT saturation. For an internal fault, both currents will be forced into a high-impedance voltage relay. The differential relay will pickup when the tension across the voltage element gets above a high-set threshold. For an external fault with CT saturation, the saturated CT will constitute a low-impedance path in which the current from the other CT will flow, bypassing the high-impedance voltage element which will not pick up.

Backup protection for the stator windings will be provided most of the time by a transformer differential relay with harmonic restraint, the zone of which (as shown in Fig. 2.1) will cover both the generator and the step-up transformer.

An impedance element partially or totally covering the generator zone will also provide backup protection for the stator differential.

2.3 Protection Against Stator Winding Ground Fault

Protection against stator-to-ground fault will depend to a great extent upon the type of generator grounding. Generator grounding is necessary through some impedance in order to reduce the current level of a phase-to-ground fault. With solid generator grounding, this current will reach destructive levels. In order to avoid this, at least low impedance grounding through a resistance or a reactance is required. High-impedance through a distribution transformer with a resistor connected across the secondary winding will limit the current level of a phase-to-ground fault to a few primary amperes.

The most common and minimum protection against a stator-to-ground fault with a high-impedance grounding scheme is an overvoltage element connected across the grounding transformer secondary, as shown in Fig. 2.4.

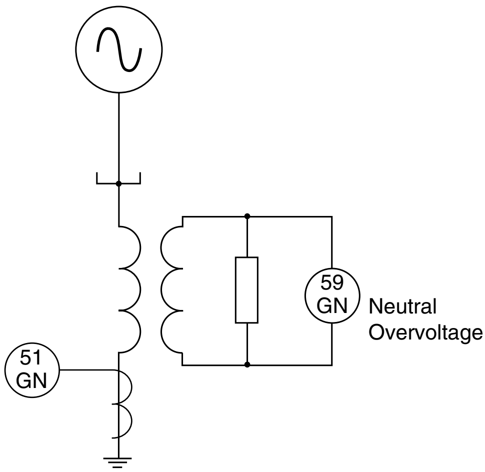


FIGURE 2.4 Stator-to-ground neutral overvoltage scheme.

For faults very close to the generator neutral, the overvoltage element will not pick up because the voltage level will be below the voltage element pick-up level. In order to cover 100% of the stator windings, two techniques are readily available:

1. use of the third harmonic generated at the neutral and generator terminals, and
2. voltage injection technique.

Looking at Fig. 2.5, a small amount of third harmonic voltage will be produced by most generators at their neutral and terminals. The level of these third harmonic voltages depends upon the generator operating point as shown in Fig. 2.5a. Normally they would be higher at full load. If a fault develops near the neutral, the third harmonic neutral voltage will approach zero and the terminal voltage will increase. However, if a fault develops near the terminals, the terminal third harmonic voltage will reach zero and the neutral voltage will increase. Based on this, three possible schemes have been devised. The relays available to cover the three possible choices are:

1. Use of a third harmonic undervoltage at the neutral. It will pick up for a fault at the neutral.
2. Use of a third harmonic overvoltage at the terminals. It will pick up for a fault near the neutral.
3. The most sensitive schemes are based on third harmonic differential relays that monitor the ratio of third harmonic at the neutral and the terminals (Yin et al., 1990).

2.4 Field Ground Protection

A generator field circuit (field winding, exciter, and field breaker) is a DC circuit that does not need to be grounded. If a first earth fault occurs, no current will flow and the generator operation will not be affected. If a second ground fault at a different location occurs, a current will flow that is high enough to cause damage to the rotor and the exciter. Furthermore, if a large section of the field winding is short-circuited, a strong imbalance due to the abnormal air-gap fluxes could result on the forces acting on the rotor with a possibility of serious mechanical failure. In order to prevent this situation, a number of protecting devices exist. Three principles are depicted in Fig. 2.6.

The first technique (Fig. 2.6a) involves connecting a resistor in parallel with the field winding. The resistor centerpoint is connected the ground through a current sensitive relay. If a field circuit

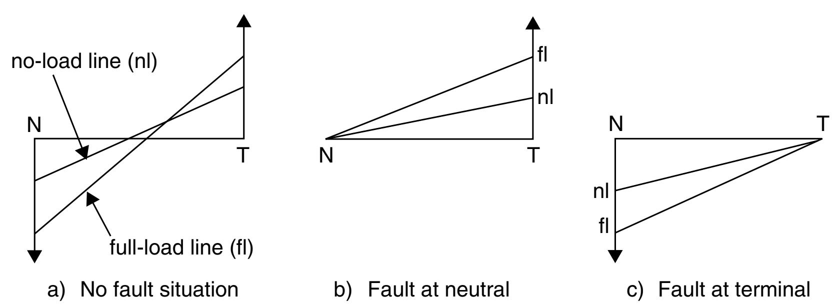


FIGURE 2.5 Third harmonic on neutral and terminals.

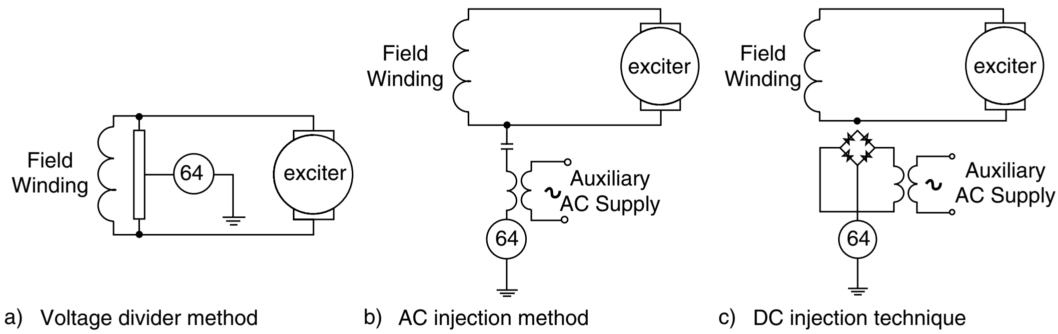


FIGURE 2.6 Various techniques for field-ground protection.

point gets grounded, the relay will pick up by virtue of the current flowing through it. The main shortcoming of this technique is that no fault will be detected if the field winding centerpoint gets grounded.

The second technique (Fig. 2.6b) involves applying an AC voltage across one point of the field winding. If the field winding gets grounded at some location, an AC current will flow into the relay and causes it to pick up.

The third technique (Fig. 2.6c) involves injecting a DC voltage rather than an AC voltage. The consequence remains the same if the field circuit gets grounded at some point.

The best protection against field-ground faults is to move the generator out of service as soon as the first ground fault is detected.

2.5 Loss-of-Excitation Protection (40)

A loss-of-excitation on a generator occurs when the field current is no longer supplied. This situation can be triggered by a variety of circumstances and the following situation will then develop:

1. When the field supply is removed, the generator real power will remain almost constant during the next seconds. Because of the drop in the excitation voltage, the generator output voltage drops gradually. To compensate for the drop in voltage, the current increases at about the same rate.
2. The generator then becomes underexcited and it will absorb increasingly negative reactive power.
3. Because the ratio of the generator voltage over the current becomes smaller and smaller with the phase current leading the phase voltage, the generator positive sequence impedance as measured at its terminals will enter the impedance plane in the second quadrant. Experience has shown that the positive sequence impedance will settle to a value between Xd and Xq.

The most popular protection against a loss-of-excitation situation uses an offset-mho relay as shown in Fig. 2.7 (IEEE, 1989). The relay is supplied with generator terminals voltages and currents and is normally associated with a definite time delay. Many modern digital relays will use the positive sequence voltage and current to evaluate the positive sequence impedance as seen at the generator terminal.

Figure 2.8 shows the digitally emulated positive sequence impedance trajectory of a 200 MVA generator connected to an infinite bus through an 8% impedance transformer when the field voltage was removed at 0 second time.

2.6 Current Imbalance (46)

Current imbalance in the stator with its subsequent production of negative sequence current will be the cause of double-frequency currents on the surface of the rotor. This, in turn, may cause excessive

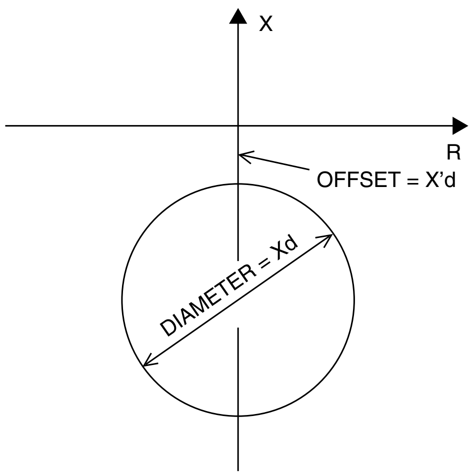


FIGURE 2.7 Loss-of-excitation offset-mho characteristic.

overheating of the rotor and trigger substantial thermal and mechanical damages (due to temperature effects).

The reasons for temporary or permanent current imbalance are numerous:

- system asymmetries
- unbalanced loads
- unbalanced system faults or open circuits
- single-pole tripping with subsequent reclosing

The energy supplied to the rotor follows a purely thermal law and is proportional to the square of the negative sequence current. Consequently, a thermal limit K is reached when the following integral equation is solved:

$$K = \int_0^t I_2^2 \, dt \tag{2.4}$$

In this equation, we have:

K = constant depending upon the generator design and size
I_2 = RMS value of negative sequence current
t = time

The integral equation can be expressed as an inverse time-current characteristic where the maximum time is given as the negative sequence current variable:

$$t = \frac{K}{I_2^2} \tag{2.5}$$

In this expression the negative sequence current magnitude will be entered most of the time as a percentage of the nominal phase current and integration will take place when the measured negative sequence current becomes greater than a percentage threshold.

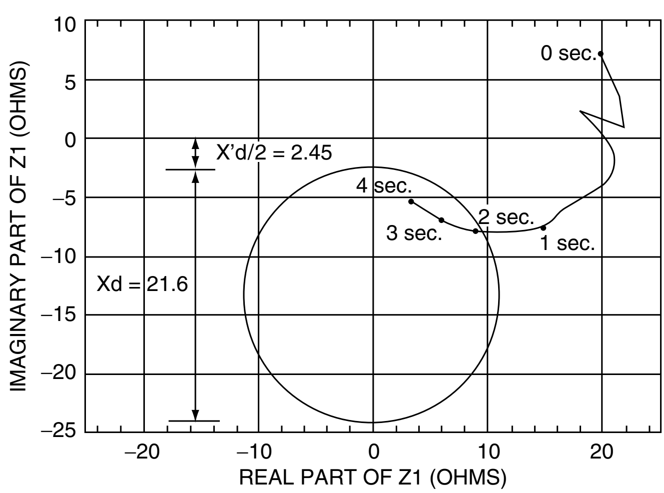


FIGURE 2.8 Loss-of-field positive sequence impedance trajectory.

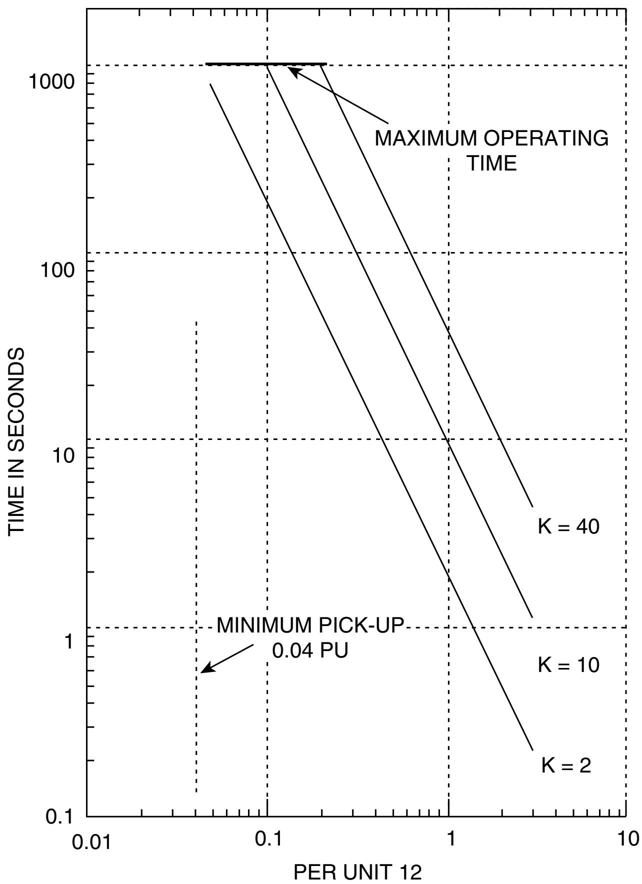


FIGURE 2.9 Typical static or digital time-inverse 46 curve.

Thermal capability constant, K, is determined by experiment by the generator manufacturer. Negative sequence currents are supplied to the machine on which strategically located thermocouples have been installed. The temperature rises are recorded and the thermal capability is inferred.

Forty-six (46) relays can be supplied in all three technologies (electromechanical, static, or digital). Ideally the negative sequence current should be measured in rms magnitude. Various measurement principles can be found. Digital relays could measure the fundamental component of the negative sequence current because this could be the basic principle for phasor measurement. Figure 2.9 represents a typical relay characteristic.

2.7 Anti-Motoring Protection (32)

A number of situations exist where a generator could be driven as a motor. Anti-motoring protection will more specifically apply in situations where the prime-mover supply is removed for a generator supplying a network at synchronous speed with the field normally excited. The power system will then drive the generator as a motor.

A motoring condition may develop if a generator is connected improperly to the power system. This will happen if the generator circuit breaker is closed inadvertently at some speed less than synchronous speed. Typical situations are when the generator is on turning gear, slowing down to a standstill, or hasreached standstill. This motoring condition occurs during what is called "generator inadvertent energization." The protection schemes that respond to this situation are different and will be addressed later in this article.

Motoring will cause adverse effects, particularly in the case of steam turbines. The basic phenomenon is that the rotation of the turbine rotor and the blades in a steam environment will cause windage losses. Windage losses are a function of rotor diameter, blade length, and are directly proportional to the density of the enclosed steam. Therefore, in any situation where the steam density is high, harmful windage losses could occur. From the preceding discussion, one may conclude that the anti-motoring protection is more of a prime-mover protection than a generator protection.

The most obvious means of detecting motoring is to monitor the flow of real power into the generator. If that flow becomes negative below a preset level, then a motoring condition is detected. Sensitivity and setting of the power relay depends upon the energy drawn by the prime mover considered now as a motor.

With a gas turbine, the large compressor represents a substantial load that could reach as high as 50% of the unit nameplate rating. Sensitivity of the power relay is not an issue and is definitely not critical. With a diesel type engine (with no firing in the cylinders), load could reach as high as 25% of the unit rating and sensitivity, once again, is not critical. With hydroturbines, if the blades are below the tail-race level, the motoring energy is high. If above, the reverse power gets as low as 0.2 to 2% of the rated power and a sensitive reverse power relay is then needed. With steam turbines operating at full vacuum and zero steam input, motoring will draw 0.5 to 3% of unit rating. A sensitive power relay is then required.

2.8 Overexcitation Protection (24)

When generator or step-up transformer magnetic core iron becomes saturated beyond rating, stray fluxes will be induced into nonlaminated components. These components are not designed to carry flux and therefore thermal or dielectric damage can occur rapidly.

In dynamic magnetic circuits, voltages are generated by the Lenz Law:

$$V = K\frac{d\phi}{dt} \tag{2.6}$$

Measured voltage can be integrated in order to get an estimate of the flux. Assuming a sinusoidal voltage of magnitude Vp and frequency f, and integrating over a positive or negative half-cycle interval:

$$\phi = \frac{1}{K}\int_0^{T/2} V_p \sin(\omega t + \theta)dt = \frac{V_p}{2\pi f\ K}(-\cos\omega t)|_0^{T/2} \tag{2.7}$$

one derives an estimate of the flux that is proportional to the value of peak voltage over the frequency. This type of protection is then called volts per hertz.

$$\phi \approx \frac{V_p}{f} \tag{2.8}$$

The estimated value of the flux can then be compared to a maximum value threshold. With static technology, volts per hertz relays would practically integrate the monitored voltage over a positive or negative (or both) half-cycle period of time and develop a value that would be proportional to the flux. With digital relays, since measurement of the frequency together with the magnitudes of phase voltages are continuously available, a direct ratio computation as shown in Eq. (2.8) would be performed.

ANSI/IEEE standard limits are 1.05 pu for generators and 1.05 for transformers (on transformer secondary base, at rated load, 0.8 power factor or greater; 1.1 pu at no-load). It has been traditional to

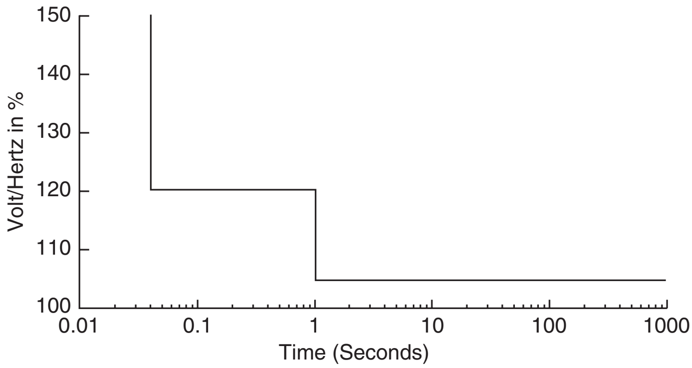


FIGURE 2.10 Dual definite-time characteristic.

supply either definite time or inverse-time characteristics as recommended by the ANSI/IEEE guides and standards. Fig. 2.10 represents a typical dual definite-time characteristic whereas Fig. 2.11 represents a combined definite and inverse-time characteristic.

One of the primary requirements of a volt/hertz relay is that it should measure both voltage magnitude and frequency over a broad range of frequency.

2.9 Overvoltage (59)

An overvoltage condition could be encountered without exceeding the volt/hertz limits. For that reason, an overvoltage relay is recommended. Particularly for hydro-units, C37-102 recommends both an instantaneous and an inverse element. The instantaneous should be set to 130 to 150% of rated voltage and the inverse element should have a pick-up voltage of 110% of the rated voltage. Coordination with the voltage regulator should be verified.

2.10 Voltage Imbalance Protection (60)

The loss of a voltage phase signal can be due to a number of causes. The primary cause for this nuisance is a blown-out fuse in the voltage transformer circuit. Other causes can be a wiring error, a voltage transformer failure, a contact opening, a misoperation during maintenance, etc.

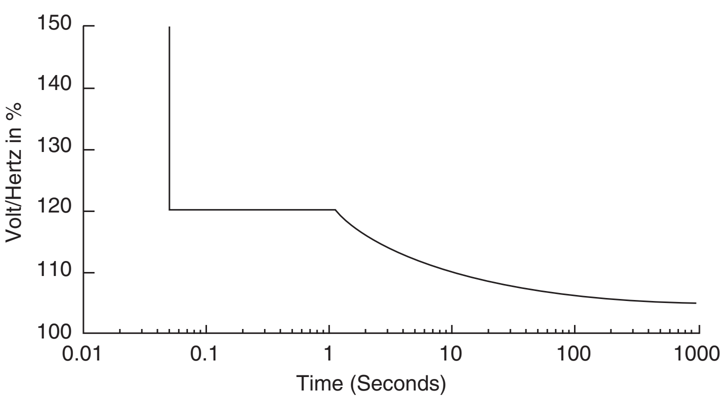


FIGURE 2.11 Combined definite and inverse-time characteristics.

Since the purpose of these VTs is to provide voltage signals to the protective relays and the voltage regulator, the immediate effect of a loss of VT signal will be the possible misoperation of some protective relays and the cause for generator overexcitation by the voltage regulator. Among the protective relays to be impacted by the loss of VT signal are:

- Function 21: Distance relay. Backup for system and generator zone phase faults.
- Function 32: Reverse power relay. Anti-motoring function, sequential tripping and inadvertent energization functions.
- Function 40: Loss-of-field protection.
- Function 51V: Voltage-restrained time overcurrent relay.

Normally these functions should be blocked if a condition of fuse failure is detected.

It is common practice for large generators to use two sets of voltage transformers for protection, voltage regulation, and measurement. Therefore, the most common practice for loss of VT signals detection is to use a voltage balance relay as shown in Fig. 2.12 on each pair of secondary phase voltage. When a fuse blows, the voltage relationship becomes imbalanced and the relay operates. Typically, the voltage imbalance will be set at around 15%.

The advent of digital relays has allowed the use of sophisticated algorithms based on symmetrical components to detect the loss of VT signal. When a situation of loss of one or more of the VT signals occurs, the following conditions develop:

- there will be a drop in the positive sequence voltage accompanied by an increase in the negative sequence voltage magnitude. The magnitude of this drop will depend upon the number of phases impacted by a fuse failure.
- in case of a loss of VT signal and contrary to a fault condition, there should not be any change in the current's magnitudes and phases. Therefore, the negative and zero sequence currents should remain below a small tolerance value. A fault condition can be distinguished from a loss of VT signal by monitoring the changes in the positive and negative current levels. In case of a loss of VT signals, these changes should remain below a small tolerance level.

All the above conditions can be incorporated into a complex logic scheme to determine if indeed a there has been a condition of loss of VT signal or a fault. Figure 2.13 represents the logic implementation of a voltage transformer single and double fuse failure based on symmetrical components.

If the following conditions are met in the same time (and condition) during a time delay longer than T1:

- the positive sequence voltage is below a voltage set-value SET_1,
- the negative sequence voltage is above a voltage set-value SET_2,
- there exists a small value of current such that the positive sequence current I1 is above a small set-value SET_4 and the negative and zero sequence currents I2 and I2 do not exceed a small set-value SET_3,

then a fuse failure condition will pick up to one and remain in that state thanks to the latch effect. Fuse failure of a specific phase can be detected by monitoring the level voltage of each phase and comparing it to a set-value SET_5. As soon as the positive sequence voltage returns to a value greater than the set-value SET_1 and the negative sequence voltage disappears, the fuse failure condition returns to a zero state.

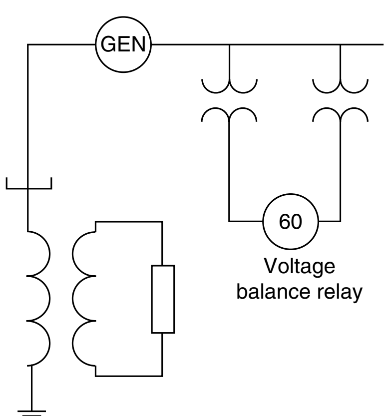


FIGURE 2.12 Example of voltage balance relay.

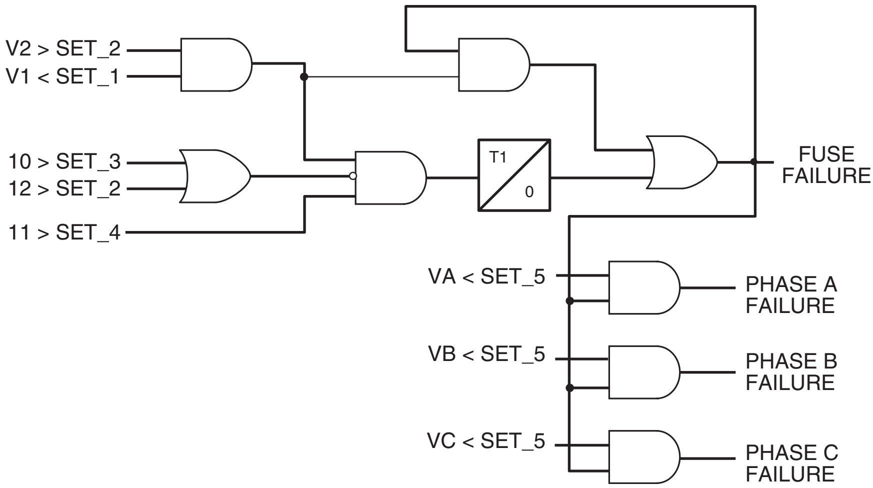


FIGURE 2.13 Symmetrical component implementation of fuse failure detection.

2.11 System Backup Protection (51V and 21)

Generator backup protection is not applied to generator faults but rather to system faults that have not been cleared in time by the system primary protection, but which require generator removal in order for the fault to be eliminated. By definition, these are time-delayed protective functions that must coordinate with the primary protective system.

System backup protection (Fig. 2.14) must provide protection for both phase faults and ground faults. For the purpose of protecting against phase faults, two solutions are most commonly applied: the use of overcurrent relays with either voltage restraint or voltage control, or impedance-type relays.

The basic principle behind the concept of supervising the overcurrent relay by voltage is that a fault external to the generator and on the system will have the effect of reducing the voltage at the generator terminal. This effect is being used in both types of overcurrent applications: the voltage controlled overcurrent relay will block the overcurrent element unless the voltage gets below a pre-set value, and the voltage restraint overcurrent element will have its pick-up current reduced by an amount proportional to the voltage reduction (see Fig. 2.15).

The impedance type backup protection could be applied to the low or high side of the step-up transformer. Normally, three 21 elements will cover all types of phase faults on the system as in a line relay.

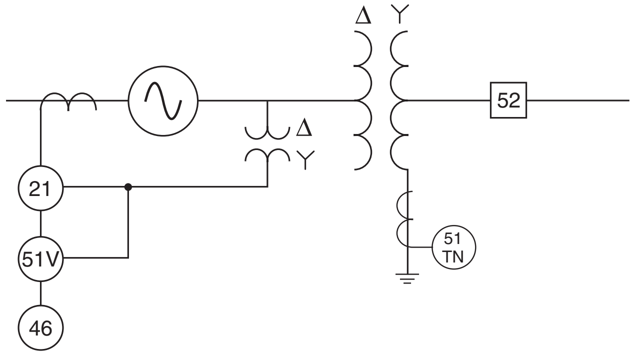


FIGURE 2.14 Backup protection basic scheme.

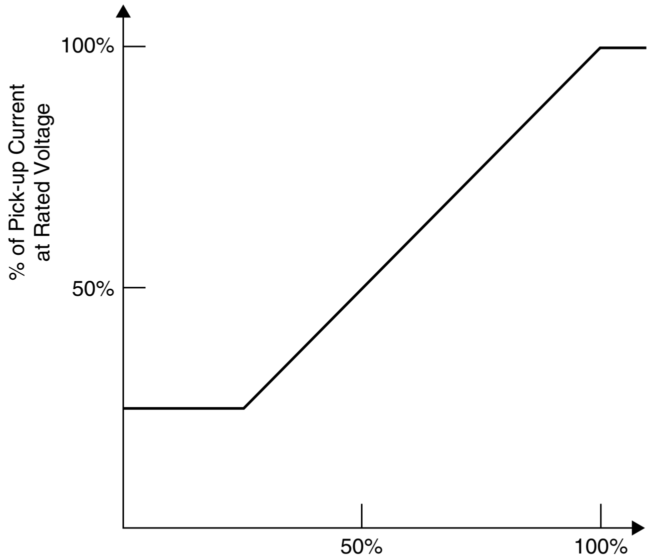


FIGURE 2.15 Voltage restraint overcurrent relay principle.

As shown in Fig. 2.16, a reverse offset is allowed in the mho element in order for the backup to partially or totally cover the generator windings.

2.12 Out-of-Step Protection

When there is an equilibrium between generation and load on an electrical network, the network frequency will be stable and the internal angle of the generators will remain constant with respect to each other. If an imbalance (loss of generation, sudden addition of load, network fault, etc.) occurs, however, the internal angle of a generator will undergo some changes and two situations might develop: a new stable state will be reached after the disturbance has faded away, or the generator internal angle will not stabilize and the generator will run synchronously with respect to the rest of the network (moving internal angle and different frequency). In the latter case, an out-of-step protection is implemented to detect the situation.

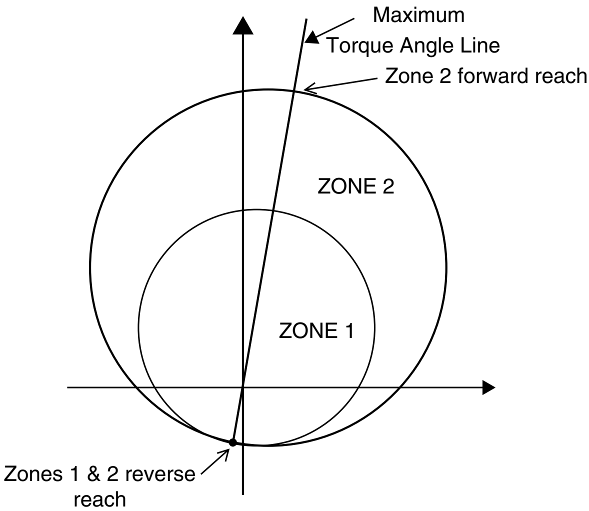


FIGURE 2.16 Typical 21 elements application.

That principle can be visualized by considering the two-source network of Fig. 2.17.

If the angle between the two sources is θ and the ratio between the voltage magnitudes is $n = E_G/E_S$, then the positive sequence impedance seen from location will be:

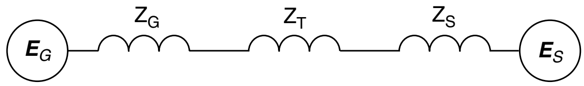


FIGURE 2.17 Elementary two-source network.

$$Z_R = \frac{n(Z_G + Z_T + Z_S)(n - \cos\theta - j\sin\theta)}{(n - \cos\theta)^2 + \sin^2\theta} - Z_G \tag{2.9}$$

If n is equal to one, Eq. (2.9) simplifies to:

$$Z_R = \frac{n(Z_G + Z_T + Z_S)\left(1 - j\ cotg\frac{\theta}{2}\right)}{2} - Z_G \tag{2.10}$$

The impedance locus represented by this equation is a straight line, perpendicular to and crossing the vector $Z_s + Z_T + Z_G$ at its middle point. If n is different from 1, the loci become circles as shown in Fig. 2.18. The angle θ between the two sources is the angle between the two segments joining Z_R to the base of Z_G and the summit of Z_S. Normally, that angle will take a small value. In an out-of-step condition, it will assume a bigger value and when it reaches 180°, it crosses $Z_s + Z_T + Z_G$ at its middle point.

Normally, because of the machine's inertia, the impedance Z_R moves slowly. The phenomenon can be taken advantage of and an out-of-step condition will very often be detected by the combination a mho relay and two blinders as shown in Fig. 2.19. In this application, an out-of-step condition will be assumed to be detected when the impedance locus enters the mho circle and remains between the two blinders for an interval of time longer than a preset definite time delay. Implicit in this scheme is the fact that the angle between the two sources is assumed to take a large value when Zr crosses the blinders. Implementation of an out-of-step protection will normally require some careful studies and eventually will require some stability simulations in order to determine the nature and the locus of the stable and

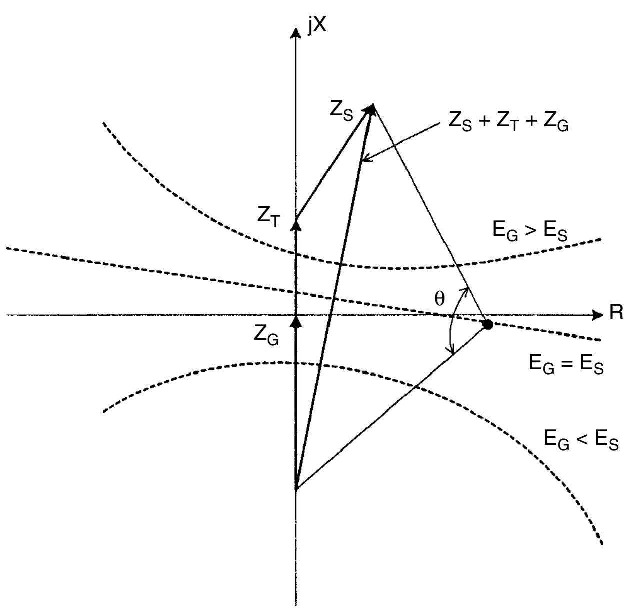


FIGURE 2.18 Impedance locus for different source angles.

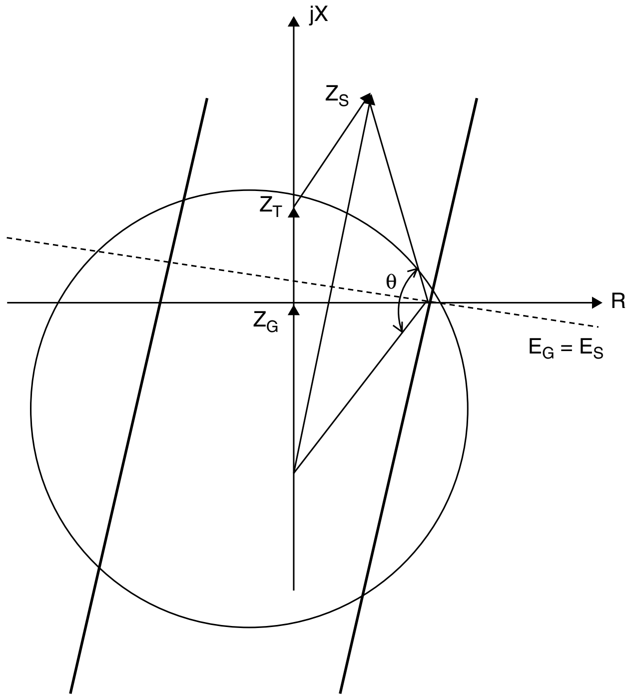


FIGURE 2.19 Out-of-step mho detector with blinders.

the unstable swings. One of the paramount requirement of an out-of-step protection is not to trip the generator in case of a stable wing.

2.13 Abnormal Frequency Operation of Turbine-Generator

Although it is not a concern for hydraulic generators, the protection against abnormal frequency operation becomes an issue with steam turbine-graters. If the turbine is rotated at a frequency other than synchronous, the blades in the low pressure turbine element could resonate at their natural frequency. Blading mechanical fatigue could result with subsequent damage and failure.

Figure 2.20 (ANSI C37.106) represents a typical steam turbine operating limitation curve. Continuous operation is allowed around 60 Hz. Time-limited zones exist above and below the continuous operation regions. Prohibited operation regions lie beyond.

With the advent of modern generator microprocessor-based relays (IEEE, 1989), there does not seem to be a consensus emerging among the relay and turbine manufacturers, regarding the digital implementation of underfrequency turbine protection. The following points should, however, be taken into account:

- Measurement of frequency is normally available on a continuous basis and over a broad frequency range. Precision better than 0.01 Hz in the frequency measurement has been achieved.
- In practically all products, a number of independent over- or under-frequency definite time functions can be combined to form a composite curve.

Therefore, with digital technology, a typical over/underfrequency scheme, as shown in Fig. 2.21, comprising one definite-time over-frequency and two definite-time under-frequency elements is readily implementable.

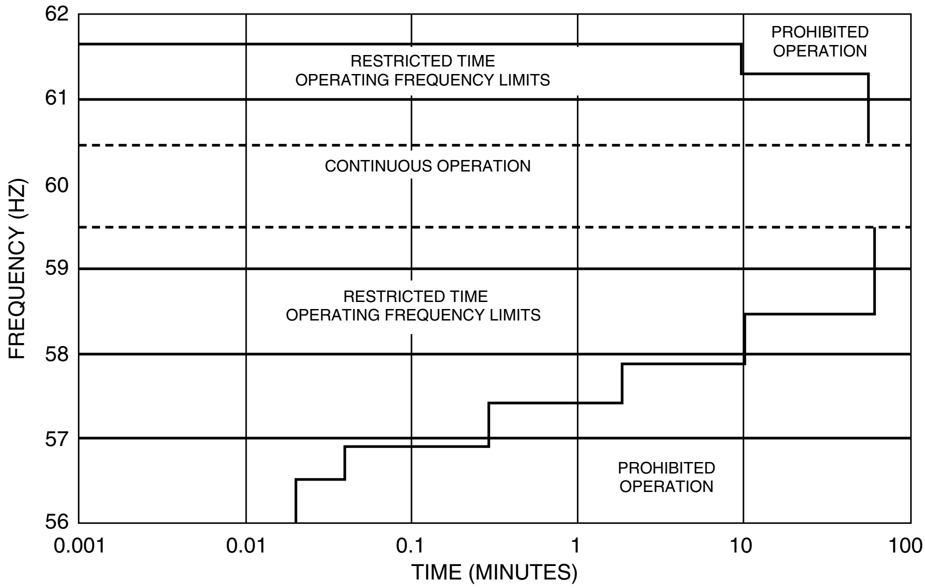


FIGURE 2.20 Typical steam turbine operating characteristic. (Modified from ANSI/IEEE C37.106-1987, Figure 6.)

2.14 Protection Against Accidental Energization

A number of catastrophic failures have occurred in the past when synchronous generators have been accidentally energized while at standstill. Among the causes for such incidents were human errors, breaker flashover, or control circuitry malfunction.

A number of protection schemes have been devised to protect the generator against inadvertent energization. The basic principle is to monitor the out-of-service condition and to detect an accidental energizing immediately following that state. As an example, Fig. 2.22 shows an application using an over-frequency relay supervising three single phase instantaneous overcurrent elements. When the

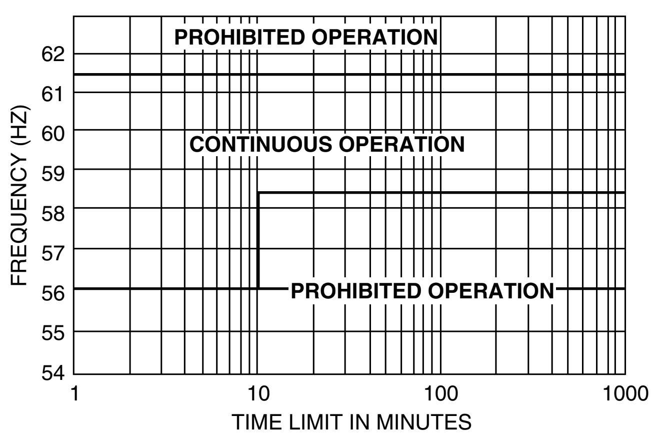


FIGURE 2.21 Typical abnormal frequency protection characteristic.

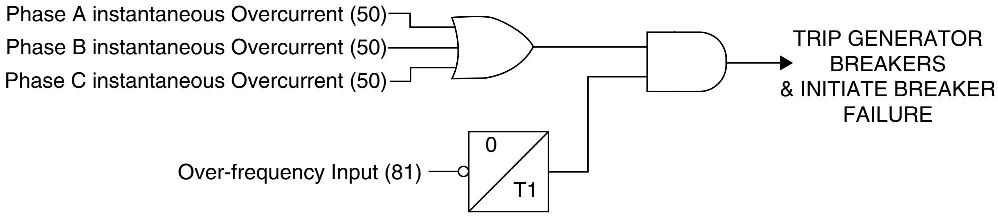


FIGURE 2.22 Frequency supervised overcurrent inadvertent energizing protection.

generator is put out of service or the over-frequency element drops out, the timer will pick up. If inadvertent energizing occurs, the over-frequency element will pick up, but because of the timer drop-out delay, the instantaneous overcurrent elements will have the time to initiate the generator breakers opening. The supervision could also be implemented using a voltage relay.

Accidental energizing caused by a single or three-phase breaker flashover occurring during the generator synchronizing process will not be detected by the logic of Fig. 2.22. In such an instance, by the time the generator has been closed to the synchronous speed, the overcurrent element outputs would have been blocked.

2.15 Generator Breaker Failure

Generator breaker failure follows the general pattern of the same function found in other applications: once a fault has been detected by a protective device, a timer will monitor the removal of the fault. If, after a time delay, the fault is still detected, conclusion is reached that the breaker(s) have not opened and a signal to open the backup breakers will be sent.

Figure 2.23 shows a conventional breaker failure diagram where provision has been added to detect a flashover occurring before the synchronizing of the generator: in addition to the protective relays detecting a fault, a flashover condition is detected by using an instantaneous overcurrent relay installed on the neutral of the step-up transformer. If this relay picks up and the breaker position contact (52b) is closed (breaker open), then a flashover condition is asserted and breaker failure is initiated.

2.16 Generator Tripping Principles

A number of methods for isolating a generator once a fault has been detected are commonly being implemented. They fall into four groups:

- Simultaneous tripping involves simultaneously shutting the prime mover down by closing its valves and opening the field and generator breakers. This technique is highly recommended for severe internal generator faults.
- Generator tripping involves simultaneously opening both the field and generator breakers.
- Unit separation involves opening the generator breaker only.
- Sequential tripping is applicable to steam turbines and involves first tripping the turbine valves in order to prevent any overspeeding of the unit. Then, the field and generator breakers are opened. Figure 2.24 represents a possible logical scheme for the implementation of a sequential tripping function. If the following three conditions are met, (1) the real power is below a negative pre-set threshold SET_1, (2) the steam valve or a differential pressure switch is closed (either condition indicating the removal of the prime-mover), (3) the sequential tripping function is enabled, then a trip signal will be sent to the generator and field breakers.

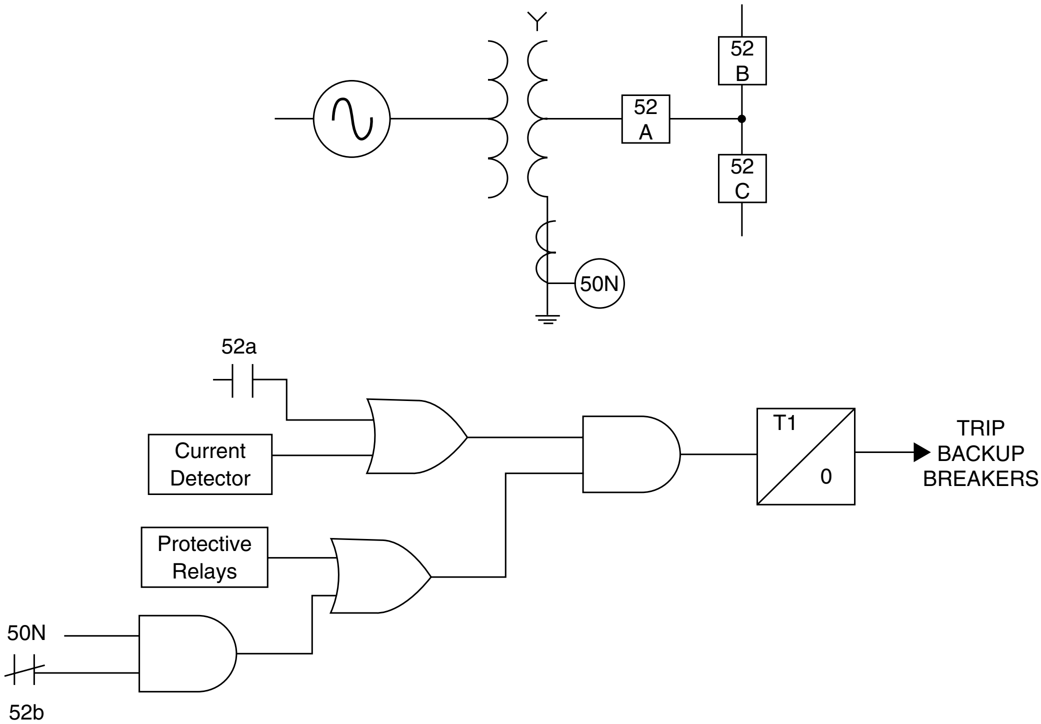


FIGURE 2.23 Breaker failure logic with flashover protection.

2.17 Impact of Generator Digital Multifunction Relays[1]

The latest technological leap in generator protection has been the release of digital multifunction relays by various manufacturers (Benmouyal, 1988; Yalla, 1992; Benmouyal, 1994; Yip, 1994). With more sophisticated characteristics being available through software algorithms, generator protective function characteristics can be improved. Therefore, multifunction relays have many advantages, most of which stem from the technology on which they are based.

2.17.1 Improvements in Signal Processing

Most multifunction relays use a full-cycle Discrete Fourier Transform (DFT) algorithm for acquisition of the fundamental component of the current and voltage phasors. Consequently, they will benefit from the inherent filtering properties provided by the algorithms, such as:

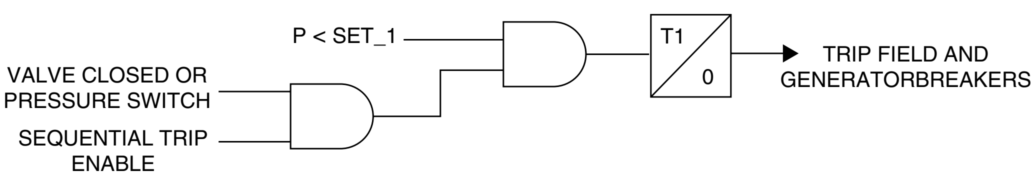


FIGURE 2.24 Implementation of a sequential tripping function.

[1]This section was published previously in a modified form in Working Group J-11 of PSRC, Application of multifunction generator protection systems, *IEEE Trans. on PD*, 14(4), Oct. 1999.

- immunity from DC component and good suppression of exponentially decaying offset due to the large value of X/R time constants in generators;
- immunity to harmonics;
- nominal response time of one cycle for the protective functions requiring fast response.

Since sequence quantities are computed mathematically from the voltage and current phasors, they will also benefit from the above advantages.

However, it should be kept in mind that fundamental phasors of waveforms are not the only parameters used in digital multifunction relays. Other parameters like peak or rms values of waveforms can be equally acquired through simple algorithms, depending upon the characteristics of a particular algorithm.

A number of techniques have been used to make the measurement of phasor magnitudes independent of frequency, and therefore achieve stable sensitivities over large frequency excursions. One technique is known as frequency tracking and consists of having a number of samples in one cycle that is constant, regardless of the value of the frequency or the generator's speed. A software digital phase-locked loop allows implementation of such a scheme and will inherently provide a direct measurement of the frequency or the speed of the generator (Benmouyal, 1989). A second technique keeps the sampling period fixed, but varies the time length of the data window to follow the period of the generator frequency. This results in a variable number of samples in the cycles (Hart et al., 1997). A third technique consists of measuring the root-mean square value of a current or voltage waveform. The variation of this quantity with frequency is very limited, and therefore, this technique allows measurement of the magnitude of a waveform over a broad frequency range.

A further improvement consists of measuring the generator frequency digitally. Precision, in most cases, will be one hundredth of a hertz or better, and good immunity to harmonics and noise is achievable with modern algorithms.

2.17.2 Improvements in Protective Functions

The following functions will benefit from some inherent advantages of the digital processing capability:

- A number of improvements can be attributed to stator differential protection. The first is the detection of CT saturation in case of external faults that would cause the protection relay to trip. When CT ratios do not match perfectly, the difference can be either automatically or manually introduced into the algorithm in order to suppress the difference.
- It is no longer necessary to provide a Δ-Y conversion for the backup 21 elements in order to cover the phase fault on the high side of the voltage transformer. That conversion can be accomplished mathematically inside the relay.
- In the area of detection of voltage transformer blown fuses, the use of symmetrical components allows identification of the faulted phase. Therefore, complex logic schemes can be implemented where only the protection function impacted by the phase will be blocked. As an example, if a 51V is implemented on all three phases independently, it will be sufficient to block the function only on the phase on which a fuse has been detected as blown. Furthermore, contrary to the conventional voltage balance relay scheme, a single VT will suffice when using this modern algorithm.
- Because of the different functions recording their characteristics over a large frequency interval, it is no longer necessary to monitor the frequency in order to implement start-up or shut-down protection.
- The 100% stator-ground protection can be improved by using third-harmonic voltage measurements both at the phase and neutral.
- The characteristic of an offset mho impedance relay in the R-X plane can be made to be independent of frequency by using one of the following two techniques: the frequency-tracking

algorithm previously mentioned, or the use of the positive sequence voltage and current because their ratio is frequency-independent.

- Functions which are inherently three-phase phenomena can be implemented by using the positive sequence voltage and current quantities. The loss-of-field or loss-of-synchronism are examples.
- In the reverse power protection, improved accuracy and sensitivity can be obtained with digital technology.
- Digital technology allows the possibility of tailoring inverse volt/hertz curves to the user's needs. Full programmability of these same curves is readily achievable. From that perspective, volt/hertz protection is improved by a closer match between the implemented curve and the generator or step-up transformer damage curve.

Multifunction generator protection packages have other functions that make use of the inherent capabilities of microprocessor devices. These include: oscillography and event recording, time synchronization, multiple settings, metering, communications, self-monitoring, and diagnostics.

References

Benmouyal, G., An adaptive sampling interval generator for digital relaying, *IEEE Trans. on PD*, 4(3), July, 1989.

Benmouyal, G., Design of a universal protection relay for synchronous generators, CIGRE Session, No. 34–09, 1988.

Benmouyal, G., Adamiak, M.G., Das, D.P., and Patel, S.C., Working to develop a new multifunction digital package for generator protection, *Electricity Today*, 6(3), March 1994.

Berdy, J., Loss-of-excitation for synchronous generators, *IEEE Trans. on PAS*, PAS-94(5), Sept./Oct. 1975.

Guide for Abnormal Frequency Protection for Power Generating Plant, ANSI/IEEE C37.106.

Guide for AC Generator Protection, ANSI/IEEE C37.102.

Guide for Generator Ground Protection, ANSI/IEEE C37.101.

Hart, D., Novosel, D., Hu, Y., Smith, R., and Egolf, M., A new tracking and phasor estimation algorithm for generator, *IEEE Trans. on PD*, 12(3), July, 1997.

IEEE Tutorial on the Protection of Synchronous Generators, IEEE Catalog No. 95TP102, 1995.

IEEE Recommended Practice for Protection and Coordination of Industrial and Commercial Power Systems, ANSI/IEEE 242–1986.

Ilar, M. and Wittwer, M., Numerical generator protection offers new benefits of gas turbines, International Gas Turbine and Aeroengine Congress and Exposition, Colone, Germany, June 1992.

Inadvertant energizing protection of synchronous generators, *IEEE Trans. on PD*, 4(2), April 1989.

Wimmer, W., Fromm, W., Muller, P., and IIar, F., Fundamental Considerations on User-Configurable Multifunctional Numerical Protection, 34–202, CIGRE 1996 Session.

Working Group J-11 of PSRC, Application of multifunction generator protection systems, *IEEE Trans. on PD*, 14(4), Oct. 1999.

Yalla, M.V.V.S., A digital multifunction protection relay, *IEEE Trans. on PD*, 7(1), January 1992.

Yin, X.G., Malik, O.P., Hope, G.S., and Chen, D.S., Adaptive ground fault protection schemes for turbogenerator based on third harmonic voltages, *IEEE Trans. on PD*, 5(2), July, 1990.

Yip, H.T., *An Integrated Approach to Generator Protection*, Canadian Electrical Association, Toronto, March 1994.

3

Transmission Line Protection

Stanley H. Horowitz
Consultant

The study of transmission line protection presents many fundamental relaying considerations that apply, in one degree or another, to the protection of other types of power system protection. Each electrical element, of course, will have problems unique to itself, but the concepts of reliability, selectivity, local and remote backup, zones of protection, coordination and speed which may be present in the protection of one or more other electrical apparatus are all present in the considerations surrounding transmission line protection.

Since transmission lines are also the links to adjacent lines or connected equipment, transmission line protection must be compatible with the protection of all of these other elements. This requires coordination of settings, operating times and characteristics.

The purpose of power system protection is to detect faults or abnormal operating conditions and to initiate corrective action. Relays must be able to evaluate a wide variety of parameters to establish that corrective action is required. Obviously, a relay cannot prevent the fault. Its primary purpose is to detect the fault and take the necessary action to minimize the damage to the equipment or to the system. The most common parameters which reflect the presence of a fault are the voltages and currents at the terminals of the protected apparatus or at the appropriate zone boundaries. The fundamental problem in power system protection is to define the quantities that can differentiate between normal and abnormal conditions. This problem is compounded by the fact that "normal" in the present sense means outside the zone of protection. This aspect, which is of the greatest significance in designing a secure relaying system, dominates the design of all protection systems.

3.1 The Nature of Relaying

3.1.1 Reliability

Reliability, in system protection parlance, has special definitions which differ from the usual planning or operating usage. A relay can misoperate in two ways: it can fail to operate when it is required to do so, or it can operate when it is not required or desirable for it to do so. To cover both situations, there are two components in defining reliability:

Dependability—which refers to the certainty that a relay will respond correctly for all faults for which it is designed and applied to operate; and

Security—which is the measure that a relay will not operate incorrectly for any fault.

Most relays and relay schemes are designed to be dependable since the system itself is robust enough to withstand an incorrect tripout (loss of security), whereas a failure to trip (loss of dependability) may be catastrophic in terms of system performance.

3.1.2 Zones of Protection

The property of security is defined in terms of regions of a power system—called zones of protection—for which a given relay or protective system is responsible. The relay will be considered secure if it responds only to faults within its zone of protection. Figure 3.1 shows typical zones of protection with transmission lines, buses, and transformers, each residing in its own zone. Also shown are "closed zones" in which all power apparatus entering the zone is monitored, and "open" zones, the limit of which varies with the fault current. Closed zones are also known as "differential," "unit," or "absolutely selective," and open zones are "non-unit," "unrestricted," or "relatively selective."

The zone of protection is bounded by the current transformers (CT) which provide the input to the relays. While a CT provides the ability to detect a fault within its zone, the circuit breaker (CB) provides the ability to isolate the fault by disconnecting all of the power equipment inside its zone. When a CT is part of the CB, it becomes a natural zone boundary. When the CT is not an integral part of the CB, special attention must be paid to the fault detection and fault interruption logic. The CTs still define the zone of protection, but a communication channel must be used to implement the tripping function.

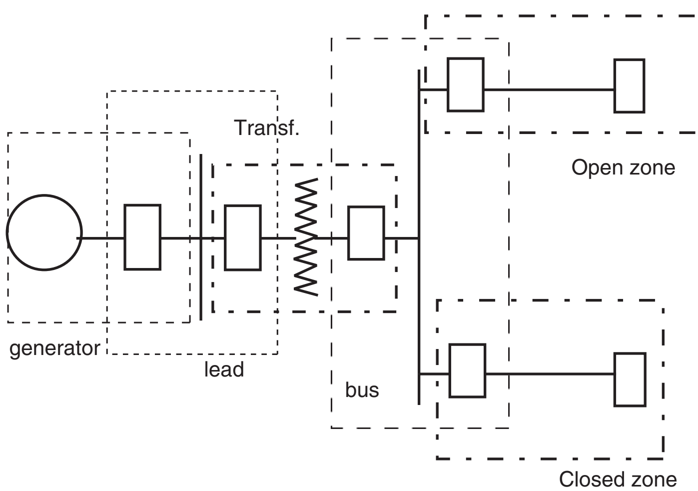


FIGURE 3.1 Closed and open zones of protection. (From Horowitz, S.H. and Phadke, A.G., *Power System Relaying,* 2nd ed., 1995. Research Studies Press, U.K. With permission.)

3.1.3 Relay Speed

It is, of course, desirable to remove a fault from the power system as quickly as possible. However, the relay must make its decision based upon voltage and current waveforms, which are severely distorted due to transient phenomena that follow the occurrence of a fault. The relay must separate the meaningful and significant information contained in these waveforms upon which a secure relaying decision must be based. These considerations demand that the relay take a certain amount of time to arrive at a decision with the necessary degree of certainty. The relationship between the relay response time and its degree of certainty is an inverse one and is one of the most basic properties of all protection systems.

Although the operating time of relays often varies between wide limits, relays are generally classified by their speed of operation as follows:

1. Instantaneous—These relays operate as soon as a secure decision is made. No intentional time delay is introduced to slow down the relay response.
2. Time-delay—An intentional time delay is inserted between the relay decision time and the initiation of the trip action.
3. High-speed—A relay that operates in less than a specified time. The specified time in present practice is 50 milliseconds (3 cycles on a 60 Hz system).
4. Ultra high-speed—This term is not included in the Relay Standards but is commonly considered to be operation in 4 milliseconds or less.

3.1.4 Primary and Backup Protection

The main protection system for a given zone of protection is called the primary protection system. It operates in the fastest time possible and removes the least amount of equipment from service. On Extra High Voltage (EHV) systems, i.e., 345kV and above, it is common to use duplicate primary protection systems in case a component in one primary protection chain fails to operate. This duplication is therefore intended to cover the failure of the relays themselves. One may use relays from a different manufacturer, or relays based on a different principle of operation to avoid common-mode failures. The operating time and the tripping logic of both the primary and its duplicate system are the same.

It is not always practical to duplicate every element of the protection chain. On High Voltage (HV) and EHV systems, the costs of transducers and circuit breakers are very expensive and the cost of duplicate equipment may not be justified. On lower voltage systems, even the relays themselves may not be duplicated. In such situations, a backup set of relays will be used. Backup relays are slower than the primary relays and may remove more of the system elements than is necessary to clear the fault.

Remote Backup—These relays are located in a separate location and are completely independent of the relays, transducers, batteries, and circuit breakers that they are backing up. There are no common failures that can affect both sets of relays. However, complex system configurations may significantly affect the ability of a remote relay to "see" all faults for which backup is desired. In addition, remote backup may remove more sources of the system than can be allowed.

Local Backup—These relays do not suffer from the same difficulties as remote backup, but they are installed in the same substation and use some of the same elements as the primary protection. They may then fail to operate for the same reasons as the primary protection.

3.1.5 Reclosing

Automatic reclosing infers no manual intervention but probably requires specific interlocking such as a full or check synchronizing, voltage or switching device checks, or other safety or operating constraints. Automatic reclosing can be high speed or delayed. High Speed Reclosing (HSR) allows only enough time for the arc products of a fault to dissipate, generally 15–40 cycles on a 60 Hz base, whereas time delayed reclosings have a specific coordinating time, usually 1 or more seconds. HSR has the possibility of generator shaft torque damage and should be closely examined before applying it.

It is common practice in the U.S. to trip all three phases for all faults and then reclose the three phases simultaneously. In Europe, however, for single line-to-ground faults, it is not uncommon to trip only the faulted phase and then reclose that phase. This practice has some applications in the U.S., but only in rare situations. When one phase of a three-phase system is opened in response to a single phase-to-ground fault, the voltage and current in the two healthy phases tend to maintain the fault arc after the faulted phase is de-energized. Depending on the length of the line, load current, and operating voltage, compensating reactors may be required to extinguish this "secondary arc."

3.1.6 System Configuration

Although the fundamentals of transmission line protection apply in almost all system configurations, there are different applications that are more or less dependent upon specific situations.

Operating Voltages—Transmission lines will be those lines operating at 138 kV and above, sub-transmission lines are 34.5 kV to 138 kV, and distribution lines are below 34.5 kV. These are not rigid definitions and are only used to generically identify a transmission system and connote the type of protection usually provided. The higher voltage systems would normally be expected to have more complex, hence more expensive, relay systems. This is so because higher voltages have more expensive equipment associated with them and one would expect that this voltage class is more important to the security of the power system. The higher relay costs, therefore, are more easily justified.

Line Length—The length of a line has a direct effect on the type of protection, the relays applied, and the settings. It is helpful to categorize the line length as "short," "medium," or "long" as this helps establish the general relaying applications although the definition of "short," "medium," and "long" is not precise. A short line is one in which the ratio of the source to the line impedance (SIR) is large (>4 e.g.), the SIR of a long line is 0.5 or less and a medium line's SIR is between 4 and 0.5. It must be noted, however, that the per-unit impedance of a line varies more with the nominal voltage of the line than with its physical length or impedance. So a "short" line at one voltage level may be a "medium" or "long" line at another.

Multiterminal Lines—Occasionally, transmission lines may be tapped to provide intermediate connections to additional sources without the expense of a circuit breaker or other switching device. Such a configuration is known as a multiterminal line and, although it is an inexpensive measure for strengthening the power system, it presents special problems for the protection engineer. The difficulty arises from the fact that a relay receives its input from the local transducers, i.e., the current and voltage at the relay location. Referring to Fig. 3.2, the current contribution to a fault from the intermediate source is not monitored. The total fault current is the sum of the local current plus the contribution from the intermediate source, and the voltage at the relay location is the sum of the two voltage drops, one of which is the product of the unmonitored current and the associated line impedance.

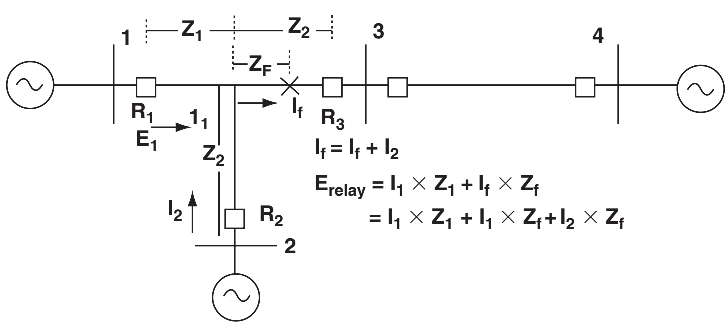


FIGURE 3.2 Effect of infeed on local relays. (From Horowitz, S.H. and Phadke, A.G., *Power System Relaying,* 2nd ed., 1995. Research Studies Press, U.K. With permission.)

3.2 Current Actuated Relays

3.2.1 Fuses

The most commonly used protective device in a distribution circuit is the fuse. Fuse characteristics vary considerably from one manufacturer to another and the specifics must be obtained from their appropriate literature. Figure 3.3 shows the time-current characteristics which consist of the minimum melt and total clearing curves.

Minimum melt is the time between initiation of a current large enough to cause the current responsive element to melt and the instant when arcing occurs. Total Clearing Time (TCT) is the total time elapsing from the beginning of an overcurrent to the final circuit interruption; i.e., TCT = minimum melt plus arcing time.

In addition to the different melting curves, fuses have different load-carrying capabilities. Manufacturer's application tables show three load-current values: continuous, hot-load pickup, and cold-load pickup. Continuous load is the maximum current that is expected for three hours or more for which the fuse will not be damaged. Hot-load is the amount that can be carried continuously, interrupted, and immediately reenergized without melting. Cold-load follows a 30-min outage and is the high current that is the result in the loss of diversity when service is restored. Since the fuse will also cool down during this period, the cold-load pickup and the hot-load pickup may approach similar values.

3.2.2 Inverse-Time Delay Overcurrent Relays

The principal application of time-delay overcurrent relays (TDOC) is on a radial system where they provide both phase and ground protection. A basic complement of relays would be two phase and one ground relay. This arrangement will protect the line for all combinations of phase and ground faults using the minimum number of relays. Adding a third phase relay, however, provides complete backup protection, that is two relays for every type of fault, and is the preferred practice. TDOC relays are usually used in industrial systems and on subtransmission lines that cannot justify more expensive protection such as distance or pilot relays.

There are two settings that must be applied to all TDOC relays: the pickup and the time delay. The pickup setting is selected so that the relay will operate for all short circuits in the line section for which it is to provide protection. This will require margins above the maximum load current, usually twice the expected value, and below the minimum fault current, usually 1/3 the calculated phase-to-phase or phase-to-ground fault current. If possible, this setting should also provide backup for an adjacent line section or adjoining equipment. The time-delay function is an independent parameter that is obtained in a variety of ways, either the setting of an induction disk lever or an external timer. The purpose of the time-delay is to enable relays to coordinate with each other. Figure 3.4 shows the family of curves of a single TDOC model. The ordinate is time in milliseconds or

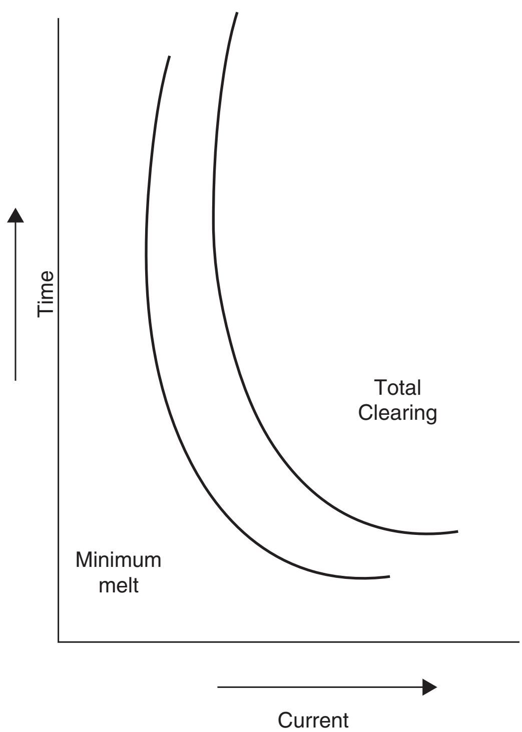


FIGURE 3.3 Fuse time-current characteristic. (From Horowitz, S.H. and Phadke, A.G., *Power System Relaying*, 2nd ed., 1995. Research Studies Press, U.K. With permission.)

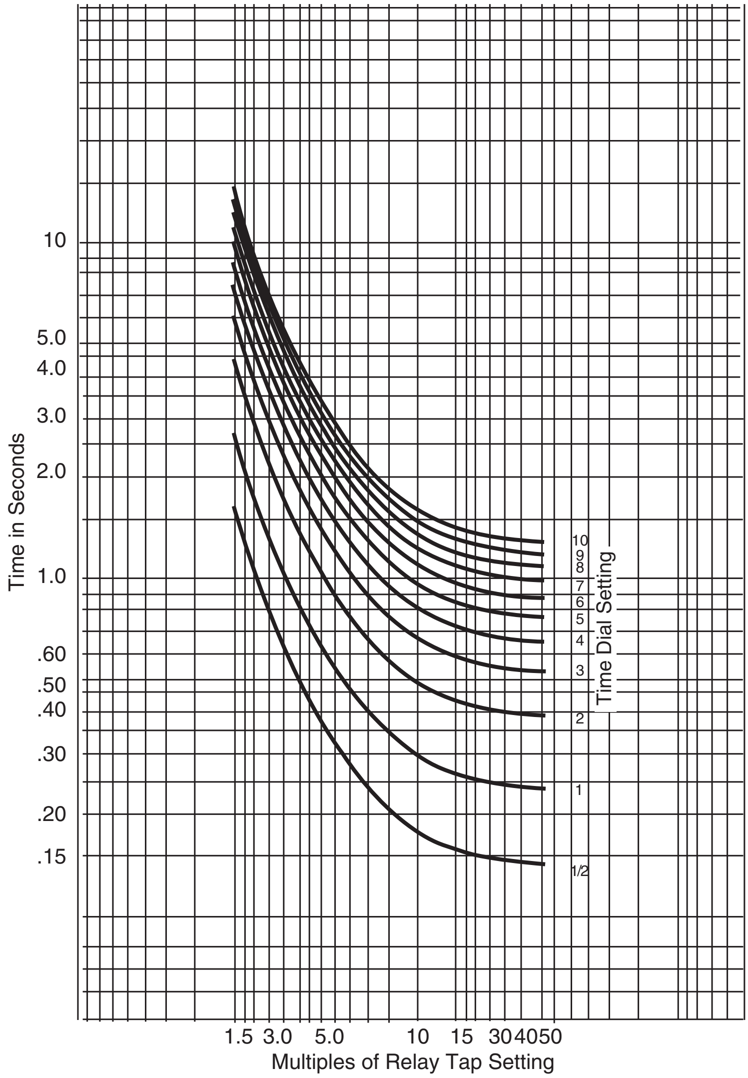


FIGURE 3.4 Family of TDOC time-current characteristics. (From Horowitz, S.H. and Phadke, A.G., *Power System Relaying,* 2nd ed., 1995. Research Studies Press, U.K. With permission.)

seconds depending on the relay type; the abscissa is in multiples of pickup to normalize the curve for all fault current values. Figure 3.5 shows how TDOC relays on a radial line coordinate with each other.

3.2.3 Instantaneous Overcurrent Relays

Figure 3.5 also shows why the TDOC relay cannot be used without additional help. The closer the fault is to the source, the greater the fault current magnitude, yet the longer the tripping time. The addition of an instantaneous overcurrent relay makes this system of protection viable. If an instantaneous relay can be set to "see" almost up to, but not including, the next bus, all of the fault clearing times can be lowered as shown in Fig. 3.6. In order to properly apply the instantaneous overcurrent relay, there must be a substantial reduction in short-circuit current as the fault moves from the relay toward the far end of the line. However, there still must be enough of a difference in the fault current between the near and far end

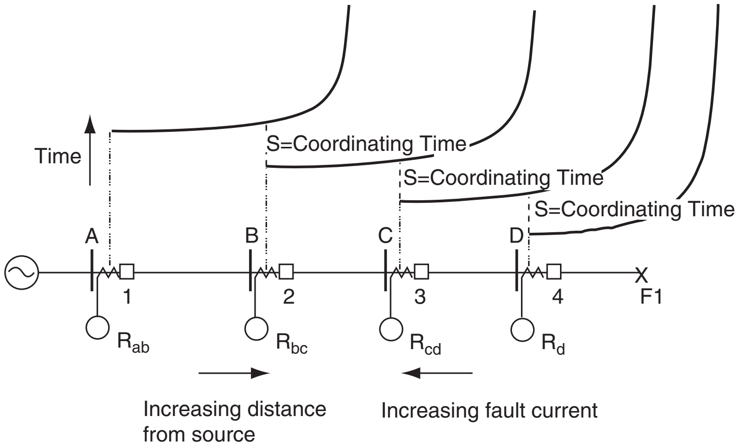


FIGURE 3.5 Coordination of TDOC relays. (From Horowitz, S.H. and Phadke, A.G., *Power System Relaying*, 2nd ed., 1995. Research Studies Press, U.K. With permission.)

faults to allow a setting for the near end faults. This will prevent the relay from operating for faults beyond the end of the line and still provide high-speed protection for an appreciable portion of the line.

Since the instantaneous relay must not see beyond its own line section, the values for which it must be set are very much higher than even emergency loads. It is common to set an instantaneous relay about 125–130% above the maximum value that the relay will see under normal operating situations and about 90% of the minimum value for which the relay should operate.

3.2.4 Directional Overcurrent Relays

Directional overcurrent relaying is necessary for multiple source circuits when it is essential to limit tripping for faults in only one direction. If the same magnitude of fault current could flow in either direction at the relay location, coordination cannot be achieved with the relays in front of, and, for the same fault, the relays behind the nondirectional relay, except in very unusual system configurations.

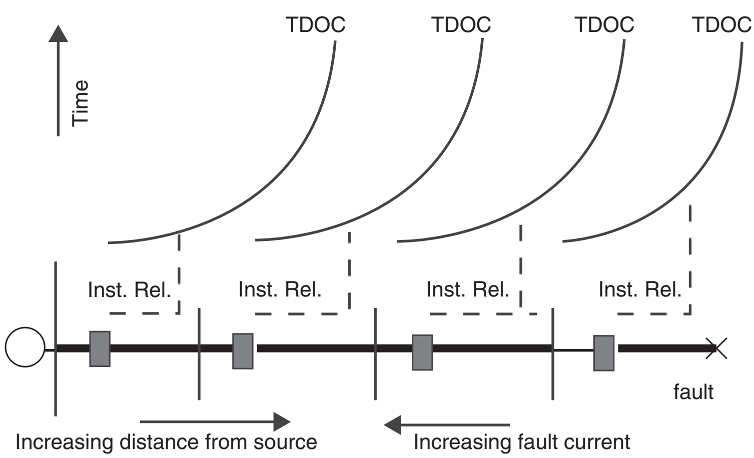


FIGURE 3.6 Effect of instantaneous relays. (From Horowitz, S.H. and Phadke, A.G., *Power System Relaying*, 2nd ed., 1995. Research Studies Press, U.K. With permission.)

Polarizing Quantities—To achieve directionality, relays require two inputs; the operating current and a reference, or polarizing, quantity that does not change with fault location. For phase relays, the polarizing quantity is almost always the system voltage at the relay location. For ground directional indication, the zero-sequence voltage ($3E_0$) can be used. The magnitude of $3E_0$ varies with the fault location and may not be adequate in some instances. An alternative and generally preferred method of obtaining a directional reference is to use the current in the neutral of a wye-grounded/delta power transformer.

3.3 Distance Relays

Distance relays respond to the voltage and current, i.e., the impedance, at the relay location. The impedance per mile is fairly constant so these relays respond to the distance between the relay location and the fault location. As the power systems become more complex and the fault current varies with changes in generation and system configuration, directional overcurrent relays become difficult to apply and to set for all contingencies, whereas the distance relay setting is constant for a wide variety of changes external to the protected line.

There are three general distance relay types as shown in Fig. 3.7. Each is distinguished by its application and its operating characteristic.

3.3.1 Impedance Relay

The impedance relay has a circular characteristic centered at the origin of the R-X diagram. It is nondirectional and is used primarily as a fault detector.

3.3.2 Admittance Relay

The admittance relay is the most commonly used distance relay. It is the tripping relay in pilot schemes and as the backup relay in step distance schemes. Its characteristic passes through the origin of the R-X diagram and is therefore directional. In the electromechanical design it is circular, and in the solid state design, it can be shaped to correspond to the transmission line impedance.

3.3.3 Reactance Relay

The reactance relay is a straight-line characteristic that responds only to the reactance of the protected line. It is nondirectional and is used to supplement the admittance relay as a tripping relay to make the

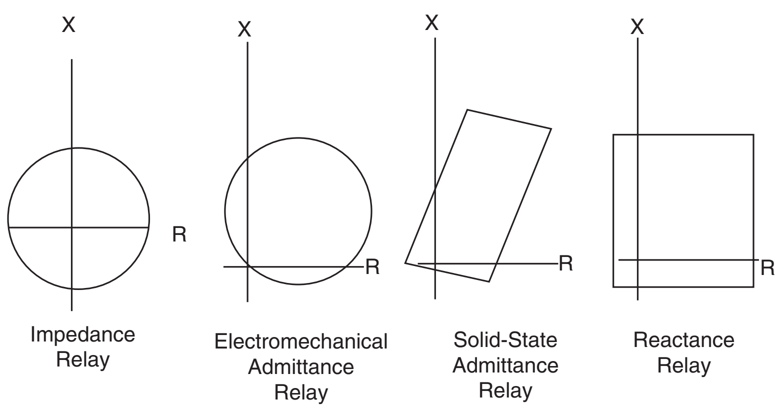


FIGURE 3.7 Distance relay characteristics. (From Horowitz, S.H. and Phadke, A.G., *Power System Relaying,* 2nd ed., 1995. Research Studies Press, U.K. With permission.)

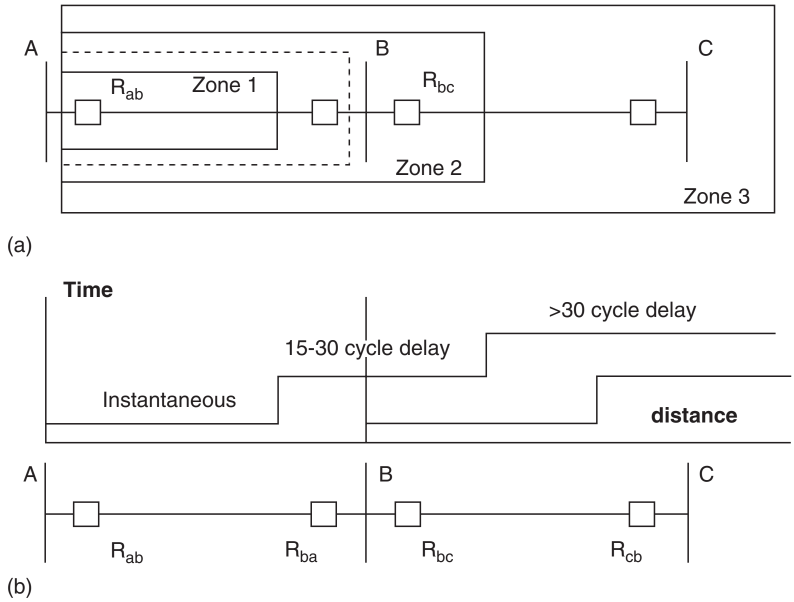


FIGURE 3.8 Three-zone step distance relaying to protect 100% of a line and backup the neighboring line. (From Horowitz, S.H. and Phadke, A.G., *Power System Relaying*, 2nd ed., 1995. Research Studies Press, U.K. With permission.)

overall protection independent of resistance. It is particularly useful on short lines where the fault arc resistance is the same order of magnitude as the line length.

Figure 3.8 shows a three-zone step distance relaying scheme that provides instantaneous protection over 80–90% of the protected line section (Zone 1) and time-delayed protection over the remainder of the line (Zone 2) plus backup protection over the adjacent line section. Zone 3 also provides backup protection for adjacent lines sections.

In a three-phase power system, 10 types of faults are possible: three single phase-to-ground, three phase-to-phase, three double phase-to-ground, and one three-phase fault. It is essential that the relays provided have the same setting regardless of the type of fault. This is possible if the relays are connected to respond to delta voltages and currents. The delta quantities are defined as the difference between any two phase quantities, for example, $E_a - E_b$ is the delta quantity between phases a and b. In general, for a multiphase fault between phases x and y,

$$\frac{Ex - Ey}{Ix - Iy} = Z_1 \tag{3.1}$$

where x and y can be a, b, or c and Z_1 is the positive sequence impedance between the relay location and the fault. For ground distance relays, the faulted phase voltage, and a compensated faulted phase current must be used.

$$\frac{Ex}{Ix + mI_0} = Z_1 \tag{3.2}$$

where m is a constant depending on the line impedances, and I_0 is the zero sequence current in the transmission line. A full complement of relays consists of three phase distance relays and three ground distance relays. This is the preferred protective scheme for high voltage and extra high voltage systems.

3.4 Pilot Protection

As can be seen from Fig. 3.8, step distance protection does not offer instantaneous clearing of faults over 100% of the line segment. In most cases this is unacceptable due to system stability considerations. To cover the 10–20% of the line not covered by Zone 1, the information regarding the location of the fault is transmitted from each terminal to the other terminal(s). A communication channel is used for this transmission. These pilot channels can be over power line carrier, microwave, fiberoptic, or wire pilot. Although the underlying principles are the same regardless of the pilot channel, there are specific design details that are imposed by this choice.

Power line carrier uses the protected line itself as the channel, superimposing a high frequency signal on top of the 60 Hz power frequency. Since the line being protected is also the medium used to actuate the protective devices, a blocking signal is used. This means that a trip will occur at both ends of the line unless a signal is received from the remote end.

Microwave or fiberoptic channels are independent of the transmission line being protected so a tripping signal can be used.

Wire pilot channels are limited by the impedance of the copper wire and are used at lower voltages where the distance between the terminals is not great, usually less than 10 miles.

3.4.1 Directional Comparison

The most common pilot relaying scheme in the U.S. is the directional comparison blocking scheme, using power line carrier. The fundamental principle upon which this scheme is based utilizes the fact that, at a given terminal, the direction of a fault either forward or backward is easily determined by a directional relay. By transmitting this information to the remote end, and by applying appropriate logic, both ends can determine whether a fault is within the protected line or external to it. Since the power line itself is used as the communication medium, a blocking signal is used.

3.4.2 Transfer Tripping

If the communication channel is independent of the power line, a tripping scheme is a viable protection scheme. Using the same directional relay logic to determine the location of a fault, a tripping signal is sent to the remote end. To increase security, there are several variations possible. A direct tripping signal can be sent, or additional underreaching or overreaching directional relays can be used to supervise the tripping function and increase security. An underreaching relay sees less than 100% of the protected line, i.e., Zone 1. An overreaching relay sees beyond the protected line such as Zone 2 or 3.

3.4.3 Phase Comparison

Phase comparison is a differential scheme that compares the phase angle between the currents at the ends of the line. If the currents are essentially in phase, there is no fault in the protected section. If these currents are essentially 180° out of phase, there is a fault within the line section. Any communication link can be used.

3.4.4 Pilot Wire

Pilot wire relaying is a form of differential line protection similar to phase comparison, except that the phase currents are compared over a pair of metallic wires. The pilot channel is often a rented circuit from the local telephone company. However, as the telephone companies are replacing their wired facilities with microwave or fiberoptics, this protection must be closely monitored.

3.5 Relay Designs

3.5.1 Electromechanical Relays

Early relay designs utilized actuating forces that were produced by electromagnetic interaction between currents and fluxes, much as in a motor. These forces were created by a combination of input signals, stored energy in springs, and dash pots. The plunger type relays are usually driven by a single actuating quantity while an induction type relay may be activated by a single or multiple inputs (see Figs. 3.9 and 3.10.). Although existing protection is provided primarily by electromechanical relays that is because the cost and complexity of replacing them may be prohibitive; nevertheless, new construction and major system or station revisions are witnessing the replacing of electromechanical relays with solid-state or digital relays.

3.5.2 Solid-State Relays

The expansion and growing complexity of modern power systems have brought a need for protective relays with a higher level of performance and more sophisticated characteristics. This has been made possible by the development of semiconductors and other associated components, which can be utilized in many designs, generally referred to as solid-state or static relays. All of the functions and characteristics available with electromechanical relays are available with solid-state relays. They use low-power components but have limited capability to tolerate extremes of temperature, humidity, overvoltage, or overcurrent. Their settings are more repeatable and hold to closer tolerances and their characteristics can be shaped by adjusting the logic elements as opposed to the fixed characteristics of electromechanical relays. This can be a distinct advantage in difficult relaying situations. Solid-state relays are designed, assembled, and tested as a system that puts the overall responsibility for proper operation of the relays on the manufacturer. Figure 3.11 shows a solid-state instantaneous overcurrent relay.

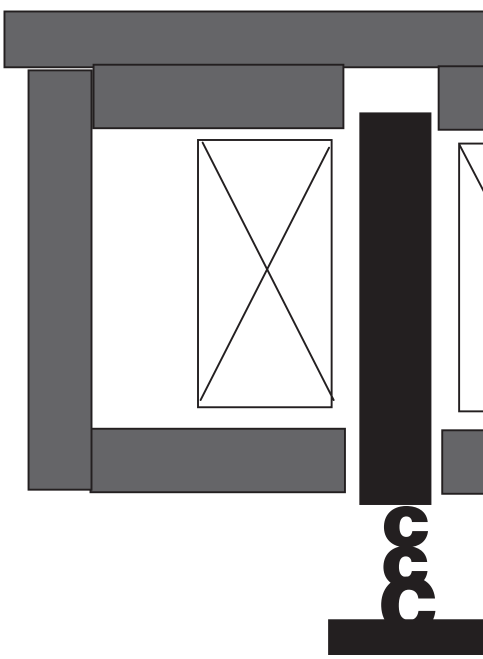


FIGURE 3.9 Plunger type relay.

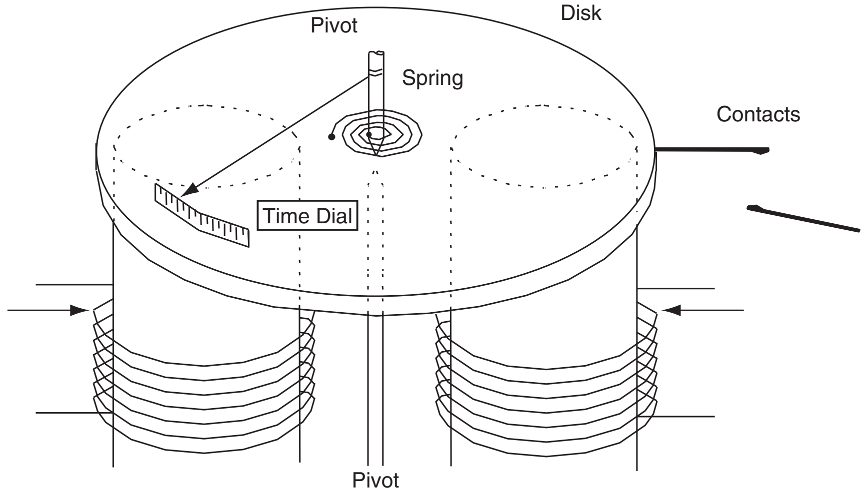


FIGURE 3.10 Principle of construction of an induction disk relay. Shaded poles and damping magnets are omitted for clarity.

3.5.3 Computer Relays

It has been noted that a relay is basically an analog computer. It accepts inputs, processes them electromechanically or electronically to develop a torque or a logic output, and makes a decision resulting in a contact closure or output signal. With the advent of rugged, high-performance microprocessors, it is obvious that a digital computer can perform the same function. Since the usual relay inputs consist of power system voltages and currents, it is necessary to obtain a digital representation of these parameters. This is done by sampling the analog signals, and using an appropriate algorithm to create suitable digital representations of the signals. The functional blocks in Fig. 3.12 represent a possible configuration for a digital relay.

In the early stages of their development, computer relays were designed to replace existing protection functions, such as transmission line and transformer or bus protection. Some relays used microprocessors to make the relay decision from digitized analog signals; others continue to use analog functions to make the relaying decisions and digital techniques for the necessary logic and auxiliary functions. In all cases, however, a major advantage of the digital relay was its ability to diagnose itself; a capability that could only be obtained, if at all, with great effort, cost, and complexity. In addition, the digital relay provides a communication capability to warn system operators when it is not functioning properly, permitting remote diagnostics and possible correction.

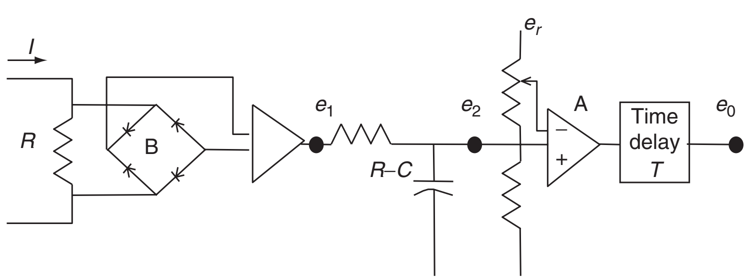


FIGURE 3.11 A possible circuit configuration for a solid-state instantaneous overcurrent delay.

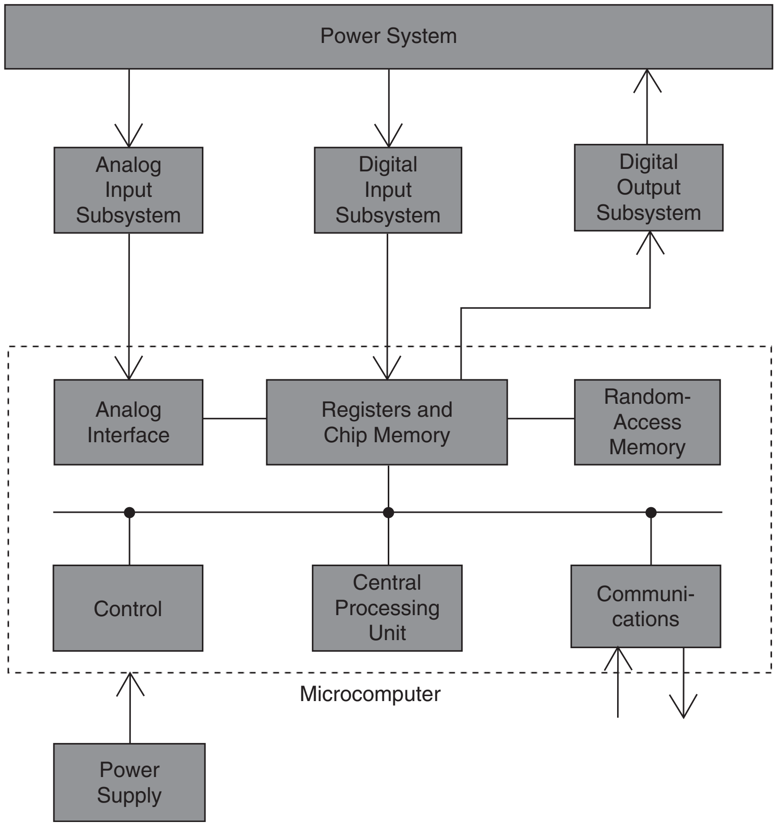


FIGURE 3.12 Major subsystem of a computer relay.

As digital relay investigations continued another dimension was added. The ability to adapt itself, in real time, to changing system conditions is an inherent, and important, feature in the software-dominated relay. This adaptive feature is rapidly becoming a vital aspect of future system reliability.

4

System Protection

Miroslav Begovic
Georgia Institute of Technology

4.1 Introduction

While most of the protective system designs are made around individual components, system-wide disturbances in power systems are becoming a frequent and challenging problem for the electric utilities. The occurrence of major disturbances in power systems requires coordinated protection and control actions to stop the system degradation, restore the normal state, and minimize the impact of the disturbance. Local protection systems are often not capable of protecting the overall system, which may be affected by the disturbance. Among the phenomena, which create the power system, disturbances are various types of system instability, overloads, and power system cascading [1–5].

The power system planning has to account for tight operating margins, with less redundancy, because of new constraints placed by restructuring of the entire industry. The advanced measurement and communication technology in wide area monitoring and control are expected to provide new, faster, and better ways to detect and control an emergency [6].

4.2 Disturbances: Causes and Remedial Measures [7]

Phenomena that create power system disturbances are divided, among others, into the following categories: transient instabilities, voltage instabilities, overloads, power system cascading, etc. They are mitigated using a variety of protective relaying and emergency control measures.

Out-of-step protection has the objective to eliminate the possibility of damage to generators as a result of an out-of-step condition. In case the power system separation is imminent, it should separate the system along the boundaries, which will form islands with balanced load and generation. Distance relays are often used to provide an out-of-step protection function, whereby they are called upon to provide blocking or tripping signals upon detecting an out-of-step condition.

The most common predictive scheme to combat loss of synchronism is the equal-area criterion and its variations. This method assumes that the power system behaves like an equivalent two-machine model where one area oscillates against the rest of the system. Whenever the underlying assumption holds true, the method has potential for fast detection.

Voltage instabilities in power systems arise from heavy loading, inadequate reactive support resources, unforeseen contingencies and/or mis-coordinated action of the tap-changing transformers. Such incidents can lead to system-wide blackouts (which have occurred in the past and have been documented in many power systems world-wide).

The risk of voltage instability increases as the transmission system becomes more heavily loaded. The typical scenario of these instabilities starts with a high system loading, followed by a relay action due to a fault, a line overload, or operation beyond an excitation limit.

Overload of one, or a few power system elements may lead to a cascading overload of many more elements, mostly transmission lines, and ultimately, it may lead to a complete power system blackout.

A quick, simple, and reliable way to reestablish active power balance is to shed load by underfrequency relays. There are a large variety of practices in designing load shedding schemes based on the characteristics of a particular system and the utility practices.

While the system frequency is a consequence of the power deficiency, the rate of change of frequency is an instantaneous indicator of power deficiency and can enable incipient recognition of the power imbalance. However, change of the machine speed is oscillatory by nature, due to the interaction among the generators. These oscillations depend on location of the sensors in the island and the response of the generators. A system having smaller inertia causes a larger peak-to-peak value for oscillations, requiring enough time for the relay to calculate the actual rate of change of frequency reliably. Measurements at load buses close to the electrical center of the system are less susceptible to oscillations (smaller peak-to-peak values) and can be used in practical applications. A system having smaller inertia causes a higher frequency of oscillations, which enables faster calculation of the actual rate of change of frequency. However, it causes faster rate of change of frequency and consequently, a larger frequency drop. Adaptive settings of frequency and frequency derivative relays may enable implementation of a frequency derivative function more effectively and reliably.

4.3 Transient Stability and Out-of-Step Protection

Every time when a fault or a topological change affects the power balance in the system, the instantaneous power imbalance creates oscillations between the machines. Stable oscillations lead to transition from one (prefault) to another (postfault) equilibrium point, whereas unstable ones allow machines to oscillate beyond the acceptable range. If the oscillations are large, then the stations' auxiliary supplies may undergo severe voltage fluctuations, and eventually trip [1]. Should that happen, the subsequent resynchronization of the machines might take a long time. It is, therefore, desirable to trip the machine exposed to transient unstable oscillations while preserving the plant auxiliaries energized.

The frequency of the transient oscillations is usually between 0.5 and 2 Hz. Since the fault imposes almost instantaneous changes on the system, the slow speed of the transient disturbances can be used to distinguish between the two. For the sake of illustration, let us assume that a power system consists of two machines, A and B, connected by a transmission line. Figure 4.1 represents the trajectories of the stable and unstable swings between the machines, as well as a characteristic of the mho relay covering the line between them, shown in the impedance plane. The stable swing moves from the distant stable operating point toward the trip zone of the relay, and may even encroach it, then leave again. The unstable trajectory may pass through the entire trip zone of the relay. The relaying tasks are to detect, and then trip (or block) the relay, depending on the situation. Detection is accomplished by out-of-step relays, which have multiple characteristics. When the trajectory of the impedance seen by the relays enters the outer zone (a circle with a larger radius), the timer is activated, and depending on the speed at which the impedance trajectory moves into the inner zone (a circle with a smaller radius), or leaves the outer zone, a tripping (or blocking) decision can be made. The relay characteristic may be chosen to be straight lines, known as "blinders," which prevent the heavy load to be misrepresented as a fault, or

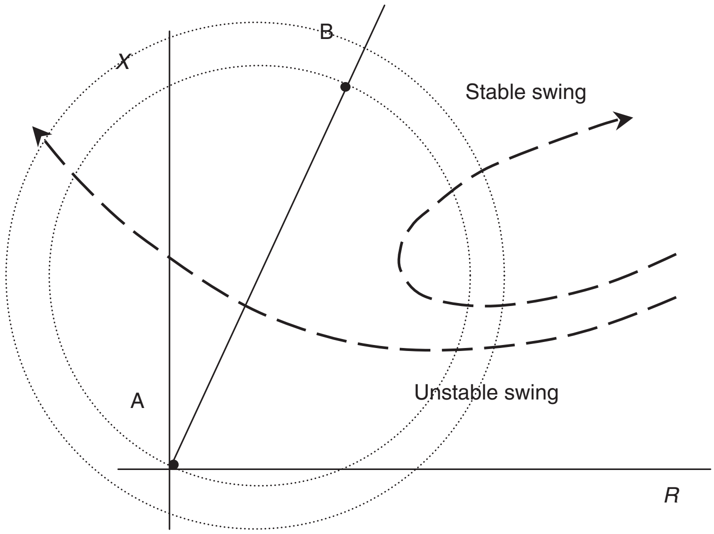


FIGURE 4.1 Trajectories of stable and unstable swings in the impedance plane.

instability. Another information that can be used in detection of transient swings is that they are symmetrical, and do not create any zero, or negative sequence currents.

In the case when power system separation is imminent, out-of-step protection should take place along boundaries, which will form islands with matching load and generation. Distance relays are often used to provide an out-of-step protection function, whereby they are called upon to provide blocking or tripping signals upon detecting an out-of-step condition. The most common predictive scheme to combat loss of synchronism is the equal-area criterion and its variations. This method assumes that the power system behaves like a two-machine model where one area oscillates against the rest of the system. Whenever the underlying assumption holds true, the method has potential for fast detection.

4.4 Overload and Underfrequency Load Shedding

Outage of one or more power system components due to the overload may result in overload of other elements in the system. If the overload is not alleviated in time, the process of power system cascading may start, leading to power system separation. When a power system separates, islands with an imbalance between generation and load are formed. One consequence of the imbalance is deviation of frequency from the nominal value. If the generators cannot handle the imbalance, load or generation shedding is necessary. A special protection system or out-of-step relaying can also start the separation.

A quick, simple, and reliable way to reestablish active power balance is to shed load by underfrequency relays. The load shedding is often designed as a multistep action, and the frequency settings and blocks of load to be shed are carefully selected to maximize the reliability and dependability of the action. There are a large variety of practices in designing load shedding schemes based on the characteristics of a particular system and the utility practices. While the system frequency is a final result of the power deficiency, the rate of change of frequency is an instantaneous indicator of power deficiency and can enable incipient recognition of the power imbalance. However, change of the machine speed is oscillatory by nature, due to the interaction among generators. These oscillations depend on location of the sensors in the island and the response of the generators. The problems regarding the rate of change of frequency function are:

- Systems having small inertia may cause larger oscillations. Thus, enough time must be allowed for the relay to calculate the actual rate of change of frequency reliably. Measurements at load buses close to the electrical center of the system are less susceptible to oscillations (smaller peak-to-peak values) and can be used in practical applications. Smaller system inertia causes a higher frequency of oscillations, which enables faster calculation of the actual rate of change of frequency. However, it causes a faster rate of change of frequency and consequently, a larger frequency drop.

- Even if rate of change of frequency relays measure the average value throughout the network, it is difficult to set them properly, unless typical system boundaries and imbalance can be predicted. If this is the case (e.g., industrial and urban systems), the rate of change of frequency relays may improve a load shedding scheme (scheme can be more selective and/or faster).

4.5 Voltage Stability and Undervoltage Load Shedding

Voltage stability is defined by the "System Dynamic Performance Subcommittee of the IEEE Power System Engineering Committee" as being the ability of a system to maintain voltage such that when load admittance is increased, load power will increase, so that both power and voltage are controllable. Also, voltage collapse is defined as being the process by which voltage instability leads to a very low voltage profile in a significant part of the system. It is accepted that this instability is caused by the load characteristics, as opposed to the angular instability, which is caused by the rotor dynamics of generators.

Voltage stability problems are manifested by several distinguishing features: low system voltage profiles, heavy reactive line flows, inadequate reactive support, and heavily loaded power systems. The voltage collapse typically occurs abruptly, after a symptomatic period that may last in the time frames of a few seconds to several minutes, sometimes hours. The onset of voltage collapse is often precipitated by low-probability single or multiple contingencies. The consequences of collapse often require long system restoration, while large groups of customers are left without supply for extended periods of time. Schemes which mitigate against collapse need to use the symptoms to diagnose the approach of the collapse in time to initiate corrective action.

Analysis of voltage collapse models can be divided into two main categories, static or dynamic:

- Fast: disturbances of the system structure, which may involve equipment outages, or faults followed by equipment outages. These disturbances may be similar to those which are consistent with transient stability symptoms, and sometimes the distinction is hard to make, but the mitigation tools for both types are essentially similar, making it less important to distinguish between them.
- Slow: load disturbances, such as fluctuations of the system load. Slow load fluctuations may be treated as inherently static. They cause the stable equilibrium of the system to move slowly, which makes it possible to approximate voltage profile changes by a discrete sequence of steady states rather than a dynamic model.

Figure 4.2 shows a symbolic depiction of the process of coalescing of the stable and unstable power system equlibria (saddle node bifurcation) through slow load variations, which leads to a voltage collapse (a precipitous departure of the system state along the center manifold at the moment of coalescing). VPQ curve (see Fig. 4.2) represents the trajectory of the load voltage V of a two-bus system model when active (P) and reactive (Q) powers of the load can change arbitrarily.

Figure 4.2 represents a trajectory of the load voltage V when active (P) and reactive (Q) powers change independently. It also shows the active and reactive power margins as projections of the distances. The voltage stability boundary is represented by a projection onto the PQ plane (a bold curve). It can be observed that: (a) there may be many possible trajectories to (and points of) voltage collapse; (b) active and reactive power margins depend on the initial operating point and the trajectory to collapse.

There have been numerous attempts to use the observations and find accurate voltage collapse proximity indicators. They are usually based on measurement of the state of a given system under stress and derivation of certain parameters which indicate the stability or proximity to instability of that system.

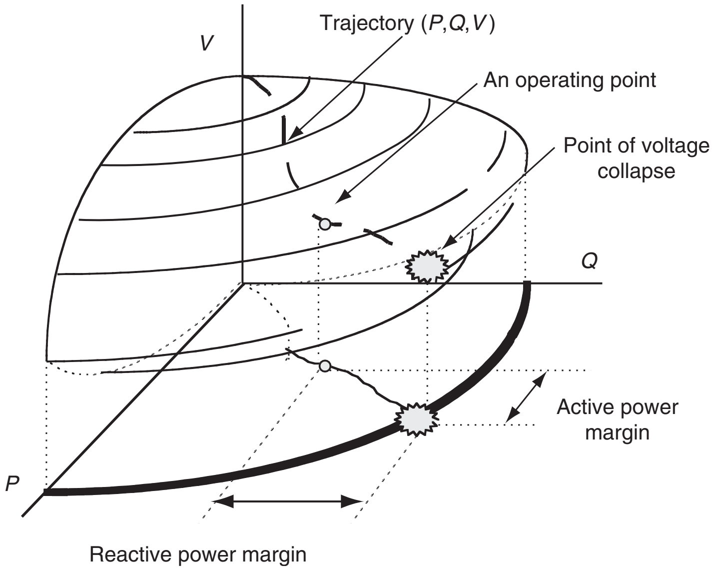


FIGURE 4.2 Relationship between voltages, active and reactive powers of the load and voltage collapse.

Parameters based on measurement of system condition are useful for planning and operating purposes to avoid the situation where a collapse might occur. However, it is difficult to calculate the system condition and derive the parameters in real time. Rapid derivation and analysis of these parameters are important to initiate automatic corrective actions fast enough to avoid collapse under emergency conditions, which arise due to topological changes or very fast load changes.

It is preferable if a few critical parameters that can be directly measured could be used in real time to quickly indicate proximity to collapse. An example of such indicator is the sensitivity of the generated reactive powers with respect to the load parameters (active and reactive powers of the loads). When the system is close to a collapse, small increases in load result in relatively large increases in reactive power absorption in the system. These increases in reactive power absorption must be supplied by dynamic sources of reactive power in the region. At the point of collapse, the rate of change of generated reactive power at key sources with respect to load increases at key busses tends to infinity.

The sensitivity matrix of the generated reactive powers with respect to loading parameters is relatively easy to calculate in off-line studies, but could be a problem in real-time applications, because of the need for system-wide measurement information. Large sensitivity factors reveal both critical generators (those required to supply most of the newly needed reactive power) and critical loads (those whose location in the system topology imposes the largest increase in reactive transmission losses, even for the modest changes of their own load parameters). The norm of such a sensitivity matrix represents a useful proximity indicator, but one that is still relatively difficult to interpret. It is not the generated reactive power, but its derivatives with respect to loading parameters which become infinite at the point of imminent collapse.

Voltage instability can be alleviated by a combination of the following remedial measures: adding reactive compensation near load centers, strengthening the transmission lines, varying the operating conditions such as voltage profile and generation dispatch, coordinating relays and controls, and load shedding. Most utilities rely on planning and operation studies to guard against voltage instability. Many utilities utilize localized voltage measurements in order to achieve load shedding as a measure against incipient voltage instability. The efficiency of the load shedding depends on the selected voltage thresholds, locations of pilot points in which the voltages are monitored, locations and sizes of the blocks of load to be shed, as well as the operating conditions, which may activate the shedding. The wide variety of conditions that may lead to voltage instability suggests that the most accurate decisions should imply the adaptive relay settings, but such applications are still in the stage of early development.

4.6 Special Protection Schemes

Increasingly popular over the past several years are the so-called special protection systems, sometimes also referred to as remedial action schemes [8,9]. Depending on the power system in question, it is sometimes possible to identify the contingencies, or combinations of operating conditions, which may lead to transients with extremely disastrous consequences [10]. Such problems include, but are not limited to, transmission line faults, the outages of lines and possible cascading that such an initial contingency may cause, outages of the generators, rapid changes of the load level, problems with high voltage DC (HVDC) transmission or flexible AC transmission systems (FACTS) equipment, or any combination of those events.

Among the many varieties of special protection schemes (SPS), several names have been used to describe the general category [2]: special stability controls, dynamic security controls, contingency arming schemes, remedial action schemes, adaptive protection schemes, corrective action schemes, security enhancement schemes, etc. In the strict sense of protective relaying, we do not consider any control schemes to be SPS, but only those protective relaying systems, which possess the following properties [9]:

- SPS can be operational (armed), or out of service (disarmed), in conjunction with the system conditions.
- SPS are responding to very low-probability events; hence they are active rarely more than once a year.
- SPS operate on simple, predetermined control laws, often calculated based on extensive off-line studies.
- Often times, SPS involve communication of remotely acquired measurement data (supervisory control and data acquisition [SCADA]) from more than one location in order to make a decision and invoke a control law.

The SPS design procedure is based on the following [2]:

- *Identification of critical conditions*: On the grounds of extensive off-line steady state studies on the system under consideration, a variety of operating conditions and contingencies are identified as potentially dangerous, and those among them which are deemed the most harmful are recognized as the critical conditions. The issue of their continuous monitoring, detection, and mitigation is resolved through off-line studies.
- *Recognition triggers*: Those are the measurable signals that can be used for detection of critical conditions. Often times, such detection is accomplished through a complicated heuristic logical reasoning, using the logic circuits to accomplish the task: "If event A and event B occur together, or event C occurs, then ..." inputs for the decision making logic are called recognition triggers, and can be status of various relays in the system, sometimes combined with a number of (SCADA) measurements.
- *Operator control*: In spite of extensive simulations and studies done in the process of SPS design, it is often necessary to include the human intervention, i.e., to include human interaction in the feedback loop. This is necessary because SPS are not needed all the time, and the decision to arm or disarm them remains in the hands of an operator.

Among the SPS reported in the literature [8,9], the following schemes are represented:

- Generator rejection
- Load rejection
- Underfrequency load shedding
- System separation
- Turbine valve control
- Stabilizers
- HVDC controls

- Out-of-step relaying
- Dynamic braking
- Generator runback
- VAR compensation
- Combination of schemes

Some of them have already been described in the above text. A general trend continues toward more complex schemes, capable of outperforming the present solutions, and taking advantage of the most recent technological developments, and advances in systems analysis. Some of the trends are described in the following text [6].

4.7 Modern Perspective: Technology Infrastructure

4.7.1 Phasor Measurement Technology [7]

The technology of synchronized phasor measurements is well established, and is rapidly gaining acceptance as a platform for monitoring systems. It provides an ideal measurement system with which to monitor and control a power system, in particular during stressed conditions. The essential feature of the technique is that it measures positive sequence voltages and currents of a power system in real time with precise time synchronization. This allows accurate comparison of measurements over widely separated locations as well as potential real-time measurement based control actions. Very fast recursive discrete fourier transform (DFT) calculations are normally used in phasor calculations.

The synchronization is achieved through a global positioning satellite (GPS) system. GPS is a U.S. Government sponsored program that provides world-wide position and time broadcasts free of charge. It can provide continuous precise timing at better than the 1 μs level. It is possible to use other synchronization signals, if these become available in the future, provided that a sufficient accuracy of synchronization could be maintained. Local, proprietary systems can be used such as a sync signal broadcast over microwave or fiber optics. Two other precise positioning systems, global navigation satellite system (GLONASS), a Russian system, and Galileo, a proposed European system, are also capable of providing precise time. The GPS transmission is obtained by the receiver, which delivers a phase-locked sampling clock pulse to the analog-to-digital converter system. The sampled data are converted to a complex number which represents the time-tagged phasor of the sampled waveform. Phasors of all three phases are combined to produce the positive sequence measurement.

Any computer-based relay which uses sampled data is capable of developing the positive sequence measurement. By using an externally derived synchronizing pulse, such as from a GPS receiver, the measurement could be placed on a common time reference. Thus, potentially all computer-based relays could furnish the synchronized phasor measurement. When currents are measured in this fashion, it is important to have a high enough resolution in the analog-to-digital converter to achieve sufficient accuracy of representation at light loads. A 16 bit A/D converter generally provides adequate resolution to read light load currents, as well as fault currents.

For the most effective use of phasor measurements, some kind of a data concentrator is required. The simplest is a system that will retrieve files recorded at the measurement site and then correlate files from different sites by the recording time stamps. This allows doing system and event analysis utilizing the precision of phasor measurement. For real-time applications, continuous data acquisition is required. Phasor concentrator inputs phasor measurement data broadcast from a large number of PMUs, and performs data checks, records disturbances, and rebroadcasts the combined data stream to other monitor and control applications. This type of unit fulfills the need for both hard and soft real-time applications as well as saving data for system analysis. Tests performed using this phasor monitoring unit–phasor data concentrator (PMU–PDC) technology have shown the time intervals from measurement to data availability at a central controller can be as fast as 60 ms for a direct link and 200 ms for secondary links. These times meet the requirements for many types of wide area controls.

A broader effort is the wide area measurement system (WAMS) concept. It includes all types of measurements that can be useful for system analysis over the wide area of an interconnected system. Real-time performance is not required for this type of application, but is no disadvantage. The main elements are time tags with enough precision to unambiguously correlate data from multiple sources and the ability to all data to a common format. Accuracy and timely access to data are important as well. Certainly with its system-wide scope and precise time tags, phasor measurements are a prime candidate for WAMS.

4.7.2 Communication Technology [7]

Communications systems are a vital component of a wide area relay system. These systems distribute and manage the information needed for operation of the wide area relay and control system. However, because of potential loss of communication, the relay system must be designed to detect and tolerate failures in the communication system. It is important also that the relay and communication systems be independent and subject as little as possible to the same failure modes. This has been a serious source of problems in the past.

To meet these difficult requirements, the communications network needs to be designed for fast, robust, and reliable operation. Among the most important factors to consider in achieving these objectives are type and topology of the communications network, communications protocols, and media used. These factors will in turn effect communication system bandwidth, usually expressed in bits per second (BPS), latency in data transmission, reliability, and communication error handling.

Presently, electrical utilities use a combination of analog and digital communications systems for their operations consisting of power line carrier, radio, microwave, leased phone lines, satellite systems, and fiber optics. Each of these systems has applications, where it is the best solution. The advantages and disadvantages of each are briefly summarized in the following paragraph.

Power line carrier is generally rather inexpensive, but has limited distance of coverage and low bandwidth. It is best suited to station-to-station protection and communications to small stations that are hard to access otherwise. Company owned microwave is cost effective and reliable but requires substantial maintenance. It is good for general communications for all types of applications. Radio tends to be narrower band but is good for mobile applications or locations hard to access otherwise. Satellite systems likewise are effective for reaching hard to access locations, but not good where the long delay is a problem. They also tend to be expensive. Leased phone lines are very effective where a one solid link is needed at a site served by a standard carrier. They tend to be expensive in the long-term, so are usually not the best solution where many channels area required. Fiber optic systems are the newest option. They are expensive to install and provision, but are expected to be very cost effective. They have the advantage of using existing right-of-way and delivering communications directly between points of use. In addition they have the very high bandwidth needed for modern data communications.

Several types of communication protocols are used with optical systems. Two of the most common are synchronous optical networks (Sonet/SDH) and asynchronous transfer mode (ATM). Wideband Ethernet is also gaining popularity, but is not often used for backbone systems. Sonet systems are channel oriented, where each channel has a time slot whether it is needed or not. If there is no data for a particular channel at a particular time, the system just stuffs in a null packet. ATM by contrast puts data on the system as it arrives in private packets. Channels are reconstructed from packets as they come through. It is more efficient as there are no null packets sent, but has the overhead of prioritizing and sorting the packets. Each system has different system management options for coping with problems.

Synchronous optical networks are well established in electrical utilities throughout the world and are available under two similar standards: (a) Sonet (synchronous optical networks) is the American System under ANSI T1.105 and Bellcore GR standards; (b) synchronous digital hierarchy (SDH) under the international telecommunications union (ITU) standards.

Sonet and SDH networks are based on a ring topology. This topology is a bidirectional ring with each node capable of sending data in either direction; data can travel in either direction around the ring to connect any two nodes. If the ring is broken at any point, the nodes detect where the break is relative to the other nodes and automatically reverse transmission direction if necessary. A typical network, however, may consist of a mix of tree, ring, and mesh topologies rather than strictly rings with only the main backbone being rings.

Self-healing (or survivability) capability is a distinctive feature of Sonet/SDH networks made possible because it is a ring topology. This means that if communication between two nodes is lost, the traffic among them switches over to the protected path of the ring. This switching to the protected path is made as fast as 4 ms, perfectly acceptable to any wide area protection and control.

Communication protocols are an intrinsic part of modern digital communications. Most popular protocols found in the electrical utility environment and suitable for wide area relaying and control are the distributed network protocol (DNP), Modbus, IEC870-5, and utility communication architecture/ manufacturing message specifications (UCA/MMS). Transmission control protocol/Internet protocol (TCP/IP), probably the most extensively used protocol and will undoubtedly find applications in wide area relaying.

Utility communication architecture/manufacturing message specifications (UCA/MMS) protocol is the result of an effort between utilities and vendors (coordinated by Electric Power Research Institute). It addresses all communication needs of an electric utility. Of particular interest is its "peer to peer" communications capability that allows any node to exchange real-time control signals with any other node in a wide area network. DNP and Modbus are also real-time type protocols suitable for relay applications. TCP on Ethernet lacks a real-time type requirement, but over a system with low traffic performs as well as the other protocols. Other slower speed protocols like Inter Control Center Protocol (ICCP) (America) or TASEII (Europe) handle higher level but slower applications like SCADA. Many other protocols are available but are not commonly used in the utility industry.

4.8 Future Improvements in Control and Protection

Existing protection/control systems may be improved and new protection/control systems may be developed to better adapt to prevailing system conditions during system-wide disturbance. While improvements in the existing systems are mostly achieved through advancement in local measurements and development of better algorithms, improvements in new systems are based on remote communications. However, even if communication links exist, conventional systems that utilize only local information may still need improvement since they are supposed to serve as fall back positions. The increased functions and communication ability in today's SCADA systems provide the opportunity for an intelligent and adaptive control, and protection system for system-wide disturbance. This in turn can make possible full utilization of the network, which will be less vulnerable to a major disturbance.

Out-of-step relays have to be fast and reliable. The present technology of out-of-step tripping or blocking distance relays is not capable of fully dealing with the control and protection requirements of power systems. Central to the development effort of an out-of-step protection system is the investigation of the multiarea out-of-step situation. The new generation of out-of-step relays has to utilize more measurements, both local and remote, and has to produce more outputs. The structure of the overall relaying system has to be distributed and coordinated through a central control. In order for the relaying system to manage complexity, most of the decisions have to be taken locally. The relay system is preferred to be adaptive, in order to cope with system changes. To deal with out-of-step prediction, it is necessary to start with a system-wide approach, find out what sets of information are crucial, how to process information with acceptable speed and accuracy.

The protection against voltage instability should also be addressed as a part of hierarchical structure. The sound approach for designing the new generation of voltage instability protection is to first design a voltage instability relay with only local signals. The limitations of local signals should be identified in order to be in a position to select appropriate communicated signals. However, a minimum set of communicated signals should always be known in order to design a reliable protection, and it requires the following: (a) determining the algorithm for gradual reduction of the number of necessary measurement sites with minimum loss of information necessary for voltage stability monitoring, analysis, and control; (b) development of methods (i.e., sensitivity analysis), which should operate *concurrent* with any existing local protection techniques, and possessing superior performance, both in terms of security and dependability.

Acknowledgment

Portion of the material presented in this chapter was obtained from the IEEE Special Publication [7], which the author chaired. The author would like to acknowledge the Working Group members for their contribution to the report [7]: Alex Apostolov, Ernest Baumgartner, Bob Beckwith, Miroslav Begovic (Chairman), Stuart Borlase, Hans Candia, Peter Crossley, Jaime De La Ree Lopez, Tom Domin, Olivier Faucon, Adly Girgis, Fred Griffin, Charlie Henville, Stan Horowitz, Mohamed Ibrahim, Daniel Karlsson, Mladen Kezunovic, Ken Martin, Gary Michel, Jay Murphy, Damir Novosel, Tony Seegers, Peter Solanics, James Thorp, Demetrios Tziouvaras.

References

1. Horowitz, S.H. and Phadke, A.G., *Power System Relaying*, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York, 1992.
2. Elmore, W.A., ed., *Protective Relaying Theory and Applications*, ABB and Marcel Dekker, New York, 1994.
3. Blackburn, L., *Protective Relaying*, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1987.
4. Phadke, A.G. and Thorp, J.S., *Computer Relaying for Power Systems*, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1988.
5. Anderson, P.M., *Power System Protection*, McGraw Hill and IEEE Press, New York, 1999.
6. Begovic, M., Novosel, D., and Milisavljevic, M., Trends in power system protection and control, *Proceedings 1999 HICSS Conference*, Maui, Hawaii, January 4–7, 1999.
7. Begovic, M. and Working Group C-6 of the IEEE Power System Relaying Committee, Wide area protection and emergency control, *Special Publication of IEEE Power Engineering Society* at a IEEE Power System Relaying Committee, May 2002. Published electronically at *http://www.pespsrc.org/*
8. Anderson, P.M. and LeReverend, B.K., Industry experience with special protection schemes, IEEE/CIGRE Committee Report, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems, PWRS*, 11, 1166–1179, August 1996.
9. McCalley, J. and Fu, W., Reliability of special protection schemes, *IEEE Power Engineering Society paper* PE-123-PWRS-0-10-1998.
10. Tamronglak, S., Horowitz, S., Phadke, A., and Thorp, J., Anatomy of power system blackouts: Preventive relaying strategies, *IEEE Transactions on Power Delivery, PWRD*, 11, 708–715, April 1996.

5

Digital Relaying

James S. Thorp
Virginia Polytechnic Institute

Digital relaying had its origins in the late 1960s and early 1970s with pioneering papers by Rockefeller (1969), Mann and Morrison (1971), and Poncelet (1972) and an early field experiment (Gilcrest et al., 1972; Rockefeller and Udren, 1972). Because of the cost of the computers in those times, a single high-cost minicomputer was proposed by Rockefeller (1969) to perform multiple relaying calculations in the substation. In addition to having high cost and high power requirements, early minicomputer systems were slow in comparison with modern systems and could only perform simple calculations. The well-founded belief that computers would get smaller, faster, and cheaper combined with expectations of benefits of computer relaying kept the field moving. The third IEEE tutorial on microprocessor protection (Sachdev, 1997) lists more then 1100 publications in the area since 1970. Nearly two thirds of the papers are devoted to developing and comparing algorithms. It is not clear this trend should continue. Issues beyond algorithms should receive more attention in the future.

The expected benefits of microprocessor protection have largely been realized. The ability of a digital relay to perform self-monitoring and checking is a clear advantage over the previous technology. Many relays are called upon to function only a few cycles in a year. A large percentage of major disturbances can be traced to "hidden failures" in relays that were undetected until the relay was exposed to certain system conditions (Tamronglak et al., 1996). The ability of a digital relay to detect a failure within itself and remove itself from service before an incorrect operation occurs is one of the most important advantages of digital protection.

The microprocessor revolution has created a situation in which digital relays are the relays of choice because of economic reasons. The cost of conventional (analog) relays has increased while the hardware cost of the most sophisticated digital relays has decreased dramatically. Even including substantial software costs, digital relays are the economic choice and have the additional advantage of having lower wiring costs. Prior to the introduction of microprocessor-based systems, several panels of space and considerable wiring was required to provide all the functions needed for each zone of transmission line protection. For example, an installation requiring phase distance protection for phase-to-phase and three-phase faults, ground distance, ground-overcurrent, a pilot scheme, breaker failure, and reclosing logic demanded redundant wiring, several hundred watts of power, and a lot of panel space. A single microprocessor system is a single box, with a ten-watt power requirement and with only direct wiring, has replaced the old system.

Modern digital relays can provide SCADA, metering, and oscillographic records. Line relays can also provide fault location information. All of this data can be available by modem or on a WAN. A LAN in the substation connecting the protection modules to a local host is also a possibility. Complex multifunction relays can have an almost bewildering number of settings. Techniques for dealing with setting management are being developed. With improved communication technology, the possibility of involving microprocessor protection in wide-area protection and control is being considered.

5.1 Sampling

The sampling process is essential for microprocessor protection to produce the numbers required by the processing unit to perform calculations and reach relaying decisions. Both 12 and 16 bit A/D converters are in use. The large difference between load and fault current is a driving force behind the need for more precision in the A/D conversion. It is difficult to measure load current accurately while not saturating for fault current with only 12 bits. It should be noted that most protection functions do not require such precise load current measurement. Although there are applications, such as hydro generator protection, where the sampling rate is derived from the actual power system frequency, most relay applications involve sampling at a fixed rate that is a multiple of the *nominal* power system frequency.

5.2 Antialiasing Filters

ANSI/IEEE Standard C37.90, provides the standard for the Surge Withstand Capability (SWC) to be built into protective relay equipment. The standard consists of both an oscillatory and transient test. Typically the surge filter is followed by an antialiasing filter before the A/D converter. Ideally the signal x(t) presented to the A/D converter x(t) is band-limited to some frequency ω_c, i.e., the Fourier transform of x(t) is confined to a low-pass band less that ω_c such as shown in Fig. 5.1. Sampling the low-pass signal at a frequency of ω_s produces a signal with a transform made up of shifted replicas of the low-pass transform as shown in Fig. 5.2. If $\omega_s - \omega_c > \omega_c$, i.e., $\omega_s > 2\omega_c$ as shown, then an ideal low-pass filter applied to z(t) can recover the original signal x(t). The frequency of twice the highest frequency present in the signal to be sampled is the Nyquist sampling rate. If $\omega_s < 2\omega_c$ the sampled signal is said to be "aliased" and the output of the low-pass filter is not the original signal. In some applications the frequency content of the signal is known and the sampling frequency is chosen to avoid aliasing (music CDs), while in digital relaying applications the sampling frequency is specified and the frequency content of the signal is controlled by filtering the signal before sampling to insure its highest frequency is less than half the sampling frequency. The filter used is referred to as an antialising filter.

Aliasing also occurs when discrete sequences are sampled or decimated. For example, if a high sampling rate such as 7200 Hz is used to provide data for oscillography, then taking every tenth sample provides data at 720 Hz to be used for relaying. The process of taking every tenth sample (decimation) will produce aliasing unless a digital anti-aliasing filter with a cut-off frequency of 360 Hz is provided.

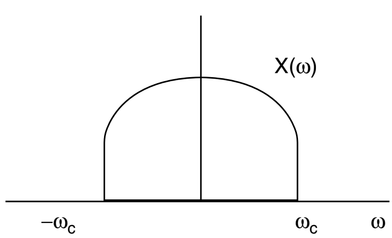


FIGURE 5.1 The Fourier Transform of a band-limited function.

5.3 Sigma-Delta A/D Converters

There is an advantage in sampling at rates many times the Nyquist rate. It is possible to exchange speed of sampling for bits of resolution. So called Sigma-Delta A/D converters are based on one bit sampling at very high rates. Consider a signal x(t) sampled at a high rate T = 1/fs, i.e., x[n] = x(nT) with the difference between the current sample and α times the last sample given by

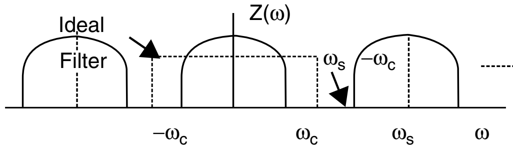


FIGURE 5.2 The Fourier Transform of a sampled version of the signal x(t).

$$d[n] = x[n] - \alpha\ x[n-1] \tag{5.1}$$

If d[n] is quantized through a one-bit quantizer with a step size of Δ, then

$$x_q[n] = \alpha\ x_q[n-1] + d_q[n] \tag{5.2}$$

The quantization is called delta modulation and is represented in Fig. 5.3. The z^{-1} boxes are unit delays while the one bit quantizer is shown as the box with d[n] as input and $d_q[n]$ as output. The output $x_q[n]$ is a staircase approximation to the signal x(t) with stairs that are spaced at T sec and have height Δ. The delta modulator output has two types of errors: one when the maximum slope Δ/T is too small for rapid changes in the input (shown on Fig. 5.3) and the second, a sort of chattering when the signal x(t) is slowly varying. The feedback loop below the quantizer is a discrete approximation to an integrator with $\alpha = 1$. Values of α less than one correspond to an imperfect integrator. A continuous form of the delta modulator is also shown in Fig. 5.4. The low pass filter (LPF) is needed because of the high frequency content of the staircase. Shifting the integrator from in front of the LPF to before the delta modulator improves both types of error. In addition, the two integrators can be combined.

The modulator can be thought of as a form of voltage follower circuit. Resolution is increased by oversampling to spread the quantization noise over a large bandwidth. It is possible to shape the quantization noise so it is larger at high frequencies and lower near DC. Combining the shaped noise with a very steep cut-off in the digital low pass filter, it is possible to produce a 16-bit result from the one bit comparator. For example, a 16-bit answer at 20 kHz can be obtained with an original sampling frequency of 400 kHz.

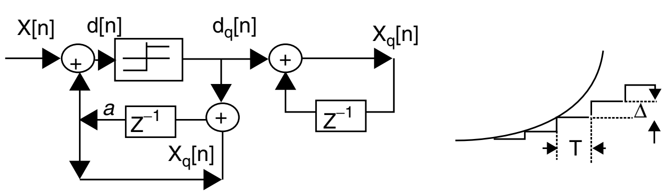


FIGURE 5.3 Delta modulator and error.

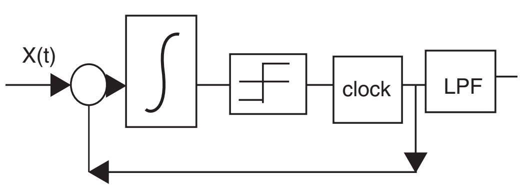


FIGURE 5.4 Signa-Delta modulator.

5.4 Phasors from Samples

A phasor is a complex number used to represent sinusoidal functions of time such as AC voltages and currents. For convenience in calculating the power in AC circuits from phasors, the phasor magnitude is set equal to the rms value of the sinusoidal waveform. A sinusoidal quantity and its phasor representation are shown in Fig. 5.5, and are defined as follows:

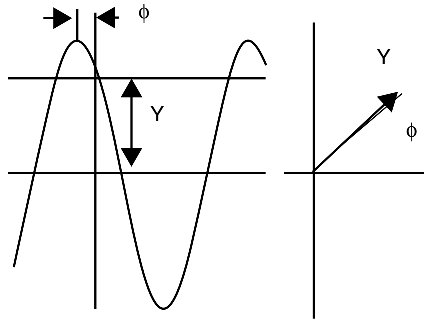


FIGURE 5.5 Phasor representation.

Sinusoidal quantity	Phasor
$y(t) = Y_m \cos(\omega t + \phi)$	$Y = \dfrac{Y_m}{\sqrt{2}} e^{j\phi}$

(5.3)

A phasor represents a single frequency sinusoid and is not directly applicable under transient conditions. However, the idea of a phasor can be used in transient conditions by considering that the phasor represents an estimate of the fundamental frequency component of a waveform observed over a finite window. In case of N samples y_k, obtained from the signal $y(t)$ over a period of the waveform:

$$Y = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \frac{2}{N} \sum_{k=1}^{N} y_k e^{-jk\frac{2\pi}{N}} \tag{5.4}$$

or,

$$Y = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \frac{2}{N} \left\{ \sum_{k=1}^{N} y_k \cos\left(\frac{k2\pi}{N}\right) - j \sum_{k=1}^{N} y_k \sin\left(\frac{k2\pi}{N}\right) \right\} \tag{5.5}$$

Using θ for the sampling angle $2\pi/N$, it follows that

$$Y = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \frac{2}{N} (Y_c - jY_s) \tag{5.6}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} Y_c &= \sum_{k=1}^{N} y_k \cos(k\theta) \\ Y_s &= \sum_{k=1}^{N} y_k \sin(k\theta) \end{aligned} \tag{5.7}$$

Note that the input signal $y(t)$ must be band-limited to $N\omega/2$ to avoid aliasing errors. In the presence of white noise, the fundamental frequency component of the Discrete Fourier Transform (DFT) given by Eqs. (5.4)–(5.7) can be shown to be a least-squares estimate of the phasor. If the data window is not a multiple of a half cycle, the least-squares estimate is some other combination of Y_c and Y_s, and is no longer given by Eq. (5.6). Short window (less than one period) phasor computations are of interest in some digital relaying applications. For the present, we will concentrate on data windows that are multiples of a half cycle of the nominal power system frequency.

The data window begins at the instant when sample number 1 is obtained as shown in Fig. 5.5. The sample set y_k is given by

$$y_k = Y_m \cos(k\theta + \phi) \tag{5.8}$$

Substituting for y_k from Eq. (5.8) in Eq. (5.4),

$$Y = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \frac{2}{N} \sum_{k=1}^{N} Y_m \cos(k\theta + \varphi) e^{-jk\theta} \tag{5.9}$$

or

$$Y = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} Y_m e^{j\phi} \tag{5.10}$$

which is the familiar expression Eq. (5.3), for the phasor representation of the sinusoid in Eq. (5.3). The instant at which the first data sample is obtained defines the orientation of the phasor in the complex plane. The reference axis for the phasor, i.e., the horizontal axis in Fig. 5.5, is specified by the first sample in the data window.

Equations (5.6)–(5.7) define an algorithm for computing a phasor from an input signal. A recursive form of the algorithm is more useful for real-time measurements. Consider the phasors computed from two adjacent sample sets: $y_k\{k = 1,2,\cdots, N\}$ and, $y'_k\{k = 2,3,\cdots, N+1\}$, and their corresponding phasors Y^1 and $Y^{2'}$ respectively:

$$Y^1 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \frac{2}{N} \sum_{k=1}^{N} y_k e^{-jk\theta} \tag{5.11}$$

$$Y^{2'} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \frac{2}{N} \sum_{k=1}^{N} y_{k+1} e^{-jk\theta} \tag{5.12}$$

We may modify Eq. (5.12) to develop a recursive phasor calculation as follows:

$$Y^2 = Y^{2'}\, e^{-j\theta} = Y^1 + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \frac{2}{N} (y_{N+1} - y_1) e^{-j\theta} \tag{5.13}$$

Since the angle of the phasor $Y^{2'}$ is greater than the angle of the phasor Y^1 by the sampling angle θ, the phasor Y^2 has the same angle as the phasor Y^1. When the input signal is a constant sinusoid, the phasor calculated from Eq. (5.13) is a constant complex number. In general, the phasor Y, corresponding to the data $y_k\{k = r, r+1, r+2, \cdots, N+r-1\}$ is recursively modified into Y^{r+1} according to the formula

$$Y^{r+1} = Y^r\, e^{-j\theta} = Y^r + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \frac{2}{N} (y_{N+r} - y_r)\, e^{-j\theta} \tag{5.14}$$

The recursive phasor calculation as given by Eq. (5.13) is very efficient. It regenerates the new phasor from the old one and utilizes most of the computations performed for the phasor with the old data window.

5.5 Symmetrical Components

Symmetrical components are linear transformations on voltages and currents of a three phase network. The symmetrical component transformation matrix S transforms the phase quantities, taken here to be voltages E_ϕ, (although they could equally well be currents), into symmetrical components E_S:

$$E_s = \begin{bmatrix} E_0 \\ E_1 \\ E_2 \end{bmatrix} = SE_\phi = \frac{1}{3}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & \alpha & \alpha^2 \\ 1 & \alpha^2 & \alpha \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} E_a \\ E_b \\ E_c \end{bmatrix} \tag{5.15}$$

where $(1,\alpha,\alpha^2)$ are the three cube-roots of unity. The symmetrical component transformation matrix S is a similarity transformation on the impedance matrices of balanced three phase circuits, which diagonalizes these matrices. The symmetrical components, designated by the subscripts (0,1,2) are known as the zero, positive, and negative sequence components of the voltages (or currents). The negative and zero sequence components are of importance in analyzing unbalanced three phase networks. For our present discussion, we will concentrate on the positive sequence component E_1 (or I_1) only. This component measures the balanced, or normal voltages and currents that exist in a power system. Dealing with positive sequence components only allows the use of single-phase circuits to model the three-phase network, and provides a very good approximation for the state of a network in quasi-steady state. All power generators generate positive sequence voltages, and all machines work best when energized by positive sequence currents and voltages. The power system is specifically designed to produce and utilize almost pure positive sequence voltages and currents in the absence of faults or other abnormal imbalances. It follows from Eq. (5.15) that the positive sequence component of the phase quantities is given by

$$Y_1 = \frac{1}{3}\left(Y_a + \alpha Y_b + \alpha^2 Y_c\right) \tag{5.16}$$

Or, using the recursive form of the phasors given by Eq. (5.14),

$$Y_1^{r+1} = Y_1^r + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\frac{2}{N}\left[\left(x_{a,N+r} - x_{a,r}\right)\, e^{-jr\theta} + \alpha\left(x_{b,N+r} - x_{b,r}\right)\, e^{-jr\theta} + \alpha^2\left(x_{c,N+r} - x_{c,r}\right)\, e^{-jr\theta}\right] \tag{5.17}$$

Recognizing that for a sampling rate of 12 times per cycle, α and α^2 correspond to $\exp(j4\theta)$ and $\exp(j8\theta)$, respectively, it can be seen from Eq. (5.17) that

$$Y_1^{r+1} = Y_1^r + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\frac{2}{N}\left[\left(x_{a,N+r} - x_{a,r}\right)\, e^{-jr\theta} + \left(x_{b,N+r} - x_{b,r}\right)\, e^{j(4-r)r\theta} + \left(x_{c,N+r} - x_{c,r}\right)\, e^{j(8-r)\theta}\right] \tag{5.18}$$

With a carefully chosen sampling rate—such as a multiple of three times the nominal power system frequency—very efficient symmetrical component calculations can be performed in real time. Equations similar to (5.18) hold for negative and zero sequence components also. The sequence quantities can be used to compute a distance to the fault that is independent of fault type. Given the ten possible faults in a three-phase system (three line-ground, three phase-phase, three phase-phase-ground, and three phase), early microprocessor systems were taxed to determine the fault type before computing the distance to the fault. Incorrect fault type identification resulted in a delay in relay operation. The symmetrical component relay solved that problem. With advances in microprocessor speed it is now possible to simultaneously compute the distance to all six phase-ground and phase-phase faults in order to solve the fault classification problem.

The positive sequence calculation is still of interest because of the use of synchronized phasor measurements. Phasors, representing voltages and currents at various buses in a power system, define the state of the power system. If several phasors are to be measured, it is essential that they be measured with a common reference. The reference, as mentioned in the previous section, is determined by the instant at which the samples are taken. In order to achieve a common reference for the phasors, it is essential to achieve synchronization of the sampling pulses. The precision with which the time synchronization must be achieved depends upon the uses one wishes to make of the phasor measurements. For example, one use of the phasor measurements is to estimate, or validate, the state of the power systems so that crucial performance features of the network, such as the power flows in transmission lines could be determined with a degree of confidence. Many other important measures of power system performance, such as contingency evaluation, stability margins, etc., can be expressed in terms of the state of the power system, i.e., the phasors. Accuracy of time synchronization directly translates into the accuracy with which phase angle differences between various phasors can be measured. Phase angles between the ends of transmission lines in a power network may vary between a few degrees, and may approach 180° during particularly violent stability oscillations. Under these circumstances, assuming that one may wish to measure angular differences as little as 1°, one would want the accuracy of measurement to be better than 0.1°. Fortunately, synchronization accuracies of the order of 1 μsec are now achievable from the Global Positioning System (GPS) satellites. One microsecond corresponds to 0.022° for a 60 Hz power system, which more than meets our needs. Real-time phasor measurements have been applied in static state estimation, frequency measurement, and wide area control.

5.6 Algorithms

5.6.1 Parameter Estimation

Most relaying algorithms extract information about the waveform from current and voltage waveforms in order to make relaying decisions. Examples include: current and voltage phasors that can be used to compute impedance, the rms value, the current that can be used in an overcurrent relay, and the harmonic content of a current that can be used to form a restraint in transformer protection. An approach that unifies a number of algorithms is that of parameter estimation. The samples are assumed to be of a current or voltage that has a known form with some unknown parameters. The simplest such signal can be written as

$$y(t) = Y_c \cos \omega_0 t + Y_s \sin \omega_0 t + e(t) \tag{5.19}$$

where ω_0 is the nominal power system frequency, Y_c and Y_s are unknown quantities, and $e(t)$ is an error signal (all the things that are not the fundamental frequency signal in this simple model). It should be noted that in this formulation, we assume that the power system frequency is known. If the numbers, Y_c and Y_s were known, we could compute the fundamental frequency phasor. With samples taken at an interval of T seconds,

$$y_n = y(nT) = Y_c \cos n\theta + Y_s \sin n\theta + e(nT) \tag{5.20}$$

where $\theta = \omega_0 T$ is the sampling angle. If signals other than the fundamental frequency signal were present, it would be useful to include them in a formulation similar to Eq. (5.19) so that they would be included in $e(t)$. If, for example, the second harmonic were included, Eq. (5.19) could be modified to

$$y_n = Y_{1c} \cos n\theta + Y_{1s} \sin n\theta + Y_{2c} \cos 2n\theta + Y_{2s} \sin 2n\theta + e(nT) \tag{5.21}$$

It is clear that more samples are needed to estimate the parameters as more terms are included. Equation (5.21) can be generalized to include any number of harmonics (the number is limited by the sampling rate), the exponential offset in a current, or any known signal that is suspected to be included in the post-fault waveform. No matter how detailed the formulation, $e(t)$ will include unpredictable contributions from:

- The transducers (CTs and PTs)
- Fault arc
- Traveling wave effects
- A/D converters

- The exponential offset in the current
- The transient response of the antialising filters
- The power system itself

The current offset is not an error signal for some algorithms and is removed separately for some others. The power system generated signals are transients depending on fault location, the fault incidence angle, and the structure of the power system. The power system transients are low enough in frequency to be present after the antialiasing filter.

We can write a general expression as

$$y_n = \sum_{k=1}^{K} s_k(nT)Y_k + e_n \tag{5.22}$$

If y represents a vector of N samples, and Y a vector of K unknown coefficients, then there are N equations in K unknowns in the form

$$y = SY + e \tag{5.23}$$

The matrix S is made up of samples of the signals s_k.

$$S = \begin{bmatrix} s_1(T) & s_2(T) & \cdots & s_K(T) \\ s_1(2T) & s_2(2T) & \cdots & s_K(2T) \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ s_1(NT) & s_2(NT) & \cdots & s_K(NT) \end{bmatrix} \tag{5.24}$$

The presence of the error e and the fact that the number of equations is larger than the number of unknowns ($N > K$) makes it necessary to estimate Y.

5.6.2 Least Squares Fitting

One criterion for choosing the estimate $\hat{Y}$ is to minimize the scalar formed as the sum of the squares of the error term in Eq. (5.23), viz.

$$e^T\ e = (y - SY)^T(y - SY) = \sum_{n=1}^{N} e_n^2 \tag{5.25}$$

It can be shown that the minimum least squared error [the minimum value of Eq. (5.25)] occurs when

$$\hat{Y} = (S^T\ S)^{-1}\ S^T\ y = By \tag{5.26}$$

where $B = (S^TS)^{-1}S^T$. The calculations involving the matrix S can be performed off-line to create an “algorithm,” i.e., an estimate of each of the K parameters is obtained by multiplying the N samples by a set of stored numbers. The rows of Eq. (5.26) can represent a number of different algorithms depending on the choice of the signals $s_k(nT)$ and the interval over which the samples are taken.

5.6.3 DFT

The simplest form of Eq. (5.26) is when the matrix S^TS is diagonal. Using a signal alphabet of cosines and sines of the first N harmonics of the fundamental frequency over a window of one cycle of the fundamental frequency, the familiar Discrete Fourier Transform (DFT) is produced. With

$$
\begin{aligned}
s_1(t) &= \cos(\omega_0 t) \\
s_2(t) &= \sin(\omega_0 t) \\
s_3(t) &= \cos(2\omega_0 t) \\
s_4(t) &= \sin(2\omega_0 t) \\
&\vdots \\
s_{N-1}(t) &= \cos(N\omega_0 t/2) \\
s_N(t) &= \sin(N\omega_0 t/2)
\end{aligned}
\tag{5.27}
$$

The estimates are given by :

$$
\begin{aligned}
\hat{Y}_{Cp} &= \frac{2}{N}\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} y_n \cos(pn\theta) \\
\hat{Y}_{Sp} &= \frac{2}{N}\sum_{n=o}^{N-1} y_n \sin(pn\theta)
\end{aligned}
\tag{5.28}
$$

Note that the harmonics are also estimated by Eq. (5.28). Harmonics have little role in line relaying but are important in transformer protection. It can be seen that the fundamental frequency phasor can be obtained as

$$
Y = \frac{2}{N\sqrt{2}}\left(Y_{C1} - jY_{S1}\right) \tag{5.29}
$$

The normalizing factor in Eq. (5.29) is omitted if the ratio of phasors for voltage and current are used to form impedance.

5.6.4 Differential Equations

Another kind of algorithm is based on estimating the values of parameters of a physical model of the system. In line protection, the physical model is a series R-L circuit that represents the faulted line. A similar approach in transformer protection uses the magnetic flux circuit with associated inductance and resistance as the model. A differential equation is written for the system in both cases.

5.6.4.1 Line Protection Algorithms

The series R-L circuit of Fig. 5.6 is the model of a faulted line. The offset in the current is produced by the circuit model and hence will not be an error signal.

$$
v(t) = Ri(t) + L\frac{di(t)}{dt} \tag{5.30}
$$

Looking at the samples at k, k + 1, k + 2

$$
\int_{t_0}^{t_1} v(t)dt = R\int_{t_0}^{t_1} i(t)dt + L(i(t_1) - i(t_0)) \tag{5.31}
$$

$$
\int_{t_1}^{t_2} v(t)dt = R\int_{t_1}^{t_2} i(t)dt + L(i(t_2) - i(t_1)) \tag{5.32}
$$

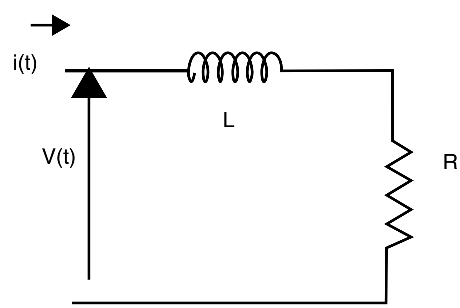


FIGURE 5.6 Model of a faulted line.

Using trapezoidal integration to evaluate the integrals (assuming t is small)

$$\int_{t_1}^{t_2} v(t)dt = R \int_{t_1}^{t_2} i(t)dt + L(i(t_2) - i(t_1)) \tag{5.33}$$

$$\int_{t_1}^{t_2} v(t)dt = R \int_{t_1}^{t_2} i(t)dt + L(i(t_2) - i(t_1)) \tag{5.34}$$

R and L are given by

$$R = \left[\frac{(v_{k+1} + v_k)(i_{k+2} - i_{k+1}) - (v_{k+2} + v_{k+1})(i_{k+1} - i_k)}{2\left(i_k i_{k+2} - i_{k+1}^2\right)} \right] \tag{5.35}$$

$$L = \frac{T}{2} \left[\frac{(v_{k+2} + v_{k+1})(i_{k+1} + i_k) - (v_{k+1} + v_k)(i_{k+2} + i_{k+1})}{2\left(i_k i_{k+2} - i_{k+1}^2\right)} \right] \tag{5.36}$$

It should be noted that the sample values occur in both numerator and denominator of Eqs. (5.35) and (5.36). The denominator is not constant but varies in time with local minima at points where both the current and the derivative of the current are small. For a pure sinusoidal current, the current and its derivative are never both small but when an offset is included there is a possibility of both being small once per period.

Error signals for this algorithm include terms that do not satisfy the differential equation such as the currents in the shunt elements in the line model required by long lines. In intervals where the denominator is small, errors in the numerator of Eqs. (5.35) and (5.36) are amplified. The resulting estimates can be quite poor. It is also difficult to make the window longer than three samples. The complexity of solving such equations for a larger number of samples suggests that the short window results be post processed. Simple averaging of the short-window estimates is inappropriate, however.

A counting scheme was used in which the counter was advanced if the estimated R and L were in the zone and the counter was decreased if the estimates lay outside the zone (Chen and Breingan, 1979). By requiring the counter to reach some threshold before tripping, secure operation can be assured with a cost of some delay. For example, if the threshold were set at six with a sampling rate of 16 times a cycle, the fastest trip decision would take a half cycle. Each "bad" estimate would delay the decision by two additional samples. The actual time for a relaying decision is variable and depends on the exact data.

The use of a median filter is an alternate to the counting scheme (Akke and Thorp, 1997). The median operation ranks the input values according to their amplitude and selects the middle value as the output. Median filters have an odd number of inputs. A length five median filter has an input-output relation between input x[n] and output y[n] given by

$$y[n] = \text{median}\{x[n-2], x[n-1], x[n], x[n+1], x[n+2]\} \tag{5.37}$$

Median filters of length five, seven, and nine have been applied to the output of the short window differential equation algorithm (Akke and Thorp, 1997). The median filter preserves the essential features of the input while removing isolated noise spikes. The filter length rather than the counter scheme, fixes the time required for a relaying decision.

5.6.4.2 Transformer Protection Algorithms

Virtually all algorithms for the protection of power transformers use the principle of percentage differential protection. The difference between algorithms lies in how the algorithm restrains the differential trip for conditions of overexcitation and inrush. Algorithms based on harmonic restraint, which parallel existing analog protection, compute the second and fifth harmonics using Eq. (5.10) (Thorp and Phadke, 1982). These algorithms use current measurements only and cannot be faster than one cycle because of the need to compute the second harmonic. The harmonic calculation provides for secure operation since the transient event produces harmonic content which delays relay operation for about a cycle.

In an integrated substation with other microprocessor relays, it is possible to consider transformer protection algorithms that use voltage information. Shared voltage samples could be a result of multiple protection modules connected in a LAN in the substation. The magnitude of the voltage itself can be used as a restraint in a digital version of a "tripping suppressor" (Harder and Marter, 1948). A physical model similar to the differential equation model for a faulted line can be constructed using the flux in the transformer. The differential equation describing the terminal voltage, v(t), the winding current, i(t), and the flux linkage $\Lambda(t)$ is:

$$v(t) - L\frac{di(t)}{dt} = \frac{d\Lambda(t)}{dt} \tag{5.38}$$

where L is the leakage inductance of the winding.
Using trapezoidal integration for the integral in Eq. (5.38)

$$\int_{t_1}^{t_2} v(t)dt - L[i(t_2) - i(t_1)] = \Lambda(t_2) - \Lambda(t_1) \tag{5.39}$$

gives

$$\Lambda(t_2) - \Lambda(t_1) = \frac{T}{2}[v(t_2) + v(t_1)] - L[i(t_2) - i(t_1)] \tag{5.40}$$

or

$$\Lambda_{k+1} = \Lambda_k + \frac{T}{2}[v_{k+1} + v_k] - L[i_{k+1} - i_k] \tag{5.41}$$

Since the initial flux Λ_0 in Eq. (5.41) cannot be known without separate sensing, the slope of the flux current curve is used

$$\left(\frac{d\Lambda}{di}\right)_k = \frac{T}{2}\left[\frac{[v_k + v_{k-1}]}{i_k - i_{k-1}}\right] - L \tag{5.42}$$

The slope of the flux current characteristic shown in Fig. 5.7 is different depending on whether there is a fault or not. The algorithm must then be able to differentiate between inrush (the slope alternates between large and small values) and a fault (the slope is always small). The counting scheme used for the differential equation algorithm for line protection can be adapted to this application. The counter increases if the slope is less than a threshold and the differential current indicates trip, and the counter decreases if the slope is greater than the threshold or the differential does not indicate trip.

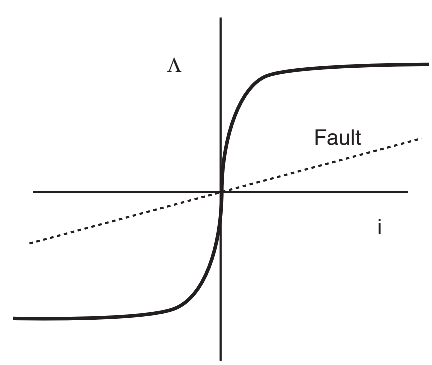


FIGURE 5.7 The flux-current characteristic compared to fault conditions.

5.6.5 Kalman Filters

The Kalman filter provides a solution to the estimation problem in the context of an evolution of the parameters to be estimated according to a state equation. It has been used extensively in estimation problems for dynamic systems. Its use in relaying is motivated by the filter's ability to handle measurements that change in time. To model the problem so that a Kalman filter may be used, it is necessary to write a state equation for the parameters to be estimated in the form

$$x_{k+1} = \Phi_k \, x_k + \Gamma_k \, w_k \tag{5.43}$$

$$z_k = H_k \, x_k + v_k \tag{5.44}$$

where Eq. (5.43) (the state equation) represents the evolution of the parameters in time and Eq. (5.44) represents the measurements. The terms w_k and v_k are discrete time random processes representing state noise, i.e., random inputs in the evolution of the parameters, and measurement errors, respectively. Typically w_k and v_k are assumed to be independent of each other and uncorrelated from sample to sample. If w_k and v_k have zero means, then it is common to assume that

$$\begin{aligned} E\left\{w_k \, w_j^T\right\} &= Q_k : k = j \\ &= 0; \quad k \neq j \end{aligned} \tag{5.45}$$

The matrices Q_k and R_k are the covariance matrices of the random processes and are allowed to change as k changes. The matrix Φ_k in Eq. (5.43) is the state transition matrix. If we imagine sampling a pure sinusoid of the form

$$y(t) = Y_c \cos(\omega t) + Y_s \sin(\omega t) \tag{5.46}$$

at equal intervals corresponding to $\omega\Delta\tau = \Psi$, then the state would be

$$x_k = \begin{bmatrix} Y_C \\ Y_S \end{bmatrix} \tag{5.47}$$

and the state transition matrix

$$\Phi_k = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \tag{5.48}$$

In this case, H_k, the measurement matrix, would be

$$H_k = [\cos(k\Psi) \sin(k\Psi)] \tag{5.49}$$

Simulations of a 345 kV line connecting a generator and a load (Gurgis and Brown, 1981) led to the conclusion that the covariance of the noise in the voltage and current decayed in time. If the time constant of the decay is comparable to the decision time of the relay, then the Kalman filter formulation is

$$x = \begin{bmatrix} Y_C \\ Y_S \\ Y_0 \end{bmatrix} \quad \Phi_k = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & e^{-\beta t} \end{bmatrix}$$

appropriate for the estimation problem. The voltage was modeled as in Eqs. (5.48) and (5.49). The current was modeled with three states to account for the exponential offset.

and

$$H_k = [\cos(k\Psi)\ \sin(k\Psi) 1] \tag{5.50}$$

The measurement covariance matrix was

$$R_k = Ke^{-k\Delta t/T} \tag{5.51}$$

with T chosen as half the line time constant and different Ks for voltage and current. The Kalman filter estimates phasors for voltage and current as the DFT algorithms. The filter must be started and terminated using some other software. After the calculations begin, the data window continues to grow until the process is halted. This is different from fixed data windows such as a one cycle Fourier calculation. The growing data window has some advantages, but has the limitation that if started incorrectly, it has a hard time recovering if a fault occurs after the calculations have been initiated.

The Kalman filter assumes an initial statistical description of the state x, and recursively updates the estimate of state. The initial assumption about the state is that it is a random vector independent of the processes w_k and v_k and with a known mean and covariance matrix, P_0. The recursive calculation involves computing a gain matrix K_k. The estimate is given by

$$\hat{x}_{k+1} = \Phi_k \hat{x}_k + K_{k+1}[z_{k+1} - H_{k+1}\hat{x}_k] \tag{5.52}$$

The first term in Eq. (5.52) is an update of the old estimate by the state transition matrix while the second is the gain matrix K_{k+1} multiplying the observation residual. The bracketed term in Eq. (5.52) is the difference between the actual measurement, z_k, and the predicted value of the measurement, i.e., the residual in predicting the measurement. The gain matrix can then be computed recursively. The amount of computation involved depends on the state vector dimension. For the linear problem described here, these calculations can be performed off-line. In the absence of the decaying measurement error, the Kalman filter offers little other than the growing data window. It has been shown that at multiples of a half cycle, the Kalman filter estimate for a constant error covariance is the same as that obtained from the DFT.

5.6.6 Wavelet Transforms

The Wavelet Transform is a signal processing tool that is replacing the Fourier Transform in many applications including data compression, sonar and radar, communications, and biomedical applications. In the signal processing community there is considerable overlap between wavelets and the area of filter banks. In applications in which it is used, the Wavelet Transform is viewed as an improvement over the Fourier Transform because it deals with time-frequency resolution in a different way. The Fourier Transform provides a decomposition of a time function into exponentials, $e^{j\omega t}$, which exist for all time. We should consider the signal that is processed with the DFT calculations in the previous sections as being extended periodically for all time. That is, the data window represents one period of a periodic signal. The sampling rate and the length of the data window determine the frequency resolution of the calculations. While these limitations are well understood and intuitive, they are serious limitations in some applications such as compression. The Wavelet Transform introduces an alternative to these limitations.

The Fourier Transform can be written

$$X(\omega) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t)e^{-j\omega t}\, dt \tag{5.53}$$

The effect of a data window can be captured by imagining that the signal x(t) is windowed before the Fourier Transform is computed. The function h(t) represents the windowing function such as a one-cycle rectangle.

$$X(\omega, t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(\tau)h(t-\tau)e^{-j\omega\tau}\, d\tau \tag{5.54}$$

The Wavelet Transform is written

$$X(s, t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(\tau)\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{s}}\, h\left(\frac{\tau - t}{s}\right)\right] d\tau \tag{5.55}$$

where s is a scale parameter and t is a time shift. The scale parameter is an alternative to the frequency parameter of the Fourier Transform. If h(t) has Fourier Transform $H(\omega)$, then h(t/s) has Fourier Transform $H(s\omega)$. Note that for a fixed h(t) that large, s compresses the transform while small s spreads the transform in frequency. There are a few requirements on a signal h(t) to be the "mother wavelet" (essentially that h(t) have finite energy and be a bandpass signal). For example, h(t) could be the output of a bandpass filter. It is also true that it is only necessary to know the Wavelet Transform at discrete values of s and t in order to be able to represent the signal. In particular

$$s = 2^m, \quad t = n2^m \quad m = \ldots, -2,0,1,2,3,\ldots$$
$$n = \ldots, -2,0,1,2,3,\ldots$$

where lower values of m correspond to smaller values of s or higher frequencies.

If x(t) is limited to a band B Hz, then it can be represented by samples at $T_S = 1/2B$ sec.

$$x(n) = x(nT_s)$$

Using a mother wavelet corresponding to an ideal bandpass filter illustrates a number of ideas. Figure 5.8 shows the filters corresponding to $m = 0,1,2$, and 3 and Fig. 5.9 shows the corresponding time functions. Since x(t) has no frequencies above B Hz, only positive values of m are necessary. The structure of the process can be seen in Fig. 5.10. The boxes labeled LPF_R and HPF_R are low and high pass filters with cutoff frequencies of R Hz. The circle with the down arrow and a 2 represents the process of taking every other sample. For example, on the first line the output of the bandpass filter only has a bandwidth of B/2 Hz and the samples at T_S sec can be decimated to samples at $2T_S$ sec.

Additional understanding of the compression process is possible if we take a signal made of eight numbers and let the low pass filter be the average of two consecutive samples $(x(n) + x(n+1))/2$ and the high pass filter to be the difference $(x(n) - x(n+1))/2$ (Gail and Nielsen, 1999). For example, with

$$x(n) = [-2 -28 -46 -44 -20\ 12\ 32\ 30]$$

we get

$$h_1(k_1) = [13 -1 -16\ 1]$$
$$h_2(k_2) = [7 - 8.5]$$
$$h_3(k_3) = [7.75]$$
$$l_3(k_3) = [-0.75]$$

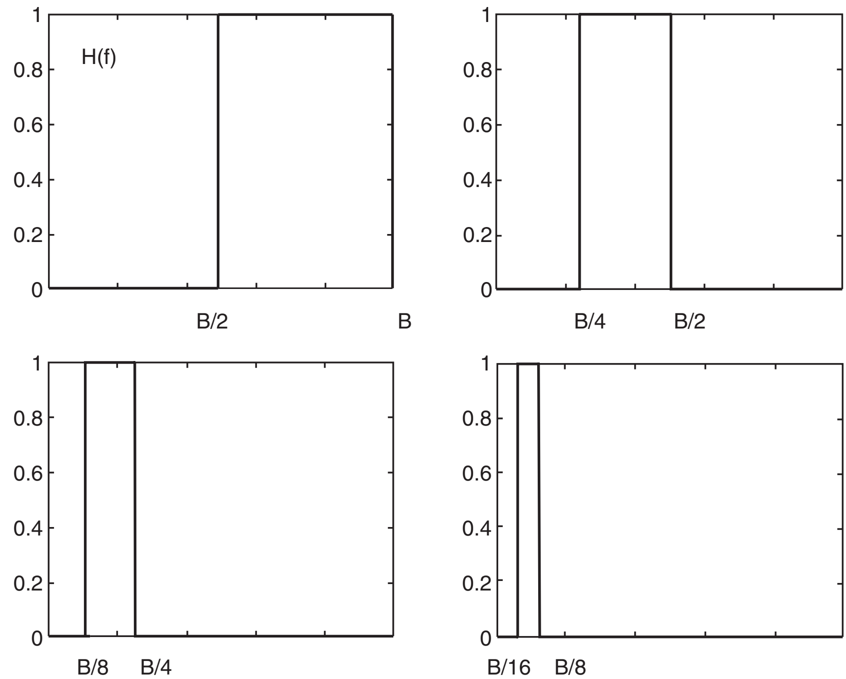


FIGURE 5.8 Ideal bandpass filters corresponding to m = 0, 1, 2, 3.

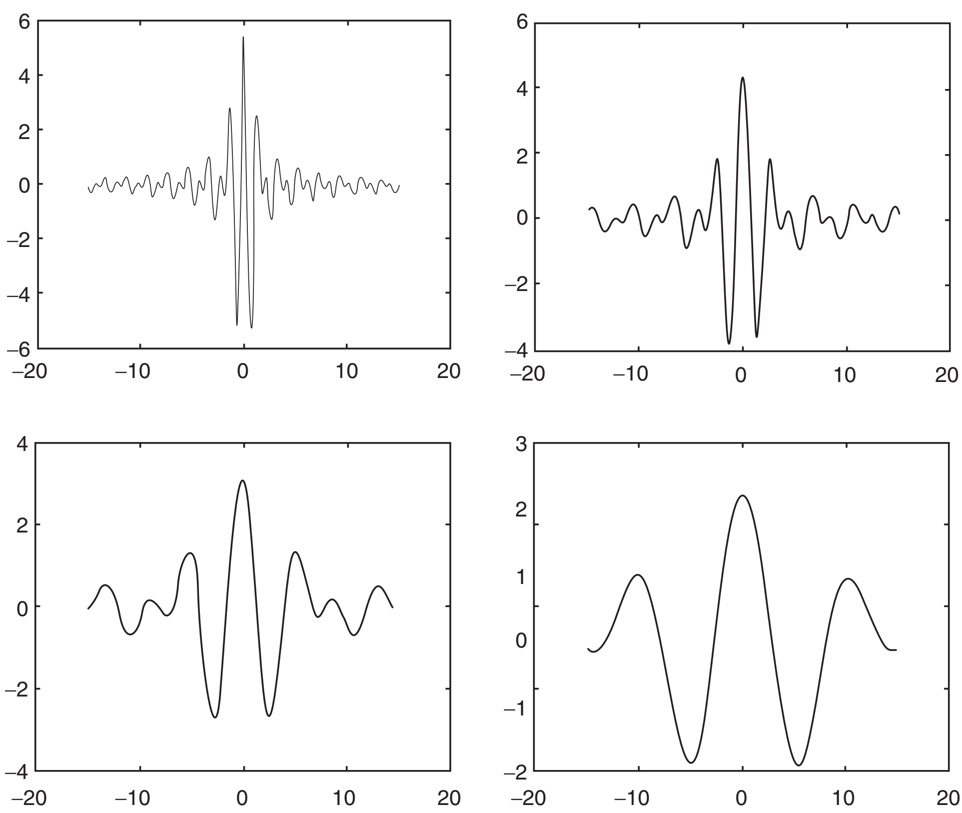


FIGURE 5.9 The impulse responses corresponding to the filters in Fig. 5.8.

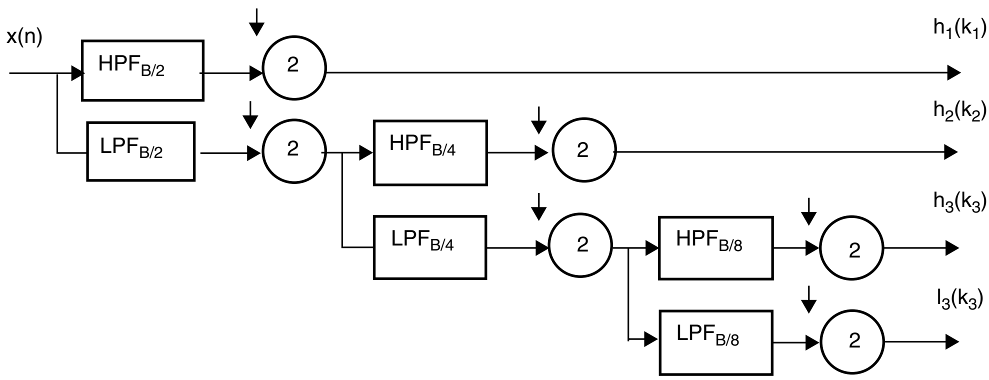


FIGURE 5.10 Cascade filter structure.

If we truncate to form

$$\begin{aligned} h_1(k_1) &= [16\ 0 - 16\ 0] \\ h_2(k_2) &= [8 - 8] \\ h_3(k_3) &= [8] \\ l_3(k_3) &= [0] \end{aligned}$$

and reconstruct the original sequence

$$\tilde{x}(n) = [0 - 32 - 48 - 48 - 24\ 8\ 32\ 32]$$

The original and reconstructed compressed waveform is shown in Fig. 5.11. Wavelets have been applied to relaying for systems grounded through a Peterson coil where the form of the wavelet was chosen to fit unusual waveforms the Peterson coil produces (Chaari et al., 1996).

5.6.7 Neural Networks

Artificial Neural Networks (ANNs) had their beginning in the "perceptron," which was designed to recognize patterns. The number of papers suggesting relay application have soared. The attraction is the

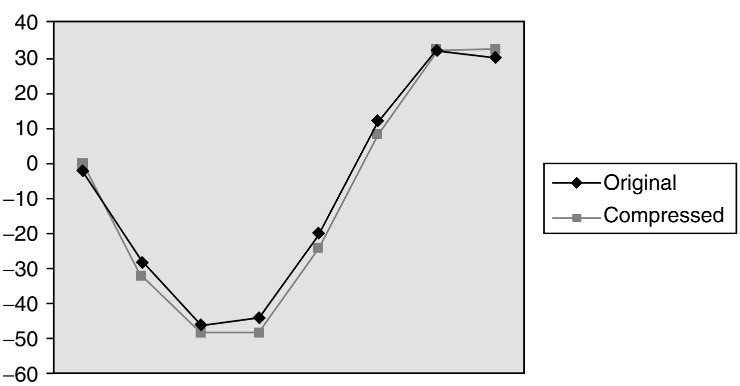


FIGURE 5.11 Original and compressed signals.

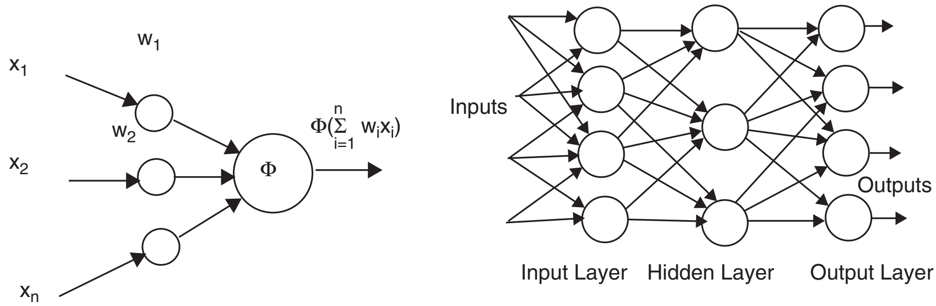


FIGURE 5.12 One neuron and a neural network.

use of ANNs as pattern recognition devices that can be trained with data to recognize faults, inrush, or other protection effects. The basic feed forward neural net is composed of layers of neurons as shown in Fig. 5.12.

The function Φ is either a threshold function or a saturating function such as a symmetric sigmoid function. The weights w_i are determined by training the network. The training process is the most difficult part of the ANN process. Typically, simulation data such as that obtained from EMTP is used to train the ANN. A set of cases to be executed must be identified along with a proposed structure for the net. The structure is described in terms of the number of inputs, neuron in layers, various layers, and outputs. An example might be a net with 12 inputs, and a 4, 3, 1 layer structure. There would be 4×12 plus 4×3 plus 3×1 or 63 weights to be determined. Clearly, a lot more than 60 training cases are needed to learn 63 weights. In addition, some cases not used for training are needed for testing. Software exists for the training process but judgment in determining the training sequences is vital. Once the weights are learned, the designer is frequently asked how the ANN will perform when some combination of inputs are presented to it. The ability to answer such questions is very much a function of the breadth of the training sequence.

The protective relaying application of ANNs include high-impedance fault detection (Eborn et al., 1990), transformer protection (Perez et al., 1994), fault classification (Dalstein and Kulicke, 1995), fault direction determination, adaptive reclosing (Aggarwal et al., 1994), and rotating machinery protection (Chow and Yee, 1991).

References

Aggarwal, R.K., Johns, A.T., Song, Y.H., Dunn, R.W., and Fitton, D.S., Neural-network based adaptive single-pole autoreclosure technique for EHV transmission systems, *IEEE Proceedings—C*, 141, 155, 1994.

Akke, M. and Thorp, J.S., Improved estimates from the differential equation algorithm by median post-filtering, *IEEE Sixth Int. Conf. on Development in Power System Protection*, Univ. of Nottingham, UK, March 1997.

Chaari, O, Neunier, M., and Brouaye, F., Wavelets: A new tool for the resonant grounded power distribution system relaying, *IEEE Trans. on Power Delivery*, 11, 1301, July 1996.

Chen, M.M. and Breingan, W.D., Field experience with a digital system with transmission line protection, *IEEE Trans. on Power Appar. and Syst.*, 98, 1796, Sep./Oct. 1979.

Chow, M. and Yee, S.O., Methodology for on-line incipient fault detection in single-phase squirrel-cage induction motors using artificial neural networks, *IEEE Trans. on Energy Conversion*, 6, 536, Sept. 1991.

Dalstein, T. and Kulicke, B., Neural network approach to fault classification for high speed protective relaying, *IEEE Trans. on Power Delivery*, 10, 1002, Apr. 1995.

Eborn, S., Lubkeman, D.L., and White, M., A neural network approach to the detection of incipient faults on power distribution feeders, *IEEE Trans. on Power Delivery*, 5, 905, Apr. 1990.

Gail, A.W. and Nielsen, O.M., Wavelet analysis for power system transients, *IEEE Computer Applications in Power*, 12, 16, January 1999.

Gilcrest, G.B., Rockefeller, G.D., and Udren, E.A., High-speed distance relaying using a digital computer, Part I: System description, *IEEE Trans.*, 91, 1235, May/June 1972.

Girgis, A.A. and Brown, R.G., Application of Kalman filtering in computer relaying, *IEEE Trans. on Power Appar. and Syst.*, 100, 3387, July 1981.

Harder, E.L. and Marter, W.E., Principles and practices of relaying in the United States, *AIEE Transactions*, 67, Part II, 1005, 1948.

Mann, B.J. and Morrison, I.F., Relaying a three-phase transmission line with a digital computer, *IEEE Trans. on Power Appar. and Syst.*, 90, 742, Mar./April 1971.

Perez, L.G., Flechsiz, A.J., Meador, J.L., and Obradovic, A., Training an artificial neural network to discriminate between magnetizing inrush and internal faults, *IEEE Trans. on Power Delivery*, 9, 434, Jan. 1994.

Poncelet, R., The use of digital computers for network protection, *CIGRE*, 32–98, Aug. 1972.

Rockefeller, G.D., Fault protection with a digital computer, *IEEE Trans.*, PAS-88, 438, Apr. 1969.

Rockefeller, G.D. and Udren, E.A., High-speed distance relaying using a digital computer, Part II. Test results, *IEEE Trans.*, 91, 1244, May/June 1972.

Sachdev, M.S. (Coordinator), Advancements in microprocessor based protection and communication, *IEEE Tutorial Course Text Publication*, 97TP120–0, 1997.

Tamronglak, S., Horowitz, S.H., Phadke, A.G., and Thorp, J.S., Anatomy of power system blackouts: Preventive relaying strategies, *IEEE Trans. on Power Delivery*, 11, 708, Apr. 1996.

Thorp, J.S. and Phadke, A.G., A microprocessor based voltage-restraint three-phase transformer differential relay, *Proc. South Eastern Symp. on Systems Theory*, 312, April 1982.

6

Use of Oscillograph Records to Analyze System Performance

John R. Boyle
Power System Analysis

Protection of present-day power systems is accomplished by a complex system of extremely sensitive relays that function only during a fault in the power system. Because relays are extremely fast, automatic oscillographs installed at appropriate locations can be used to determine the performance of protective relays during abnormal system conditions. Information from oscillographs can be used to detect the:

1. Presence of a fault
2. Severity and duration of a fault
3. Nature of a fault (A phase to ground, A – B phases to ground, etc.)
4. Location of line faults
5. Adequacy of relay performance
6. Effective performance of circuit breakers in circuit interruption
7. Occurrence of repetitive faults
8. Persistency of faults
9. Dead time required to dissipate ionized gases
10. Malfunctioning of equipment
11. Cause and possible resolution of a problem

Another important aspect of analyzing oscillograms is that of collecting data for statistical analysis. This would require a review of all oscillograms for every fault. The benefits would be to detect incipient problems and correct them before they become serious problems causing multiple interruptions or equipment damage.

An analysis of an oscillograph record shown in Fig. 6.1 should consider the nature of the fault. Substation **Y** is comprised of two lines and a transformer. The high side winding is connected to ground. Oscillographic information is available from the bus potential transformers, the line currents from breaker **A** on line 1, and the transformer neutral current. An "A" phase-to-ground fault is depicted on line 1. The oscillograph reveals a significant drop in "A" phase voltage accompanied with a rise in "A" phase line 1 current and a similar rise in the transformer neutral current. The "A" phase breaker cleared the fault in 3 cycles (good). The received carrier on line 1 was "off" during the fault (good) permitting high-speed tripping at both terminals (breakers A and B). There is no evidence of AC or DC current transformer (CT) saturation of either the phase CTs or the transformer neutral CT. The received carrier

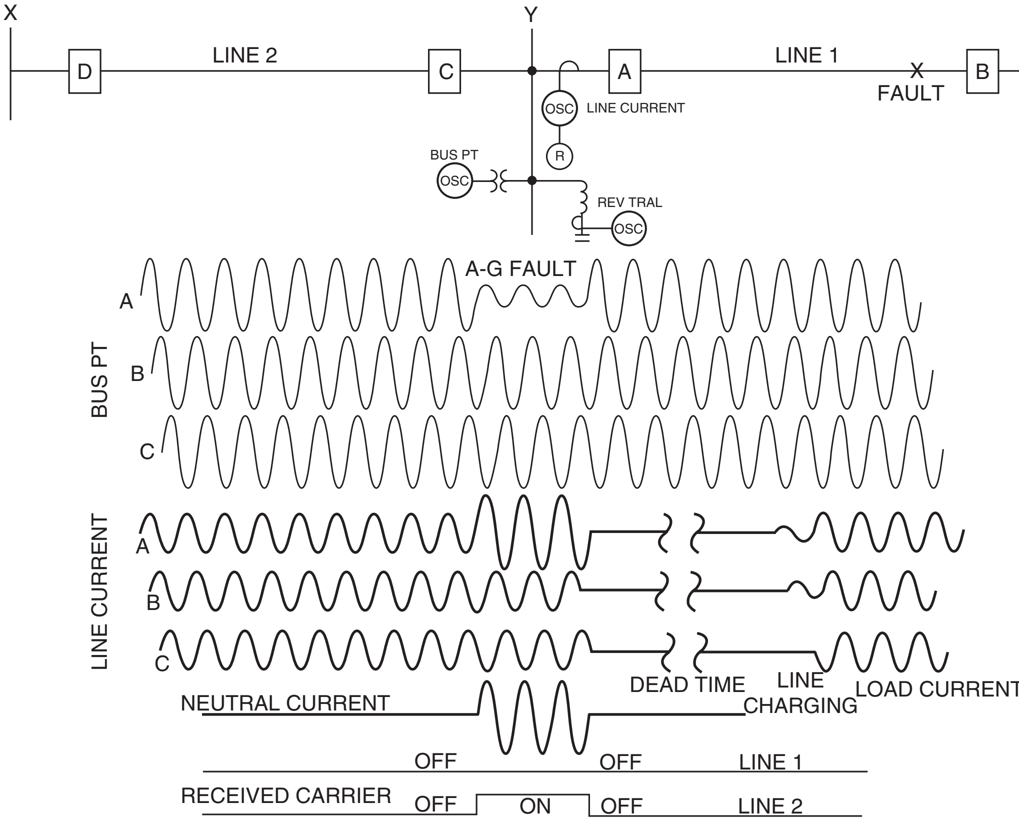


FIGURE 6.1 Analysis of an oscillograph record.

signal on line 2 was "on" all during the fault to block breaker "D" from tripping at terminal "**X**". This would indicate that the carrier ground relays on the number 2 line performed properly. This type of analysis may not be made because of budget and personnel constraints. Oscillographs are still used extensively to analyze known cases of trouble (breaker failure, transformer damage, etc.), but oscillograph analysis can also be used as a maintenance tool to prevent equipment failure.

The use of oscillograms as a maintenance tool can be visualized by classifying operations as good (A) or questionable (B) as shown in Fig. 6.2. The first fault current waveform (upper left) is classified as A because it is sinusoidal in nature and cleared in 3 cycles. This could be a four or five cycle fault clearing time and still be classified as A depending upon the breaker characteristics (4 or 5 cycle breaker, etc.) The DC offset wave form can also be classified as A because it indicates a four cycle fault clearing time and a sinusoidal waveform with no saturation.

An example of a questionable waveform (B) is shown on the right side of Fig. 6.2. The upper right is one of current magnitude which would have to be determined by use of fault studies. Some breakers have marginal interrupting capabilities and should be inspected whenever close-in faults occur that generate currents that approach or exceed their interrupting capabilities. The waveform in the lower right is an example of a breaker restrike that requires a breaker inspection to prevent a possible breaker failure of subsequent operations.

Carrier performance on critical transmission lines is important because it impacts fast fault clearing, successful high-speed reclosing, high-speed tripping upon reclosure, and delayed breaker failure response for permanent faults upon reclosure, and a "stuck" breaker. In Fig. 6.3 two waveforms are shown that depict adequate carrier response for internal and external faults. The first waveform shows a

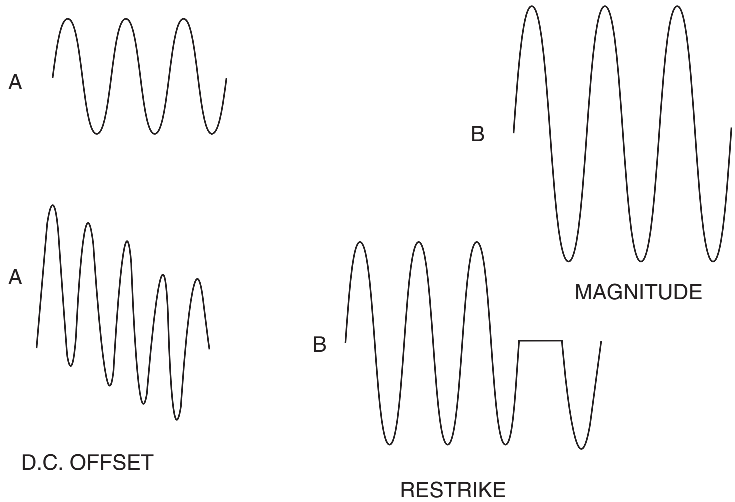


FIGURE 6.2 Use of oscillograms as a maintenance tool.

3 cycle fault and its corresponding carrier response. A momentary burst of carrier is cut off quickly allowing the breaker to trip in 3 cycles. Upon reclosing, load current is restored. The bottom waveform depicts the response of carrier on an adjacent line for the same fault. Note that carrier was "off" initially and cut "on" shortly after fault initiation. It stayed "on" for a few cycles after the fault cleared and stayed "off" all during the reclose "dead" time and after restoration of load current. Both of these waveforms would be classified as "good" and would not need further analysis.

An example of a questionable carrier response for an internal fault is shown in Fig. 6.4. Note that the carrier response was good for the initial 3 cycle fault, but during the reclose dead time, carrier came back "on" and was "on" upon reclosing. This delayed tripping an additional 2 cycles. Of even greater concern is a delay in the response of breaker-failure clearing time for a stuck breaker. Breaker failure initiation is predicated upon relay initiation which, in the case shown, is delayed 2 cycles. This type of "bad" carrier

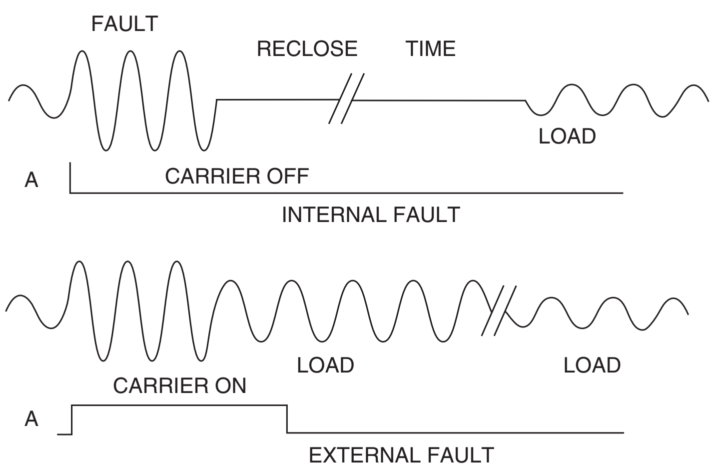


FIGURE 6.3 Two waveforms that depict adequate carrier response for internal and external faults.

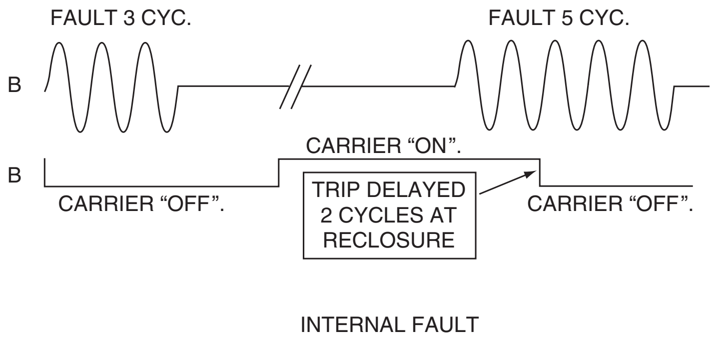


FIGURE 6.4 A questionable carrier response for an internal fault.

response may go undetected if oscillograms are not reviewed. In a similar manner, a delayed carrier response for an internal fault can result in delayed tripping for the initial fault as shown in Fig. 6.5. However, a delayed carrier response on an adjacent line can be more serious because it will result in two or more line interruptions. This is shown in Fig. 6.6. A fault on line 1 in Fig. 6.1 should be accompanied by acceptable carrier blocking signals on all external lines that receive a strong enough signal to trip if not accompanied by an appropriate carrier blocking signal. Two conditions are shown. A good ("A") block signal and questionable ("B") block signal. The good block signal is shown as one that blocks (comes "on") within a fraction of a cycle after the fault is detected and unblocks (goes "off") a few cycles after the fault is cleared. The questionable block signal shown at the bottom of the waveform in Fig. 6.6 is late in going from "off" to "on" (1.5 cycles). The race between the trip element and the block element is such that a trip signal was initiated first and breaker "D" tripped 1.5 cycles after the fault was cleared by breaker A in 3 cycles. This would result in a complete station interruption at station "Y."

Impedance relays receive restraint from either bus or line potentials. These two potentials behave differently after a fault has been cleared. This is shown in Fig. 6.7. After breakers "A" and "B" open and the line is deenergized, the bus potential restores to its full value thereby applying full restraint to all impedance relays connected to the bus. The line voltage goes to zero after the line is deenergized. Normally this is not a problem because relays are designed to accommodate this condition. However, there are occasions when the line potential restraint voltage can cause a relay to trip when a breaker recloses. This condition usually manifests itself when shunt reactors are connected on the line. Under these conditions an oscillatory voltage will exist on the terminals of the line side potential devices after

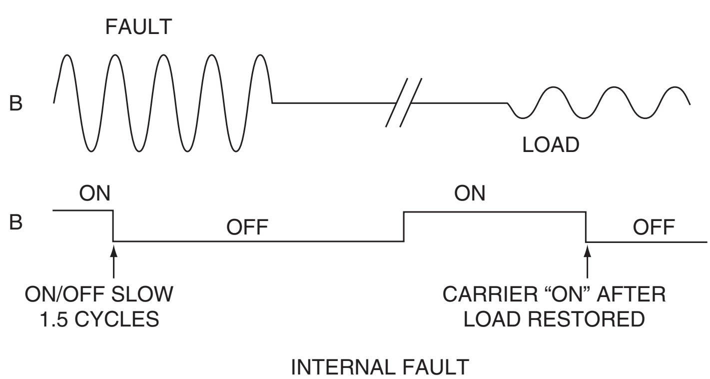


FIGURE 6.5 A delayed carrier response for an internal fault that resulted in delayed tripping for the initial fault.

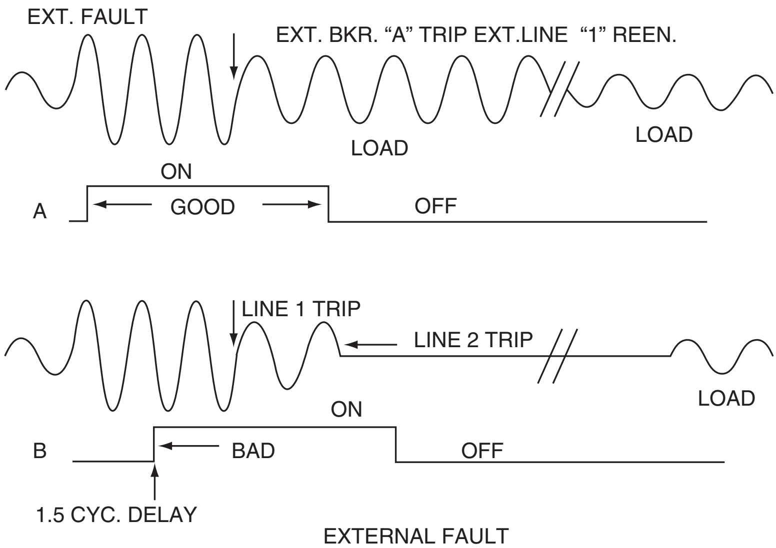


FIGURE 6.6 A delayed carrier response on an adjacent line can be more serious because it will result in two or more line interruptions.

both breakers "A" and "B" have opened. A waveform example is shown in Fig. 6.8. Note that the voltage is not a 60 Hz wave shape. Normally it is less than 60 Hz depending on the degree of compensation. This oscillatory voltage is more pronounced at high voltages because of the higher capacitance charge on the line. On lines that have flat spacing, the two outside voltages transfer energy between each other that

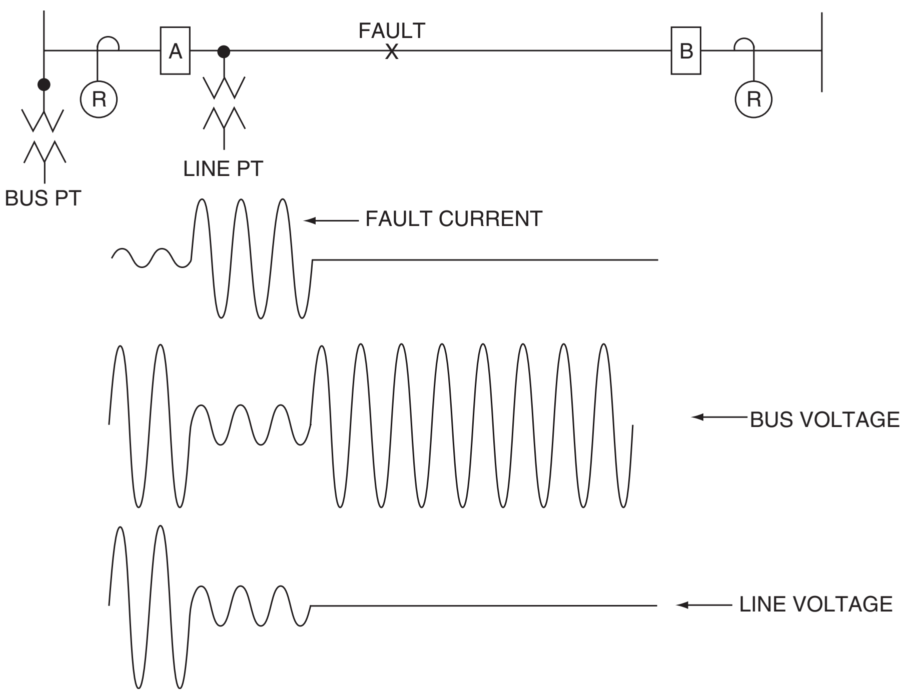


FIGURE 6.7 Bus or line potentials behave differently after a fault has been cleared.

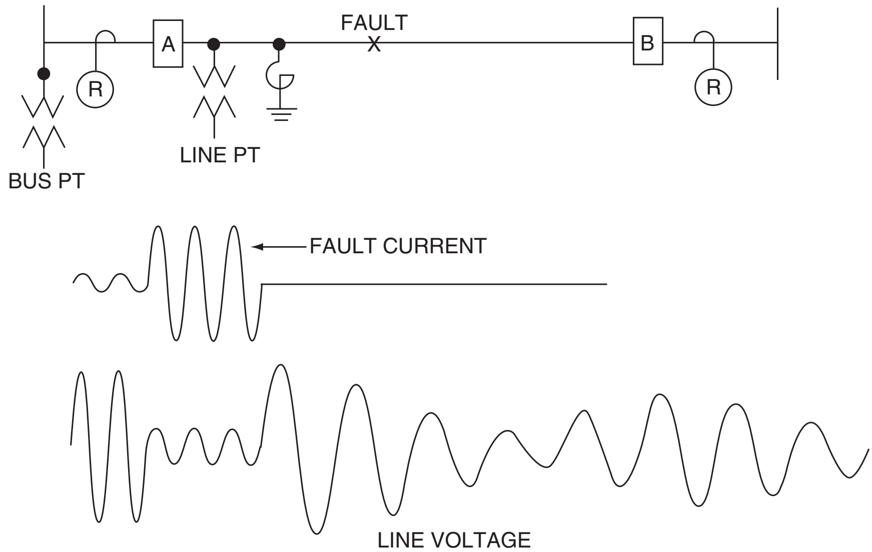


FIGURE 6.8 A waveform example after both “A” and “B” breakers have been opened.

results in oscillations that are mirror images of each other. The voltage on the center phase is usually a constant decaying decrement. These oscillations can last up to 400 cycles or more. This abnormal voltage is applied to the relays at the instant of reclosure and has been known to cause a breaker (for example, “A”) to trip because of the lack of coordination between the voltage restraint circuit and the overcurrent monitoring element. Another more prevalent problem is multiple restrikes across an insulator during the oscillatory voltage on the line. These restrikes prevent the ionized gasses from dissipating sufficiently at the time of reclosure. Thus a fault is reestablished when breaker “A” and/or “B” recloses. This phenomena can readily be seen on oscillograms. Action taken might be to look for defective insulators or lengthen the reclose cycle.

The amount of “dead time” is critical to successful reclosures. For example, at 161 kV a study was made to determine the amount of dead time required to dissipate ionized gasses to achieve a 90% reclose success rate. In general, on a good line (clean insulators), at least 13 cycles of dead time are required. Contrast this to 10 cycles dead time where the reclose success rate went down to approximately 50%. Oscillograms can help determine the dead time and the cause of unsuccessful reclosures. Note the dead time is a function of the performance of the breakers at both ends of the line. Figure 6.9 depicts the performance of good breaker operations (top waveform). Here, both breakers trip in 3 cycles and reclose successfully in 13 cycles. The top waveform depicts a slow breaker “A” tripping in 6 cycles. This results in an unsuccessful reclosure because the overall dead time is reduced to 10 cycles. Note, the oscillogram readily displays the problem. The analysis would point to possible relay or breaker trouble associated with breaker “A.”

Figure 6.10 depicts current transformer (CT) saturation. This phenomenon is prevalent in current circuits and can cause problems in differential and polarizing circuits. The top waveform is an example of a direct current (DC) offset waveform with no evidence of saturation. That is to say that the secondary waveform replicates the primary waveform. Contrast this with a DC offset waveform (lower) that clearly indicates saturation. If two sets of CTs are connected differentially around a transformer and the high side CTs do not saturate (upper waveform) and the low side CTs do saturate (lower waveform), the difference current will flow through the operate coil of the relay which may result in deenergizing the transformer when no trouble exists in the transformer. The solution may be the replacement of the offending low side CT with one that has a higher “C” classification, desensitizing the relay or reducing

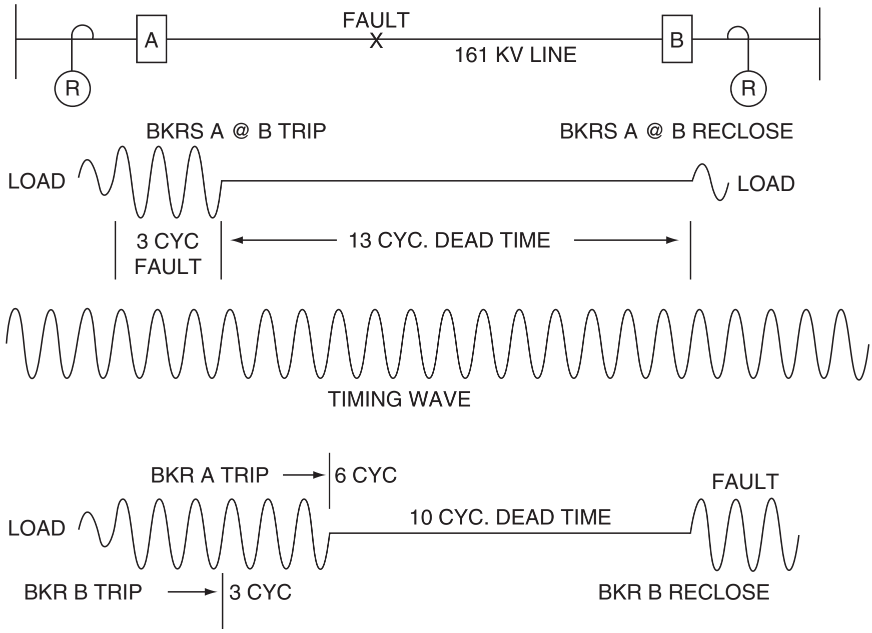


FIGURE 6.9 Depicts the performance of good breaker operations (top waveform).

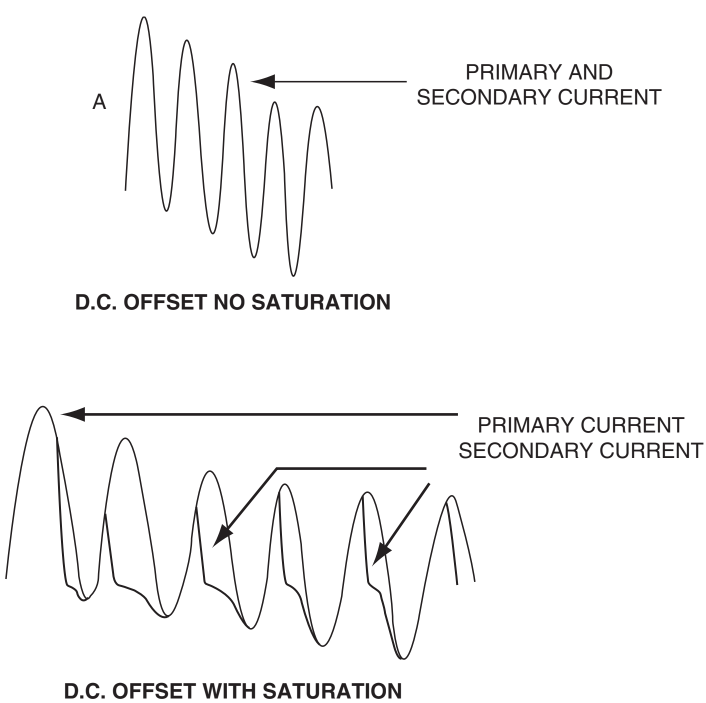


FIGURE 6.10 Depicts current transformer (CT) saturation.

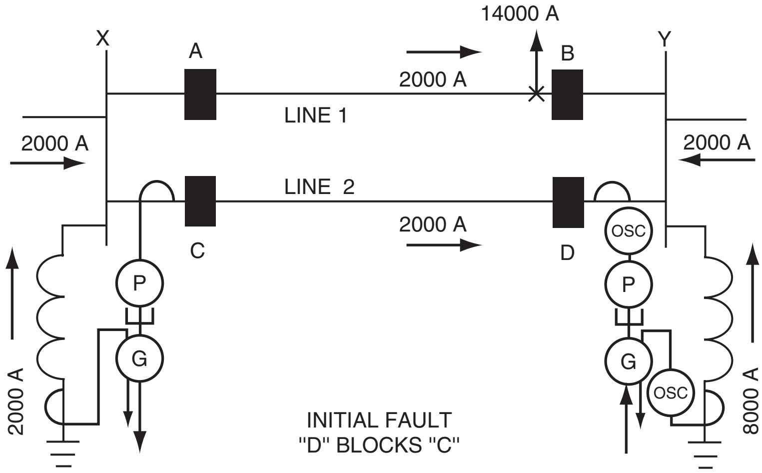


FIGURE 6.11 A line 1 fault at the terminals of breaker "B." Figures 6.11 through 6.14 demonstrate step-by-step sequence.

the magnitude of the fault current. Polarizing circuits are also adversely affected by CTs that saturate. This occurs where a residual circuit is compared with a neutral polarizing circuit to obtain directional characteristics and the apparent shift in the polarizing current results in an unwanted trip.

Current reversals can result in an unwanted two-line trip if carrier transmission from one terminal to another does not respond quickly to provide the desired block function of a trip element. This is shown in a step-by-step sequence in Figs. 6.11 through 6.14. Consider a line 1 fault at the terminals of breaker "B" (Fig. 6.11). For this condition, 2000 amperes of ground fault current is shown to flow on each line from terminal "X" to terminal "Y." Since fault current flow is towards the fault at breakers "A" and "B", **neither** will receive a signal (carrier "off") to initiate tripping. However, it is assumed that both breakers do not open at the same time (breaker "B" opens in 3 cycles and breaker "A" opens in 4 cycles). The response of the relays on line 2 is of prime concern. During the initial fault when breakers "A" and "B" are both closed, a block carrier signal must be sent from breaker "D" to breaker "C" to prevent the tripping of breaker "C." This is shown as a correct "on" carrier signal for 3 cycles in the bottom

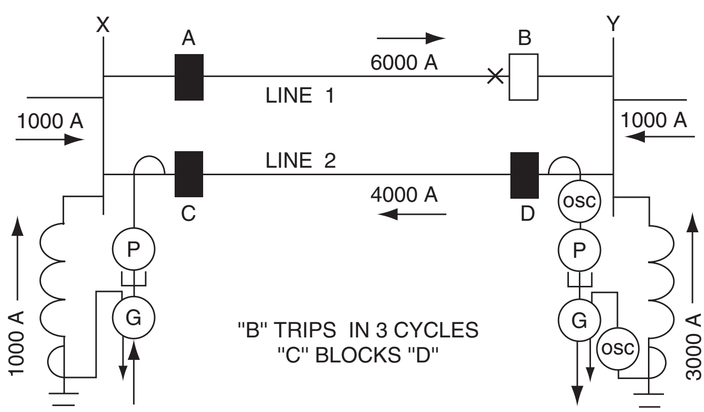


FIGURE 6.12 Second step in sequence.

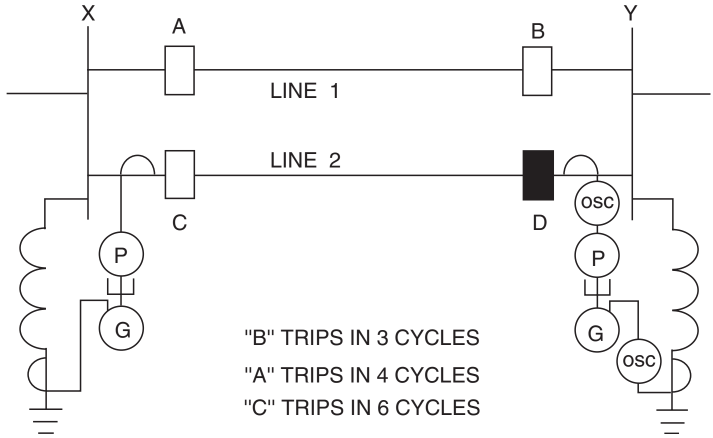


FIGURE 6.13 Third step in sequence.

oscillogram trace in Fig. 6.14. However, when breaker "B" trips in 3 cycles, the fault current in line 2 increases to 4000 amperes and, more importantly, it reverses direction to flow from terminal "Y" to terminal "X." This instantaneous current reversal requires that the directional relays on breaker "C" pickup to initiate a carrier block signal to breaker "D." Failure to accomplish this may result in a trip of breaker "C" if its own carrier signal does not rise rapidly to prevent tripping through its previously made up trip directional elements. This is shown in Fig. 6.13 and oscillogram record Fig. 6.14. An alternate

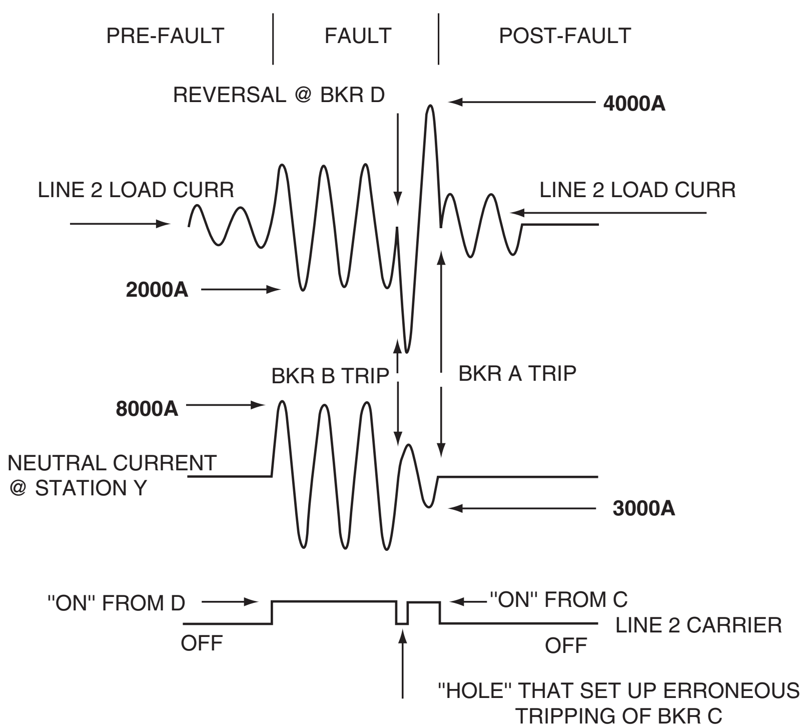


FIGURE 6.14 Final step in sequence.

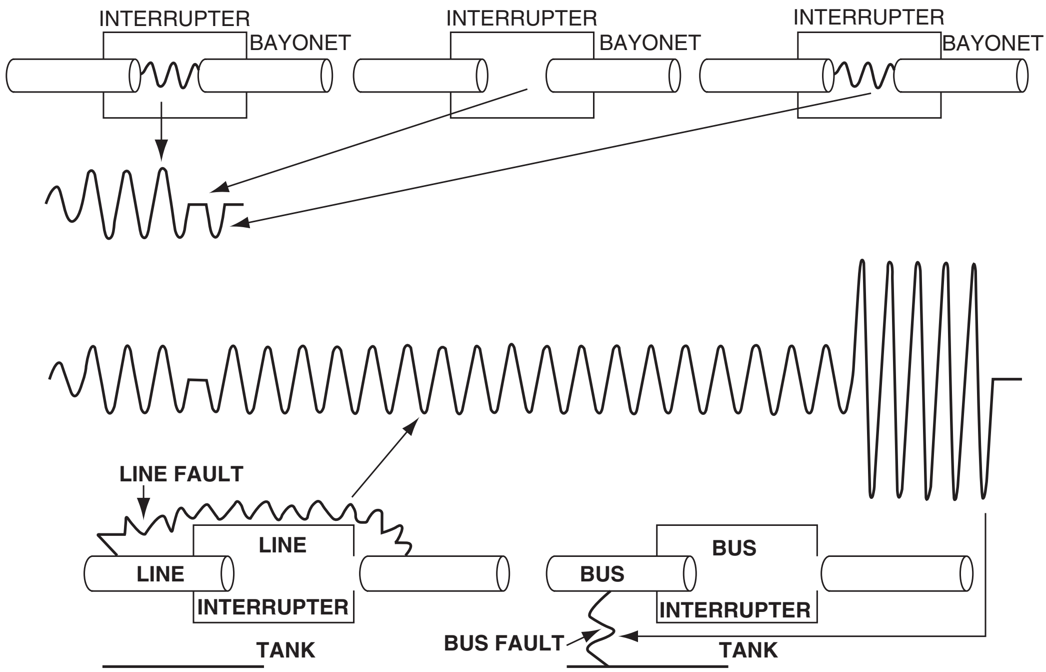


FIGURE 6.15 Diagrams the first restrike within the interrupter.

undesirable operation would be the tripping of breaker "D" if its trip directional elements make up before the carrier block signal from breaker "C" is received at breaker "D." The end result is the same (tripping line 2 for a fault on line 1).

Restrikes in breakers can result in an explosive failure of the breaker. Oscillogams can be used to prevent breaker failures if the first restrike within the interrupter can be detected before a subsequent restrike around the interrupter results in the destruction of the breaker. This is shown diagrammatically

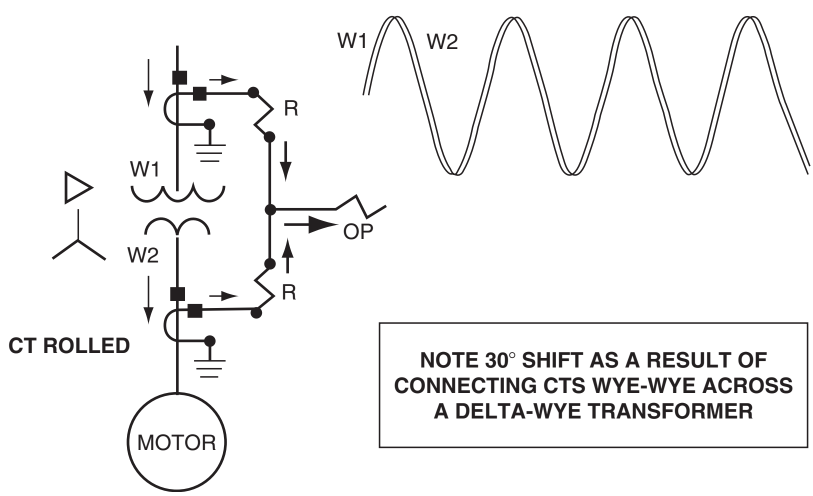


FIGURE 6.16 A microprocessor differential relay installation that depicts the failure to energize a large motor.

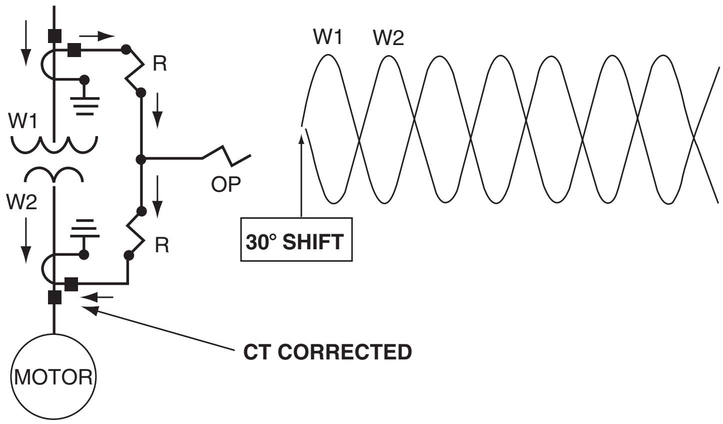


FIGURE 6.17 Corrected connection.

in Fig. 6.15. The upper waveform restrike sequence depicts a 1/2 cycle restrike that is successfully extinguished within the interrupter. The lower waveform depicts a restrike that goes around the interrupter. This restrike cannot be extinguished and will last until the oil becomes badly carbonized and a subsequent fault occurs between the bus breaker terminal and the breaker tank (ground). In Fig. 6.15 the interrupter bypass fault lasted 18 cycles. Depending upon the rate of carbonization, the arc time could last longer or less before the flashover to the tank. The result would be the same. A bus fault that could have devastating affects. One example resulted in the loss of eight generators, thirteen 161 kV lines, and three 500-kV lines. The reason for the extensive loss was the result of burning oil that drifted up into adjacent busses steel causing multiple bus and line faults that deenergized all connected equipment in the station. The restrike phenomena is a result of a subsequent lightning strikes across the initial fault (insulator). In the example given above, lightning arresters were installed on the line side of each breaker and no additional restrikes or breaker failures occurred after the initial distructive failures.

Oscillography in microprocessor relays can also be used to analyze system problems. The problem in Fig. 6.16 involves a microprocessor differential relay installation that depicts the failure to energize a large motor. The CTs on both sides of the transformer were connected wye-wye but the low side CTs were rolled. The 30° shift was corrected in the relay and was accurately portrayed by oscillography in the microprocessor relay but the rolled CTs produced current in the operate circuit that resulted in an erroneous trip. Note that with the low side CTs rolled, the high and low side currents W1 and W2 are in phase (incorrect). The oscillography output clearly pin-pointed the problem. The corrected connection is shown in Fig. 6.17 together with the correct oscillography (W1 and W2 180° out of phase).

II

Power System Dynamics and Stability

Richard G. Farmer
Arizona State University

7

Power System Stability

Prabha Kundur
University of Toronto

This introductory section provides a general description of the power system stability phenomena including fundamental concepts, classification, and definition of associated terms. A historical review of the emergence of different forms of stability problems as power systems evolved and of the developments of methods for their analysis and mitigation is presented. Requirements for consideration of stability in system design and operation are discussed.

7.1 Basic Concepts

Power system stability denotes the ability of an electric power system, for a given initial operating condition, to regain a state of operating equilibrium after being subjected to a physical disturbance, with most system variables bounded so that system integrity is preserved. Integrity of the system is preserved when practically the entire power system remains intact with no tripping of generators or loads, except for those disconnected by isolation of the faulted elements or intentionally tripped to preserve the continuity of operation of the rest of the system. Stability is a condition of equilibrium between opposing forces; instability results when a disturbance leads to a sustained imbalance between the opposing forces.

The power system is a highly nonlinear system that operates in a constantly changing environment; loads, generator outputs, topology, and key operating parameters change continually. When subjected to a transient disturbance, the stability of the system depends on the nature of the disturbance as well as the initial operating condition. The disturbance may be small or large. Small disturbances in the form of load changes occur continually, and the system adjusts to the changing conditions. The system must be able to operate satisfactorily under these conditions and successfully meet the load demand. It must also be able to survive numerous disturbances of a severe nature, such as a short-circuit on a transmission line or loss of a large generator.

Following a transient disturbance, if the power system is stable, it will reach a new equilibrium state with practically the entire system intact; the actions of automatic controls and possibly human operators will eventually restore the system to normal state. On the other hand, if the system is unstable, it will result in a run-away or run-down situation; for example, a progressive increase in angular separation of generator rotors, or a progressive decrease in bus voltages. An unstable system condition could lead to cascading outages and a shut-down of a major portion of the power system.

The response of the power system to a disturbance may involve much of the equipment. For instance, a fault on a critical element followed by its isolation by protective relays will cause variations in power flows, network bus voltages, and machine rotor speeds; the voltage variations will actuate both generator and transmission network voltage regulators; the generator speed variations will actuate prime mover governors; and the voltage and frequency variations will affect the system loads to varying degrees depending on their individual characteristics. Further, devices used to protect individual equipment may respond to variations in system variables and thereby affect the power system performance. A typical modern power system is thus a very high-order multivariable process whose dynamic performance is influenced by a wide array of devices with different response rates and characteristics. Hence, instability in a power system may occur in many different ways depending on the system topology, operating mode, and the form of the disturbance.

Traditionally, the stability problem has been one of maintaining synchronous operation. Since power systems rely on synchronous machines for generation of electrical power, a necessary condition for satisfactory system operation is that all synchronous machines remain in synchronism or, colloquially, "in step." This aspect of stability is influenced by the dynamics of generator rotor angles and power-angle relationships.

Instability may also be encountered without the loss of synchronism. For example, a system consisting of a generator feeding an induction motor can become unstable due to collapse of load voltage. In this instance, it is the stability and control of voltage that is the issue, rather than the maintenance of synchronism. This type of instability can also occur in the case of loads covering an extensive area in a large system.

In the event of a significant load/generation mismatch, generator and prime mover controls become important, as well as system controls and special protections. If not properly coordinated, it is possible for the system frequency to become unstable, and generating units and/or loads may ultimately be tripped possibly leading to a system blackout. This is another case where units may remain in synchronism (until tripped by such protections as under-frequency), but the system becomes unstable.

Because of the high dimensionality and complexity of stability problems, it is essential to make simplifying assumptions and to analyze specific types of problems using the right degree of detail of system representation. The following subsection describes the classification of power system stability into different categories.

7.2 Classification of Power System Stability

7.2.1 Need for Classification

Power system stability is a single problem; however, it is impractical to deal with it as such. Instability of the power system can take different forms and is influenced by a wide range of factors. Analysis of stability problems, including identifying essential factors that contribute to instability and devising methods of improving stable operation is greatly facilitated by classification of stability into appropriate categories. These are based on the following considerations (Kundur, 1994; Kundur and Morison, 1997):

- The physical nature of the resulting instability related to the main system parameter in which instability can be observed.
- The size of the disturbance considered indicates the most appropriate method of calculation and prediction of stability.
- The devices, processes, and the time span that must be taken into consideration in order to determine stability.

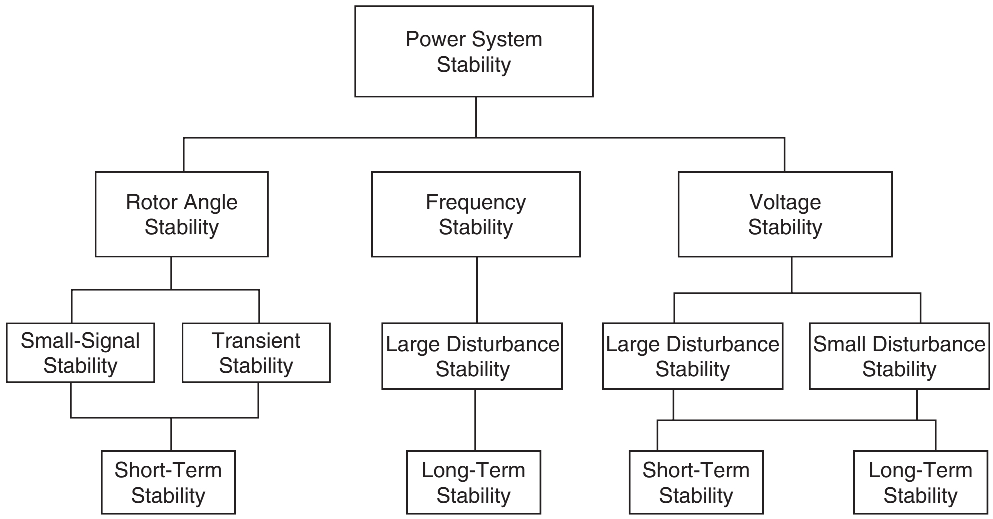


FIGURE 7.1 Classification of power system stability.

Figure 7.1 shows a possible classification of power system stability into various categories and subcategories. The following are descriptions of the corresponding forms of stability phenomena.

7.2.2 Rotor Angle Stability

Rotor angle stability is concerned with the ability of interconnected synchronous machines of a power system to remain in synchronism under normal operating conditions and after being subjected to a disturbance. It depends on the ability to maintain/restore equilibrium between electromagnetic torque and mechanical torque of each synchronous machine in the system. Instability that may result occurs in the form of increasing angular swings of some generators leading to their loss of synchronism with other generators.

The rotor angle stability problem involves the study of the electromechanical oscillations inherent in power systems. A fundamental factor in this problem is the manner in which the power outputs of synchronous machines vary as their rotor angles change. The mechanism by which interconnected synchronous machines maintain synchronism with one another is through restoring forces, which act whenever there are forces tending to accelerate or decelerate one or more machines with respect to other machines. Under steady-state conditions, there is equilibrium between the input mechanical torque and the output electrical torque of each machine, and the speed remains constant. If the system is perturbed, this equilibrium is upset, resulting in acceleration or deceleration of the rotors of the machines according to the laws of motion of a rotating body. If one generator temporarily runs faster than another, the angular position of its rotor relative to that of the slower machine will advance. The resulting angular difference transfers part of the load from the slow machine to the fast machine, depending on the power-angle relationship. This tends to reduce the speed difference and hence the angular separation. The power-angle relationship, as discussed above, is highly nonlinear. Beyond a certain limit, an increase in angular separation is accompanied by a decrease in power transfer; this increases the angular separation further and leads to instability. For any given situation, the stability of the system depends on whether or not the deviations in angular positions of the rotors result in sufficient restoring torques.

It should be noted that loss of synchronism can occur between one machine and the rest of the system, or between groups of machines, possibly with synchronism maintained within each group after separating from each other.

The change in electrical torque of a synchronous machine following a perturbation can be resolved into two components:

- *Synchronizing torque* component, in phase with a rotor angle perturbation.
- *Damping torque* component, in phase with the speed deviation.

System stability depends on the existence of both components of torque for each of the synchronous machines. Lack of sufficient synchronizing torque results in *aperiodic* or *non-oscillatory instability*, whereas lack of damping torque results in *oscillatory instability*.

For convenience in analysis and for gaining useful insight into the nature of stability problems, it is useful to characterize rotor angle stability in terms of the following two categories:

1. *Small signal* (or *steady state*) *stability* is concerned with the ability of the power system to maintain synchronism under small disturbances. The disturbances are considered to be sufficiently small that linearization of system equations is permissible for purposes of analysis. Such disturbances are continually encountered in normal system operation, such as small changes in load.

   Small signal stability depends on the initial operating state of the system. Instability that may result can be of two forms: (i) increase in rotor angle through a non-oscillatory or aperiodic mode due to lack of synchronizing torque, or (ii) rotor oscillations of increasing amplitude due to lack of sufficient damping torque.

   In today's practical power systems, small signal stability is largely a problem of insufficient damping of oscillations. The time frame of interest in small-signal stability studies is on the order of 10 to 20 s following a disturbance. The stability of the following types of oscillations is of concern:

   - *Local modes or machine-system modes*, associated with the swinging of units at a generating station with respect to the rest of the power system. The term "local" is used because the oscillations are localized at one station or a small part of the power system.
   - *Interarea modes*, associated with the swinging of many machines in one part of the system against machines in other parts. They are caused by two or more groups of closely coupled machines that are interconnected by weak ties.
   - *Control modes*, associated with generating units and other controls. Poorly tuned exciters, speed governors, HVDC converters, and static var compensators are the usual causes of instability of these modes.
   - *Torsional modes*, associated with the turbine-generator shaft system rotational components. Instability of torsional modes may be caused by interaction with excitation controls, speed governors, HVDC controls, and series-capacitor-compensated lines.

2. *Large disturbance rotor angle stability or transient stability*, as it is commonly referred to, is concerned with the ability of the power system to maintain synchronism when subjected to a severe transient disturbance. The resulting system response involves large excursions of generator rotor angles and is influenced by the nonlinear power-angle relationship.

   Transient stability depends on both the initial operating state of the system and the severity of the disturbance. Usually, the disturbance alters the system such that the post-disturbance steady state operation will be different from that prior to the disturbance. Instability is in the form of aperiodic drift due to insufficient synchronizing torque, and is referred to as *first swing stability*. In large power systems, transient instability may not always occur as first swing instability associated with a single mode; it could be as a result of increased peak deviation caused by superposition of several modes of oscillation causing large excursions of rotor angle beyond the first swing.

   The time frame of interest in transient stability studies is usually limited to 3 to 5 sec following the disturbance. It may extend to 10 sec for very large systems with dominant inter-area swings.

   Power systems experience a wide variety of disturbances. It is impractical and uneconomical to design the systems to be stable for every possible contingency. The design contingencies are selected on the basis that they have a reasonably high probability of occurrence.

As identified in Fig. 7.1, small signal stability as well as transient stability are categorized as short term phenomena.

7.2.3 Voltage Stability

Voltage stability is concerned with the ability of a power system to maintain steady voltages at all buses in the system under normal operating conditions, and after being subjected to a disturbance. Instability that may result occurs in the form of a progressive fall or rise of voltage of some buses. The possible outcome of voltage instability is loss of load in the area where voltages reach unacceptably low values, or a loss of integrity of the power system.

Progressive drop in bus voltages can also be associated with rotor angles going out of step. For example, the gradual loss of synchronism of machines as rotor angles between two groups of machines approach or exceed 180° would result in very low voltages at intermediate points in the network close to the electrical center (Kundur, 1994). In contrast, the type of sustained fall of voltage that is related to voltage instability occurs where rotor angle stability is not an issue.

The main factor contributing to voltage instability is usually the voltage drop that occurs when active and reactive power flow through inductive reactances associated with the transmission network; this limits the capability of transmission network for power transfer. The power transfer limit is further limited when some of the generators hit their reactive power capability limits. The driving force for voltage instability are the loads; in response to a disturbance, power consumed by the loads tends to be restored by the action of distribution voltage regulators, tap changing transformers, and thermostats. Restored loads increase the stress on the high voltage network causing more voltage reduction. A run-down situation causing voltage instability occurs when load dynamics attempts to restore power consumption beyond the capability of the transmission system and the connected generation (Kundur, 1994; Taylor, 1994; Van Cutsem and Vournas, 1998).

While the most common form of voltage instability is the progressive drop in bus voltages, the possibility of overvoltage instability also exists and has been experienced at least on one system (Van Cutsem and Mailhot, 1997). It can occur when EHV transmission lines are loaded significantly below surge impedance loading and underexcitation limiters prevent generators and/or synchronous condensers from absorbing the excess reactive power. Under such conditions, transformer tap changers, in their attempt to control load voltage, may cause voltage instability.

Voltage stability problems may also be experienced at the terminals of HVDC links. They are usually associated with HVDC links connected to weak AC systems (CIGRE Working Group 14.05, 1992). The HVDC link control strategies have a very significant influence on such problems.

As in the case of rotor angle stability, it is useful to classify voltage stability into the following subcategories:

1. *Large disturbance voltage stability* is concerned with a system's ability to control voltages following large disturbances such as system faults, loss of generation, or circuit contingencies. This ability is determined by the system-load characteristics and the interactions of both continuous and discrete controls and protections. Determination of large disturbance stability requires the examination of the nonlinear dynamic performance of a system over a period of time sufficient to capture the interactions of such devices as under-load transformer tap changers and generator field-current limiters. The study period of interest may extend from a few seconds to tens of minutes. Therefore, long term dynamic simulations are required for analysis (Van Cutsem et al., 1995).
2. *Small disturbance voltage stability* is concerned with a system's ability to control voltages following small perturbations such as incremental changes in system load. This form of stability is determined by the characteristics of loads, continuous controls, and discrete controls at a given instant of time. This concept is useful in determining, at any instant, how the system voltage will respond to small system changes. The basic processes contributing

to small disturbance voltage instability are essentially of a steady state nature. Therefore, static analysis can be effectively used to determine stability margins, identify factors influencing stability, and examine a wide range of system conditions and a large number of postcontingency scenarios (Gao et al., 1992). A criterion for small disturbance voltage stability is that, at a given operating condition for every bus in the system, the bus voltage magnitude increases as the reactive power injection at the same bus is increased. A system is voltage unstable if, for at least one bus in the system, the bus voltage magnitude (V) decreases as the reactive power injection (Q) at the same bus is increased. In other words, a system is voltage stable if V-Q sensitivity is positive for every bus and unstable if V-Q sensitivity is negative for at least one bus.

The time frame of interest for voltage stability problems may vary from a few seconds to tens of minutes. Therefore, voltage stability may be either a short-term or a long-term phenomenon.

Voltage instability does not always occur in its pure form. Often, the rotor angle instability and voltage instability go hand in hand. One may lead to the other, and the distinction may not be clear. However, distinguishing between angle stability and voltage stability is important in understanding the underlying causes of the problems in order to develop appropriate design and operating procedures.

7.2.4 Frequency Stability

Frequency stability is concerned with the ability of a power system to maintain steady frequency within a nominal range following a severe system upset resulting in a significant imbalance between generation and load. It depends on the ability to restore balance between system generation and load, with minimum loss of load.

Severe system upsets generally result in large excursions of frequency, power flows, voltage, and other system variables, thereby invoking the actions of processes, controls, and protections that are not modeled in conventional transient stability or voltage stability studies. These processes may be very slow, such as boiler dynamics, or only triggered for extreme system conditions, such as volts/hertz protection tripping generators. In large interconnected power systems, this type of situation is most commonly associated with islanding. Stability in this case is a question of whether or not each island will reach an acceptable state of operating equilibrium with minimal loss of load. It is determined by the overall response of the island as evidenced by its mean frequency, rather than relative motion of machines. Generally, frequency stability problems are associated with inadequacies in equipment responses, poor coordination of control and protection equipment, or insufficient generation reserve. Examples of such problems are reported by Kundur et al. (1985); Chow et al. (1989); and Kundur (1981).

Over the course of a frequency instability, the characteristic times of the processes and devices that are activated by the large shifts in frequency and other system variables will range from a matter of seconds, corresponding to the responses of devices such as generator controls and protections, to several minutes, corresponding to the responses of devices such as prime mover energy supply systems and load voltage regulators.

Although frequency stability is impacted by fast as well as slow dynamics, the overall time frame of interest extends to several minutes. Therefore, it is categorized as a long-term phenomenon in Fig. 7.1.

7.2.5 Comments on Classification

The classification of stability has been based on several considerations so as to make it convenient for identification of the causes of instability, the application of suitable analysis tools, and the development of corrective measures appropriate for a specific stability problem. There clearly is some overlap between the various forms of instability, since as systems fail, more than one form of instability may ultimately emerge. However, a system event should be classified based primarily on the dominant initiating phenomenon, separated into those related primarily with voltage, rotor angle, or frequency.

While classification of power system stability is an effective and convenient means to deal with the complexities of the problem, the overall stability of the system should always be kept in mind. Solutions to stability problems of one category should not be at the expense of another. It is essential to look at all aspects of the stability phenomena, and at each aspect from more than one viewpoint.

7.3 Historical Review of Stability Problems

As electric power systems have evolved over the last century, different forms of instability have emerged as being important during different periods. The methods of analysis and resolution of stability problems were influenced by the prevailing developments in computational tools, stability theory, and power system control technology. A review of the history of the subject is useful for a better understanding of the electric power industry's practices with regard to system stability.

Power system stability was first recognized as an important problem in the 1920s (Steinmetz, 1920; Evans and Bergvall, 1924; Wilkins, 1926). The early stability problems were associated with remote power plants feeding load centers over long transmission lines. With slow exciters and noncontinuously acting voltage regulators, power transfer capability was often limited by steady-state as well as transient rotor angle instability due to insufficient synchronizing torque. To analyze system stability, graphical techniques such as the equal area criterion and power circle diagrams were developed. These methods were successfully applied to early systems which could be effectively represented as two machine systems.

As the complexity of power systems increased, and interconnections were found to be economically attractive, the complexity of the stability problems also increased and systems could no longer be treated as two machine systems. This led to the development in the 1930s of the network analyzer, which was capable of power flow analysis of multimachine systems. System dynamics, however, still had to be analyzed by solving the swing equations by hand using step-by-step numerical integration. Generators were represented by the classical "fixed voltage behind transient reactance" model. Loads were represented as constant impedances.

Improvements in system stability came about by way of faster fault clearing and fast acting excitation systems. Steady-state aperiodic instability was virtually eliminated by the implementation of continuously acting voltage regulators. With increased dependence on controls, the emphasis of stability studies moved from transmission network problems to generator problems, and simulations with more detailed representations of synchronous machines and excitation systems were required.

The 1950s saw the development of the analog computer, with which simulations could be carried out to study in detail the dynamic characteristics of a generator and its controls rather than the overall behavior of multimachine systems. Later in the 1950s, the digital computer emerged as the ideal means to study the stability problems associated with large interconnected systems.

In the 1960s, most of the power systems in the U.S. and Canada were part of one of two large interconnected systems, one in the east and the other in the west. In 1967, low capacity HVDC ties were also established between the east and west systems. At present, the power systems in North America form virtually one large system. There were similar trends in growth of interconnections in other countries. While interconnections result in operating economy and increased reliability through mutual assistance, they contribute to increased complexity of stability problems and increased consequences of instability. The Northeast Blackout of November 9, 1965, made this abundantly clear; it focused the attention of the public and of regulatory agencies, as well as of engineers, on the problem of stability and importance of power system reliability.

Until recently, most industry effort and interest has been concentrated on *transient* (*rotor angle*) *stability.* Powerful transient stability simulation programs have been developed that are capable of modeling large complex systems using detailed device models. Significant improvements in transient stability performance of power systems have been achieved through use of high-speed fault clearing, high-response exciters, series capacitors, and special stability controls and protection schemes.

The increased use of high response exciters, coupled with decreasing strengths of transmission systems, has led to an increased focus on *small signal* (*rotor angle*) *stability.* This type of angle instability is often seen as local plant modes of oscillation, or in the case of groups of machines interconnected by weak links, as interarea modes of oscillation. Small signal stability problems have led to the development of special study techniques, such as modal analysis using eigenvalue techniques (Martins, 1986; Kundur et al., 1990). In addition, supplementary control of generator excitation systems, static Var compensators, and HVDC converters is increasingly being used to solve system oscillation problems. There has also been a general interest in the application of power electronic based controllers referred to as FACTS (Flexible AC Transmission Systems) controllers for damping of power system oscillations (IEEE, 1996).

In the 1970s and 1980s, frequency stability problems experienced following major system upsets led to an investigation of the underlying causes of such problems and to the development of long term dynamic simulation programs to assist in their analysis (Davidson et al., 1975; Converti et al., 1976; Stubbe et al., 1989; Inoue et al., 1995; Ontario Hydro, 1989). The focus of many of these investigations was on the performance of thermal power plants during system upsets (Kundur et al., 1985; Chow et al., 1989; Kundur, 1981; Younkins and Johnson, 1981). Guidelines were developed by an IEEE Working Group for enhancing power plant response during major frequency disturbances (1983). Analysis and modeling needs of power systems during major frequency disturbances was also addressed in a recent CIGRE Task Force report (1999).

Since the late 1970s, voltage instability has been the cause of several power system collapses worldwide (Kundur, 1994; Taylor, 1994; IEEE, 1990). Once associated primarily with weak radial distribution systems, voltage stability problems are now a source of concern in highly developed and mature networks as a result of heavier loadings and power transfers over long distances. Consequently, voltage stability is increasingly being addressed in system planning and operating studies. Powerful analytical tools are available for its analysis (Van Cutsem et al., 1995; Gao et al., 1992; Morison et al., 1993), and well-established criteria and study procedures are evolving (Abed, 1999; Gao et al., 1996).

Present-day power systems are being operated under increasingly stressed conditions due to the prevailing trend to make the most of existing facilities. Increased competition, open transmission access, and construction and environmental constraints are shaping the operation of electric power systems in new ways that present greater challenges for secure system operation. This is abundantly clear from the increasing number of major power-grid blackouts that have been experienced in recent years; for example, Brazil blackout of March 11, 1999; Northeast USA-Canada blackout of August 14, 2003; Southern Sweden and Eastern Denmark blackout of September 23, 2003; and Italian blackout of September 28, 2003. Planning and operation of today's power systems require a careful consideration of all forms of system instability. Significant advances have been made in recent years in providing the study engineers with a number of powerful tools and techniques. A coordinated set of complementary programs, such as the one described by Kundur et al. (1994) makes it convenient to carry out a comprehensive analysis of power system stability.

7.4 Consideration of Stability in System Design and Operation

For reliable service, a power system must remain intact and be capable of withstanding a wide variety of disturbances. Owing to economic and technical limitations, no power system can be stable for all possible disturbances or contingencies. In practice, power systems are designed and operated so as to be stable for a selected list of contingencies, normally referred to as "design contingencies" (Kundur, 1994). Experience dictates their selection. The contingencies are selected on the basis that they have a significant probability of occurrence and a sufficiently high degree of severity, given the large number of elements comprising the power system. The overall goal is to strike a balance between costs and benefits of achieving a selected level of system security.

While security is primarily a function of the physical system and its current attributes, secure operation is facilitated by:

- Proper selection and deployment of preventive and emergency controls.
- Assessing stability limits and operating the power system within these limits.

Security assessment has been historically conducted in an off-line operation planning environment in which stability for the near-term forecasted system conditions is exhaustively determined. The results of stability limits are loaded into look-up tables which are accessed by the operator to assess the security of a prevailing system operating condition.

In the new competitive utility environment, power systems can no longer be operated in a very structured and conservative manner; the possible types and combinations of power transfer transactions may grow enormously. The present trend is, therefore, to use online dynamic security assessment. This is feasible with today's computer hardware and stability analysis software. (Morison et al., 2004).

In addition to online dynamic security assessment, a wide range of other new and emerging technologies could assist in significantly minimizing the occurrence and impact of widespread blackouts. These include:

- Risk-based system security assessment
- Adaptive relaying
- Wide-area monitoring and control
- Flexible AC Transmission (FACTS) devices
- Distributed generation technologies

Acknowledgment

The definition and classification of power system stability presented in this section is based on the report prepared by a joint IEEE/CIGRE Task Force on Power System Stability Terms, Classification, and Definitions. This report has been published in the IEEE Transactions on Power Systems, August 2004 and as CIGRE Technical Brochure 231, June 2003.

References

Abed, A.M., WSCC voltage stability criteria, undervoltage load shedding strategy, and reactive power reserve monitoring methodology, in *Proceedings of the* 1999 *IEEE PES Summer Meeting*, Edmonton, Alberta, 191, 1999.

Chow, Q.B., Kundur, P., Acchione, P.N., and Lautsch, B., Improving nuclear generating station response for electrical grid islanding, *IEEE Trans.*, EC-4, 3, 406, 1989.

CIGRE Task Force 38.02.14 report, Analysis and modelling needs of power systems under major frequency disturbances, 1999.

CIGRE Working Group 14.05 report, Guide for planning DC links terminating at AC systems locations having short-circuit capacities, Part I: AC/DC Interaction Phenomena, CIGRE Guide No. 95, 1992.

Converti, V., Gelopulos, D.P., Housely, M., and Steinbrenner, G., Long-term stability solution of interconnected power systems, *IEEE Trans.*, PAS-95, 1, 96, 1976.

Davidson, D.R., Ewart, D.N., and Kirchmayer, L.K., Long term dynamic response of power systems—an analysis of major disturbances, *IEEE Trans.*, PAS-94, 819, 1975.

EPRI Report EL-6627, Long-term dynamics simulation: Modeling requirements, Final Report of Project 2473-22, Prepared by Ontario Hydro, 1989.

Evans, R.D. and Bergvall, R.C., Experimental analysis of stability and power limitations, *AIEE Trans.*, 39, 1924.

Gao, B., Morison, G.K., and Kundur, P., Towards the development of a systematic approach for voltage stability assessment of large scale power systems, *IEEE Trans. on Power Systems*, 11, 3, 1314, 1996.

Gao, B., Morison, G.K., and Kundur, P., Voltage stability evaluation using modal analysis, *IEEE Trans.* PWRS-7, 4, 1529, 1992.

IEEE PES Special Publication, FACTS Applications, Catalogue No. 96TP116-0, 1996.

IEEE Special Publication 90TH0358-2-PWR, *Voltage Stability of Power Systems: Concepts, Analytical Tools and Industry Experience,* 1990.

IEEE Working Group, Guidelines for enhancing power plant response to partial load rejections, *IEEE Trans.*, PAS-102, 6, 1501, 1983.

Inoue, T., Ichikawa, T., Kundur, P., and Hirsch, P., Nuclear plant models for medium- to long-term power system stability studies, *IEEE Trans. on Power Systems*, 10, 141, 1995.

Kundur, P., A survey of utility experiences with power plant response during partial load rejections and system disturbances, *IEEE Trans.*, PAS-100, 5, 2471, 1981.

Kundur, P., *Power System Stability and Control*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1994.

Kundur, P. and Morison, G.K., A review of definitions and classification of stability problems in today's power systems, Paper presented at the *Panel Session on Stability Terms and Definitions, IEEE PES Winter Meeting,* New York, 1997.

Kundur, P., Lee, D.C., Bayne, J.P., and Dandeno, P.L., Impact of turbine generator controls on unit performance under system disturbance conditions, *IEEE Trans.* PAS-104, 1262, 1985.

Kundur, P., Rogers, G.J., Wong, D.Y., Wang, L. and Lauby, M.G., A comprehensive computer program package for small signal stability analysis of power systems, *IEEE Trans. on Power Systems*, 5, 1076, 1990.

Kundur, P., Morison, G.K., and Balu, N.J., A comprehensive approach to power system analysis, CIGRE Paper 38–106, presented at the 1994 Session, Paris, France.

Martins, N., Efficient eigenvalue and frequency response methods applied to power system small-signal stability studies, *IEEE Trans.*, PWRS-1, 217, 1986.

Morison, G.K., Gao, B., and Kundur, P., Voltage stability analysis using static and dynamic approaches, *IEEE Trans. on Power Systems*, 8, 3, 1159, 1993.

Morison, G.K., Wang, L., and Kundur, P., Power System Security Assessment, *IEEE Power & Energy Magazine*, September/October 2004.

Steinmetz, C.P., Power control and stability of electric generating stations, *AIEE Trans.*, XXXIX, 1215, 1920.

Stubbe, M., Bihain, A., Deuse, J., and Baader, J.C., STAG a new unified software program for the study of dynamic behavior of electrical power systems, *IEEE Trans. on Power Systems*, 4, 1, 1989.

Taylor, C.W., *Power System Voltage Stability,* McGraw-Hill, New York, 1994.

Van Cutsem, T. and Mailhot R., Validation of a fast voltage stability analysis method on the Hydro-Quebec system, *IEEE Trans. on Power Systems*, 12, 282, 1997.

Van Cutsem, T. and Vournas, C., *Voltage Stability of Electric Power Systems*, Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht, The Netherlands, 1998.

Van Cutsem, T., Jacquemart, Y., Marquet, J.N., and Pruvot, P., A comprehensive analysis of mid-term, voltage stability, *IEEE Trans. on Power Systems*, 10, 1173, 1995.

Wilkins, R., Practical aspects of system stability, *AIEE Trans.*, 41, 1926.

Younkins, T.D. and Johnson, L.H., Steam turbine overspeed control and behavior during system disturbances, *IEEE Trans.*, PAS-100, 5, 2504, 1981.

8

Transient Stability

Kip Morison
Powertech Labs, Inc.

8.1 Introduction

As discussed in Chapter 7, power system stability was recognized as a problem as far back as the 1920s at which time the characteristic structure of systems consisted of remote power plants feeding load centers over long distances. These early stability problems, often a result of insufficient synchronizing torque, were the first emergence of transient instability. As defined in the previous chapter, *transient stability* is the ability of a power system to remain in synchronism when subjected to large transient disturbances. These disturbances may include faults on transmission elements, loss of load, loss of generation, or loss of system components such as transformers or transmission lines.

Although many different forms of power system stability have emerged and become problematic in recent years, transient stability still remains a basic and important consideration in power system design and operation. While it is true that the operation of many power systems are limited by phenomena such as voltage stability or small-signal stability, most systems are prone to transient instability under certain conditions or contingencies and hence the understanding and analysis of transient stability remain fundamental issues. Also, we shall see later in this chapter that transient instability can occur in a very short time-frame (a few seconds) leaving no time for operator intervention to mitigate problems; it is therefore essential to deal with the problem in the design stage or severe operating restrictions may result.

In this chapter we discuss the basic principles of transient stability, methods of analysis, control and enhancement, and practical aspects of its influence on power system design and operation.

8.2 Basic Theory of Transient Stability

Most power system engineers are familiar with plots of generator rotor angle (δ) versus time as shown in Fig. 8.1. These "swing curves" plotted for a generator subjected to a particular system disturbance show whether a generator rotor angle recovers and oscillates around a new equilibrium point as in trace "a" or

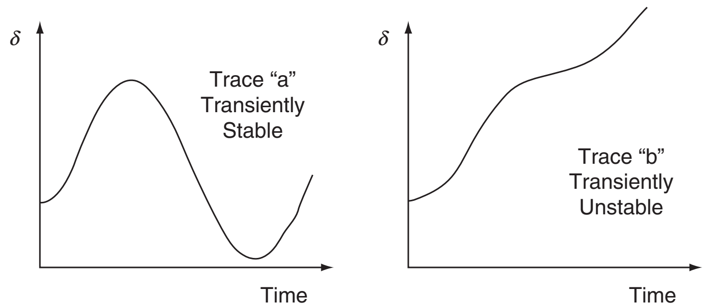


FIGURE 8.1 Plots showing the trajectory of generator rotor angle through time for transient stable and transiently unstable cases.

whether it increases aperiodically such as in trace "b." The former case is deemed to be transiently stable, and the latter case transiently unstable. What factors determine whether a machine will be stable or unstable? How can the stability of large power systems be analyzed? If a case is unstable, what can be done to enhance its stability? These are some of the questions we seek to answer in this section.

Two concepts are essential in understanding transient stability: (i) the swing equation and (ii) the power–angle relationship. These can be used together to describe the equal area criterion, a simple graphical approach to assessing transient stability [1–3].

8.2.1 Swing Equation

In a synchronous machine, the prime mover exerts a mechanical torque T_m on the shaft of the machine and the machine produces an electromagnetic torque T_e. If, as a result of a disturbance, the mechanical torque is greater than the electromagnetic torque, an accelerating torque T_a exists and is given by

$$T_a = T_m - T_e \tag{8.1}$$

This ignores the other torques caused by friction, core loss, and windage in the machine. T_a has the effect of accelerating the machine, which has an inertia J (kg $\cdot$ m^2) made up of the inertia of the generator and the prime mover and therefore

$$J\frac{\mathrm{d}\omega_m}{\mathrm{d}t} = T_a = T_m - T_e \tag{8.2}$$

where t is time in seconds and ω_m is the angular velocity of the machine rotor in mechanical rad/s. It is common practice to express this equation in terms of the inertia constant H of the machine. If ω_{0m} is the rated angular velocity in mechanical rad/s, J can be written as

$$J = \frac{2H}{\omega_{0m}^2} VA_{\text{base}} \tag{8.3}$$

Therefore

$$\frac{2H}{\omega_{0m}^2} VA_{\text{base}} \frac{\mathrm{d}\omega_m}{\mathrm{d}t} = T_m - T_e \tag{8.4}$$

And now, if ω_r denotes the angular velocity of the rotor (rad/s) and ω_0 its rated value, the equation can be written as

$$2H \frac{d\overline{\omega}_r}{dt} = \overline{T}_m - \overline{T}_e \tag{8.5}$$

Finally it can be shown that

$$\frac{d\overline{\omega}_r}{dt} = \frac{d^2\delta}{\omega_0 dt^2} \tag{8.6}$$

where δ is the angular position of the rotor (elec. rad/s) with respect to a synchronously rotating reference frame.

Combining Eqs. (8.5) and (8.6) results in the *swing equation* [Eq. (8.7)], so-called because it describes the swings of the rotor angle δ during disturbances:

$$\frac{2H}{\omega_0} \frac{d^2\delta}{dt^2} = \overline{T}_m - \overline{T}_e \tag{8.7}$$

An additional term $(-K_D \Delta\overline{\omega}_r)$ may be added to the right-hand side of Eq. (8.7) to account for a component of damping torque not included explicitly in T_e.

For a system to be *transiently stable* during a disturbance, it is necessary for the rotor angle (as its behavior is described by the swing equation) to oscillate around an equilibrium point. If the rotor angle increases indefinitely, the machine is said to be *transiently unstable* as the machine continues to accelerate and does not reach a new state of equilibrium. In multimachine systems, such a machine will "pull out of step" and lose synchronism with the rest of the machines.

8.2.2 Power–Angle Relationship

Consider a simple model of a single generator connected to an infinite bus through a transmission system as shown in Fig. 8.2. The model can be reduced as shown by replacing the generator with a constant voltage behind a transient reactance (classical model). It is well known that there is a maximum power that can be transmitted to the infinite bus in such a network. The relationship between the electrical power of the generator P_e and the rotor angle of the machine δ is given by

$$P_e = \frac{E' E_B}{X_T} \sin\delta = P_{max} \sin\delta \tag{8.8}$$

where

$$P_{max} = \frac{E' E_B}{X_T} \tag{8.9}$$

Equation (8.8) can be shown graphically as Fig. 8.3 from which it can be seen that as the power initially increases δ increases until reaching 90° when P_e reaches its maximum. Beyond $\delta = 90°$, the power decreases until at $\delta = 180°$, $P_e = 0$. This is the so-called power–angle relationship and describes the transmitted power as a function of rotor angle. It is clear from Eq. (8.9) that the maximum power is a function of the voltages of the generator and infinite bus, and more importantly, a function of the transmission system reactance; the larger the reactance (for example the longer or weaker the transmission circuits), the lower the maximum power.

Figure 8.3 shows that for a given input power to the generator P_{m1}, the electrical output power is P_e (equal to P_m) and the corresponding rotor angle is δ_a. As the mechanical power is increased to P_{m2}, the rotor angle advances to δ_b. Figure 8.4 shows the case with one of the transmission lines removed causing

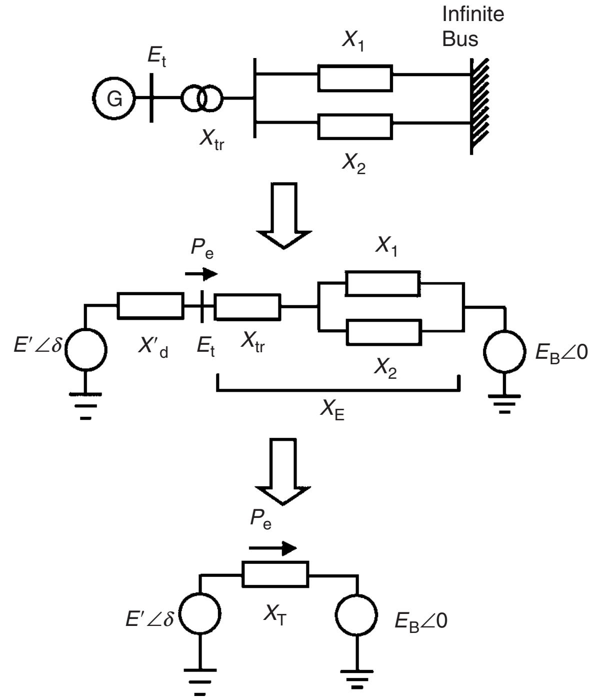


FIGURE 8.2 Simple model of a generator connected to an infinite bus.

an increase in X_T and a reduction P_{max}. It can be seen that for the same mechanical input (P_{m1}), the situation with one line removed causes an increase in rotor angle to δ_c.

8.2.3 Equal Area Criterion

By combining the dynamic behavior of the generator as defined by the swing equation, with the power–angle relationship, it is possible to illustrate the concept of transient stability using the *equal area criterion.*

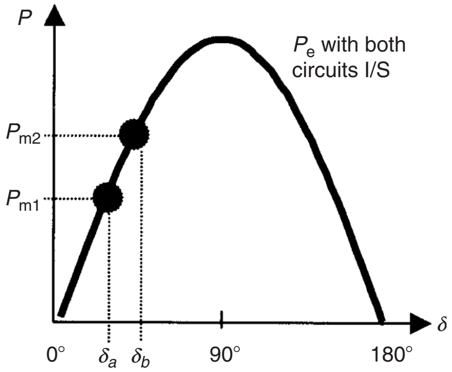


FIGURE 8.3 Power–angle relationship for case with both circuits in-service.

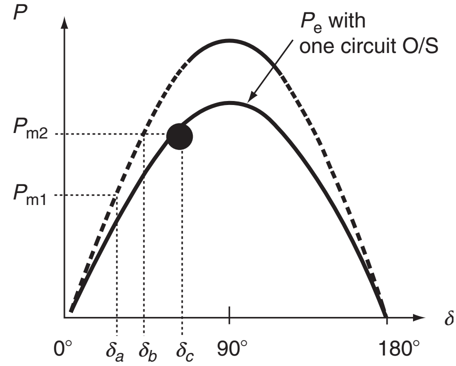


FIGURE 8.4 Power–angle relationship for case with one circuit out-of-service.

Consider Fig. 8.5 in which a step change is applied to the mechanical input of the generator. At the initial power P_{m0}, $\delta = \delta_0$ and the system is at operating point "*a*." As the power is increased in a step to P_{m1} (accelerating power $= P_{m1} - P_e$), the rotor cannot accelerate instantaneously, but traces the curve up to point "*b*" at which time $P_e = P_{m1}$ and the accelerating power is zero. However, the rotor speed is greater than the synchronous speed and the angle continues to increase. Beyond *b*, $P_e > P_m$ and the rotor decelerates until reaching a maximum δ_{max} at which point the rotor angle starts to return toward *b*.

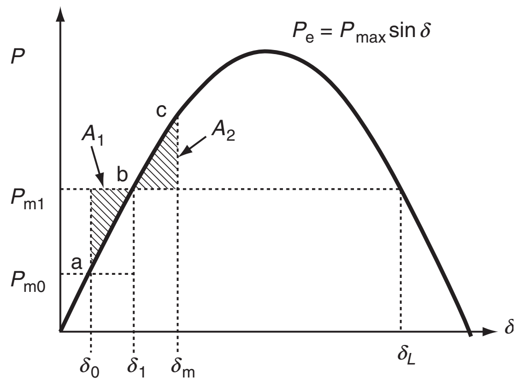


FIGURE 8.5 Power–angle curve showing the areas defined in the Equal Area Criterion. Plot shows the result of a step change in mechanical power.

As we will see, for a single-machine infinite bus system, it is not necessary to plot the swing curve to determine if the rotor angle of the machine increases indefinitely, or if it oscillates around an equilibrium point. The equal area criterion allows stability to be determined using graphical means. While this method is not generally applicable to multimachine systems, it is a valuable learning aid.

Starting with the swing equation as given by Eq. (8.7) and interchanging per unit power for torque

$$\frac{d^2\delta}{dt^2} = \frac{\omega_0}{2H}(P_m - P_e) \tag{8.10}$$

Multiplying both sides by $2\delta/dt$ and integrating gives

$$\left[\frac{d\delta}{dt}\right]^2 = \int_{\delta_0}^{\delta} \frac{\omega_0(P_m - P_e)}{H} d\delta \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{d\delta}{dt} = \sqrt{\int_{\delta_0}^{\delta} \frac{\omega_0(P_m - P_e)}{H} d\delta} \tag{8.11}$$

δ_0 represents the rotor angle when the machine is operating synchronously prior to any disturbance. It is clear that for the system to be stable, δ must increase, reach a maximum (δ_{max}) and then change direction as the rotor returns to complete an oscillation. This means that $d\delta/dt$ (which is initially zero) changes during the disturbance, but must, at a time corresponding to δ_{max}, become zero again. Therefore, as a stability criterion

$$\int_{\delta_0}^{\delta} \frac{\omega_0}{H}(P_m - P_e)\, d\delta = 0 \tag{8.12}$$

This implies that the area under the function $P_m - P_e$ plotted against δ must be zero for a stable system, which requires Area 1 to be equal to Area 2. Area 1 represents the energy gained by the rotor during acceleration and Area 2 represents energy lost during deceleration.

Figures 8.6 and 8.7 show the rotor response (defined by the swing equation) superimposed on the power–angle curve for a stable case and an unstable case, respectively. In both cases, a three-phase fault is applied to the system given in Fig. 8.2. The only difference in the two cases is that the fault-clearing time has been increased for the unstable case. The arrows show the trace of the path followed by the rotor angle in terms of the swing equation and power–angle relationship. It can be seen that for the stable case, the energy gained during rotor acceleration is equal to the energy dissipated during deceleration

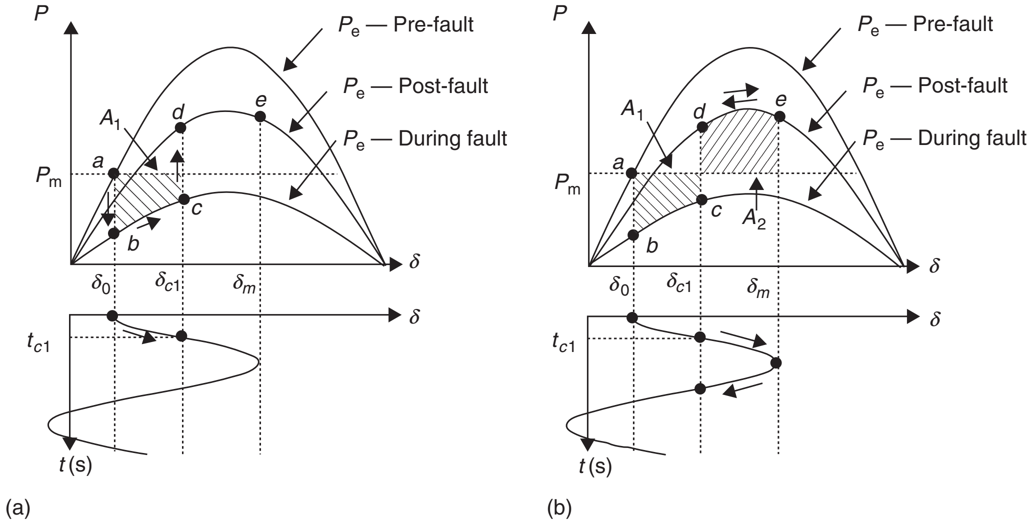


FIGURE 8.6 Rotor response (defined by the swing equation) superimposed on the power–angle curve for a stable case.

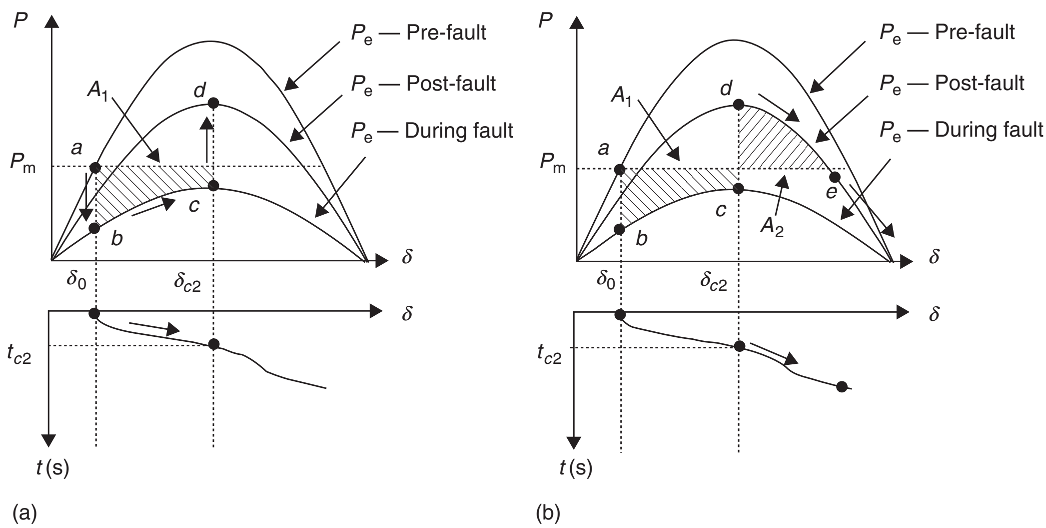


FIGURE 8.7 Rotor response (defined by the swing equation) superimposed on the power–angle curve for an unstable case.

($A_1 = A_2$) and the rotor angle reaches a maximum and recovers. In the unstable case, however, it can be seen that the energy gained during acceleration is greater than that dissipated during deceleration (since the fault is applied for a longer duration) meaning that $A_1 > A_2$ and the rotor continues to advance and does not recover.

8.3 Methods of Analysis of Transient Stability

8.3.1 Modeling

The basic concepts of transient stability presented above are based on highly simplified models. Practical power systems consist of large numbers of generators, transmission circuits, and loads.

For stability assessment, the power system is normally represented using a positive sequence model. The network is represented by a traditional positive sequence powerflow model, which defines the transmission topology, line reactances, connected loads and generation, and predisturbance voltage profile.

Generators can be represented with various levels of detail, selected based on such factors as length of simulation, severity of disturbance, and accuracy required. The most basic model for synchronous generators consists of a constant internal voltage behind a constant transient reactance, and the rotating inertia constant (H). This is the so-called classical representation that neglects a number of characteristics: the action of voltage regulators, variation of field flux linkage, the impact of the machine physical construction on the transient reactances for the direct and quadrature axis, the details of the prime mover or load, and saturation of the magnetic core iron. Historically, classical modeling was used to reduce computational burden associated with more detailed modeling, which is not generally a concern with today's simulation software and computer hardware. However, it is still often used for machines that are very remote from a disturbance (particularly in very large system models) and where more detailed model data is not available.

In general, synchronous machines are represented using detailed models, which capture the effects neglected in the classical model including the influence of generator construction (damper windings, saturation, etc.), generator controls (excitation systems including power system stabilizers, etc.), the prime mover dynamics, and the mechanical load. Loads, which are most commonly represented as static voltage and frequency dependent components, may also be represented in detail by dynamic models that capture their speed torque characteristics and connected loads. There are a myriad of other devices, such as HVDC lines and controls and static Var devices, which may require detailed representation. Finally, system protections are often represented. Models may also be included for line protections (such as mho distance relays), out-of-step protections, loss of excitation protections, or special protection schemes.

Although power system models may be extremely large, representing thousands of generators and other devices producing systems with tens-of-thousands of system states, efficient numerical methods combined with modern computing power have made time-domain simulation readily available in many commercially available computer programs. It is also important to note that the time frame in which transient instability occurs is usually in the range of 1–5 s, so that simulation times need not be excessively long.

8.3.2 Analytical Methods

To accurately assess the system response following disturbances, detailed models are required for all critical elements. The complete mathematical model for the power system consists of a large number of algebraic and differential equations, including

- Generators stator algebraic equations
- Generator rotor circuit differential equations
- Swing equations
- Excitation system differential equations
- Prime mover and governing system differential equations
- Transmission network algebraic equations
- Load algebraic and differential equations

While considerable work has been done on *direct methods* of stability analysis in which stability is determined without explicitly solving the system differential equations (see Chapter 11), the most practical and flexible method of transient stability analysis is *time-domain simulation* using step-by-step numerical integration of the nonlinear differential equations. A variety of numerical integration methods are used, including *explicit* methods (such as Euler and Runge–Kutta methods) and *implicit* methods (such as the trapezoidal method). The selection of the method to be used depends largely on the stiffness of the system being analyzed. In systems in which time-steps are limited by numerical stability rather than accuracy, implicit methods are generally better suited than the explicit methods.

8.3.3 Simulation Studies

Modern simulation tools offer sophisticated modeling capabilities and advanced numerical solution methods. Although each simulation tools differs somewhat, the basic requirements and functions are the same [4].

8.3.3.1 Input Data

1. Powerflow: Defines system topology and initial operating state.
2. Dynamic data: Includes model types and associated parameters for generators, motors, protections, and other dynamic devices and their controls.
3. Program control data: Specifies such items as the type of numerical integration to use and time-step.
4. Switching data: Includes the details of the disturbance to be applied. This includes the time at which the fault is applied, where the fault is applied, the type of fault and its fault impedance if required, the duration of the fault, the elements lost as a result of the fault, and the total length of the simulation.
5. System monitoring data: This specifies the quantities that are to be monitored (output) during the simulation. In general, it is not practical to monitor all quantities because system models are large, and recording all voltages, angles, flows, generator outputs, etc., at each integration time-step would create an enormous volume. Therefore, it is a common practice to define a limited set of parameters to be recorded.

8.3.3.2 Output Data

1. Simulation log: This contains a listing of the actions that occurred during the simulation. It includes a recording of the actions taken to apply the disturbance, and reports on any operation of protections or controls, or any numerical difficulty encountered.
2. Results output: This is an ASCII or binary file that contains the recording of each monitored variable over the duration of the simulation. These results are examined, usually through a graphical plotting, to determine if the system remained stable and to assess the details of the dynamic behavior of the system.

8.4 Factors Influencing Transient Stability

Many factors affect the transient stability of a generator in a practical power system. From the small system analyzed above, the following factors can be identified:

- The post-disturbance system reactance as seen from the generator. The weaker the post-disturbance system, the lower the P_{max} will be.
- The duration of the fault-clearing time. The longer the fault is applied, the longer the rotor will be accelerated and the more kinetic energy will be gained. The more energy that is gained during acceleration, the more difficult it is to dissipate it during deceleration.
- The inertia of the generator. The higher the inertia, the slower the rate of change of angle and the lesser the kinetic energy gained during the fault.
- The generator internal voltage (determined by excitation system) and infinite bus voltage (system voltage). The lower these voltages, the lower the P_{max} will be.
- The generator loading before the disturbance. The higher the loading, the closer the unit will be to P_{max}, which means that during acceleration, it is more likely to become unstable.
- The generator internal reactance. The lower the reactance, the higher the peak power and the lower the initial rotor angle.
- The generator output during the fault. This is a function of faults location and type of fault.

8.5 Transient Stability Considerations in System Design

As outlined in Section 8.1, transient stability is an important consideration that must be dealt with during the design of power systems. In the design process, time-domain simulations are conducted to assess the stability of the system under various conditions and when subjected to various disturbances. Since it is not practical to design a system to be stable under all possible disturbances, design criteria specify the disturbances for which the system must be designed to be stable. The criteria disturbances generally consist of the more statistically probable events, which could cause the loss of any system element and typically include three-phase faults cleared in normal time and line-to-ground faults with delayed clearing due to breaker failure. In most cases, stability is assessed for the loss of one element (such as a transformer or transmission circuit) with possibly one element out-of-service in the predisturbance system. In system design, therefore, a wide number of disturbances are assessed and if the system is found to be unstable (or marginally stable) a variety of actions can be taken to improve stability [1]. These include the following:

- *Reduction of transmission system reactance*: This can be achieved by adding additional parallel transmission circuits, providing series compensation on existing circuits, and by using transformers with lower leakage reactances.
- *High-speed fault clearing*: In general, two-cycle breakers are used in locations where faults must be removed quickly to maintain stability. As the speed of fault clearing decreases, so does the amount of kinetic energy gained by the generators during the fault.
- *Dynamic braking*: Shunt resistors can be switched in following a fault to provide an artificial electrical load. This increases the electrical output of the machines and reduces the rotor acceleration.
- *Regulate shunt compensation*: By maintaining system voltages around the power system, the flow of synchronizing power between generators is improved.
- *Reactor switching*: The internal voltages of generators, and therefore stability, can be increased by connected shunt reactors.
- *Single pole switching and reclosing*: Most power system faults are of the single-line-to-ground type. However, in most schemes, this type of fault will trip all three phases. If single pole switching is used, only the faulted phase is removed, and power can flow on the remaining two phases thereby greatly reducing the impact of the disturbance. The single-phase is reclosed after the fault is cleared and the fault medium is deionized.
- *Steam turbine fast-valving*: Steam valves are rapidly closed and opened to reduce the generator accelerating power in response to a disturbance.
- *Generator tripping*: Perhaps one of the oldest and most common methods of improving transient stability, this approach disconnects selected generators in response to a disturbance that has the effect of reducing the power, which is required to be transferred over critical transmission interfaces.
- *High-speed excitation systems*: As illustrated by the simple examples presented earlier, increasing the internal voltage of a generator has the effect of proving transient stability. This can be achieved by fast acting excitation systems, which can rapidly boost field voltage in response to disturbances.
- *Special excitation system controls:* It is possible to design special excitation systems that can use discontinuous controls to provide special field boosting during the transient period thereby improving stability.
- *Special control of HVDC links*: The DC power on HVDC links can be rapidly ramped up or down to assist in maintaining generation/load imbalances caused by disturbances. The effect is similar to generation or load tripping.
- *Controlled system separation and load shedding*: Generally considered a last resort, it is feasible to design system controls that can respond to separate, or island, a power system into areas with

balanced generation and load. Some load shedding or generation tripping may also be required in selected islands. In the event of a disturbance, instability can be prevented from propagating and affecting large areas by partitioning the system in this manner. If instability primarily results in generation loss, load shedding alone may be sufficient to control the system.

8.6 Transient Stability Considerations in System Operation

While it is true that power systems are designed to be transiently stable, and many of the methods described above may be used to achieve this goal, in actual practice, systems may be prone to being unstable. This is largely due to uncertainties related to assumptions made during the design process. These uncertainties result from a number of sources including:

- *Load and generation forecast:* The design process must use forecast information about the amount, distribution, and characteristics of the connected loads as well as the location and amount of connected generation. These all have a great deal of uncertainty. If the actual system load is higher than planned, the generation output will be higher, the system will be more stressed, and the transient stability limit may be significantly lower.
- *System topology:* Design studies generally assume all elements in service, or perhaps up to two elements out-of-service. In actual systems, there are usually many elements out-of-service at any one time due to forced outages (failures) or system maintenance. Clearly, these outages can seriously weaken the system and make it less transiently stable.
- *Dynamic modeling:* All models used for power system simulation, even the most advanced, contain approximations out of practical necessity.
- *Dynamic data:* The results of time-domain simulations depend heavily on the data used to represent the models for generators and the associated controls. In many cases, this data is not known (typical data is assumed) or is in error (either because it has not been derived from field measurements or due to changes that have been made in the actual system controls that have not been reflected in the data).
- *Device operation:* In the design process it is assumed that controls and protection will operate as designed. In the actual system, relays, breakers, and other controls may fail or operate improperly.

To deal with these uncertainties in actual system operation, safety margins are used. Operational (short-term) time-domain simulations are conducted using a system model, which is more accurate (by accounting for elements out on maintenance, improved short-term load forecast, etc.) than the design model. Transient *stability limits* are computed using these models. The limits are generally in terms of maximum flows allowable over critical interfaces, or maximum generation output allowable from critical generating sources. Safety *margins* are then applied to these computed limits. This means that actual system operation is restricted to levels (interface flows or generation) below the stability limit by an amount equal to a defined safety margin. In general, the margin is expressed in terms of a percentage of the critical flow or generation output. For example, an operation procedure might be to set the *operating limit* at a flow level 10% below the stability limit.

A growing trend in system operations is to perform transient stability assessment *on-line* in *near-real-time*. In this approach, the powerflow defining the system topology and the initial operating state is derived, at regular intervals, from actual system measurements via the energy management system (EMS) using state-estimation methods. The derived powerflow together with other data required for transient stability analysis is passed to transient stability software residing on dedicated computers and the computations required to assess all credible contingencies are performed within a specified cycle time. Using advanced analytical methods and high-end computer hardware, it is currently possible to asses the transient stability of vary large systems, for a large number of contingencies, in cycle times typically ranging from 5 to 30 min. Since this on-line approach uses information derived directly from the actual power system, it eliminates a number of the uncertainties associated with load forecasting, generation forecasting, and prediction of system topology, thereby leading to more accurate and meaningful stability assessment.

References

1. Kundur, P., *Power System Stability and Control*, McGraw-Hill, Inc., New York, 1994.
2. Stevenson, W.D., *Elements of Power System Analysis*, 3rd ed., McGraw-Hill, New York, 1975.
3. Elgerd, O.I., *Electric Energy Systems Theory: An Introduction*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1971.
4. IEEE Recommended Practice for Industrial and Commercial Power System Analysis, IEEE Std 399-1997, IEEE 1998.

9

Small Signal Stability and Power System Oscillations

John Paserba
Mitsubishi Electric Power Products, Inc.

Juan Sanchez-Gasca
GE Energy

Prabha Kundur
University of Toronto

Einar Larsen
GE Energy

Charles Concordia
Consultant

9.1 Nature of Power System Oscillations

9.1.1 Historical Perspective

Damping of oscillations has been recognized as important in electric power system operations from the beginning. Before there were any power systems, oscillations in automatic speed controls (governors) initiated an analysis by J.C. Maxwell (speed controls were found necessary for the successful operation of the first steam engines). Apart from the immediate application of Maxwell's analysis, it also had a lasting influence as at least one of the stimulants to the development of very useful and widely used method by E.J. Routh in 1883, which enables one to determine theoretically the stability of a high-order dynamic system without having to know the roots of its equations (Maxwell analyzed only a second-order system).

Oscillations among generators appeared as soon as AC generators were operated in parallel. These oscillations were not unexpected, and in fact, were predicted from the concept of the power vs. phase-angle curve gradient interacting with the electric generator rotary inertia, forming an equivalent mass-and-spring system. With a continually varying load and some slight differences in the design and loading of the generators, oscillations tended to be continually excited. In the case of hydrogenerators, in particular, there was very little damping, and so amortisseurs (damper windings) were installed, at first as an option. (There was concern about the increased short-circuit current and some people had to be persuaded to accept them (Crary and Duncan, 1941).) It is of interest to note that although the only significant source of actual negative damping here was the turbine speed governor (Concordia, 1969), the practical "cure" was found elsewhere. Two points were evident then and are still valid today. First, automatic control is practically the only source of negative damping, and second, although it is obviously desirable to identify the sources of negative damping, the most effective and economical place to add damping may lie elsewhere.

After these experiences, oscillations seemed to disappear as a major problem. Although there were occasional cases of oscillations and evidently poor damping, the major analytical effort seemed to ignore damping entirely. First using analog and then digital, computing aids analysis of electric power system dynamic performance was extended to very large systems, but still representing the generators (and, for that matter, also the loads) in the simple "classical" way. Most studies covered only a short time-period, and as occasion demanded, longer-term simulations were kept in bound by including empirically estimated damping factors. It was, in effect, tacitly assumed that the net damping was positive.

All this changed rather suddenly in the 1960s, when the process of interconnection accelerated and more transmission and generation extended over large areas. Perhaps, the most important aspect was the wider recognition of the negative damping produced by the use of high-response generator voltage regulators in situations where the generator may be subject to relatively large angular swings, as may occur in extensive networks. (This possibility was already well known in the 1930s and 1940s but had not had much practical application then.) With the growth of extensive power systems, and especially with the interconnection of these systems by ties of limited capacity, oscillations reappeared. (Actually, they had never entirely disappeared but instead were simply not "seen.") There are several reasons for this reappearance:

1. For intersystem oscillations, the amortisseur is no longer effective, as the damping produced is reduced in approximately inverse proportion to the square of the effective external-impedance-plus-stator-impedance, and so it practically disappears.
2. The proliferation of automatic controls has increased the probability of adverse interactions among them. (Even without such interactions, the two basic controls—the speed governor and the generator voltage regulator—practically always produce negative damping for frequencies in the power system oscillation range: the governor effect, small and the AVR effect, large.)
3. Even though automatic controls are practically the only devices that may produce negative damping, the damping of the uncontrolled system is itself very small and could easily allow the continually changing load and generation to result in unsatisfactory tie-line power oscillations.
4. A small oscillation in each generator that may be insignificant may add up to a tie-line oscillation that is very significant relative to its rating.
5. Higher tie-line loading increases both the tendency to oscillate and the importance of the oscillation.

To calculate the effect of damping on the system, the detail of system representation has to be considerably extended. The additional parameters required are usually much less well-known than are the generator inertias and network impedances required for the "classical" studies. Further, the total damping of a power system is typically very small and is made up of both positive and negative components. Thus, if one wishes to get realistic results, one must include all the known sources. These sources include: prime movers, speed governors, electrical loads, circuit resistance, generator amortisseurs, generator excitation, and in fact, all controls that may be added for special purposes. In large networks, and particularly as they concern tie-line oscillations, the only two items that can be depended upon to produce positive damping are the electrical loads and (at least for steam-turbine driven generators) the prime mover.

Although it is obvious that net damping must be positive for stable operation, why be concerned about its magnitude? More damping would reduce (but not eliminate) the tendency to oscillate and the magnitude of oscillations. As pointed out above, oscillations can never be eliminated, as even in the best-damped systems the damping is small, which is only a small fraction of the "critical damping." So the common concept of the power system as a system of masses and springs is still valid, and we have to accept some oscillations. The reasons why the power systems are often troublesome are various, depending on the nature of the system and the operating conditions. For example, when at first a few (or more) generators were paralleled in a rather closely connected system, oscillations were damped by the generator amortisseurs. If oscillations did occur, there was little variation in system voltage. In the simplest case of two generators paralleled on the same bus and equally loaded, oscillations between them would produce practically no voltage variation and what was produced would principally be at twice the oscillation frequency. Thus, the generator voltage regulators were not stimulated and did not participate in the activity. Moreover, the close coupling between the generators reduced the effective regulator gain considerably for the oscillation mode. Under these conditions, when voltage-regulator response was increased (e.g., to improve transient stability), there was little apparent decrease of system damping (in most cases), but appreciable improvement in transient stability. Instability through negative damping produced by increased voltage-regulator gain had already been demonstrated theoretically (Concordia, 1944).

Consider that the system just discussed is then connected to another similar system by a tie-line. This tie-line should be strong enough to survive the loss of any one generator but rather may be only a small fraction of system capacity. Now, the response of the system to tie-line oscillations is quite different from that just described. Because of the high external-impedance seen by either system, not only is the positive damping by the generator amortisseurs largely lost, but also the generator terminal voltages become responsive to angular swings. This causes the generator voltage regulators to act, producing negative damping as an unwanted side effect. This sensitivity of voltage-to-angle increases as a strong function of initial angle, and thus tie-line loading. Thus, in the absence of mitigating means, tie-line oscillations are very likely to occur, especially at heavy-line loading (and they have on numerous occasions as illustrated in Chapter 3 of CIGRE Technical Brochure No. 111 [1996]). These tie-line oscillations are bothersome, especially as a restriction on the allowable power transfer, as relatively large oscillations are (quite properly) taken as a precursor to instability.

Next, as interconnection proceeds another system is added. If the two previously discussed systems are designated A and B, and a third system, C, is connected to B, then a chain A-B-C is formed. If power is flowing **A** $\rightarrow$ **B** $\rightarrow$ **C** or **C** $\rightarrow$ **B** $\rightarrow$ **A**, the principal (i.e., lowest frequency) oscillation mode is A against C, with B relatively quiescent. However, as already pointed out, the voltages of system B are varying. In effect, B is acting as a large synchronous condenser facilitating the transfer of power from A to C, and suffering voltage fluctuations as a consequence. This situation has occurred several times in the history of interconnected power systems and has been a serious impediment to progress. In this case, note that the problem is mostly in system B, while the solution (or at least mitigation) will be mostly in systems A and C. With any presently conceivable controlled voltage support, it would be practically impossible to maintain a satisfactory voltage solely in system B. On the other hand, without system B, for the same power transfer, the oscillations would be much more severe. In fact, the same power transfer might not be possible without, for example, a very high amount of series or shunt compensation. If the power transfer is **A** $\rightarrow$ **B** $\leftarrow$ **C** or **A** $\leftarrow$ **B** $\rightarrow$ **C**, the likelihood of severe oscillation (and the voltage variations produced by the oscillations) is much less. Further, both the trouble and the cure are shared by all three systems, so effective compensation is more easily achieved. For best results, all combinations of power transfers should be considered.

Aside from this abbreviated account of how oscillations grew in importance as interconnections grew in extent, it may be of interest to mention the specific case that seemed to precipitate the general acceptance of the major importance of improving system damping, as well as the general recognition of the generator voltage regulator as the major culprit in producing negative damping. This was the series of studies of the transient stability of the Pacific Intertie (AC and DC in parallel) on the west coast of the U.S. In these studies, it was noted that for three-phase faults, instability was determined not by severe first swings of the generators but by oscillatory instability of the post-fault system, which had one of two parallel AC line sections removed and thus higher impedance. This showed that damping is important for transient as well as steady-state conditions and contributed to a worldwide rush to apply power system stabilizers (PSS) to all generator-voltage regulators as a panacea for all oscillatory ills.

But the pressures of the continuing extension of electric networks and of increases in line loading have shown that the PSS alone is often not enough. When we push to the limit that limit is more often than not determined by lack of adequate damping. When we add voltage support at appropriate points in the network, we not only increase its "strength" (i.e., increased synchronizing power or smaller transfer impedance), but also improve its damping (if the generator voltage regulators have been producing negative damping) by relieving the generators of a good part of the work of voltage regulation and also reducing the regulator gain. This is so, whether or not reduced damping was an objective. However, the limit may still be determined by inadequate damping. How can it be improved? There are at least three options:

1. Add a signal (e.g., line current) to the voltage support device control.
2. Increase the output of the PSS (which is possible with the now stiffer system), or do both as found to be appropriate.
3. Add an entirely new device at an entirely new location. Thus the proliferation of controls that has to be carefully considered.

Oscillations of power system frequency as a whole can still occur in an isolated system, due to governor deadband or interaction with system frequency control, but is not likely to be a major problem in large interconnected systems. These oscillations are most likely to occur on intersystem ties among the constituent subsystems, especially if the ties are weak or heavily loaded. This is in a relative sense; an "adequate" tie planned for certain usual line loadings is nowadays very likely to be much more severely loaded and, thus, behave dynamically like a weak line as far as oscillations are concerned, quite aside from losing its emergency pick-up capability. There has always been commercial pressure to utilize a line, perhaps originally planned to aid in maintaining reliability, for economical energy transfer simply because it is there. Now, however, there is also "open access" that may force a utility to use nearly every line for power transfer. This will certainly decrease reliability and may decrease damping, depending on the location of added generation.

9.1.2 Power System Oscillations Classified by Interaction Characteristics

Electric power utilities have experienced problems with the following types of subsynchronous frequency oscillations (Kundur, 1994):

- Local plant mode oscillations
- Interarea mode oscillations
- Torsional mode oscillations
- Control mode oscillations

Local plant mode oscillation problems are the most commonly encountered among the above and are associated with units at a generating station oscillating with respect to the rest of the power system. Such problems are usually caused by the action of the AVRs of generating units operating at high-output and feeding into weak-transmission networks; the problem is more pronounced with high-response excitation systems. The local plant oscillations typically have natural frequencies in the range of 1–2 Hz. Their characteristics are well understood and adequate damping can be readily achieved by using supplementary control of excitation systems in the form of power system stabilizers (PSS).

Interarea modes are associated with machines in one part of the system oscillating against machines in other parts of the system. They are caused by two or more groups of closely coupled machines that are interconnected by weak ties. The natural frequency of these oscillations is typically in the range of 0.1–1 Hz. The characteristics of interarea modes of oscillation are complex and in some respects significantly differ from the characteristics of local plant modes (CIGRE Technical Brochure No. 111, 1996; Kundur, 1994; Rogers, 2000).

Torsional mode oscillations are associated with the turbine-generator rotational (mechanical) components. There have been several instances of torsional mode instability due to interactions with controls, including generating unit excitation and prime mover controls (Kundur, 1994):

- Torsional mode destabilization by excitation control was first observed in 1969 during the application of power system stabilizers on a 555 MVA fossil-fired unit at the Lambton generating station in Ontario. The PSS, which used a stabilizing signal based on speed measured at the generator end of the shaft, was found to excite the lowest torsional (16 Hz) mode. The problem was solved by sensing speed between the two LP turbine sections and by using a torsional filter (Kundur et al., 1981; Watson and Coultes, 1973).
- Instability of torsional modes due to interaction with speed-governing systems was observed in 1983 during the commissioning of a 635 MVA unit at Pickering "B" nuclear generating station in Ontario. The problem was solved by providing an accurate linearization of steam valve characteristics and by using torsional filters (Lee et al., 1985).
- Control mode oscillations are associated with the controls of generating units and other equipment. Poorly tuned controls of excitation systems, prime movers, static var compensators, and HVDC converters are the usual causes of instability of control modes. Sometimes it is difficult to tune the controls so as to assure adequate damping of all modes. Kundur et al. (1981) describe the difficulty experienced in 1979 in tuning the power system stabilizers at the Ontario Hydro's Nanticoke generating station. The stabilizers used shaft-speed signals with torsional filters. With the stabilizer gain high-enough to stabilize the local plant mode oscillation, a control mode local to the excitation system and the generator field referred to as the "exciter mode" became unstable. The problem was solved by developing an alternative form of stabilizer that did not require a torsional filter (Lee and Kundur, 1986).
- Refer also to Chapter 16.

Although all of these categories of oscillations are related and can exist simultaneously, the primary focus of this section is on the electromechanical oscillations that affect interarea power flows.

9.1.3 Conceptual Description of Power System Oscillations

As illustrated in the previous subsection, power systems contain many modes of oscillation due to a variety of interactions of its components. Many of the oscillations are due to generator rotor masses swinging relative to one another. A power system having multiple machines will act like a set of masses interconnected by a network of springs and will exhibit multiple modes of oscillation. As illustrated previously in Section 9.1.1, in many systems, the damping of these electromechanical swing modes is a critical factor for operating the power system in a stable, thus secure manner (Kundur et al., 2004). The power transfer between such machines on the AC transmission system is a direct function of the angular separation between their internal voltage phasors. The torques that influence the machine oscillations can be conceptually split into synchronizing and damping components of torque (de Mello and Concordia, 1969). The synchronizing component "holds" the machines in the power system together and is important for system transient stability following large disturbances. For small disturbances, the synchronizing component of torque determines the frequency of an oscillation. Most stability texts present the synchronizing component in terms of the slope of the power-angle relationship, as illustrated in Fig. 9.1, where K represents the amount of synchronizing torque. The damping component determines the decay of oscillations and is important for system stability following recovery from the initial swing. Damping is influenced by many system parameters, is usually small, and as previously described, is sometimes negative in the presence of controls (which are practically the only "source" of negative damping). Negative damping can lead to spontaneous growth of oscillations until relays begin to trip system elements or a limit cycle is reached.

Figure 9.2 shows a conceptual block diagram of a power-swing mode, with inertial (M), damping (D), and synchronizing (K) effects identified. For a perturbation about a steady-state operating point, the modal accelerating torque ΔT_{ai} is equal to the modal electrical torque ΔT_{ei} (with the modal mechanical torque ΔT_{mi} considered to be 0). The effective inertia is a function of the total inertia of all machines participating in the swing; the synchronizing and damping terms are frequency dependent and are influenced by generator rotor circuits, excitation controls, and other system controls.

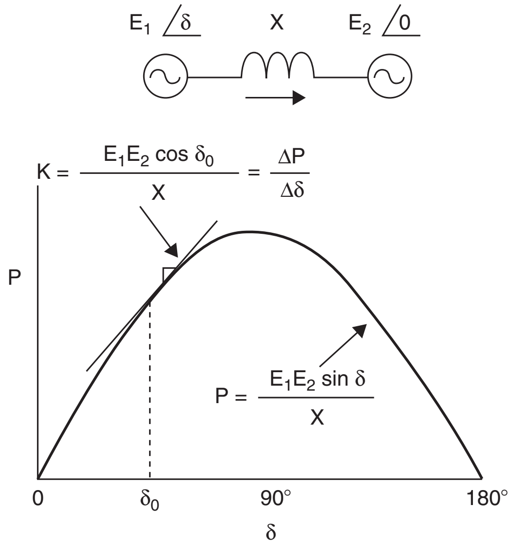


FIGURE 9.1 Simplified power-angle relationship between two AC systems.

9.1.4 Summary on the Nature of Power System Oscillations

The preceding review leads to a number of important conclusions and observations concerning power system oscillations:

- Oscillations are due to natural modes of the system and therefore cannot be eliminated. However, their damping and frequency can be modified.
- As power systems evolve, the frequency and damping of existing modes change and new modes may emerge.
- The source of "negative" damping is power system controls, primarily excitation system automatic voltage regulators.
- Interarea oscillations are associated with weak transmission links and heavy power transfers.
- Interarea oscillations often involve more than one utility and may require the cooperation of all to arrive at the most effective and economical solution.
- Power system stabilizers are the most commonly used means of enhancing the damping of interarea modes.

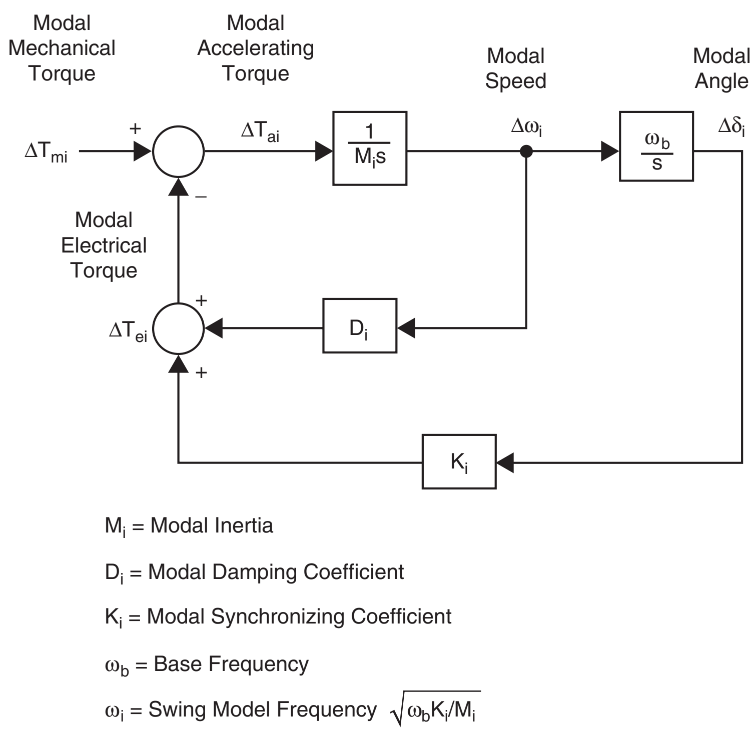


FIGURE 9.2 Conceptual block diagram of a power-swing mode.

- Continual study of the system is necessary to minimize the probability of poorly damped oscillations. Such "beforehand" studies may have avoided many of the problems experienced in power systems (see Chapter 3 of CIGRE Technical Brochure No. 111, 1996).

It must be clear that avoidance of oscillations is only one of many aspects that should be considered in the design of a power system and so must take its place in line along with economy, reliability, security, operational robustness, environmental effects, public acceptance, voltage and power quality, and certainly a few others that may need to be considered. Fortunately, it appears that many features designed to further some of these other aspects also have a strong mitigating effect in reducing oscillations. However, one overriding constraint is that the power system operating point must be stable with respect to oscillations.

9.2 Criteria for Damping

The rate of decay of the amplitude of oscillations is best expressed in terms of the damping ratio ζ. For an oscillatory mode represented by a complex eigenvalue $\sigma \pm j\omega$, the damping ratio is given by

$$\zeta = \frac{-\sigma}{\sqrt{\sigma^2 + \omega^2}} \tag{9.1}$$

The damping ratio ζ determines the rate of decay of the amplitude of the oscillation. The time constant of amplitude decay is $1/|\sigma|$. In other words, the amplitude decays to $1/e$ or 37% of the initial amplitude in $1/|\sigma|$ seconds or in $1/(2\pi\zeta)$ cycles of oscillation (Kundur, 1994). As oscillatory modes have a wide range of frequencies, the use of damping ratio rather than the time constant of decay is considered more appropriate for expressing the degree of damping. For example, a 5-s time constant represents amplitude decay to 37% of initial value in 110 cycles of oscillation for a 22 Hz torsional mode, in 5 cycles for a 1-Hz local plant mode, and in one-half cycle for a 0.1-Hz interarea mode of oscillation. On the other hand, a damping ratio of 0.032 represents the same degree of amplitude decay in 5 cycles, for example, for all modes.

A power system should be designed and operated so that the following criteria are satisfied for all expected system conditions, including post-fault conditions following design contingencies:

1. The damping ratio (ζ) of all system modes oscillation should exceed a specified value. The minimum acceptable damping ratio is system dependent and is based on operating experience and/or sensitivity studies; it is typically in the range 0.03–0.05.
2. The small-signal stability margin should exceed a specified value. The stability margin is measured as the difference between the given operating condition and the absolute stability limit ($\zeta = 0$) and should be specified in terms of a physical quantity, such as a power plant output, power transfer through a critical transmission interface, or system load level.

9.3 Study Procedure

There is a general need for establishing study procedures and developing widely accepted design and operating criteria with respect to power system oscillations. Tools for the analysis of system oscillations, in addition to determining the existence of problems, should be capable of identifying factors influencing the problem and providing information useful in developing control measures for mitigation.

System oscillation problems are often investigated using nonlinear time-domain simulations as a natural extension to traditional transient stability analysis. However, there are a number of practical problems that limit the effectiveness of using only the time-domain approach:

- The use of time responses exclusively to look at damping of different modes of oscillation could be deceptive. The choice of disturbance and the selection of variables for observing

time-response are critical. The disturbance may not provide sufficient excitation of the critical modes. The observed response contains many modes, and poorly damped modes may not always be dominant.
- To get a clear indication of growing oscillations, it is necessary to carry the simulations out to 15 or 20 s or more. This could be time-consuming.
- Direct inspection of time responses does not give sufficient insight into the nature of the oscillatory stability problem; it is difficult to identify the sources of the problem and develop corrective measures.

Spectral estimation (i.e., modal identification) techniques based on Prony analysis may be used to analyze time-domain responses and extract information about the underlying dynamics of the system (Hauer, 1991).

Small-signal analysis (i.e., modal analysis or eigenanalysis) based on linear techniques is ideally suited for investigating problems associated with oscillations. Here, the characteristics of a power system model can be determined for a system model linearized about a specific operating point. The stability of each mode is clearly identified by the system's eigenvalues. Modeshapes and the relationships between different modes and system variables or parameters are identified using eigenvectors (Kundur, 1994). Conventional eigenvalue computation methods are limited to systems up to about 800 states. Such methods are ideally suited for detailed analysis for system oscillation problems confined to a small portion of the power system. This includes problems associated with local plant modes, torsional modes, and control modes. For very large interconnected systems, it may be necessary to use dynamic equivalents (Wang et al., 1997; Piwko et al., 1991). This can only be achieved by developing reduced-order power system models that correctly reflect the significant dynamic characteristics of the interconnected system.

For analysis of interarea oscillations in large interconnected power systems, special techniques have been developed for computing eigenvalues associated with a small subset of modes whose frequencies are within a specified range (Kundur, 1994). Techniques have also been developed for efficiently computing participation factors, residues, transfer function zeros, and frequency responses useful in designing remedial control measures (Martins et al., 1992, 1996, 2003). Powerful computer program packages incorporating the above computational features are now available, thus providing comprehensive capabilities for analyses of power system oscillations (CIGRE Technical Brochure No. 111, 1996; CIGRE Technical Brochure No. 166, 2000; Kundur, 1994; Semlyen et al., 1988; Wang et al., 1990; Kundur et al., 1990).

In summary, a complete understanding of power systems oscillations generally requires a combination of analytical tools. Small-signal stability analysis complemented by nonlinear time-domain simulations is the most effective procedure of studying power system oscillations. The following are the recommended steps for a systematic analysis of power system oscillations:

1. Perform an eigenvalue scan using a small-signal stability program. This will indicate the presence of poorly damped modes.
2. Perform a detailed eigenanalysis of the poorly damped modes. This will determine their characteristics and sources of the problem, and assist in developing mitigation measures. This will also identify the quantities to be monitored in time-domain simulations.
3. Perform time-domain simulations of the critical cases identified from the eigenanalysis. This is useful to confirm the results of small-signal analysis. In addition, it shows how system nonlinearities affect the oscillations. Prony analysis of these time-domain simulations may also be insightful (Hauer, 1991).

The IEEE Power Engineering Society Power System Dynamic Performance Committee has sponsored a series of panel sessions on small-signal stability and linear analysis techniques from 1998 to 2005, which can be found in the following: Gibbard, et al., 2001; IEEE PES, 2000; IEEE PES, 2002; IEEE PES, 2003; and IEEE PES, 2005. Further archival information can be found in IEEE PES, 1995.

9.4 Mitigation of Power System Oscillations

In many power systems, equipment is installed to enhance various performance issues such as transient, oscillatory, or voltage stability (Kundur et al., 2004). In many instances, this equipment is power-electronic based, which generally means the device can be rapidly and continuously controlled. Examples of such equipment applied in the transmission system include a static Var compensator (SVC), static compensator (STATCOM), and thyristor-controlled series compensation (TCSC). To improve damping in a power system, a supplemental damping controller can be applied to the primary regulator of one of these transmission devices or to generator controls. The supplemental control action should modulate the output of a device in such a way as to affect power transfer such that damping is added to the power system swing modes of concern. This subsection provides an overview on some of the issues that affect the ability of damping controls to improve power system dynamic performance (CIGRE Technical Brochure No. 111, 1996; CIGRE Technical Brochure No. 116, 2000; Paserba et al., 1995; Levine, 1995).

9.4.1 Siting

Siting plays an important role in the ability of a device to stabilize a swing mode (Martins et al., 1990; Larsen et al., 1995; Pourbeik et al., 1996). Many controllable power system devices are sited based on issues unrelated to stabilizing the network (e.g., HVDC transmission and generators), and the only question is whether they can be utilized effectively as a stability aid. In other situations (e.g., SVC, STATCOM, TCSC, or other FACTS controllers), the equipment is installed primarily to help support the transmission system, and siting will be heavily influenced by its stabilizing potential. Device cost represents an important driving force in selecting a location. In general, there will be one location that makes optimum use of the controllability of a device. If the device is located at a different location, a device of larger size may be needed to achieve the desired stabilization objective. In some cases, overall costs may be minimized with nonoptimum locations of individual devices because other considerations must also be taken into account, such as land price and availability, environmental regulations, etc. (IEEE PES, 1996).

The inherent ability of a device to achieve a desired stabilization objective in a robust manner, while minimizing the risk of adverse interactions, is another consideration that can influence the siting decision. Most often, these other issues can be overcome by appropriate selection of input signals, signal filtering, and control design. This is not always possible, however, so these issues should be included in the decision-making process for choosing a site. For some applications, it will be desirable to apply the devices in a distributed manner. This approach helps maintain a more uniform voltage profile across the network, during both steady-state operation and after transient events. Greater security may also be possible with distributed devices because the overall system is more likely to tolerate the loss of one of the devices, but would likely come at a greater cost.

9.4.2 Control Objectives

Several aspects of control design and operation must be satisfied during both the transient and the steady-state operations of the power system, before and after a major disturbance. These aspects suggest that controls applied to the power system should

1. Survive the first few swings after a major system disturbance with some degree of safety. The safety factor is usually built into a Reliability Council's criteria (e.g., keeping voltages above some threshold during the swings).
2. Provide some minimum level of damping in the steady-state condition after a major disturbance (postcontingent operation). In addition to providing security for contingencies, some applications will require "ambient" damping to prevent spontaneous growth of oscillations in steady-state operation.

3. Minimize the potential for adverse side effects, which can be classified as follows:
   a. Interactions with high-frequency phenomena on the power system, such as turbine-generator torsional vibrations and resonances in the AC transmission network.
   b. Local instabilities within the bandwidth of the desired control action.
4. Be robust so that the control will meet its objectives for a wide range of operating conditions encountered in power system applications. The control should have minimal sensitivity to system operating conditions and component parameters since power systems operate over a wide range of operating conditions and there is often uncertainty in the simulation models used for evaluating performance. Also, the control should have minimum communication requirements.
5. Be highly dependable so that the control has a high probability of operating as expected when needed to help the power system. This suggests that the control should be testable in the field to ascertain that the device will act as expected should a contingency occur. This leads to the desire for the control response to be predictable. The security of system operations depends on knowing, with a reasonable certainty, what the various control elements will do in the event of a contingency.

9.4.3 Closed-Loop Control Design

Closed-loop control is utilized in many power-system components. Voltage regulators, either continuous or discrete, are commonplace on generator excitation systems, capacitor and reactor banks, tap-changing transformers, and SVCs. Modulation controls to enhance power system stability have been applied extensively to generator exciters and to HVDC, SVC, and TCSC systems. A notable advantage of closed-loop control is that stabilization objectives can often be met with less equipment and impact on the steady-state power flows than is generally possible with open-loop controls. While the behavior of the power system and its components is usually predictable by simulation, its nonlinear character and vast size lead to challenging demands on system planners and operating engineers. The experience and intuition of these engineers is generally more important to the overall successful operation of the power system than the many available, elegant control design techniques (Levine, 1995; CIGRE Technical Brochure, 2000; Pal and Chaudhuri, 2005).

Typically, a closed-loop controller is always active. One benefit of such a closed-loop control is ease of testing for proper operation on a continuous basis. In addition, once a controller is designed for the worst-case contingency, the chance of a less-severe contingency causing a system breakup is lower than if only open-loop controls are applied. Disadvantages of closed-loop control involve primarily the potential for adverse interactions. Another possible drawback is the need for small step sizes, or vernier control in the equipment, which will have some impact on cost. If communication is needed, this could also be a challenge. However, experience suggests that adequate performance should be attainable using only locally measurable signals.

One of the most critical steps in control design is to select an appropriate input signal. The other issues are to determine the input filtering and control algorithm and to assure attainment of the stabilization objectives in a robust manner with minimal risk of adverse side effects. The following subsections discuss design approaches for closed-loop stability controls, so that the potential benefits can be realized on the power system.

9.4.4 Input Signal Selection

The choice of using a local signal as an input to a stabilizing control function is based on several considerations.

1. The input signal must be sensitive to the swings on the machines and lines of interest. In other words, the swing modes of interest must be "observable" in the input signal selected. This is mandatory for the controller to provide a stabilizing influence.

2. The input signal should have as little sensitivity as possible to other swing modes on the power system. For example, for a transmission-line device, the control action will benefit only those modes that involve power swings on that particular line. If the input signal was also responsive to local swings within an area at one end of the line, then valuable control range would be wasted in responding to an oscillation that the damping device has little or no ability to control.
3. The input signal should have little or no sensitivity to its own output, in the absence of power swings. Similarly, there should be as little sensitivity to the action of other stabilizing controller outputs as possible. This decoupling minimizes the potential for local instabilities within the controller bandwidth (CIGRE Technical Brochure No. 116, 2000).

These considerations have been applied to a number of modulation control designs, which have eventually proven themselves in many actual applications (see Chapter 5 of CIGRE Technical Brochure No. 111 [1996]). For example, the application of PSS controls on generator excitation systems was the first such study that reached the conclusion that speed or power is the best input signal, with frequency of the generator substation voltage being an acceptable choice as well (Larsen and Swann, 1981; Kundur et al., 1989). For SVCs, the conclusion was that the magnitude of line current flowing past the SVC is the best choice (Larsen and Chow, 1987). For torsional damping controllers on HVDC systems, it was found that using the frequency of a synthesized voltage close to the internal voltage of the nearby generator, calculated with locally measured voltages and currents, is best (Piwko and Larsen, 1982). In the case of a series device in a transmission line (such as a TCSC), the considerations listed above lead to the conclusion that using frequency of a synthesized remote voltage to estimate the center-of-inertia of an area involved in a swing mode is a good choice (Levine, 1995). This allows the series device to behave like a damper across the AC line.

9.4.5 Input-Signal Filtering

To prevent interactions with phenomena outside the desired control bandwidth, low-pass and high-pass filterings must be used for the input signal. In certain applications, notch filtering is needed to prevent interactions with certain lightly damped resonances. This has been the case with SVCs interacting with AC network resonances and modulation controls interacting with generator torsional vibrations. On the low-frequency end, the high-pass filter must have enough attenuation to prevent excessive response during slow ramps of power, or during the long-term settling following a loss of generation or load. This filtering must be considered while designing the overall control as it will strongly affect performance and the potential for local instabilities within the control bandwidth. However, finalizing such filtering usually must wait until the design for performance is completed, after which the attenuation needed at specific frequencies can be determined. During the control design work, a reasonable approximation of these filters needs to be included. Experience suggests that a high-pass break near 0.05 Hz (3 s washout time constant) and a double low-pass break near 4 Hz (40 ms time constant), as shown in Fig. 9.3, are suitable for a starting point. A control design that provides adequate stabilization of the power system with these settings for the input filtering has a high probability of being adequate after the input filtering parameters are finalized.

9.4.6 Control Algorithm

Levine (1995), CIGRE Technical Brochure No. 116 (2000), and Pal and Chaudhuri (2005) present many control design methods that can be utilized to design supplemental controls for power systems. Generally, the control algorithm for damping leads to a transfer function that relates an input signals to a device output. This statement is the starting point for understanding how deviations in the control algorithm affect system performance.

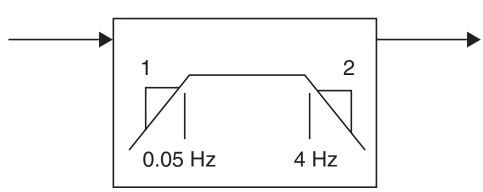


FIGURE 9.3 Initial input signal filtering.

In general, the transfer function of the control (and input-signal filtering) is most readily discussed in terms of its gain and phase relationship vs. frequency. A phase shift of 0° in the transfer function means that the output is proportional to the input and, for discussion purposes, is assumed to represent a pure damping effect on a lightly damped power swing mode. Phase lag in the transfer function (up to 90°) translates to a positive synchronizing effect, tending to increase the frequency of the swing mode when the control loop is closed. The damping effect will decrease with the sine of the phase lag. Beyond 90°, the damping effect will become negative. Conversely, phase lead is a desynchronizing influence and will decrease the frequency of the swing mode when the control loop is closed. Generally, the desynchronizing effect should be avoided. The preferred transfer function has between 0 and 45° of phase lag in the frequency range of the swing modes that the control is designed to damp.

9.4.7 Gain Selection

After the shape of the transfer function is designed to meet the desired control phase characteristics, the gain of the control is selected to obtain the desired level of damping. To maximize damping, the gain should be high enough to assure full utilization of the controlled device for the critical disturbances, but no higher, so that risks of adverse effects are minimized. Typically, the gain selection is done analytically with root-locus or Nyquist methods. However, the gain must ultimately be verified in the field (see Chapter 8 of CIGRE Technical Brochure No. 111 [1996]).

9.4.8 Control Output Limits

The output of a damping control must be limited to prevent it from saturating the device being modulated. By saturating a controlled device, the purpose of the damping control would be defeated. As a general rule of thumb for damping, when a control is at its limits in the frequency range of interarea oscillations, the output of the controlled device should be just within its limits (Larsen and Swann, 1981).

9.4.9 Performance Evaluation

Good simulation tools are essential in applying damping controls to power transmission equipment for the purpose of system stabilization. The controls must be designed and tested for robustness with such tools. For many system operating conditions, the only feasible means of testing the system is by simulation, so confidence in the power system model is crucial. A typical large-scale power system model may contain up to 15,000 state variables or more. For design purposes, a reduced-order model of the power system is often desirable (Wang et al., 1997, Piwko et al., 1991). If the size of the study system is excessive, the large number of system variations and required parametric studies become tedious and prohibitively expensive for some linear analysis techniques and control design methods in general use today. A good understanding of the system performance can be obtained with a model that contains only the relevant dynamics for the problem under study. The key situations that establish the adequacy of controller performance and robustness can be identified from the reduced-order model, and then tested with the full-scale model. Note that CIGRE Technical Brochure No. 111 (1996), CIGRE Technical Brochure No. 116 (2000), and Kundur (1994), as well as Gibbard et al. (2001) and IEEE PES (2000, 2002, 2003, 2005) contain information on the application of linear analysis techniques for very-large systems.

Field testing is also an essential part of applying supplemental controls to power systems. Testing needs to be performed with the controller open-loop, comparing the measured response at its own input and the inputs of other planned controllers against the simulation models. Once these comparisons are acceptable, the system can be tested with the control loop closed. Again, the test results should have a reasonable correlation with the simulation program. Methods have been developed for performing such testing of the overall power system to provide benchmarks for validating the full-system model. Such testing can also be done on the simulation program to help arrive at the reduced-order models (Hauer, 1991; Kamwa et al., 1993) needed for the advanced control design methods (Levine, 1995; CIGRE Technical Brochure No. 116, 2000; Pal and Chaudhuri, 2005). Methods have also been developed to improve the modeling of individual components. These issues are discussed in great detail in Chapters 6 and 8 of CIGRE Technical Brochure No. 111 (1996).

9.4.10 Adverse Side Effects

Historically in the power industry, each major advance in improving system performance has created some adverse side effects. For example, the addition of high-speed excitation systems over 40 years ago caused the destabilization known as the "hunting" mode of the generators. The fix was power system stabilizers, but it took over 10 years to learn how to tune them properly and there were some unpleasant surprises involving interactions with torsional vibrations on the turbine-generator shaft (Larsen and Swann, 1981).

The high-voltage *direct current* (HVDC) systems were also found to interact adversely with torsional vibrations (the subsynchronous torsional interaction [SSTI] problem), especially when augmented with supplemental modulation controls to damp power swings. Similar SSTI phenomena exist with SVCs, although to a lesser degree than with HVDC. Detailed study methods have since been established for designing systems with confidence that these effects will not cause trouble for normal operation (Piwko and Larsen, 1982; Bahrman et al., 1980). Another potential adverse side effect with SVC systems is that it can interact unfavorably with network resonances. This side effect caused a number of problems in the initial application of SVCs to transmission systems. Design methods now exist to deal with this phenomenon, and protective functions exist within SVC controls to prevent continuing exacerbation of an unstable condition (Larsen and Chow, 1987).

As the available technologies continue to evolve, such as the present industry focus on Flexible AC Transmission Systems (FACTS) (IEEE PES, 1996), new opportunities arise for power system performance improvement. FACTS controllers introduce capabilities that may be an order of magnitude greater than existing equipment applied for stability improvement. Therefore, it follows that there may be much more serious consequences if they fail to operate properly. Robust operation and noninteraction of controls for these FACTS devices are critically important for stability of the power system (CIGRE Technical Brochure No. 116, 2000; Clark et al., 1995).

9.5 Higher-Order Terms for Small-Signal Analysis

The implicit assumption in small-signal stability analysis is that the dynamic behavior of a power system in the neighborhood of an operating point of interest can be approximated by the response of a linear system.

This assumption has two important consequences; on the one hand, it allows for the application of powerful linear analysis methods that are well suited for the study of large systems; on the other hand, it limits the scope of the analysis to the region where the linear approximation is valid.

In certain cases, such as when a power system is stressed, it has been suggested that linear analysis techniques might not provide an accurate picture of the system modal characteristics (Vittal et al., 1991). Under these circumstances, techniques that extend the domain of applicability of small-signal stability analysis become an attractive possibility for advancing the understanding of power system dynamics. Of particular interest is the study of modes and modal interactions that result from the combination of the individual system modes of the linearized system. These modes and their interactions are termed "higher-order modes" and "higher-order modal interactions," respectively.

The method of normal forms has been proposed as a means for studying higher-order modal interactions in power systems and several indices for quantifying higher-order modal characteristics have been introduced. (See Sanchez-Gasca et al., 2005 and references therein.) In general, the method of normal forms consists of a sequence of coordinate transformations aimed at removing terms of increasing order from a Taylor series expansion (Guckenheimer and Holmes, 1983). For power system applications, due to the heavy computational burden associated with the computation of higher-order terms, work in this area has been focused on the Taylor series expansion evaluated up to second-order terms.

Provided that certain conditions are met, the method of Normal Forms allows for the system state variables to be written as a summation of exponential terms of the form $e^{\lambda_j t}$ and $e^{(\lambda_k+\lambda_l)t}$:

$$x_i(t) = \sum_{j=1}^{n} u_{ij}\ z_{j0}\ e^{\lambda_j t} + \sum_{j=1}^{n} u_{ij} \left[\sum_{k=1}^{n} \sum_{l=1}^{n} \frac{C^j{}_{kl}}{\lambda_k + \lambda_l - \lambda_j} z_{k_0} z_{l0}\ e^{(\lambda_k+\lambda_l)t} \right] \tag{9.2}$$

λ_k, λ_l, and λ_j are the system modes, u_{ij} is an element of the matrix of right eigenvectors of the system state matrix (U), z_{j0}, z_{k0}, and z_{l0} are the initial conditions of transformed variables, and $C^j{}_{kl}$ is the klth element of the matrix C^j given by

$$C^j = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{p=1}^{n} v_{jp}[U^T H^p U] \tag{9.3}$$

In the above equation, v_{jp} is an element of the matrix of left eigenvectors of the system state matrix, and H^p is a Hessian matrix.

Most of the studies of power system electromechanical oscillations using the Normal Forms method are based on Eq. (9.2). This equation clearly shows the relation between the state variables $x_1, \ldots, x_n$, the individual system modes $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_n$, and the second-order modes, $\lambda_1 + \lambda_1, \lambda_1 + \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_{n-l} + \lambda_n, \lambda_n + \lambda_n$. The terms associated with the mode pairs $\lambda_k + \lambda_l$ provide information not available from the linear approximation of the power system equations. These terms represent "modal interactions" that arise due to the presence of the higher-order terms. The coefficients of the exponential terms $e^{(\lambda_k+\lambda_l)t}$ give a measure of the participation of the mode combination $\lambda_k + \lambda_l$ in a given state variable.

Several quantitative indices have been developed based on the Normal Form analysis for quantifying the degree of modal interactions. These indices provide information regarding the interacting modes, the states participating in these modes, and the degree of the nonlinear interaction (Sanchez-Gasca et al., 2005).

The computational burden of the Normal Form analysis is large. Inclusion of even second-order terms for a large system represents a significant computational burden. Techniques need to be developed to reduce the computational burden.

A related method also aimed at the study of higher-order modal interactions is described in Shanechi et al. (2003).

9.6 Summary

In summary, this chapter on small signal stability and power system oscillations shows that power systems contain many modes of oscillation due to a variety of interactions among components. Many of the oscillations are due to synchronous generator rotors swinging relative to one another. The electromechanical modes involving these masses usually occur in the frequency range of 0.1–2 Hz. Particularly troublesome are the interarea oscillations, which are typically in the frequency range of 0.1–1 Hz. The interarea modes are usually associated with groups of machines swinging relative to other groups across a relatively weak transmission path. The higher-frequency electromechanical modes (1–2 Hz) typically involve one or two generators swinging against the rest of the power system or electrically close machines swinging against each other.

These oscillatory dynamics can be aggravated and stimulated through a number of mechanisms. Heavy power transfers, in particular, can create interarea oscillation problems that constrain system operation. The oscillations themselves may be triggered through some event or disturbance on the power system or by shifting the system operating point across some steady-state stability boundary, where growing oscillations may be spontaneously created. Controller proliferation makes such boundaries increasingly difficult to anticipate. Once started, the oscillations often grow in magnitude over the span of many seconds. These oscillations may persist for many minutes and be limited in amplitude only by system nonlinearities. In some cases they cause large generator groups to lose synchronism where a part of or the entire electrical network is lost. The same effect can be reached through slow-cascading outages when the oscillations are strong and persistent enough to cause uncoordinated automatic disconnection of key generators or loads. Sustained oscillations can disrupt the power system in other ways, even when they do not produce network separation or loss of resources. For example, power swings, which are not always troublesome in themselves, may have associated voltage or frequency swings that are unacceptable. Such concerns can limit power transfer even when oscillatory stability is not a direct concern.

Information presented in this chapter addressing power system oscillations included:

- Nature of oscillations
- Criteria for damping
- Study procedure
- Mitigation of oscillations by control
- Higher-order terms for small-signal stability

As to the priority of selecting devices and controls to be applied for the purpose of damping power system oscillations, the following summarizing remarks can be made:

1. Carefully tuned power system stabilizers (PSS) on the major generating units affected by the oscillations should be considered first. This is because of the effectiveness and relatively low cost of PSSs.
2. Supplemental controls added to devices installed for other reasons should be considered second. Examples include HVDC installed for the primary purpose of long-distance transmission or power exchange between asynchronous regions and SVC installed for the primary purpose of dynamic voltage support.
3. Augmentation of fixed or mechanically switched equipment with power-electronics, including damping controls can be considered third. Examples include augmenting existing series capacitors with a thyristor-controlled portion (TCSC).
4. The fourth priority for consideration is the addition of a new device in the power system for the primary purpose of damping.

References

Bahrman, M.P., Larsen, E.V., Piwko, R.J., and Patel, H.S., Experience with HVDC turbine-generator torsional interaction at Square Butte, *IEEE Trans. PAS*, 99, 966–975, 1980.

CIGRE Task Force 38.01.07 on Power System Oscillations, *Analysis and Control of Power System Oscillations*, CIGRE Technical Brochure No. 111, December 1996, J. Paserba, Convenor.

CIGRE Task Force 38.02.16, *Impact of the Interaction among Power System Controllers*, CIGRE Technical Brochure No. 116, 2000, N. Martins, Convenor.

Clark, K., Fardanesh, B., and Adapa, R., Thyristor controlled series compensation application study—control interaction considerations, *IEEE Trans. Power Delivery*, 1031–1037, April 1995.

Concordia, C., Steady-state stability of synchronous machines as affected by voltage regulator characteristics, *AIEE Transl.*, 63, 215–220, 1944.

Concordia, C., Effect of prime-mover speed control characteristics on electric power system performance, *IEEE Trans. PAS*, 88/5, 752–756, 1969.

Crary, S.B. and Duncan, W.E., Amortisseur windings for hydrogenerators, *Electrical World*, 115, 2204–2206, June 28, 1941.

de Mello, F.P. and Concordia, C., Concepts of synchronous machine stability as affected by excitation control, *IEEE Trans. PAS*, 88, 316–329, 1969.

Gibbard, M., Martins, N., Sanchez-Gasca, J.J., Uchida, N., and Vittal, V., Recent applications of linear analysis techniques, *IEEE Trans. Power Systems*, 16(1), 154–162, February 2001. Summary of a 1998 Summer Power Meeting Panel Session on Recent Applications of Linear Analysis Techniques.

Guckenheimer, J. and Holmes, P., *Nonlinear Oscillations, Dynamical Systems, and Bifurcations of Vector Fields*, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1983.

Hauer, J.F., Application of Prony analysis to the determination of model content and equivalent models for measured power systems response, *IEEE Trans. Power Systems*, 1062–1068, August 1991.

IEEE PES Special Publication 95-TP-101, Inter-area Oscillations in Power Systems, 1995.

IEEE PES Special Publication 96-TP-116-0, FACTS Applications, 1996.

IEEE PES Panel Session on Recent Applications of Small Signal Stability Analysis Techniques, in *Proceedings of the IEEE Power Engineering Society Summer Meeting*, July 16–20, 2000, Seattle, WA.

IEEE PES Panel Session on Recent Applications of Linear Analysis Techniques, in *Proceedings of the IEEE Power Engineering Society Winter Meeting*, January 27–31, 2002, New York.

IEEE PES Panel Session on Recent Applications of Linear Analysis Techniques, in *Proceedings of the IEEE Power Engineering Society General Meeting*, July 13–17, 2003, Toronto, Canada.

IEEE PES Panel Session on Recent Applications of Linear Analysis Techniques, in *Proceedings of the IEEE Power Engineering Society General Meeting*, June 12–16, 2005, San Francisco, CA.

Kamwa, I., Grondin, R., Dickinson, J., and Fortin, S., A minimal realization approach to reduced-order modeling and modal analysis for power system response signals, *IEEE Trans. Power Systems*, 8(3), 1020–1029, 1993.

Kundur, P., *Power System Stability and Control*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1994.

Kundur, P., Lee, D.C., and Zein El-Din, H.M., Power system stabilizers for thermal units: Analytical techniques and on-site validation, *IEEE Trans. PAS*, 100, 81–85, January 1981.

Kundur, P., Klein, M., Rogers, G.J., and Zywno, M.S., Application of power system stabilizers for enhancement of overall system stability, *IEEE Trans. Power Systems*, 4, 614–626, May 1989.

Kundur, P., Rogers, G., Wong, D., Wang, L., and Lauby, M., A comprehensive computer program package for small signal stability analysis of power systems, *IEEE Trans.*, PWRS-5(4), 1076–1083, November 1990.

Kundur, P., Paserba, J., Ajjarapu, V., Andersson, G., Bose, A., Canizares, C., Hatziargyriou, N., Hill, D., Stankovic, A., Taylor, C., Van Cutsem, T., and Vittal, V. (IEEE/CIGRE Joint Task Force on Stability Terms and Definitions), Definition and classification of power system stability, *IEEE Trans. Power Systems*, August 2004.

Larsen, E.V. and Chow, J.H., SVC control design concepts for system dynamic performance, Application of static var systems for system dynamic performance, IEEE Special Publication No. 87TH1087-5-PWR on *Application of Static Var Systems for System Dynamic Performance*, 36–53, 1987.

Larsen, E.V. and Swann, D.A., Applying power system stabilizers, Parts I, II, and III, *IEEE Trans. PAS*, 100, 3017–3046, 1981.

Larsen, E., Sanchez-Gasca, J., and Chow, J., Concepts for design of FACTS controllers to damp power swings, *IEEE Trans. Power Systems*, 10(2), 948–956, May 1995.

Lee, D.C. and Kundur, P., Advanced excitation controls for power system stability enhancement, CIGRE Paper 38-01, Paris, 1986.

Lee, D.C., Beaulieu, R.E., and Rogers, G.J., Effects of governor characteristics on turbo-generator shaft torsionals, *IEEE Trans. PAS*, 104, 1255–1261, June 1985.

Levine, W.S., Ed., *The Control Handbook*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 1995.

Martins, N. and Lima, L., Determination of suitable locations for power system stabilizers and static var compensators for damping electromechanical oscillations in large scale power systems, *IEEE Trans. Power Systems*, 5(4), 1455–1469, November 1990.

Martins, N. and Quintao, P.E.M., Computing dominant poles of power system multivariable transfer functions, *IEEE Trans. Power Systems*, 18(1), 152–159, February 2003.

Martins, N., Pinto, H.J.C.P., and Lima, L.T.G., Efficient methods for finding transfer function zeros of power systems, *IEEE Trans. Power Systems*, 7(3), 1350–1361, August 1992.

Martins, N., Lima, L.T.G., and Pinto, H.J.C.P., Computing dominant poles of power system transfer functions, *IEEE Trans. Power Systems*, 11(1), 162–170, February 1996.

Pal, B. and Chaudhuri, B., *Robust Control in Power Systems*, Springer Science and Business Media Inc., 2005.

Paserba, J.J., Larsen, E.V., Grund, C.E., and Murdoch, A., Mitigation of inter-area oscillations by control, IEEE PES Special Publication 95-TP-101 on *Interarea Oscillations in Power Systems*, 1995.

Piwko, R.J. and Larsen, E.V., HVDC System control for damping subsynchronous oscillations, *IEEE Trans. PAS*, 101(7), 2203–2211, 1982.

Piwko, R., Othman, H., Alvarez, O., and Wu, C., Eigenvalue and frequency domain analysis of the intermountain power project and the WSCC network, *IEEE Trans. Power Systems*, 238–244, February 1991.

Pourbeik, P. and Gibbard, M., Damping and synchronizing torques induced on generators by FACTS stabilizers in multimachine power systems, *IEEE Trans. Power Systems*, 11(4), 1920–1925, November 1996.

Rogers, G., *Power System Oscillations*, Kluwer Academic Publishers, Massachusetts, 2000.

Sanchez-Gasca, J., Vittal, V., Gibbard, M., Messina, A., Vowles, D., and Liu, S., Annakkage, U., Inclusion of higher-order terms for small-signal (modal) analysis: Committee report—task force on assessing the need to include higher-order terms for small-signal (modal) analysis, *IEEE Trans. Power Systems*, 20(4), 1886–1904, November 2005.

Semlyen, A. and Wang, L., Sequential computation of the complete eigensystem for the study zone in small signal stability analysis of large power systems, *IEEE Trans.*, PWRS-3(2), 715–725, May 1988.

Shanechi, H., Pariz, N., and Vaahedi, E., General nonlinear representation of large-scale power systems, *IEEE Trans. Power Systems*, 18(3), 1103–1109, August 2003.

Vittal, V., Bhatia, N., and Fouad, A., Analysis of the inter-area mode phenomenon in power systems following large disturbances, *IEEE Trans. Power Systems*, 6(4), 1515–1521, November 1991.

Wang, L. and Semlyen, A., Application of sparse eigenvalue techniques to the small signal stability analysis of large power systems, *IEEE Trans.*, PWRS-5(2), 635–642, May 1990.

Wang, L., Klein, M., Yirga, S., and Kundur, P. Dynamic reduction of large power systems for stability studies, *IEEE Trans. Power Systems*, PWRS-12(2), 889–895, May 1997.

Watson, W. and Coultes, M.E., Static exciter stabilizing signals on large generators—Mechanical problems, *IEEE Trans. PAS*, 92, 205–212, January/February 1973.

10
Voltage Stability

Yakout Mansour
California ISO

Claudio Cañizares
University of Waterloo

Voltage stability refers to "the ability of a power system to maintain steady voltages at all buses in the system after being subjected to a disturbance from a given initial operating condition" (IEEE-CIGRE, 2004). If voltage stability exists, the voltage and power of the system will be controllable at all times. In general, the inability of the system to supply the required demand leads to voltage instability (voltage collapse).

The nature of voltage instability phenomena can be either fast (short-term, with voltage collapse in the order of fractions of a second to a few seconds) or slow (long-term, with voltage collapse in minutes to hours) (IEEE-CIGRE, 2004). Short-term voltage stability problems are usually associated with the rapid response of voltage controllers (e.g., generators' automatic voltage regulator [AVR]) and power electronic converters, such as those encountered in flexible AC transmission system or FACTS controllers and high voltage DC (HVDC) links. In the case of voltage regulators, voltage instability is usually related to inappropriate tuning of the system controllers. Voltage stability in converters, on the other hand, is associated with commutation issues in the electronic switches that make up the converters, particularly when these converters are connected to "weak" AC systems, i.e., systems with poor reactive power support. These fast voltage stability problems have been studied using a variety of analysis techniques and tools that properly model and simulate the dynamic response of the voltage controllers and converters under study, such as transient stability programs and electromagnetic transient simulators. This chapter does not discuss these particular issues, concentrating rather on a detailed presentation of long-term voltage instability phenomena in power systems.

10.1 Basic Concepts

Voltage instability of radial distribution systems has been well recognized and understood for decades (Venikov, 1970, 1980) and was often referred to as load instability. Large interconnected power networks did not face the phenomenon until late 1970s and early 1980s.

Most of the early developments of the major high voltage (HV) and extra HV (EHV) networks and interties faced the classical machine angle stability problem. Innovations in both analytical techniques and stabilizing measures made it possible to maximize the power transfer capabilities of the transmission systems. The result was increasing transfers of power over long distances of transmission. As the power transfer increased, even when angle stability was not a limiting factor, many utilities have been facing a shortage of voltage support. The result ranged from postcontingency operation under reduced voltage profile to total voltage collapse. Major outages attributed to this problem have been experienced in the northeastern part of the U.S., France, Sweden, Belgium, Japan, along with other localized cases of voltage collapse (Mansour, 1990; U.S.–Canada, 2004). Accordingly, voltage stability has imposed itself as a governing factor in both planning and operating criteria of a number of utilities. Consequently, sound analytical procedures, quantitative measures of proximity to voltage instability have been developed for the past two decades.

10.1.1 Generator-Load Example

The simple generator-load model depicted in Fig. 10.1 can be used to readily explain the basic concepts behind voltage stability phenomena. The power flow model of this system can be represented by the following equations:

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 &= P_{\mathrm{L}} - \frac{V_1 V_2}{X_{\mathrm{L}}} \sin\delta \\
0 &= kP_{\mathrm{L}} - \frac{V_2^2}{X_{\mathrm{L}}} - \frac{V_1 V_2}{X_{\mathrm{L}}} \cos\delta \\
0 &= Q_{\mathrm{G}} - \frac{V_1^2}{X_{\mathrm{L}}} + \frac{V_1 V_2}{X_{\mathrm{L}}} \cos\delta
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\delta = \delta_2 - \delta_1$, $P_{\mathrm{G}} = P_{\mathrm{L}}$ (no losses), $Q_L = kP_{\mathrm{L}}$ (constant power factor load).

All solutions to these power flow equations, as the system load level P_{L} is increased, can be plotted to yield *PV* curves (bus voltage vs. active power load levels) or *QV* curves (bus voltage vs. reactive power load levels) for this system. For example, Fig. 10.2 depicts the *PV* curves at the load bus obtained from these equations for $k = 0.25$ and $V_1 = 1$ pu when generator limits are neglected, and for two values of X_{L} to simulate a transmission system outage or contingency by increasing its value. Figure 10.3 depicts the power flow solution when reactive power limits are considered, for $Q_{\mathrm{Gmax}} = 0.5$ and $Q_{\mathrm{Gmin}} = -0.5$. Notice that these *PV* curves can be readily transformed into *QV* curves by properly scaling the horizontal axis.

In Fig. 10.2, the maximum loading corresponds to a singularity of the Jacobian of the power flow equations, and may be associated with a *saddle-node bifurcation* of a dynamic model of this system (Cañizares, 2002). (A saddle-node bifurcation is defined in a power flow model of the power grid, which is considered a nonlinear system, as a point at which two power flow solutions merge and disappear as typically the load, which is a system parameter, is increased; the Jacobian of the power flow equations become singular at this "bifurcation" or "merging" point.) Observe that if the system were operating at a load level of $P_{\mathrm{L}} = 0.7$ pu, the contingency would basically result in the disappearance of an operating point (power flow solution), thus leading to a voltage collapse.

Similarly, if there is an attempt to increase P_{L} (Q_{L}) beyond its maximum values in Fig. 10.3, the result is a voltage collapse of the system, which is also observed if the contingency depicted in this figure occurs at the operating point associated with $P_{\mathrm{L}} = 0.6$ pu. The maximum loading points correspond in this case to a maximum limit on the generator reactive power Q_{G}, with the Jacobian of the power flow being nonsingular. This point may be associated with a *limit-induced bifurcation* of a dynamic model of this system (Cañizares, 2002). (A limit-induced bifurcation is defined in a power flow model of the nonlinear power grid as a point at which two power flow solutions merge as the load is increased; the Jacobian of the power flow equations at this point is not singular and corresponds to a power flow solution, where a system controller reaches a control limit, such as a voltage regulating generator reaching a maximum reactive power limit.)

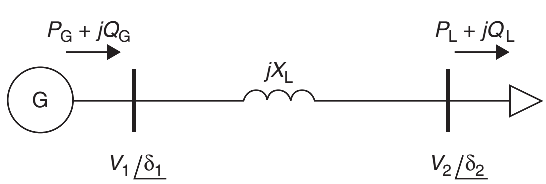


FIGURE 10.1 Generator-load example.

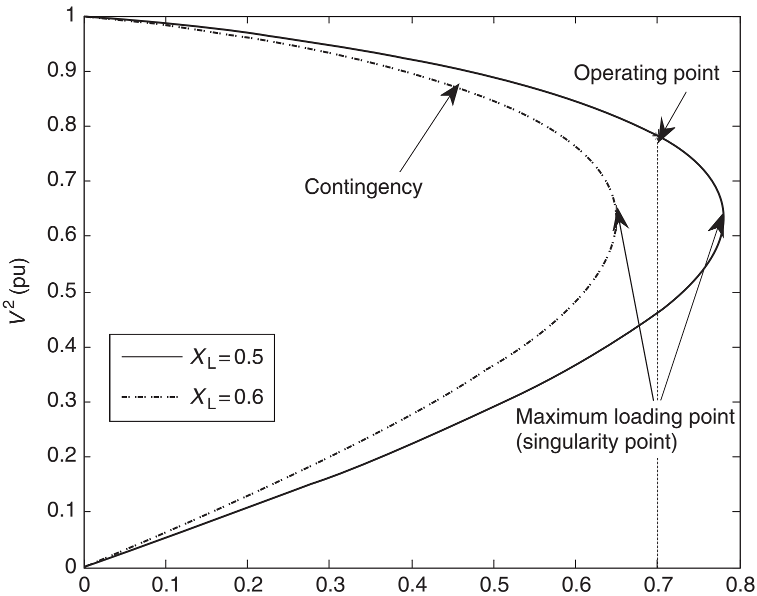


FIGURE 10.2 *PV* curve for generator-load example without generator reactive power limits.

For this simple generator-load example, different *PV* and *QV* curves can be computed depending on the system parameters chosen to plot these curves. For example, the family of curves shown in Fig. 10.4 is produced by maintaining the sending end voltage constant, while the load at the receiving end is varied at a constant power factor and the receiving end voltage is calculated. Each curve is calculated at a specific power factor and shows the maximum power that can be transferred at this

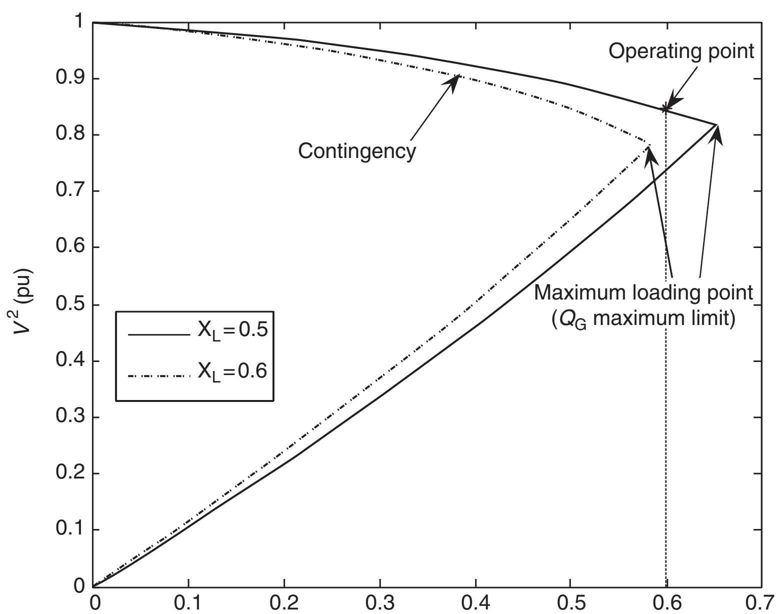


FIGURE 10.3 *PV* curve for generator-load example considering generator reactive power limits.

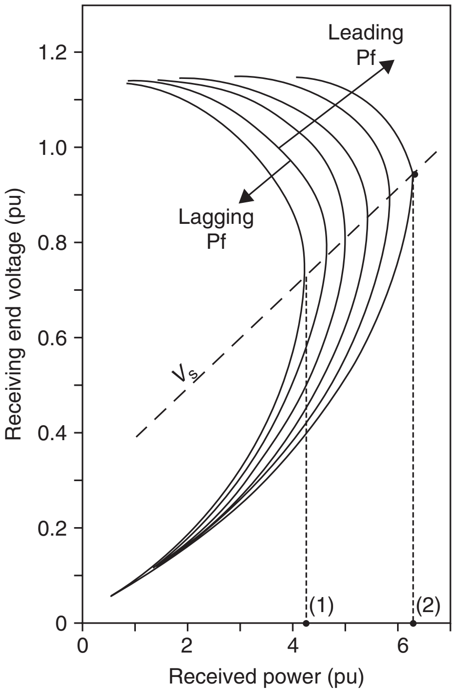


FIGURE 10.4 $P_L V_2$ characteristics.

particular power factor, which is also referred to as the maximum system loadability. Note that the limit can be increased by providing more reactive support at the receiving end [limit (2) vs. limit (1)], which is effectively pushing the power factor of the load in the leading direction. It should also be noted that the points on the curves below the limit line V_s characterize unstable behavior of the system, where a drop in demand is associated with a drop in the receiving end voltage, leading to eventual collapse. Proximity to voltage instability is usually measured by the distance (in pu power) between the operating point on the *PV* curve and the limit of the same curve; this is usually referred to as the system loadability margin.

Another family of curves similar to that of Fig. 10.5 can be produced by varying the reactive power demand (or injection) at the receiving end while maintaining the real power and the sending end voltage constant. The relation between the receiving end voltage and the reactive power injection at the receiving end is plotted to produce the so-called *QV* curves of Fig. 10.5. The bottom of any given curve characterizes the voltage stability limit. Note that the behavior of the system on the right side of the limit is such that an increase in reactive power injection at the receiving end results in a receiving end voltage rise, while the opposite is true on the left side because of the substantial increase in current at the lower voltage, which, in turn, increases reactive losses in the network substantially. The proximity to voltage instability or voltage stability margin is measured as the difference between the reactive power injection corresponding to the operating point and the bottom of the curve. As the active power transfer increases (upward in Fig. 10.5), the reactive power margin decreases, as does the receiving end voltage.

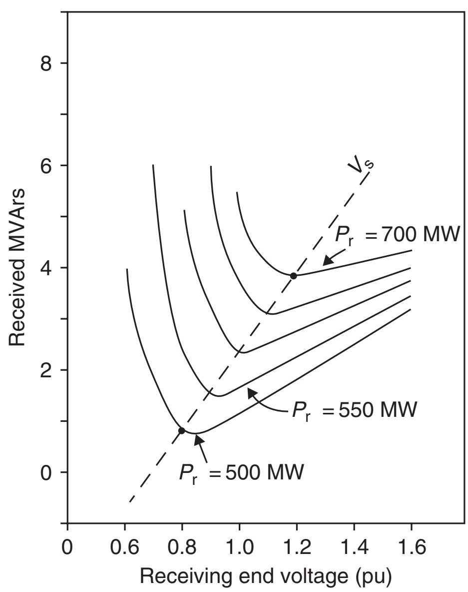


FIGURE 10.5 $Q_L V_2$ characteristics.

10.1.2 Load Modeling

Voltage instability is typically associated with relatively slow variations in network and load characteristics. Network response in this case is highly influenced by the slow-acting control devices such as transformer on-load tap changers or LTCs, automatic generation control, generator field current limiters, generator overload reactive capability, under-voltage load shedding relays, and switchable reactive devices. Load characteristics with respect to changing voltages play also a mayor role in voltage stability. The characteristics of such devices, as to how they influence the network response to voltage variations, are generally understood and well-covered in the literature.

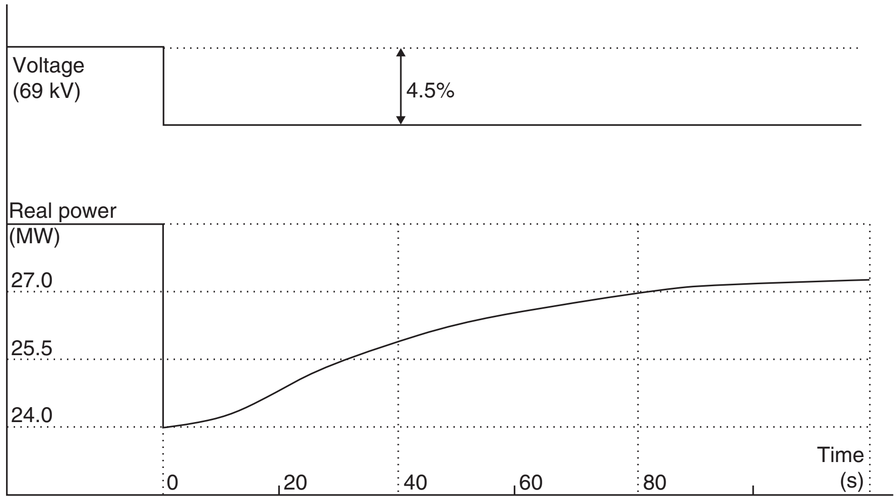


FIGURE 10.6 Aggregate load response to a step-voltage change.

While it might be possible to identify the voltage response characteristics of a large variety of individual equipment of which a power network load is comprised, it is not practical or realistic to model network load by individual equipment models. Thus, the aggregate load model approach is much more realistic. However, load aggregation requires making certain assumptions, which might lead to significant differences between the observed and simulated system behavior. It is for these reasons that load modeling in voltage stability studies, as in any other kind of stability study, is a rather important and difficult issue.

Field test results as reported by Hill (1993) and Xu et al. (1997) indicate that typical response of an aggregate load to step-voltage changes is of the form shown in Fig. 10.6. The response is a reflection of the collective effects of all downstream components ranging from LTCs to individual household loads. The time span for a load to recover to steady-state is normally in the range of several seconds to minutes, depending on the load composition. Responses for real and reactive power are qualitatively similar. It can be seen that a sudden voltage change causes an instantaneous power demand change. This change defines the transient characteristics of the load and was used to derive static load models for angular stability studies. When the load response reaches steady-state, the steady-state power demand is a function of the steady-state voltage. This function defines the steady-state load characteristics known as voltage-dependent load models in power flow studies.

The typical load–voltage response characteristics can be modeled by a generic dynamic load model proposed in Fig. 10.7. In this model (Xu and Mansour, 1994), x is the state variable. $P_t(V)$ and $P_s(V)$ are the transient and steady-state load characteristics, respectively, and can be expressed as

$$P_t = V^a \quad \text{or} \quad P_t = C_2V^2 + C_1V + C_o$$
$$P_s = P_oV^a \quad \text{or} \quad P_s = P_o(d_2V^2 + d_1V + d_o)$$

where V is the pu magnitude of the voltage imposed on the load. It can be seen that, at steady-state, the state variable x of the model is constant. The input to the integration block, $E = P_s - P$, must be zero and, as a result, the model output is determined by the steady-state characteristics $P = P_s$. For any sudden voltage change, x maintains its predisturbance value initially, because the integration block cannot change its output instantaneously. The transient output is then determined by the transient characteristics $P - xP_t$. The mismatch between the model output and the steady-state load demand is the error signal e. This signal is fed back to the integration block that gradually changes the state variable x.

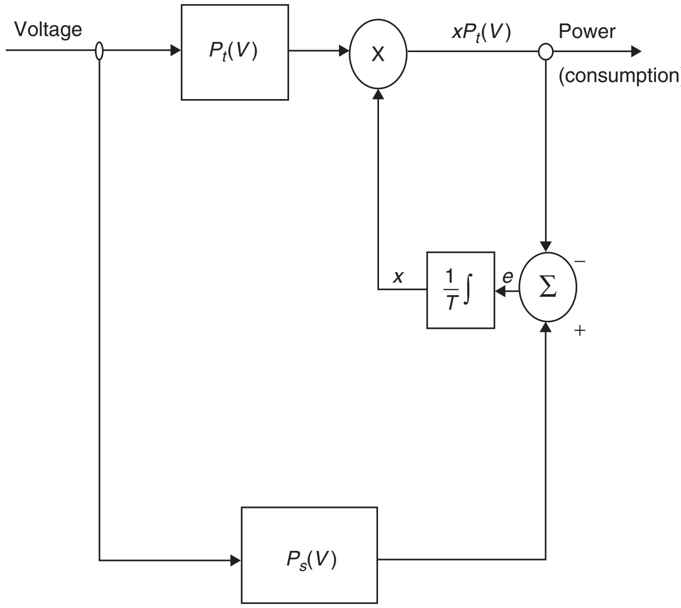


FIGURE 10.7 A generic dynamic load model.

This process continues until a new steady-state ($e = 0$) is reached. Analytical expressions of the load model, including real (P) and reactive (Q) power dynamics, are

$$
\begin{aligned}
T_p \frac{\mathrm{d}x}{\mathrm{d}t} &= P_s(V) - P, \quad P = xP_t(V) \\
T_q \frac{\mathrm{d}y}{\mathrm{d}t} &= Q_s(V) - Q, \quad Q = yQ_t(V) \\
P_t(V) &= V^a, \quad P_s(V) = P_\mathrm{o} V^a; \qquad Q_t(V) = V^\beta, \quad Q_s(V) = Q_\mathrm{o} V^\beta
\end{aligned}
$$

10.1.3 Effect of Load Dynamics on Voltage Stability

As illustrated with the help of the aforementioned generator-load example, voltage stability may occur when a power system experiences a large disturbance, such as a transmission line outage. It may also occur if there is no major disturbance, but the system's operating point shifts slowly toward stability limits. Therefore, the voltage stability problem, as other stability problems, must be investigated from two perspectives, the large-disturbance stability and the small-signal stability.

Large-disturbance voltage stability is event-oriented and addresses problems such as postcontingency margin requirement and response of reactive power support. Small-signal voltage stability investigates the stability of an operating point. It can provide such information as to the areas vulnerable to voltage collapse. In this section, the effect of load dynamics on large- and small-disturbance voltage stability is analyzed by examining the interaction of a load center with its supply network, and key parameters influencing voltage stability are identified. Since the real power dynamic behavior of an aggregate load is similar to its reactive power counterpart, the analysis is limited to reactive power only.

10.1.3.1 Large-Disturbance Voltage Stability

To facilitate the explanation, assume that the voltage dynamics in the supply network are fast as compared to the aggregate dynamics of the load center. The network can then be modeled by three

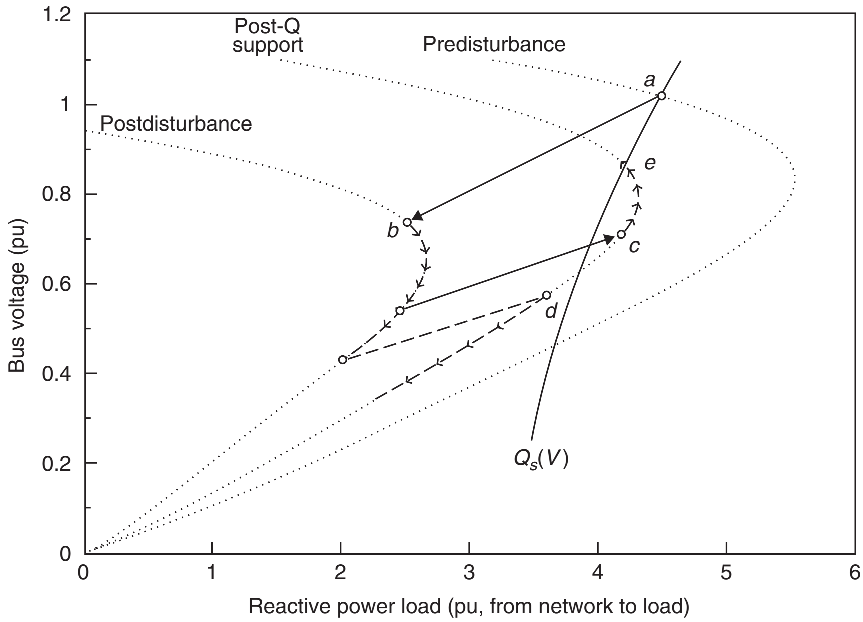


FIGURE 10.8 Voltage dynamics as viewed from *VQ* plane.

quasisteady-state *VQ* characteristics (*QV* curves), predisturbance, postdisturbance, and postdisturbance-with-reactive-support, as shown in Fig. 10.8. The load center is represented by a generic dynamic load. This load-network system initially operates at the intersection of the steady-state load characteristics and the predisturbance network *VQ* curve, point *a*.

The network experiences an outage that reduces its reactive power supply capability to the post-disturbance *VQ* curve. The aggregate load responds (see Section 10.1.2) instantaneously with its transient characteristics ($\beta = 2$, constant impedance in this example) and the system operating point jumps to point *b*. Since, at point *b*, the network reactive power supply is less than load demand for the given voltage:

$$T_q \frac{\mathrm{d}y}{\mathrm{d}t} = Q_s(V) - Q(V) > 0$$

the load dynamics will try to draw more reactive power by increasing the state variable *y*. This is equivalent to increasing the load admittance if $\beta = 2$, or the load current if $\beta = 1$. It drives the operating point to a lower voltage. If the load demand and the network supply imbalance persist, the system will continuously operate on the intersection of the postdisturbance *VQ* curve and the drifting transient load curve with a monotonically decreasing voltage, leading to voltage collapse.

If reactive power support is initiated shortly after the outage, the network is switched to the third *VQ* curve. The load responds with its transient characteristics and a new operating point is formed. Depending on the switch time of reactive power support, the new operating point can be either *c*, for fast response, or *d*, for slow response. At point *c*, power supply is greater than load demand ($Q_s(V) - Q(V) < 0$); the load then draws less power by decreasing its state variable, and as a result, the operating voltage is increased. This dynamic process continues until the power imbalance is reduced to zero, namely a new steady-state operating point is reached (point *e*). On the other hand, for the case with slow response reactive support, the load demand is always greater than the network supply. A monotonic voltage collapse is the ultimate end.

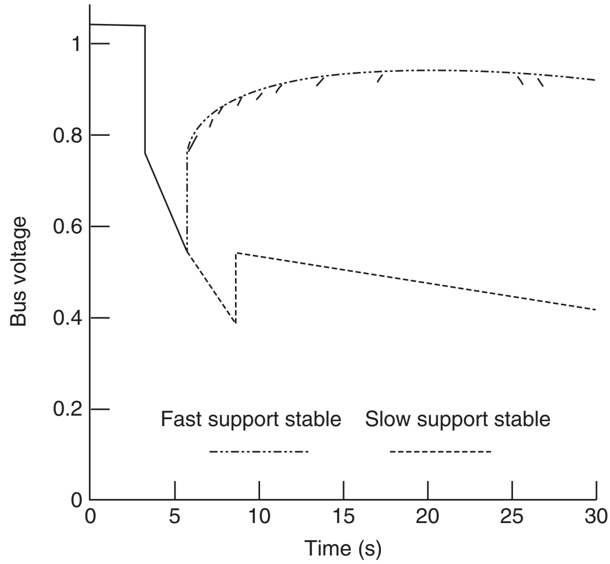


FIGURE 10.9 Simulation of voltage collapse.

A numerical solution technique can be used to simulate the above process. The equations for the simulation are

$$T_q \frac{\mathrm{d}y}{\mathrm{d}t} = Q_s(V) = Q(t); \quad Q(t) = yQ_t(V)$$
$$Q(t) = \mathrm{Network}(V_s t)$$

where the function Network($V_s t$) consists of three polynomials each representing one *VQ* curve. Figure 10.8 shows the simulation results in *VQ* coordinates. The load voltage as a function of time is plotted in Fig. 10.9. The results demonstrate the importance of load dynamics for explaining the voltage stability problem.

10.1.3.2 Small-Signal Voltage Stability

The voltage characteristics of a power system can be analyzed around an operating point by linearizing the power flow equations around the operating point and analyzing the resulting sensitivity matrices. Breakthroughs in computational algorithms have made these techniques efficient and helpful in analyzing large-scale systems, taking into account virtually all the important elements affecting the phenomenon. In particular, singular value decomposition and modal techniques should be of particular interest to the reader and are thoroughly described by Mansour (1993), Lof et al. (1992, 1993), Gao et al. (1992), and Cañizares (2002).

10.2 Analytical Framework

The slow nature of the network and load response associated with the phenomenon makes it possible to analyze the problem in two frameworks: (1) long-term dynamic framework, in which all slow-acting devices and aggregate bus loads are represented by their dynamic models (the analysis in this case is done through a dynamic quasidynamic simulation of the system response to contingencies or load variations) or (2) steady-state framework (e.g., power flow) to determine if the system can reach a stable operating point following a particular contingency. This operating point could be a final state or a midpoint following a step of a discrete control action (e.g., transformer tap change).

The proximity of a given system to voltage instability and the control actions that may be taken to avoid voltage collapse are typically assessed by various indices and sensitivities. The most widely used are (Cañizares, 2002):

- Loadability margins, i.e., the "distance" in MW or MVA to a point of voltage collapse, and sensitivities of these margins with respect to a variety of parameters, such as active/reactive power load variations or reactive power levels at different sources.
- Singular values of the system Jacobian or other matrices obtained from these Jacobians, and their sensitivities with respect to various system parameters.
- Bus voltage profiles and their sensitivity to variations in active and reactive power of the load and generators, or other reactive power sources.
- Availability of reactive power supplied by generators, synchronous condensers, and static-var compensators and its sensitivity to variations in load bus active and/or reactive power.

These indices and sensitivities, as well as their associated control actions, can be determined using a variety of the computational methods described below.

10.2.1 Power Flow Analysis

Partial *PV* and *QV* curves can be readily calculated using power flow programs. In this case, the demand of load center buses is increased in steps at a constant power factor while the generators' terminal voltages are held at their nominal value, as long as their reactive power outputs are within limits; if a generator's reactive power limit is reached, the corresponding generator bus is treated as another load bus. The *PV* relation can then be plotted by recording the MW demand level against a "central" load bus voltage at the load center. It should be noted that power flow solution algorithms diverge very close to or past the maximum loading point, and do not produce the unstable portion of the *PV* relation. The *QV* relation, however, can be produced in full by assuming a fictitious synchronous condenser at a central load bus in the load center (this is a "parameterization" technique also used in the continuation methods described below). The *QV* relation is then plotted for this particular bus as a representative of the load center by varying the voltage of the bus (now converted to a voltage control bus by the addition of the synchronous condenser) and recording its value against the reactive power injection of the synchronous condenser. If the limits on the reactive power capability of the synchronous condenser are made very high, the power flow solution algorithm will always converge at either side of the *QV* relation.

10.2.2 Continuation Methods

A popular and robust technique to obtain full *PV* and/or *QV* curves is the continuation method (Cañizares, 2002). This methodology basically consists of two power flow-based steps: the predictor and the corrector, as illustrated in Fig. 10.10. In the predictor step, an estimate of the power flow solution for a load P increase (point 2 in Fig. 10.10) is determined based on the starting solution (point 1) and an estimate of the changes in the power flow variables (e.g., bus voltages and angles). This estimate may be computed using a linearization of the power flow equations, i.e., determining the "tangent vector" to the manifold of power flow solutions. Thus, in the example depicted in Fig. 10.10:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta x &= x_2 - x_1\\ &= kJ_{\mathrm{PF1}}^{-1}\left.\frac{\partial f_{\mathrm{PF}}}{\partial P}\right|_1 \Delta P\end{aligned}$$

where J_{PF1} is the Jacobian of the power flow equations $f_{\mathrm{PF}}(x)=0$, evaluated at the operating point 1; x is the vector of power flow variables (load bus voltages are part of x); $\partial f_{\mathrm{PF}}/\partial P|_1$ is the partial derivative of the power flow equations with respect to the changing parameter P evaluated at the operating point 1; and k is a constant used to control the length of the step (typically $k=1$), which is usually reduced by

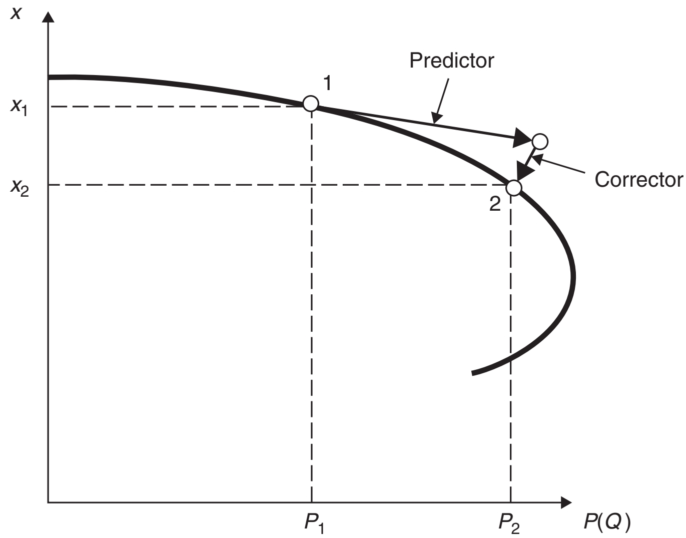


FIGURE 10.10 Continuation power flow.

halves to guarantee a solution of the corrector step near the maximum loading point, and thus avoiding the need for a parameterization step. Observe that the predictor step basically consists in determining the sensitivities of the power flow variables x with respect to changes in the loading level P.

The corrector step can be as simple as solving the power flow equations for $P = P_2$ to obtain the operating point 2 in Fig. 10.10, using the estimated values of x yielded by the predictor as initial guesses. Other more sophisticated and computationally robust techniques, such as a "perpendicular intersection" method, may be used as well.

10.2.3 Optimization or Direct Methods

The maximum loading point can be directly computed using optimization-based methodologies (Rosehart, 2003), which yield the maximum loading margin to a voltage collapse point and a variety of sensitivities of the power flow variables with respect to any system parameter, including the loading levels (Milano et al., 2006). These methods basically consist on solving the optimal power flow (OPF) problem:

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{Max.} && P \\ &\text{s.t.} && f_{\mathrm{PF}}(x, P) = 0 \rightarrow \text{power flow equations} \\ & && x_{\min} \leq x \leq x_{\max} \rightarrow \text{limits} \end{aligned}$$

where P represents the system loading level; the power flow equations f_{PF} and variable x should include the reactive power flow equations of the generators, so that the generator's reactive power limits can be considered in the computation. The Lagrange multipliers associated with the constraints are basically sensitivities that can be used for further analyses or control purposes. Well-known optimization techniques, such as interior point methods, can be used to obtain loadability margins and sensitivities by solving this particular OPF problem for real-sized systems.

Approaching voltage stability analysis from the optimization point of view has the advantage that certain variables, such as generator bus voltages or active power outputs, can be treated as optimization parameters. This allows treating the problem not only as a voltage stability margin computation, but also as a means to obtain an "optimal" dispatch to maximize the voltage stability margins.

10.2.4 Timescale Decomposition

The *PV* and *QV* relations produced results corresponding to an end state of the system where all tap changers and control actions have taken place in time and the load characteristics were restored to a constant power characteristic. It is always recommended and often common to analyze the system behavior in its transition following a disturbance to the end state. Apart from the full long-term time simulation, the system performance can be analyzed in a quasidynamic manner by breaking the system response down into several time windows, each of which is characterized by the states of the various controllers and the load recovery (Mansour, 1993). Each time window can be analyzed using power flow programs modified to reflect the various controllers' states and load characteristics. Those time windows (Fig. 10.11) are primarily characterized by

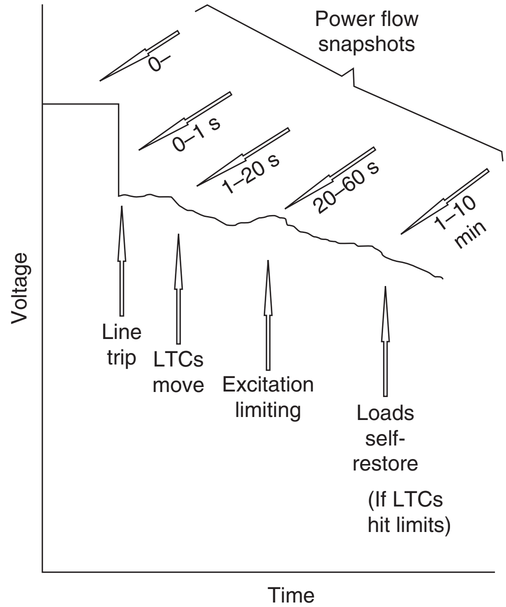


FIGURE 10.11 Breaking the system response down into time periods.

1. Voltage excursion in the first second after a contingency as motors slow, generator voltage regulators respond, etc.
2. The period 1 to 20 s when the system is quiescent until excitation limiting occurs
3. The period 20 to 60 s when generator over excitation protection has operated
4. The period 1 to 10 min after the disturbance when LTCs restore customer load and further increase reactive demand on generators
5. The period beyond 10 min when AGC, phase angle regulators, operators, etc. come into play

The sequential power flow analysis aforementioned can be extended further by properly representing in the simulation some of the slow system dynamics, such as the LTCs (Van Cutsem and Vournas, 1996).

10.3 Mitigation of Voltage Stability Problems

The following methods can be used to mitigate voltage stability problems:

Must-run generation. Operate uneconomic generators to change power flows or provide voltage support during emergencies or when new lines or transformers are delayed.

Series capacitors. Use series capacitors to effectively shorten long lines, thus, decreasing the net reactive loss. In addition, the line can deliver more reactive power from a strong system at one end to one experiencing a reactive shortage at the other end.

Shunt capacitors. Though the heavy use of shunt capacitors can be part of the voltage stability problem, sometimes additional capacitors can also solve the problem by freeing "spinning reactive reserve" in generators. In general, most of the required reactive power should be supplied locally, with generators supplying primarily active power.

Static compensators (SVCs and STATCOMs). Static compensators, the power electronics-based counterpart to the synchronous condenser, are effective in controlling voltage and preventing voltage collapse, but have very definite limitations that must be recognized. Voltage collapse is likely in systems heavily dependent on static compensators when a disturbance exceeding planning criteria takes these compensators to their ceiling.

Operate at higher voltages. Operating at higher voltage may not increase reactive reserves, but does decrease reactive demand. As such, it can help keep generators away from reactive power limits, and thus, help operators maintain control of voltage. The comparison of receiving end *QV* curves for two sending end voltages shows the value of higher voltages.

Secondary voltage regulation. Automatic voltage regulation of certain load buses, usually referred to as pilot buses, that coordinately controls the total reactive power capability of the reactive power sources in pilot buses' areas, has proven to be an effective way to improve voltage stability (Cañizares, 2005). These are basically hierarchical controls that directly vary the voltage set points of generators and static compensators on a pilot bus' control area, so that all controllable reactive power sources are coordinated to adequately manage the reactive power capability in the area, keeping some of these sources from reaching their limits at relatively low load levels.

Undervoltage load shedding. A small load reduction, even 5% to 10%, can make the difference between collapse and survival. Manual load shedding is used today for this purpose (some utilities use distribution voltage reduction via SCADA), though it may be too slow to be effective in the case of a severe reactive shortage. Inverse time–undervoltage relays are not widely used, but can be very effective. In a radial load situation, load shedding should be based on primary side voltage. In a steady-state stability problem, the load shed in the receiving system will be most effective, even though voltages may be lowest near the electrical center (shedding load in the vicinity of the lowest voltage may be more easily accomplished, and still be helpful).

Lower power factor generators. Where new generation is close enough to reactive-short areas or areas that may occasionally demand large reactive reserves, a 0.80 or 0.85 power factor generator may sometimes be appropriate. However, shunt capacitors with a higher power factor generator having reactive overload capability may be more flexible and economic.

Use generator reactive overload capability. Generators should be used as effectively as possible. Overload capability of generators and exciters may be used to delay voltage collapse until operators can change dispatch or curtail load when reactive overloads are modest. To be most useful, reactive overload capability must be defined in advance, operators trained in its use, and protective devices set so as not to prevent its use.

References

Cañizares, C.A., editor. *Voltage Stability Assessment: Concepts, Practices and Tools*, IEEE-PES Power Systems Stability Subcommittee Special Publication, SP101PSS, August, 2002.

Cañizares, C.A., Cavallo, C., Pozzi, M., and Corsi, S., Comparing secondary voltage regulation and shunt compensation for improving voltage stability and transfer capability in the Italian power system, *Electric Power Systems Research*, 73, 67–76, 2005.

Gao, B., Morison, G.K., and Kundur, P., Voltage stability evaluation using modal analysis, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 7, 1529–1542, 1992.

Hill, D.J., Nonlinear dynamic load models with recovery for voltage stability studies, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 8, 166–176, 1993.

IEEE-CIGRE Joint Task Force on Stability Terms and Definitions (Kundur, P., Paserba, J., Ajjarapu, V., Andersson, G., Bose, A., Cañizares, C., Hatziargyriou, N., Hill, D., Stankovic, A., Taylor, C., Van Cutsem, T., and Vittal, V., Definition and classification of power system stability, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 19, 1387–1401, 2004.

Lof, P.-A., Smed, T., Andersson, G., and Hill, D.J., Fast calculation of a voltage stability index, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 7, 54–64, 1992.

Lof, P.-A., Andersson, G., and Hill, D.J., Voltage stability indices for stressed power systems, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 8, 326–335, 1993.

Mansour, Y., editor. *Voltage Stability of Power Systems: Concepts, Analytical Tools, and Industry Experience*, IEEE Special Publication #90TH0358–2-PWR, 1990.

Mansour, Y., editor. *Suggested Techniques for Voltage Stability Analysis*, IEEE Special Publication #93TH0620–5-PWR, 1993.

Milano, F., Cañizares, C.A., and Conejo, A.J., Sensitivity-based security-constrained OPF market clearing model, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 20, 2051–2060, 2006.

Rosehart, W., Cañizares, C.A., and Quintana, V., Multi-objective optimal power flows to evaluate voltage security costs, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 18, 578–587, 2003.

U.S.–Canada Power System Outage Task Force, *Final Report on the August 14, 2003 Blackout in the United States and Canada: Causes and Recommendations*, April 2004.

Van Cutsem, T. and Vournas, C.D., Voltage stability analysis in transient and midterm timescales, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 11, 146–154, 1996.

Venikov, V., *Transient Processes in Electrical Power Systems*, Mir Publishers, Moscow, 1970 and 1980.

Xu, W. and Mansour, Y., Voltage stability analysis using generic dynamic load models, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 9, 479–493, 1994.

Xu, W., Vaahedi, E., Mansour, Y., and Tamby, J., Voltage stability load parameter determination from field tests on B. C. Hydro's system, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 12, 1290–1297, 1997.

11

Direct Stability Methods

Vijay Vittal
Arizona State University

Direct methods of stability analysis determine the transient stability (as defined in Chapter 7 and described in Chapter 8) of power systems without explicitly obtaining the solutions of the differential equations governing the dynamic behavior of the system. The basis for the method is Lyapunov's second method, also known as Lyapunov's direct method, to determine stability of systems governed by differential equations. The fundamental work of A.M. Lyapunov (1857–1918) on stability of motion was published in Russian in 1893, and was translated into French in 1907 (Lyapunov, 1907). This work received little attention and for a long time was forgotten. In the 1930s, Soviet mathematicians revived these investigations and showed that Lyapunov's method was applicable to several problems in physics and engineering. This revival of the subject matter has spawned several contributions that have led to the further development of the theory and application of the method to physical systems.

The following example motivates the direct methods and also provides a comparison with the conventional technique of simulating the differential equations governing the dynamics of the system. Figure 11.1 shows an illustration of the basic idea behind the use of the direct methods. A vehicle, initially at the bottom of a hill, is given a sudden push up the hill. Depending on the magnitude of the push, the vehicle will either go over the hill and tumble, in which case it is unstable, or the vehicle will climb only part of the way up the hill and return to a rest position (assuming that the vehicle's motion will be damped), i.e., it will be stable. In order to determine the outcome of disturbing the vehicle's equilibrium for a given set of conditions (mass of the vehicle, magnitude of the push, height of the hill, etc.), two different methods can be used:

1. Knowing the initial conditions, obtain a time solution of the equations describing the dynamics of the vehicle and track the position of the vehicle to determine how far up the hill the vehicle will travel. This approach is analogous to the traditional time domain approach of determining stability in dynamic systems.
2. The approach based on Lyapunov's direct method would consist of characterizing the motion of the dynamic system using a suitable Lyapunov function. The Lyapunov function should satisfy certain sign definiteness properties. These properties will be addressed later in this subsection. A natural choice for the Lyapunov function is the system energy. One would then compute the

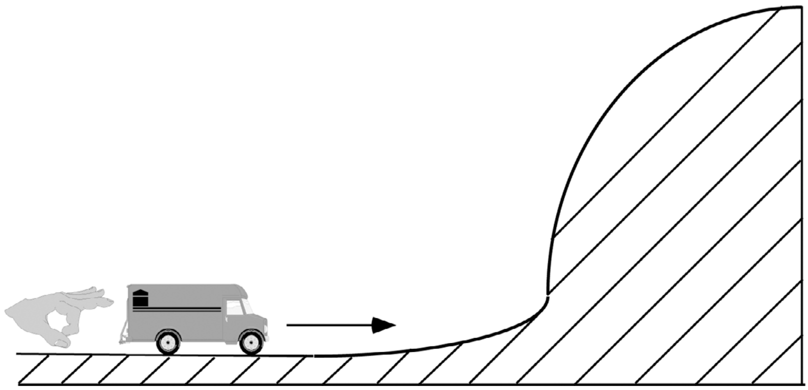


FIGURE 11.1 Illustration of idea behind direct methods.

energy injected into the vehicle as a result of the sudden push, and compare it with the energy needed to climb the hill. In this method, there is no need to track the position of the vehicle as it moves up the hill.

These methods are simple to use if the calculations involve only one vehicle and one hill. The complexity increases if there are several vehicles involved as it becomes necessary to determine (a) which vehicles will be pushed the hardest, (b) how much of the energy is imparted to each vehicle, (c) which direction will they move, and (d) how high a hill must they climb before they will go over the top.

The simple example presented here is analogous to analyzing the stability of a one-machine-infinite-bus power system. The approach presented here is identical to the well-known equal area criterion (Kimbark, 1948; Anderson and Fouad, 1994) which is a direct method for determining transient stability for the one-machine-infinite-bus power system. For a more detailed discussion of the equal area criterion and its relationship to Lyapunov's direct method refer to Pai (1981), chap. 4; Pai (1989), chap. 1; Fouad and Vittal (1992), chap. 3.

11.1 Review of Literature on Direct Methods

In the review presented here, we will deal only with work relating to the transient stability analysis of multimachine power systems. In this case the simple example presented above becomes quite complex. Several vehicles which correspond to the synchronous machines are now involved. It also becomes necessary to determine (a) which vehicles will be pushed the hardest, (b) what portion of the disturbance energy is distributed to each vehicle, (c) in which directions the vehicles move, and (d) how high a hill must the vehicles climb before they will go over.

Energy criteria for transient stability analysis were the earliest of all direct methods of multimachine power system transient stability assessment. These techniques were extensions of the equal area criterion to power systems with more than two generators represented by the classical model (Anderson and Fouad, 1994, chap. 2). Researchers from the Soviet Union conducted early work in this area (1930s and 1940s). There were very few results on this topic in Western literature during the same period. In the 1960s the application of Lyapunov's direct method to power systems generated a great deal of activity in the academic community. In most of these investigations, the classical power system model was used. The early work on energy criteria dealt with two main issues: (a) characterization of the system energy, and (b) the critical value of the energy.

Several excellent references that provide a detailed review of the development of the direct methods for transient stability exist. Ribbens-Pavella (1971) and Fouad (1975) are early review papers and provide a comprehensive review of the work done in the period 1960–1975. Detailed reviews of more recent work are conducted in Bose (1984), Ribbens-Pavella and Evans (1985), Fouad and Vittal (1988), and Chiang et al. (1995). The following textbooks provide a comprehensive review and also present detailed descriptions of the various approaches related to direct stability methods: Pai (1981), Pai (1989), Fouad and Vittal (1992), Ribbens-Pavella (1971), and Pavella and Murthy (1994). These references provide a thorough and detailed review of the evolution of the direct methods. In what follows, a brief review of the field and the evolutionary steps in the development of the approaches are presented.

Gorev (1971) first proposed an energy criteria based on the lowest saddle point or unstable equilibrium point (UEP). This work influenced the thinking of power system direct stability researchers for a long time. Magnusson (1947) presented an approach very similar to that of Gorev's and derived a potential energy function with respect to the (posttransient) equilibrium point of the system. Aylett (1958) studied the phase-plane trajectories of multimachine systems using the classical model. An important aspect of this work is the formulation of the system equations based on the intermachine movements. In the period that followed, several important publications dealing with the application of Lyapunov's method to power systems appeared. These works largely dealt with the aspects of obtaining better Lyapunov function, and determining the least conservative estimate of the domain of attraction. Gless (1966) applied Lyapunov's method to the one machine classical model system. El-Abiad and Nagappan (1966) developed a Lyapunov function for multimachine system and demonstrated the approach on a four machine system. The stability results obtained were conservative, and the work that followed this largely dealt with improving the Lyapunov function. A sampling of the work following this line of thought is presented in Willems (1968), Pai et al. (1970), and Ribbens-Pavella (1971). These efforts were followed by the work of Tavora and Smith (1972) dealing with the transient energy of a multimachine system represented by the classical model. They formulated the system equations in the Center of Inertia (COI) reference frame and also in the internode coordinates which is similar to the formulation used by Aylett (1958). Tavora and Smith obtained expressions for the total kinetic energy of the system and the transient kinetic energy, which the authors say determines stability. This was followed by work of Gupta and El-Abiad (1976), which recognized that the UEP of interest is not the one with the lowest energy, but rather the UEP closest to the system trajectory. Uyemura et al. (1996) made an important contribution by developing a technique to approximate the path-dependent terms in the Lyapunov functions by path-independent terms using approximations for the system trajectory.

The work by Athay, Podmore, and colleagues (Athay et al., 1979) is the basis for the transient energy function (TEF) method used today. This work investigated many issues dealing with the application of the TEF method to large power systems. These included:

1. COI formulation and approximation of path-dependent terms.
2. Search for the UEP in the direction of the faulted trajectory.
3. Investigation of the Potential Energy Boundary Surface (PEBS).
4. Application of the technique to power systems of practical sizes.
5. Preliminary investigation of higher-order models for synchronous generators.

This work was followed by the work at Iowa State University by Fouad and colleagues (1981), which dealt with the determination of the correct UEP for stability assessment. This work also identified the appropriate energy for system separation and developed the concept of corrected kinetic energy. Details regarding this work are presented in Fouad and Vittal (1992).

The work that followed largely dealt with developing the TEF method into a more practical tool, and with improving its accuracy, modeling features, and speed. An important development in this area was the work of Bergen and Hill (1981). In this work the network structure was preserved for the classical model. As a result, fast techniques that incorporated network sparsity could be used to solve the problem. A concerted effort was also carried out to extend the applicability of the TEF method to realistic systems. This included improvements in modeling features, algorithms, and computational efficiency. Work related to the large-scale demonstration of the TEF method is found in Carvalho et al. (1986). The work dealing with extending the applicability of the TEF method is presented in Fouad et al. (1986). Significant contributions to this aspect of the TEF method can also be found in Padiyar and Sastry (1987), Padiyar and Ghosh (1989), and Abu-Elnaga et al. (1988).

In Chiang (1985), Chiang et al. (1987), and Chiang et al. (1988), a significant contribution was made to provide an analytical justification for the stability region for multimachine power systems, and a systematic procedure to obtain the controlling UEP was also developed. Zaborsky et al. (1988) also provide a comprehensive analytical foundation for characterizing the region of stability for multimachine power systems.

With the development of a systematic procedure to determine and characterize the region of stability, a significant effort was directed toward the application of direct methods for online transient stability assessment. This work, reported in Waight et al. (1994) and Chadalavada et al. (1997), has resulted in an online tool which has been implemented and used to rank contingencies based on their severity. Another online approach implemented and being used at B.C. Hydro is presented in Mansour et al. (1995). A recent effort with regard to classifying and ranking contingencies quite similar to the one presented in Chadalavada et al. (1997) is described in Chiang et al. (1998).

Some recent efforts (Ni and Fouad, 1987; Hiskens et al., 1992; Jiang et al., 1995) also deal with the inclusion of FACTS devices in the TEF analysis.

11.2 The Power System Model

The classical power system model will now be presented. It is the "simplest" power system model used in stability studies and is limited to the analysis of first swing transients. For more details regarding the model, the reader is referred to Anderson and Fouad (1994), Fouad and Vittal (1992), Kundur (1994), and Sauer and Pai (1998). The assumptions commonly made in deriving this model are:

For the synchronous generators

1. Mechanical power input is constant.
2. Damping or asynchronous power is negligible.
3. The generator is represented by a constant EMF behind the direct axis transient (unsaturated) reactance.
4. The mechanical rotor angle of a synchronous generator can be represented by the angle of the voltage behind the transient reactance.

The load is usually represented by passive impedances (or admittances), determined from the predisturbance conditions. These impedances are held constant throughout the stability study. This assumption can be improved using nonlinear models. See Fouad and Vittal (1992), Kundur (1994), and Sauer and Pai (1998) for more details. With the loads represented as constant impedances, all the nodes except the internal generator nodes can be eliminated. The generator reactances and the constant impedance loads are included in the network bus admittance matrix. The generators' equations of motion are then given by

$$\begin{aligned} M_i \frac{d\omega_i}{dt} &= P_i - P_{ei} \\ \frac{d\delta_i}{dt} &= \omega_i \quad i = 1, 2, \ldots, n \end{aligned} \tag{11.1}$$

where

$$P_{ei} = \sum_{\substack{j=1 \\ j \neq i}}^{n} \left[C_{ij} \sin\left(\delta_i - \delta_j\right) + D_{ij} \cos\left(\delta_i - \delta_j\right) \right] \tag{11.2}$$

$P_i \quad = P_{mi} - E_i^2 G_{ii}$

$C_{ij} \quad = E_i E_j B_{ij},\ D_{ij} = E_i E_j G_{ij}$

P_{mi} = Mechanical power input

G_{ii} = Driving point conductance

E_i = Constant voltage behind the direct axis transient reactance

ω_i, δ_i = Generator rotor speed and angle deviations, respectively, with respect to a synchronously rotating reference frame

M_i = Inertia constant of generator

$B_{ij}\ (G_{ij})$ = Transfer susceptance (conductance) in the reduced bus admittance matrix

Equation (11.1) is written with respect to an arbitrary synchronous reference frame. Transformation of this equation to the inertial center coordinates not only offers physical insight into the transient stability problem formulation in general, but also removes the energy associated with the motion of the inertial center which does not contribute to the stability determination. Referring to Eq. (11.1), define

$$M_T = \sum_{i=1}^{n} M_i$$

$$\delta_0 = \frac{1}{M_T} \sum_{i=1}^{n} M_i$$

then,

$$\begin{aligned} M_T \dot{\omega}_0 &= \sum_{i=1}^{n} P_i - P_{ei} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} P_i - 2 \sum_{i=1}^{n-1} \sum_{j=i+1}^{n} D_{ij} \cos \delta_{ij} \\ \dot{\delta}_0 &= \omega_0 \end{aligned} \tag{11.3}$$

The generators' angles and speeds with respect to the inertial center are given by

$$\begin{aligned} \theta_i &= \delta_i - \delta_0 \\ \tilde{\omega}_i &= \omega_i - \omega_0 \end{aligned} \quad i = 1, 2, \ldots, n \tag{11.4}$$

and in this coordinate system the equations of motion are given by

$$\begin{aligned} M_i \dot{\tilde{\omega}}_i &= P_i - P_{mi} - \frac{M_i}{M_T} P_{COI} \\ \dot{\theta}_i &= \tilde{\omega}_i \qquad i = 1, 2, \ldots, n \end{aligned} \tag{11.5}$$

11.2.1 Review of Stability Theory

A brief review of the stability theory applied to the TEF method will now be presented. This will include a few definitions, some important results, and an analytical outline of the stability assessment formulation.

The definitions and results that are presented are for differential equations of the type shown in Eqs. (11.1) and (11.5). These equations have the general structure given by

$$\dot{x}(t) = f(t, x(t)) \tag{11.6}$$

The system described by Eq. (11.6) is said to be *autonomous* if $\boldsymbol{f}(t, \boldsymbol{x}(t)) \equiv \boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{x})$, i.e., independent of t and is said to be nonautonomous otherwise.

A point $\boldsymbol{x}_0 \in R^n$ is called an *equilibrium point* for the system [Eq. (11.6)] at time t_0 if $\boldsymbol{f}(t, \boldsymbol{x}_0) \equiv 0$ for all $t \geq t_o$.

An equilibrium point $\boldsymbol{x}_e$ of Eq. (11.6) is said to be an isolated equilibrium point if there exists some neighborhood S of $\boldsymbol{x}_e$ which does not contain any other equilibrium point of Eq. (11.6).

Some precise definitions of stability in the sense of Lyapunov will now be presented. In presenting these definitions, we consider systems of equations described by Eq. (11.6), and also assume that Eq. (11.6) possesses an isolated equilibrium point at the origin. Thus, $\boldsymbol{f}(t, \boldsymbol{0}) = \boldsymbol{0}$ for all $t \geq 0$.

The equilibrium $\boldsymbol{x} = \boldsymbol{0}$ of Eq. (11.6) is said to be *stable* in the sense of Lyapunov, or simply stable if for every real number $\varepsilon > 0$ and initial time $t_0 > 0$ there exists a real number $\delta(\varepsilon, t_0) > 0$ such that for all initial conditions satisfying the inequality $\|\boldsymbol{x}(t_0)\| = \|\boldsymbol{x}_0\| < \delta$, the motion satisfies $\|\boldsymbol{x}(t)\| < \varepsilon$ for all $t \geq t_0$.

The symbol $\| \cdot \|$ stands for a norm. Several norms can be defined on an n-dimensional vector space. Refer to Miller and Michel (1983) and Vidyasagar (1978) for more details. The definition of stability given above is unsatisfactory from an engineering viewpoint, where one is more interested in a stricter requirement of the system trajectory to eventually return to some equilibrium point. Keeping this requirement in mind, the following definition of asymptotic stability is presented.

The equilibrium $\boldsymbol{x} = \boldsymbol{0}$ of Eq. (11.6) is *asymptotically stable* at time t_0 if

1. $\boldsymbol{x} = \boldsymbol{0}$ is stable at $t = t_0$
2. For every $t_0 \geq 0$, there exists an $\eta(t_0) > 0$ such that $\underset{t \to \infty}{Lim} \|\mathbf{x}(t)\| \to 0$ whenever $\|\mathbf{x}(t)\| < \eta$
(ATTRACTIVITY)

This definition combines the aspect of stability as well as attractivity of the equilibrium. The concept is local, because the region containing all the initial conditions that converge to the equilibrium is some portion of the state space. Having provided the definitions pertaining to stability, the formulation of the stability assessment procedure for power systems is now presented. The system is initially assumed to be at a predisturbance steady-state condition governed by the equations

$$\dot{x}(t) = f^p(x(t)) \qquad -\infty < t \leq 0 \tag{11.7}$$

The superscript p indicates predisturbance. The system is at equilibrium, and the initial conditions are obtained from the power flow solution. At $t = 0$, the disturbance or the fault is initiated. This changes the structure of the right-hand sides of the differential equations, and the dynamics of the system are governed by

$$\dot{x}(t) = f^f(x(t)) \qquad 0 < t \leq t_{cl} \tag{11.8}$$

where the superscript f indicates faulted conditions. The disturbance or the fault is removed or cleared by the protective equipment at time t_{cl}. As a result, the network undergoes a topology change and the right-hand sides of the differential equations are again altered. The dynamics in the postdisturbance or postfault period are governed by

$$\dot{x}(t) = f(x(t)) \qquad t_{cl} < t \leq \infty \tag{11.9}$$

The stability analysis is done for the system in the postdisturbance period. The objective is to ascertain asymptotic stability of the postdisturbance equilibrium point of the system governed by Eq. (11.9). This is done by obtaining the domain of attraction of the postdisturbance equilibrium and determining if the initial conditions of the postdisturbance period lie within this domain of attraction or outside it. The domain of attraction is characterized by the appropriately determined value of the transient energy function. In the literature survey presented previously, several approaches to characterize the domain of attraction were mentioned. In earlier approaches (El-Abiad and Nagappan, 1966; Tavora and Smith, 1972), this was done by obtaining the unstable equilibrium points (UEP) of the postdisturbance system and determining the one with the lowest level of potential energy with respect to the postdisturbance equilibrium. This value of potential energy then characterized the domain of attraction. In the work that followed, it was found that this approach provided very conservative results for power systems. In Gupta and El-Abiad (1976), it was recognized that the appropriate UEP was dependent on the fault location, and the concept of closest UEP was developed. An approach to determine the domain of attraction was also presented by Kakimoto and colleagues (1978; 1981) based on the concept of the potential energy boundary surface (PEBS). For a given disturbance trajectory, the PEBS describes a "local" approximation of the stability boundary. The process of finding this local approximation is associated with the determination of the stability boundary of a lower dimensional system (see Fouad and Vittal [1992], chap. 4 for details). It is formed by joining points of maximum potential energy along any direction originating from the postdisturbance stable equilibrium point. The PEBS constructed in this manner is orthogonal to the equipotential curves. In addition, along the direction orthogonal to the PEBS, the potential energy achieves a local maximum at the PEBS. In Athay et al. (1979), several simulations on realistic systems were conducted. These simulations, together with the synthesis of previous results in the area led to the development of a procedure to determine the correct UEP to characterize the domain of attraction. The results obtained were much improved, but in terms of practical applicability there was room for improvement. The work presented in Fouad et al. (1981) and Carvalho et al. (1986) made several important contributions to determining the correct UEP. The term *controlling UEP* was established, and a systematic procedure to determine the controlling UEP was developed. This will be described later. In Chiang et al. (1985; 1987; 1988), a thorough analytical justification for the concept of the controlling UEP and the characterization of the domain of attraction was developed. This provides the analytical basis for the application of the TEF method to power systems. These analytical results in essence show that the stability boundary of the postdisturbance equilibrium point is made up of the union of the stable manifolds of those unstable equilibrium points contained on the stability boundary. The boundary is then approximated locally using the energy function evaluated at the controlling UEP. The conceptual framework of the TEF approach is illustrated in Fig. 11.2.

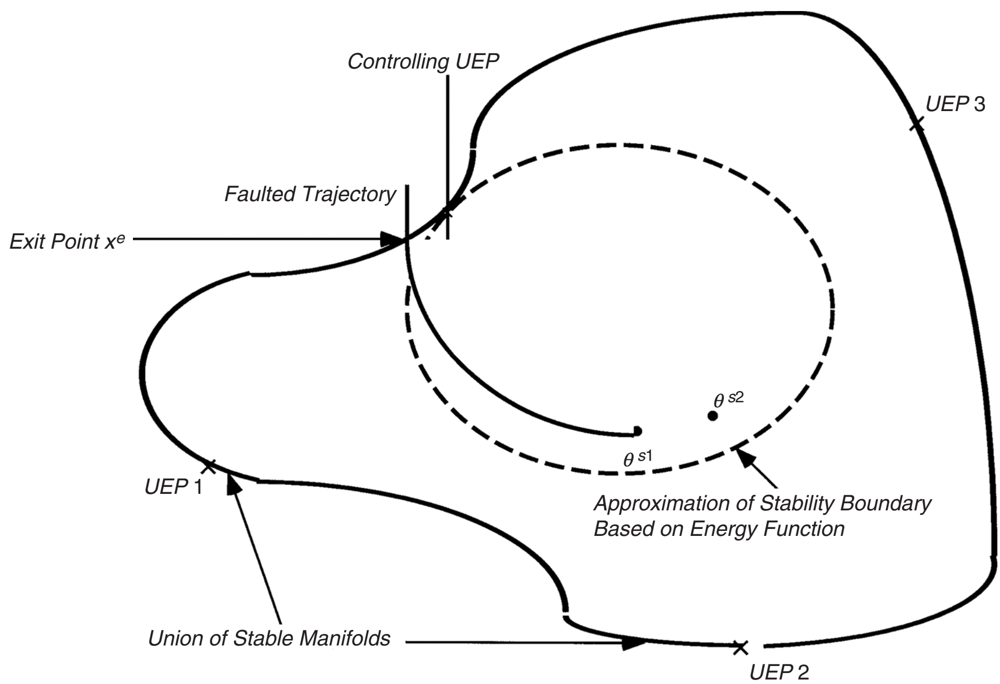


FIGURE 11.2 Conceptual framework of TEF approach.

11.3 The Transient Energy Function

The TEF can be derived from Eq. (11.5) using first principles. Details of the derivation can be found in Pai (1981), Pai (1989), Fouad and Vittal (1992), Athay et al. (1979). For the power system model considered in Eq. (11.5), the TEF is given by

$$V = \frac{1}{2}\sum_{i=1}^{n} M_i \tilde{\omega}_i^2 - \sum_{i=1}^{n} P_i\left(\theta_i - \theta_i^{s2}\right) - \sum_{i=1}^{n-1}\sum_{j=i+1}^{n}\left[C_{ij}\cos\left(\theta_{ij} - \theta_{ij}^{s2}\right) - \int_{\theta_i^{s2}+\theta_j^{s2}}^{\theta_i+\theta_j} D_{ij}\cos\theta_{ij}\, d\left(\theta_i + \theta_j\right)\right] \quad (11.10)$$

where $\theta_{ij} = \theta_i - \theta_j$.

The first term on the right-hand side of Eq. (11.10) is the kinetic energy. The next three terms represent the potential energy. The last term is path dependent. It is usually approximated (Uyemura et al., 1996; Athay et al., 1979) using a straight line approximation for the system trajectory. The integral between two points θ^a and θ^b is then given by

$$I_{ij} = D_{ij}\frac{\theta_i^b - \theta_i^a + \theta_j^b - \theta_j^a}{\theta_{ij}^b - \theta_{ij}^a}\left(\sin\theta_{ij}^b - \sin\theta_{ij}^a\right). \quad (11.11)$$

In Fouad et al. (1981), a detailed analysis of the energy behavior along the time domain trajectory was conducted. It was observed that in all cases where the system was stable following the removal of a disturbance, a certain amount of the total kinetic energy in the system was not absorbed. This indicates that not all the kinetic energy created by the disturbance, contributes to the instability of the system. Some of the kinetic energy is responsible for the intermachine motion between the generators and does not contribute to the separation of the severely disturbed generators from the rest of the system. The kinetic energy associated with the gross motion of k machines having angular speeds $\tilde{\omega}_1, \tilde{\omega}_2, \ldots, \tilde{\omega}_k$ is the same as the kinetic energy of their inertial center. The speed of the inertial center of that group and its kinetic energy are given by

$$\tilde{\omega}_{cr} = \sum_{i=1}^{k} M_i\tilde{\omega}_i \Big/ \sum_{i=1}^{k} M_i \quad (11.12)$$

$$V_{KE_{cr}} = \frac{1}{2}\left[\sum_{i=1}^{k} M_i\right]\left(\tilde{\omega}_{cr}\right)^2 \quad (11.13)$$

The disturbance splits the generators of the system into two groups: the critical machines and the rest of the generators. Their inertial centers have inertia constants and angular speeds M_{cr}, $\tilde{\omega}_{cr}$ and M_{sys}, $\tilde{\omega}_{sys}$, respectively. The kinetic energy causing the separation of the two groups is the same as that of an equivalent one-machine-infinite-bus system having inertia constant M_{eq} and angular speed $\tilde{\omega}_{eq}$ given by

$$\begin{aligned} M_{eq} &= \frac{M_{cr} \times M_{sys}}{M_{eq} + M_{sys}} \\ \tilde{\omega}_{eq} &= \left(\tilde{\omega}_{cr} - \tilde{\omega}_{sys}\right) \end{aligned} \quad (11.14)$$

and the corresponding kinetic energy is given by

$$V_{KE_{corr}} = \frac{1}{2} M_{eq}\left(\tilde{\omega}_{eq}\right)^2 \quad (11.15)$$

The kinetic energy term in Eq. (11.10) is replaced by Eq. (11.15).

11.4 Transient Stability Assessment

As described previously, the transient stability assessment using the TEF method is done for the final postdisturbance configuration. The stability assessment is done by comparing two values of the transient energy V. The value of V is computed at the end of the disturbance. If the disturbance is a simple fault, the value of V at fault clearing V_{cl} is evaluated.

The other value of V that largely determines the accuracy of the stability assessment is the critical value of V, V_{cr}, which is the potential energy at the controlling UEP for the particular disturbance being investigated.

If $V_{cl} < V_{cr}$, the system is stable, and if $V_{cl} > V_{cr}$, the system is unstable. The assessment is made by computing the energy margin ΔV given by

$$\Delta V = V_{cr} - V_{cl} \tag{11.16}$$

Substituting for V_{cr} and V_{cl} from Eq. (11.10) and invoking the linear path assumption for the path dependent integral between the conditions at the end of the disturbance and the controlling UEP, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta V = & -\frac{1}{2}M_{eq}\tilde{\omega}_{eq}^{cl^2} - \sum_{i=1}^{n} P_i\left(\theta_i^u - \theta_i^{cl}\right) \\ & - \sum_{i=1}^{n-1}\sum_{j=i+1}^{n}\left[C_{ij}\left(\cos\theta_{ij}^u - \cos\theta_{ij}^{cl}\right)\right] - D_{ij}\frac{\theta_i^u - \theta_i^{cl} + \theta_j^u - \theta_j^{cl}}{\left(\theta_{ij}^u - \theta_{ij}^{cl}\right)}\left(\sin\theta_{ij}^u - \sin\theta_{ij}^{cl}\right)\end{aligned} \tag{11.17}$$

where $(\theta^{cl}, \tilde{\omega}^{cl})$ are the conditions at the end of the disturbance and $(\theta^u, \mathbf{0})$ represents the controlling UEP. If ΔV is greater than zero the system is stable, and if ΔV is less than zero, the system is unstable. A qualitative measure of the degree of stability (or instability) can be obtained if ΔV is normalized with respect to the corrected kinetic energy at the end of the disturbance (Fouad et al., 1981).

$$\Delta V_n = \Delta V / V_{KE_{corr}} \tag{11.18}$$

For a detailed description of the computational steps involved in the TEF analysis, refer to Fouad and Vittal (1992), chap. 6.

11.5 Determination of the Controlling UEP

A detailed description of the rationale in developing the concept of the controlling UEP is provided in Fouad and Vittal (1992), section 5.4. A criterion to determine the controlling UEP based on the normalized energy margin is also presented. The criterion is stated as follows. The postdisturbance trajectory approaches (if the disturbance is large enough) the controlling UEP. This is the UEP with the lowest normalized potential energy margin. The determination of the controlling UEP involves the following key steps:

1. Identifying the correct UEP.
2. Obtaining a starting point for the UEP solution close to the exact UEP.
3. Calculation of the exact UEP.

Identifying the correct UEP involves determining the advanced generators for the controlling UEP. This is referred to as the mode of disturbance (MOD). These generators generally are the most severely disturbed generators due to the disturbance. The generators in the MOD are not necessarily those that lose synchronism. The computational details of the procedure to identify the correct UEP and obtain a starting point for the exact UEP solution are provided in Fouad and Vittal (1992), section 6.6. An outline of the procedure is provided below:

1. Candidate modes to be tested by the MOD test depend on how the disturbance affects the system. The selection of the candidate modes is based on several disturbance severity measures obtained at the end of the disturbance. These severity measures include kinetic energy and acceleration. A ranked list of machines is obtained using the severity measures. From this ranked list, the machines or group of machines at the bottom of the list are included in the group forming the rest of the system and V_{KEcorr} is calculated. In a sequential manner, machines are successively added to the group forming the rest of the system and V_{KEcorr} is calculated and stored.
2. The list of V_{KEcorr} calculated above is sorted in descending order and only those groups within 10% of the maximum V_{KEcorr} in the list are retained.
3. Corresponding to the MOD for each of the retained groups of machines in step 2, an approximation to the UEP corresponding to that mode is constructed using the postdisturbance stable equilibrium point. For a given candidate mode, where machines i and j are contained in the critical group, an estimate of the approximation to the UEP for an n-machine system is given by $\left[\hat{\theta}_{ij}^{u}\right]^T = \left[\theta_1^{s2}, \theta_2^{s2}, \ldots, \left[\pi - \theta_i^{s2}\right], \ldots, \left[\pi - \theta_j^{s2}\right], \ldots, \theta_n^{s2}\right]$. This estimate can be further improved by accounting for the motion of the COI, and using the concept of the PEBS to maximize the potential energy along the ray drawn from the estimate and the postdisturbance stable equilibrium point θ^{s2}.
4. The normalized potential energy margin for each of the candidate modes is evaluated at the approximation to the exact UEP, and the mode corresponding to the lowest normalized potential energy margin is then selected as the mode of the controlling UEP.
5. Using the approximation to the controlling UEP as a starting point, the exact UEP is obtained by solving the nonlinear algebraic equation given by

$$f_i = P_i - P_{mi} - \frac{M_i}{M_T} P_{COI} = 0 \quad i = 1, 2, \ldots, n \tag{11.19}$$

The solution of these equations is a computationally intensive task for realistic power systems. Several investigators have made significant contributions to determining an effective solution. A detailed description of the numerical issues and algorithms to determine the exact UEP solution are beyond the scope of this handbook. Several excellent references that detail these approaches are available. These efforts are described in Fouad and Vittal (1992), section 6.8.

11.6 The BCU (Boundary Controlling UEP) Method

The BCU method (Chiang et al., 1985, 1987, 1988) provides a systematic procedure to determine a suitable starting point for the controlling UEP solution. The main steps in the procedure are as follows:

1. Obtain the faulted trajectory by integrating the equations

$$\begin{aligned} M_i \dot{\tilde{\omega}}_i &= P_i^f - P_{ei}^f - \frac{M_i}{M_T} P_{COI}^f \\ \dot{\theta}_i &= \tilde{\omega}_i, \ i = 1, 2, \ldots, n \end{aligned} \tag{11.20}$$

Values of θ obtained from Eq. (11.20) are substituted in the postfault mismatch equation given by Eq. (11.19). The exit point $\boldsymbol{x}^e$ is then obtained by satisfying the condition $\sum_{i=1}^{n} -f_i \tilde{\omega}_i = 0$.

2. Using θ^e as the starting point, integrate the associated gradient system equations given by

$$\dot{\theta}_i = P_i - P_{ei} - \frac{M_i}{M_T} P_{COI}, \quad i = 1, 2, \ldots, n-1$$
$$\theta_n = -\sum_{i=1}^{n-1} M_i \theta_i / M_n \tag{11.21}$$

At each step of the integration, evaluate $\sum_{i=1}^{n} |f_i| = F$ and determine the first minimum of F along the gradient surface. Let θ^* be the vector of rotor angles at this point.

3. Using θ^* as a starting point in Eq. (11.19), obtain the exact solution for the controlling UEP.

11.7 Applications of the TEF Method and Modeling Enhancements

The preceding subsections have provided the important steps in the application of the TEF method to analyze the transient stability of multimachine power systems. In this subsection, a brief mention of the applications of the technique and enhancements in terms of modeling detail and application to realistic power systems is provided. Inclusion of detailed generator models and excitation systems in the TEF method are presented in Athay et al. (1979), Fouad et al. (1986), and Waight et al. (1994). The sparse formulation of the system to obtain more efficient solution techniques is developed in Bergen and Hill (1981), Abu-Elnaga et al. (1988), and Waight et al. (1994). The application of the TEF method for a wide range of problems including dynamic security assessment are discussed in Fouad and Vittal (1992), chaps. 9–10; Chadalavada et al. (1997); and Mansour et al. (1995). The availability of a qualitative measure of the degree of stability or instability in terms of the energy margin makes the direct methods an attractive tool for a wide range of problems. The modeling enhancements that have taken place and the continued development in terms of computational efficiency and computer hardware, make direct methods a viable candidate for online transient stability assessment (Waight et al., 1994; Chadalavada et al., 1997; Mansour et al., 1995). This feature is particularly effective in the competitive market environment to calculate operating limits with changing conditions. There are several efforts underway dealing with the development of direct methods and a combination of time simulation techniques for online transient stability assessment. These approaches take advantage of the superior modeling capability available in the time simulation engines, and use the qualitative measure provided by the direct methods to derive preventive and corrective control actions and estimate limits. This line of investigation has great potential and could become a vital component of energy control centers in the near future.

References

Abu-Elnaga, M.M., El-Kady, M.A., and Findlay, R.D., Sparse formulation of the transient energy function method for applications to large-scale power systems, *IEEE Trans. Power Syst.*, PWRS-3, 4, 1648–1654, November 1988.

The All Union Institute of Scientific and Technological Information and the Academy of Sciences of the USSR (in Russia). *Criteria of Stability of Electric Power Systems.* Electric Technology and Electric Power Series, Moscow, 1971 (in Russian).

Anderson, P.M., and Fouad, A.A., *Power System Control and Stability*, IEEE Press, New York, 1994.

Athay, T., Sherkat, V.R., Podmore, R., Virmani, S., and Puech, C., *Transient Energy Stability Analysis, Systems Engineering For Power: Emergency Operation State Control—Section IV*, U.S. Department of Energy Publication No. CONF-790904-PL, 1979.

Aylett, P.D., The energy-integral criterion of transient stability limits of power systems, in *Proceedings of Institution of Electrical Engineers*, 105C, 8, London, September 1958, 527–536.

Bergen, A.R., and Hill, D.J., A structure preserving model for power system stability analysis, *IEEE Trans. Power Appar. Syst.*, PAS-100, 1, 25–35, January 1981.

Bose, A., Chair, IEEE Committee Report, Application of direct methods to transient stability analysis of power systems, *IEEE Trans. Power Appar. Syst.*, PAS-103, 7, 1629–1630, July 1984.

Carvalho, V.F., El-Kady, M.A., Vaahedi, E., Kundur, P., Tang, C.K., Rogers, G., Libaque, J., Wong, D., Fouad, A.A., Vittal, V., Rajagopal, S., Demonstration of large scale direct analysis of power system transient stability, Electric Power Research Institute Report EL-4980, December 1986.

Chadalavada, V., V. Vittal, et al., An on-line contingency filtering scheme for dynamic security assessment, *IEEE Trans. Power Syst.*, 12, 1, 153–161, February 1997.

Chiang, H.-D., A theory-based controlling UEP method for direct analysis of power system transient stability, in *Proceedings of the* 1989 *International Symposium on Circuits and Systems*, 3, 65–69, 1985.

Chiang, H-D., Chiu, C.C., and Cauley, G., Direct stability analysis of electric power systems using energy functions: Theory, application, and perspective, *IEEE Proceedings*, 83, 11, 1497–1529, November 1995.

Chiang, H.D., Wang, C.S., and Li, H., Development of BCU classifiers for on-line dynamic contingency screening of electric power systems, Paper No. PE-349, IEEE Power Engineering Society Summer Power Meeting, San Diego, CA, July 1998.

Chiang, H.-D., Wu, F.F., and Varaiya, P.P., Foundations of the direct methods for power system transient stability analysis, *IEEE Trans. Circuits and Syst.*, 34, 160–173, February 1987.

Chiang, H.-D., Wu, F.F., and Varaiya, P.P., Foundations of the potential energy boundary surface method for power system transient stability analysis, *IEEE Trans. Circuits and Syst.*, 35, 6, 712–728, June 1988.

El-Abiad, A.H., and Nagappan, K., Transient stability regions of multi-machine power systems, *IEEE Trans. Power Appar. Syst.*, PAS-85, 2, 169–178, February 1966.

Fouad, A.A., Stability theory-criteria for transient stability, in *Proceedings of the Engineering Foundation Conference on System Engineering for Power, Status and Prospects*-NIT Publication No. Conf.-750867, August 1975.

Fouad, A.A., Kruempel, K.C., Mamandur, K.R.C., Stanton, S.E., Pai, M.A., and Vittal, V., Transient stability margin as a tool for dynamic security assessment, EPRI Report EL-1755, March 1981.

Fouad, A.A., Vittal, V., Ni, Y.X., Pota, H.R., Nodehi, K., and Oh, T.K., Extending application of the transient energy function method, Report EL-4980, Palo Alto, CA, EPRI, 1986.

Fouad, A.A., and Vittal, V., *Power System Transient Stability Analysis Using the Transient Energy Function Method*, Prentice-Hall, Inc., New Jersey, 1992.

Fouad, A.A., and Vittal, V., The transient energy function method, *International Journal of Electric Power and Energy Systems*, 10, 4, 233–246, October 1988.

Gless, G.E., Direct method of Liapunov applied to transient power system stability, *IEEE Trans. Power Appar. Syst.*, PAS-85, 2, 159–168, February 1966.

Gupta, C.L., and El-Abiad, A.H., Determination of the closest unstable equilibrium state for Lyapunov's method in transient stability studies, *IEEE Trans. Power Appar. Syst.*, PAS-95, 1699–1712, September/October 1976.

Hiskens, I.A., et al., Incorporation of SVC into energy function method, *IEEE Trans. Power Syst.*, PWRS, 7, 133–140, February 1992.

Jing, C., et al. Incorporation of HVDC and SVC models in the Northern States Power Co. (NSP) network for on-line implementation of direct transient stability assessment, *IEEE Trans. on Power Syst.*, 10, 2, 898–906, May 1995.

Kakimoto, N., and Hayashi, M., Transient stability analysis of multimachine power systems by Lyapunov's direct method, in *Proceedings of* 20th *Conference on Decision and Control*, San Diego, CA, 1981.

Kakimoto, N., Ohsawa, Y., and Hayashi, M., Transient stability analysis of electric power system via Lure-Type Lyapunov function, Parts I and II, *Transactions IEE of Japan*, 98, 516, 1978.

Kakimoto, N., Ohsawa, Y., and Hayashi, M., Transient stability analysis of large-scale power systems by Lyapunov's direct method, *IEEE Trans. Power App. Syst.*, 103(1), 160–167, January 1978.

Kimbark, E.W., *Power System Stability*, I, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1948.

Kundur, P., *Power System Stability and Control*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1994.

Lyapunov, M.A., Problème Général de la Stabilité du Mouvement, *Ann. Fac. Sci. Toulouse*, 9, 203–474, 1907: (French, translation of the original paper published in 1893 in *Comm. Soc. Math. Kharkow*; reprinted as Vol. 17 in *Annals of Mathematical Studies*, Princeton, 1949).

Magnusson, P.C., Transient energy method of calculating stability, *AIEE Trans.*, 66, 747–755, 1947.

Mansour, Y., Vaahedi, E., Chang, A.Y., Corns, B.R., Garrett, B.W., Demaree, K., Athay, T., and Cheung, K., B.C. Hydro's on-line transient stability assessment (TSA): Model development, analysis, and post-processing, *IEEE Trans. Power Syst.*, 10, 1, 241–253, Feb. 1995.

Miller, R.K., and A.N. Michel, *Ordinary Differential Equations*, Academic Press, New York, 1983.

Ni, Y.-X., and A.A. Fouad, A simplified two terminal HVDC model and its use in direct transient stability assessment, *IEEE Trans. Power Syst.*, PWRS-2, 4, 1006–1013, November 1987.

Padiyar, K.R., and Ghosh, K.K., Direct stability evaluation of power systems with detailed generator models using structure preserving energy functions, *Int. J. Electr. Power and Energy Syst.*, 11, 1, 47–56, Jan. 1989.

Padiyar, K.R., and Sastry, H.S.Y., Topological energy function analysis of stability of power systems, *Int. J. of Electr. Power and Energy Syst.*, 9, 1, 9–16, Jan. 1987.

Pai, M.A., *Energy Function Analysis for Power System Stability*, Kluwer Academic Publishers, Boston, 1989.

Pai, M.A., *Power System Stability*, North-Holland Publishing Co., Amsterdam, 1981.

Pai, M.A., Mohan, A., Gopala Rao, J., Power system transient stability regions using Popov's method, *IEEE Trans. Power Appar. Syst.*, PAS-89, 5, 788–794, May/June 1970.

Pavella, M., and Murthy, P.G., *Transient Stability of Power Systems: Theory and Practice*, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York, 1994.

Ribbens-Pavella, M., Critical survey of transient stability studies of multi-machine power systems by Lyapunov's direct method, in *Proceedings of* 9*th* *Annual Allerton Conference on Circuits and System Theory*, Oct. 1971.

Ribbens-Pavella, M., Transient stability of multi-machine power systems by Lyapunov's direct method, IEEE Winter Power Meeting Conference Paper, 1971.

Ribbens-Pavella, M., and Evans, F.J., Direct methods for studying of the dynamics of large scale electric power systems—a survey, *Automatica*, 21, 1, 1–21, 1985.

Sauer, P.W., and M.A. Pai, *Power System Dynamics and Stability*, Prentice Hall, New York, 1998.

Tavora, Carlos J., and Smith, O.J. M., Characterization of equilibrium and stability in power systems, *IEEE Trans. Power Appar. Syst.*, PAS-72, 1127–1130, May/June.

Tavora, Carlos J., and Smith, O.J. M., Equilibrium analysis of power systems, *IEEE Trans. Power Appar. Syst.*, PAS-72, 1131–1137, May/June.

Tavora, Carlos J., and Smith, O.J. M., Stability analysis of power systems, *IEEE Trans. Power Appar. Syst.*, PAS-72, 1138–1144, May/June.

Uyemura, K., Matsuki, J., Yamada, I., and Tsuji, T., Approximation of an energy function in transient stability analysis of power systems, E*lectrical Engineering in Japan*, 92, 6, 96–100, November/December.

Vidyasagar, M., *Nonlinear Systems Analysis*, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ, 1978.

Waight, J.G., et al., Analytical methods for contingency selection and ranking for dynamic security analysis, Report TR-104352, Palo Alto, September 1994.

Willems, J.L., Improved Lyapunov function for transient power-system stability, in *Proceedings of the Institution of Electrical Engineers*, 115, 9, London, 1315–1317, September 1968.

Zaborszky, J., Huang, G., Zheng, B., and Leung, T.-C., On the phase-portrait of a class of large nonlinear dynamic systems such as the power system, *IEEE Trans. on Automatic Control*, 32, 4–15, January 1988.

12

Power System Stability Controls

Carson W. Taylor
Carson Taylor Seminars

Power system synchronous or angle instability phenomenon limits power transfer, especially where transmission distances are long. This is well recognized and many methods have been developed to improve stability and increase allowable power transfers.

The synchronous stability problem has been fairly well solved by fast fault clearing, thyristor exciters, power system stabilizers (PSSs), and a variety of other stability controls such as generator tripping. Fault clearing of severe short circuits can be less than three cycles (50 ms for 60 Hz frequency) and the effect of the faulted line outage on generator acceleration and stability may be greater than that of the fault itself. The severe multiphase short circuits are infrequent on extra high voltage (EHV) transmission networks.

Nevertheless, more intensive use of available generation and transmission, more onerous load characteristics, greater variation in power schedules, and other negative aspects of industry restructuring pose new concerns. Recent large-scale cascading power failures have heightened the concerns.

In this chapter we describe the state-of-the-art of power system angle stability controls. Controls for voltage stability are described in another chapter and in other literature [1–5].

We emphasize controls employing relatively new technologies that have actually been implemented by electric power companies, or that are seriously being considered for implementation. The technologies include applied control theory, power electronics, microprocessors, signal processing, transducers, and communications.

Power system stability controls must be effective and robust. Effective in an engineering sense means "cost-effective." Control robustness is the capability to operate appropriately for a wide range of power system operating and disturbance conditions.

12.1 Review of Power System Synchronous Stability Basics

Many publications, for example Refs. [6–9,83], describe the basics—which we briefly review here. Power generation is largely by synchronous generators, which are interconnected over thousands of kilometers in very large power systems. Thousands of generators must operate in synchronism during normal and disturbance conditions. Loss of synchronism of a generator or group of generators with respect to another group of generators is *instability* and could result in expensive widespread power blackouts.

The essence of synchronous stability is the balance of individual generator electrical and mechanical torques as described by Newton's second law applied to rotation:

$$J\frac{\mathrm{d}\omega}{\mathrm{d}t} = T_{\mathrm{m}} - T_{\mathrm{e}}$$

where J is moment of inertia of the generator and prime mover, ω is speed, T_{m} is mechanical prime mover torque, and T_{e} is electrical torque related to generator electric power output. The generator speed determines the generator rotor angle changes relative to other generators. Figure 12.1 shows the basic "swing equation" block diagram relationship for a generator connected to a power system.

The conventional equation form and notation are used. The block diagram is explained as follows:

- The inertia constant, H, is proportional to the moment of inertia and is the kinetic energy at rated speed divided by the generator MVA rating. Units are MW-seconds/MVA, or seconds.
- T_{m} is mechanical torque in per unit. As a first approximation it is assumed to be constant. It is, however, influenced by speed controls (governors) and prime mover and energy supply system dynamics.

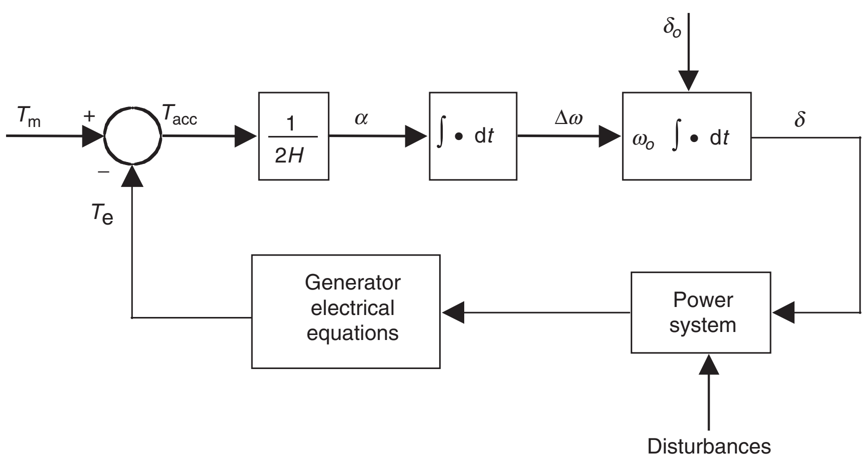


FIGURE 12.1 Block diagram of generator electromechanical dynamics.

- ω_0 is rated frequency in radians/second.
- δ_0 is predisturbance rotor angle in radians relative to a reference generator.
- The power system block comprises the transmission network, loads, power electronic devices, and other generators, prime movers, and energy supply systems with their controls. The transmission network is generally represented by algebraic equations. Loads and generators are represented by algebraic and differential equations.
- Disturbances include short circuits, and line and generator outages. A severe disturbance is a three-phase short circuit near the generator. This causes electric power and torque to be zero, with accelerating torque equal to T_m. (Although generator current is very high for the short circuit, the power factor, and active current and active power are close to zero.) Other switching (discrete) events for stabilization such as line reclosing may be included as disturbances to the differential–algebraic equation model (hybrid DAE math model).
- The generator electrical equations block represents the internal generator dynamics.

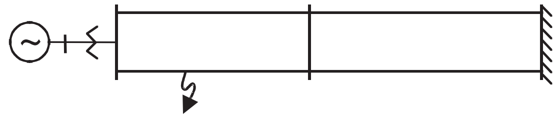


FIGURE 12.2 Remote power plant to large system. Short circuit location is shown.

Figure 12.2 shows a simple conceptual model: a remote generator connected to a large power system by two parallel transmission lines with an intermediate switching station. With some approximations adequate for a second of time or so following a disturbance, Fig. 12.3 block diagram is realized. The basic relationship between power and torque is $P = T\omega$. Since speed changes are quite small, power is considered equal to torque in per unit. The generator representation is a constant voltage, E', behind a reactance. The transformer and transmission lines are represented by inductive reactances. Using the relation $S = E'I^*$, the generator electrical power is the well-known relation:

$$P_e = \frac{E'V}{X}\sin\delta$$

where V is the large system (infinite bus) voltage and X is the total reactance from the generator internal voltage to the large system. The above equation approximates characteristics of a detailed, large-scale model, and illustrates that the power system is fundamentally a highly nonlinear system for large disturbances.

Figure 12.4a shows the relation graphically. The predisturbance operating point is at the intersection of the load or mechanical power characteristic and the electrical power characteristic. Normal stable operation is at δ_0. For example, a small increase in mechanical power input causes an accelerating power that increases δ to increase P_e until accelerating power returns to zero. The opposite is true for the unstable operating point at $\pi - \delta_0$. δ_0 is normally less than 45°.

During normal operation, mechanical and electrical torques are equal and a generator runs at close to 50 or 60 Hz rated frequency. If, however, a short circuit occurs (usually with removal of a transmission line), the electric power output will be momentarily partially blocked from reaching loads and the generator (or group of generators) will accelerate, with increase in generator speed and angle. If the acceleration relative to other generators is too great, synchronism will be lost. Loss of synchronism is an unstable, runaway situation with large variations of voltages and currents that will normally cause protective separation of a generator or a group

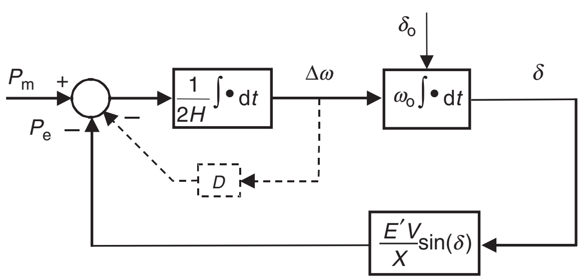


FIGURE 12.3 Simplified block diagram of generator electromechanical dynamics.

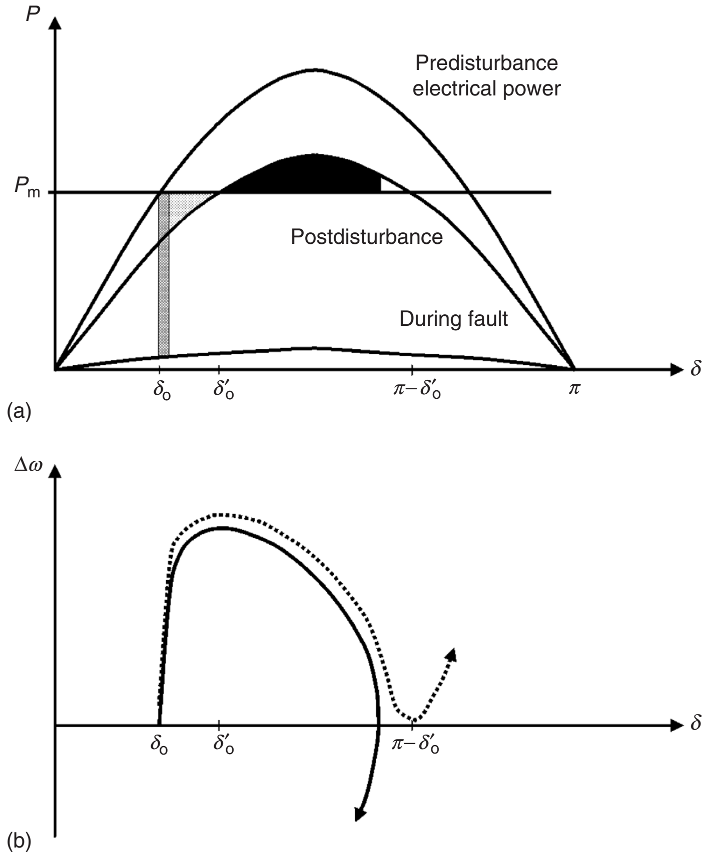


FIGURE 12.4 (a) Power–angle curve and equal area criterion. Dark shading for acceleration energy during fault. Light shading for additional acceleration energy because of line outage. Black shading for deceleration energy. (b) Angle–speed phase plane. Dotted trajectory is for unstable case.

of generators. Following short circuit removal, the electrical torque and power developed as angle increases will decelerate the generator. If deceleration reverses angle swing prior to $\pi - \delta_0'$, stability is maintained at the new operating point δ_0' (Fig. 12.4). If the swing is beyond $\pi - \delta_0'$, accelerating power or torque again becomes positive, resulting in runaway increase in angle and speed, and instability.

Figure 12.4a illustrates the equal area stability criterion for "first swing" stability. If the decelerating area (energy) above the mechanical power load line is greater than the accelerating area below the load line, stability is maintained.

Stability controls increase stability by decreasing the accelerating area or increasing the decelerating area. This may be done by either increasing the electrical power–angle relation, or by decreasing the mechanical power input.

For small disturbances the block diagram, Fig. 12.3, can be linearized. The block diagram would then be that of a second-order differential equation oscillator. For a remote generator connected to a large system the oscillation frequency is 0.8–1.1 Hz.

Figure 12.3 also shows a damping path (dashed, damping power or torque in-phase with speed deviation) that represents mechanical or electrical damping mechanisms in the generator, turbine, loads, and other devices. Mechanical damping arises from the turbine torque–speed characteristic, friction and windage, and components of prime mover control in-phase with speed. At an oscillation frequency, the electrical power can be resolved into a component in-phase with angle (synchronizing power) and a component in quadrature (90° leading) in-phase with speed (damping power). Controls, notably generator automatic voltage regulators with high gain, can introduce negative damping at some oscillation frequencies. (In any feedback control system, high gain combined with time delays can cause positive feedback and instability.) For stability, the net damping must be positive for both normal conditions and for large disturbances with outages. Stability controls may also be added to improve damping. In some cases, stability controls are designed to improve both synchronizing and damping torques of generators.

The above analysis can be generalized to large systems. For first swing stability, synchronous stability between two critical groups of generators is of concern. For damping, many oscillation modes are present, all of which require positive damping. The low frequency modes (0.1–0.8 Hz) are most difficult to damp. These modes represent interarea oscillations between large portions of a power system.

12.2 Concepts of Power System Stability Controls

Figure 12.5 shows the general structure for analysis of power system stability and for development of power system stability controls. The feedback controls are mostly local, continuous controls at power plants. The feedforward controls are discontinuous, and may be local at power plants and substations or wide area.

Stability problems typically involve disturbances such as short circuits, with subsequent removal of faulted elements. Generation or load may be lost, resulting in generation–load imbalance and frequency excursions. These disturbances stimulate power system electromechanical dynamics. Improperly designed or tuned controls may contribute to stability problems; as mentioned, one example is negative damping torques caused by generator automatic voltage regulators.

Because of power system synchronizing and damping forces (including the feedback controls shown in Fig. 12.5), stability is maintained for most disturbances and operating conditions.

12.2.1 Feedback Controls

The most important feedback (closed-loop) controls are the generator excitation controls (automatic voltage regulator often including PSS). Other feedback controls include prime

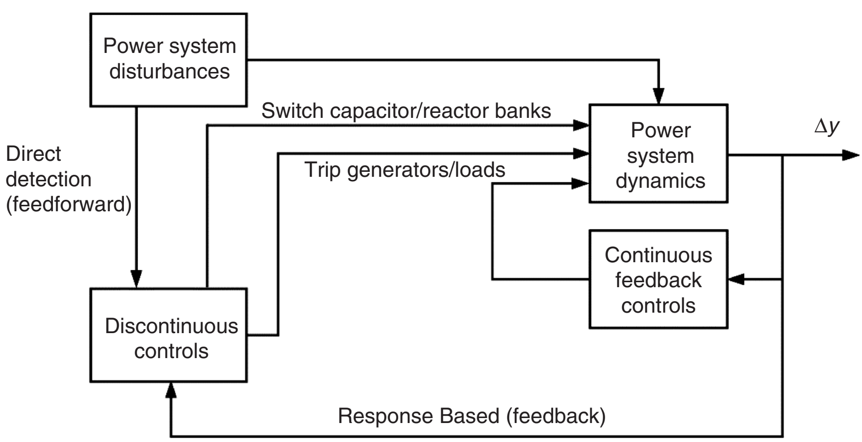


FIGURE 12.5 General power system structure showing local and wide-area, continuous and discontinuous stability controls. (From Taylor, C.W., Erickson, D.C., Martin, K.E., Wilson, R.E., and Venkatasubramanian, V., *Proceedings of the IEEE Special Issue on Energy Infrastructure Defense Systems*, 93, 892, 2005. With permission.)

mover controls, controls for reactive power compensation such as static var systems, and special controls for HVDC links. These controls are generally linear, continuously active, and based on local measurements.

There are, however, interesting possibilities for very effective discontinuous feedback controls, with microprocessors facilitating implementation. Discontinuous controls have certain advantages over continuous controls. Continuous feedback controls are potentially unstable. In complex power systems, continuously controlled equipment may cause adverse modal interactions [10]. Modern digital controls, however, can be discontinuous, and take no action until variables are out-of-range. This is analogous to biological systems (which have evolved over millions of years) that operate on the basis of excitatory stimuli [11].

Bang–bang discontinuous control can operate several times to control large amplitude oscillations, providing time for linear continuous controls to become effective. If stability is a problem, generator excitation control including PSSs should be high performance.

12.2.2 Feedforward Controls

Also shown in Fig. 12.5 are specialized feedforward (open-loop) controls that are powerful stabilizing forces for severe disturbances and for highly stressed operating conditions. Short circuit or outage events can be directly detected to initiate preplanned actions such as generator or load tripping, or reactive power compensation switching. These controls are rule-based, with rules developed from simulations (i.e., pattern recognition). These “event-based” controls are very effective since rapid control action prevents electromechanical dynamics from becoming stability threatening.

“Response-based” or feedback discontinuous controls are also possible. These controls initiate stabilizing actions for arbitrary disturbances that cause significant “swing” of measured variables.

Controls such as generator or load tripping can ensure a postdisturbance equilibrium with sufficient region of attraction. With fast control action the region of attraction can be small compared to requirements with only feedback controls.

Discontinuous controls have been termed discrete supplementary controls [8], special stability controls [12], special protection systems, remedial action schemes, and emergency controls [13]. Discontinuous controls are very powerful. Although the reliability of emergency controls is often an issue [14], adequate reliability can be obtained by design. Generally, controls are required to be as reliable as primary protective relaying. Duplicated or multiple sensors, redundant communications, and duplicated or voting logic are common [15].

Response-based discontinuous controls are often less expensive than event-based controls because fewer sensors and communications paths are needed. These controls are often “one-shot” controls, initiating a single set of switching actions. For slow dynamics, however, the controls can initiate a discontinuous action, observe response, and then initiate additional discontinuous action if necessary.

Undesired operation by some feedforward controls is relatively benign, and controls can be “trigger happy.” For example, infrequent misoperation or unnecessary operation of HVDC fast power change, reactive power compensation switching, and transient excitation boosting (TEB) may not be very disruptive. Misoperation of generator tripping (especially of steam-turbine generators), fast valving, load tripping, or controlled separation, however, are disruptive and costly.

12.2.3 Synchronizing and Damping Torques

Power system electromechanical stability means that synchronous generators and motors must remain in synchronism following disturbances—with positive damping of rotor angle oscillations (swings). For very severe disturbances and operating conditions, loss of synchronism (instability) occurs on the first forward swing within about 1 s. For less severe disturbances and operating conditions, instability may occur on the second or subsequent swings because of a combination of insufficient synchronizing and damping torques at synchronous machines.

12.2.4 Effectiveness and Robustness

Power systems have many electromechanical oscillation modes, and each mode can potentially become unstable. Lower frequency interarea modes are the most difficult to stabilize. Controls must be designed to be effective for one or more modes, and must not cause adverse interactions for other modes.

There are recent advances in robust control theory, especially for linear systems. For real nonlinear systems, emphasis should be on knowing uncertainty bounds and on sensitivity analysis using detailed nonlinear, large-scale simulation. For example, the sensitivity of controls to different operating conditions and load characteristics must be studied. On-line simulation using actual operating conditions reduces uncertainty, and can be used for control adaptation.

12.2.5 Actuators

Actuators may be mechanical or power electronic. There are tradeoffs between cost and performance. Mechanical actuators (circuit breakers, turbine valves) are lower cost, and are usually sufficiently fast for electromechanical stability (e.g., two-cycle opening time, five-cycle closing time circuit breakers). They have restricted operating frequency and are generally used for feedforward controls.

Circuit breaker technology and reliability have improved in recent years [16,17]. Bang–bang control (up to perhaps five operations) for interarea oscillations with periods of 2 s or longer is feasible [18]. Traditional controls for mechanical switching have been simple relays, but advanced controls can approach the sophistication of controls of, for example, thyristor-switched capacitor banks.

Power electronic phase control or switching using thyristors has been widely used in generator exciters, HVDC, and static var compensators. Newer devices, such as insulated gate bipolar transistor (IGBT) and gate commutated thyristor (GCT/IGCT), now have voltage and current ratings sufficient for high power transmission applications. Advantages of power electronic actuators are very fast control, unrestricted switching frequency, and minimal transients.

For economy, existing actuators should be used to the extent possible. These include generator excitation and prime mover equipment, HVDC equipment, and circuit breakers. For example, infrequent generator tripping may be cost-effective compared to new power electronic actuated equipment.

12.2.6 Reliability Criteria

Experience shows that instability incidents are usually not caused by three-phase faults near large generating plants that are typically specified in deterministic reliability criteria. Rather they are the result of a combination of unusual failures and circumstances. The three-phase fault reliability criterion is often considered an *umbrella* criterion for less predictable disturbances involving multiple failures such as single-phase short circuits with "sympathetic" tripping of unfaulted lines. Of main concern are multiple *related* failures involving lines on the same right-of-way or with common terminations.

12.3 Types of Power System Stability Controls and Possibilities for Advanced Control

Stability controls are of many types including

- Generator excitation controls
- Prime mover controls including fast valving
- Generator tripping
- Fast fault clearing
- High-speed reclosing and single-pole switching
- Dynamic braking
- Load tripping and modulation
- Reactive power compensation switching or modulation (series and shunt)

- Current injection by voltage source inverter devices (STATCOM, UPFC, SMES, battery storage)
- Fast phase angle control
- HVDC link supplementary controls
- Adjustable speed (doubly fed) synchronous machines
- Controlled separation and underfrequency load shedding

We will summarize these controls. Chapter 17 of Ref. [7] provides considerable additional information. Reference [19] describes use of many of these controls in Japan.

12.3.1 Excitation Control

Generator excitation controls are a basic stability control. Thyristor exciters with high ceiling voltage provide powerful and economical means to ensure stability for large disturbances. Modern automatic voltage regulators and PSSs are digital, facilitating additional capabilities such as adaptive control and special logic [20–23].

Excitation control is almost always based on local measurements. Therefore full effectiveness may not be obtained for interarea stability problems where the normal local measurements are not sufficient. Line drop compensation [24,25] is one method to increase the effectiveness (sensitivity) of excitation control, and improve coordination with static var compensators that normally control transmission voltage with small droop.

Several forms of discontinuous control have been applied to keep field voltage near ceiling levels during the first forward interarea swing [7,26,27]. The control described in Refs. [7,26] computes change in rotor angle locally from the PSS speed change signal. The control described in Ref. [27] is a feedforward control that injects a decaying pulse into the voltage regulators at a large power plant following remote direct detection of a large disturbance. Figure 12.6 shows simulation results using this TEB.

12.3.2 Prime Mover Control Including Fast Valving

Fast power reduction (fast valving) at accelerating sending-end generators is an effective means of stability improvement. Use has been limited, however, because of the coordination required between characteristics of the electrical power system, the prime mover and prime mover controls, and the energy supply system (boiler).

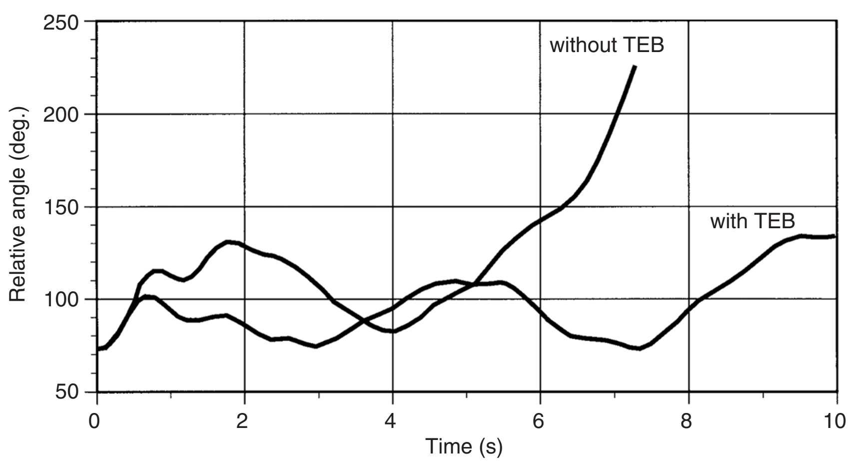


FIGURE 12.6 Rotor angle swing of Grand Coulee Unit 19 in Pacific Northwest relative to the San Onofre nuclear plant in Southern California. The effect of transient excitation boosting (TEB) at the Grand Coulee Third Power Plant following bipolar outage of the Pacific HVDC Intertie (3100 MW) is shown. (From Taylor, C.W., Mechenbier, J.R., and Matthews, C.E., *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 8, 1291, 1993.)

Digital prime mover controls facilitate addition of special features for stability enhancement. Digital boiler controls, often retrofitted on existing equipment, may improve the feasibility of fast valving.

Fast valving is potentially lower cost than tripping of turbo-generators. References [7,28] describe concepts, investigations, and recent implementations of fast valving. Two methods of steam-turbine fast valving are used: momentary and sustained. In momentary fast valving, the reheat turbine intercept valves are rapidly closed and then reopened after a short time delay. In sustained fast valving, the intercept values are also rapidly opened and reclosed, but with the control valves partially closed for sustained power reduction. Sustained fast valving may be necessary for a stable post-disturbance equilibrium.

12.3.3 Generator Tripping

Generator tripping is an effective (cost-effective) control especially if hydro units are used. Tripping of fossil units, especially gas- or oil-fired units, may be attractive if tripping to house load is possible and reliable. Gas turbine and combined-cycle plants constitute a large percentage of the new generation. Occasional tripping of these units is feasible and can become an attractive stability control in the future.

Most generator tripping controls are event-based (based on outage of generating plant out going lines or outage of tie lines). Several advanced response-based generator tripping controls, however, have been implemented.

The automatic trend relay (ATR) is implemented at the Colstrip generating plant in eastern Montana [29]. The plant consists of two 330-MW units and two 700-MW units. The microprocessor-based controller measures rotor speed and generator power and computes acceleration and angle. Tripping of 16–100% of plant generation is based on 11 trip algorithms involving acceleration, speed, and angle changes. Because of the long distance to Pacific Northwest load centers, the ATR has operated many times, both desirably and undesirably. There are proposals to use voltage angle measurement information (Colstrip 500-kV voltage angle relative to Grand Coulee and other Northwest locations) to adaptively adjust ATR settings, or as additional information for trip algorithms. Another possibility is to provide speed or frequency measurements from Grand Coulee and other locations to base algorithms on speed difference rather than only Colstrip speed [30].

A Tokyo Electric Power Company stabilizing control predicts generator angle changes and decides the minimum number of generators to trip [31]. Local generator electric power, voltage, and current measurements are used to estimate angles. The control has worked correctly for several actual disturbances.

The Tokyo Electric Power Company is also developing an emergency control system, which uses a predictive prevention method for step-out of pumped storage generators [32,33]. In the new method, the generators in TEPCO's network that swing against their local pumped storage generators after serious faults are treated as an external power system. The parameters in the external system, such as angle and moment of inertia, are estimated using local on-line information, and the behavior of local pumped storage generators is predicted based on equations of motion. Control actions (the number of generators to be tripped) are determined based on the prediction.

Reference [34] describes response-based generator tripping using a phase-plane controller. The controller is based on the apparent resistance–rate of change of apparent resistance (*R*–*R*dot) phase plane, which is closely related to an angle difference–speed difference phase plane between two areas. The primary use of the controller is for controlled separation of the Pacific AC Intertie. Figure 12.7 shows simulation results where 600 MW of generator tripping reduces the likelihood of controlled separation.

12.3.4 Fast Fault Clearing, High-Speed Reclosing, and Single-Pole Switching

Clearing time of close-in faults can be less than three cycles using conventional protective relays and circuit breakers. Typical EHV circuit breakers have two-cycle opening time. One-cycle breakers have

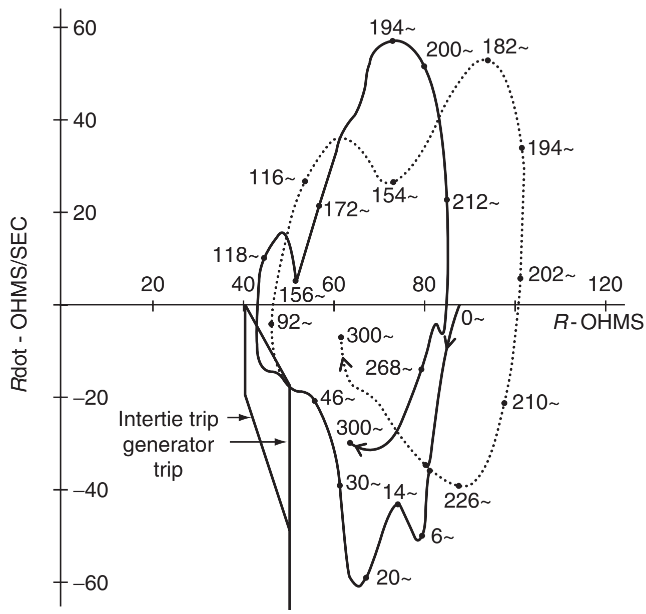


FIGURE 12.7 *R–R*dot phase plane for loss of Pacific HVDC Intertie (2000 MW). Solid trajectory is without additional generator tripping. Dashed trajectory is with additional 600 MW of generator tripping initiated by the *R–R*dot controller generator trip switching line. (From Haner, J.M., Laughlin, T.D., and Taylor, C.W., *IEEE Transactions on Power Delivery*, PWRD-1, 35, 1986.)

been developed [35], but special breakers are seldom justified. High magnitude short circuits may be detected as fast as one-fourth cycle by nondirectional overcurrent relays. Ultrahigh speed traveling wave relays are also available [36]. With such short clearing times, and considering that most EHV faults are single-phase, the removed transmission lines or other elements may be the major contributor to generator acceleration. This is especially true if non-faulted equipment is also removed by sympathetic relaying.

High-speed reclosing is an effective method of improving stability and reliability. Reclosing is before the maximum of the first forward angular swing, but after 30–40 cycle time for arc extinction. During a lightning storm, high-speed reclosing keeps the maximum number of lines in service. High-speed reclosing is effective when unfaulted lines trip because of relay misoperations.

Unsuccessful high-speed reclosing into a permanent fault can cause instability, and can also compound the torsional duty imposed on turbine-generator shafts. Solutions include reclosing only for single-phase faults, and reclosing from the weaker remote end with hot-line checking prior to reclosing at the generator end. Communication signals from the weaker end indicating successful reclosing can also be used to enable reclosing at the generator end [37].

Single-pole switching is a practical means to improve stability and reliability in extra high voltage networks where most circuit breakers have independent pole operation [38,39]. Several methods are used to ensure secondary arc extinction. For short lines, no special methods are needed. For long lines, the four-reactor scheme [40,41] is most commonly used. High-speed grounding switches may be used [42]. A hybrid reclosing method used successfully by Bonneville Power Administration (BPA) on many lines over many years employs single-pole tripping, but with three-pole tripping on the backswing followed by rapid three-pole reclosure; the three-pole tripping ensures secondary arc extinction [38]. Single-pole switching may necessitate positive sequence filtering in stability control input signals.

For advanced stability control, signal processing and pattern recognition techniques may be developed to detect secondary arc extinction [43,44]. Reclosing into a fault is avoided and single-pole reclosing success is improved.

High-speed reclosing or single-pole switching may not allow increased power transfers because deterministic reliability criteria generally specify permanent faults. Nevertheless, fast reclosing provides "defense-in-depth" for frequently occurring single-phase temporary faults and false operation of protective relays. The probability of power failures because of multiple line outages is greatly reduced.

12.3.5 Dynamic Braking

Shunt dynamic brakes using mechanical switching have been used infrequently [7]. Normally the insertion time of a few hundred milliseconds is fixed. One attractive method not requiring switching is neutral-to-ground resistors in generator step-up transformers; braking automatically results for ground faults—which are most common. Often, generator tripping, which helps ensure a postdisturbance equilibrium, is a better solution.

Thyristor switching of dynamic brakes has been proposed. Thyristor switching or phase control minimizes generator torsional duty [45], and can also be a subsynchronous resonance countermeasure [46].

12.3.6 Load Tripping and Modulation

Load tripping is similar in concept to generator tripping but is at the receiving end to reduce deceleration of receiving-end generation. Interruptible industrial load is commonly used. For example, Ref. [47] describes tripping of up to 3000 MW of industrial load following outages during power import conditions.

Rather than tripping large blocks of industrial load, it may be possible to trip low priority commercial and residential load such as space and water heaters, or air conditioners. This is less disruptive and the consumer may not even notice brief interruptions. The feasibility of this control depends on implementation of direct load control as part of demand side management and on the installation of high-speed communication links to consumers with high-speed actuators at load devices. Although unlikely because of economics, appliances such as heaters could be designed to provide frequency sensitivity by local measurements.

Load tripping is also used for voltage stability. Here the communication and actuator speeds are generally not as critical. It is also possible to modulate loads such as heaters to damp oscillations [48–50]. Clearly load tripping or modulation of small loads will depend on the economics, and the development of fast communications and actuators.

12.3.7 Reactive Power Compensation Switching or Modulation

Controlled series or shunt compensation improves stability, with series compensation generally being the most powerful. For switched compensation, either mechanical or power electronic switches may be used. For continuous modulation, thyristor phase control of a reactor (TCR) is used. Mechanical switching has the advantage of lower cost. The operating times of circuit breakers are usually adequate, especially for interarea oscillations. Mechanical switching is generally single insertion of compensation for synchronizing support. In addition to previously mentioned advantages, power electronic control has advantages in subsynchronous resonance performance.

For synchronizing support, high-speed series capacitor switching has been used effectively on the North American Pacific AC Intertie for over 25 years [51]. The main application is for full or partial outages of the parallel Pacific HVDC Intertie (event-driven control using transfer trip over microwave radio). Series capacitors are inserted by circuit breaker opening; operators bypass the series capacitors some minutes after the event. Response-based control using an impedance relay was also used for some years, and new response-based controls are being investigated.

Thyristor-based series compensation switching or modulation has been developed with several installations in service or planned [52,53,32]. Thyristor-controlled series compensation (TCSC) allows significant time–current dependent increase in series reactance over nominal reactance. With appropriate controls, this increase in reactance can be a powerful stabilizing force.

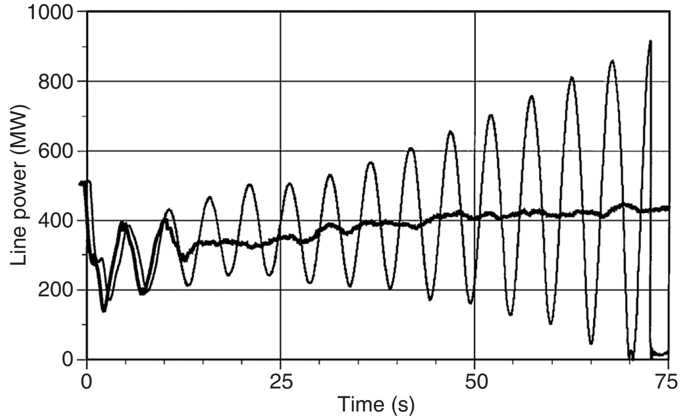


FIGURE 12.8 Effect of TCSCs for trip of a 300-MW generator in the North–Northeast Brazilian network. Results are from commissioning field tests in March 1999. The thin line without TCSC power oscillation damping shows interconnection separation after 70 s. The thick line with TCSC power oscillation damping shows rapid oscillation damping.

Thyristor-controlled series compensation was chosen for the 1020-km, 500-kV intertie between the Brazilian North–Northeast networks and the Southeast network [54]. The TCSCs at each end of the intertie are modulated using line power measurements to damp low frequency (0.12 Hz) oscillations. Figure 12.8, from commissioning field tests [55], shows the powerful stabilizing benefits of TCSCs.

Reference [56] describes a TCSC application in China for integration of a remote power plant using two parallel 500-kV transmission lines (1300 km). Transient stability simulations indicate that 25% thyristor-controlled compensation is more effective than 45% fixed compensation. Several advanced TCSC control techniques are promising. The state-of-the-art is to provide both transient stability and damping control modes. Reference [57] surveys TCSC stability controls, providing 85 references.

For synchronizing support, high-speed switching of shunt capacitor banks is also effective. Again on the Pacific AC Intertie, four 200-MVAr shunt banks are switched for HVDC and 500-kV ac line outages [18]. These banks plus other 500-kV shunt capacitor/reactor banks and series capacitors are also switched for severe voltage swings.

High-speed mechanical switching of shunt banks as part of a static var system is common. For example, the Forbes SVS near Duluth, Minnesota, USA, includes two 300-MVAr 500-kV shunt capacitor banks [58]. Generally it is effective to augment power electronic controlled compensation with fixed or mechanically switched compensation.

Static var compensators are applied along interconnections to improve synchronizing and damping support. Voltage support at intermediate points allows operation at angles above 90°. SVCs are modulated to improve oscillation damping. A seminal study [6,59] showed line current magnitude to be the most effective input signal. Synchronous condensers can provide similar benefits, but nowadays are not competitive with power electronic control. Available SVCs in load areas may be used to indirectly modulate load to provide synchronizing or damping forces.

Digital control facilitates new strategies. Adaptive control—gain supervision and optimization—is common. For series or shunt power electronic devices, control mode selection allows bang–bang control, synchronizing versus damping control, and other nonlinear and adaptive strategies.

12.3.8 Current Injection by Voltage Sourced Inverters

Advanced power electronic controlled equipment employs gate turn-off thyristors, IGCTs, or IGBTs. Reference [6] describes use of these devices for oscillation damping. As with conventional thyristor-based equipment, it is often effective for voltage source inverter control to also direct mechanical switching.

Voltage sourced inverters may also be used for real power series or shunt injection. Superconducting magnetic energy storage (SMES) or battery storage is the most common. For angle stability control, injection of real power is more effective than reactive power. For transient stability improvement, SMES can be of smaller MVA size and lower cost than a STATCOM. SMES is less location dependent than a STATCOM.

12.3.9 Fast Voltage Phase Angle Control

Voltage phase angles and thereby rotor angles can be directly and rapidly controlled by voltage sourced inverter series injection or by power electronic controlled phase shifting transformers. This provides powerful stability control. Although one type of thyristor-controlled phase shifting transformer was developed over 20 years ago [60], high cost has presumably prevented installations. Reference [61] describes an application study.

As modular devices, multiple voltage sourced converters can be combined in several shunt and series arrangements, and as back-to-back HVDC links. Reactive power injection devices include the shunt static compensator (STATCOM), static synchronous series compensator (SSSC), unified power flow controller (UPFC), and interline power flow controller (IPFC). The convertible static compensator (CSC) allows multiple configurations with one installation in service. These devices tend to be quite expensive and special purpose.

The UPFC combines shunt and series voltage sourced converters with common dc capacitor and controls, and provides shunt compensation, series compensation, and phase shifting transformer functions. At least one installation (not a transient stability application) is in service [62], along with a CSC installation [9].

One concept employs power electronic series or phase shifting equipment to control angles across an interconnection within a small range [63]. On a power–angle curve, this can be visualized as keeping high synchronizing coefficient (slope of power–angle curve) during disturbances.

BPA developed a novel method for transient stability by high-speed 120° phase rotation of transmission lines between networks losing synchronism [64]. This technique is very powerful (perhaps too powerful) and raises reliability and robustness issues especially in the usual case where several lines form the interconnection. It has not been implemented.

12.3.10 HVDC Link Supplementary Controls

HVDC links are installed for power transfer reasons. In contrast to the above power electronic devices, the available HVDC converters provide the actuators so that stability control is inexpensive. For long distance HVDC links within a synchronous network, HVDC modulation can provide powerful stabilization, with active and reactive power injections at each converter. Control robustness, however, is a concern [6,10].

References [6,65–67] describe HVDC link stability controls. The Pacific HVDC Intertie modulation control implemented in 1976 is unique in that a remote (wide-area) input signal from the parallel Pacific AC Intertie was used [66,67]. Figure 12.9 shows commissioning test results.

12.3.11 Adjustable Speed (Doubly Fed) Synchronous Machines

Reference [68] summarizes stability benefits of adjustable speed synchronous machines that have been developed for pumped storage applications in Japan. Fast digital control of excitation frequency enables direct control of rotor angle.

12.3.12 Controlled Separation and Underfrequency Load Shedding

For very severe disturbances and failures, maintaining synchronism may not be possible or cost-effective. Controlled separation based on out-of-step detection or parallel path outages mitigates the effects of

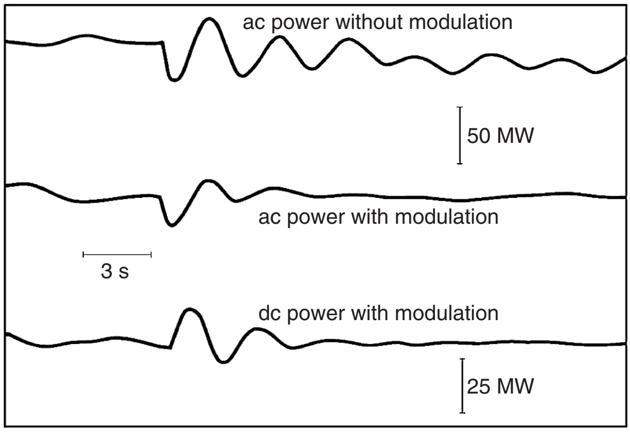


FIGURE 12.9 System response to Pacific AC Intertie series capacitor bypass with and without dc modulation. (From Cresap, R.L., Scott, D.N., Mittelstadt, W.A., and Taylor, C.W., *IEEE Transactions on Power Apparatus and Systems*, PAS-98, 1053, 1978.)

instability. Stable islands are formed, but underfrequency load shedding may be required in islands that were importing power.

References [34,69–71] describe advanced controlled separation schemes. Recent proposals advocate use of voltage phase angle measurements for controlled separation.

12.4 Dynamic Security Assessment

Control design and settings, along with transfer limits, are usually based on off-line simulation (time and frequency domain) and on field tests. Controls must then operate appropriately for a variety of operating conditions and disturbances.

Recently, however, on-line dynamic (or transient) stability and security assessment software have been developed. State estimation and on-line power flow provide the base operating conditions. Simulation of potential disturbances is then based on actual operating conditions, reducing uncertainty of the control environment. Dynamic security assessment is presently used to determine arming levels for generator tripping controls [72,73].

With today's computer capabilities, hundreds or thousands of large-scale simulations may be run each day to provide an organized database of system stability properties. Security assessment is made efficient by techniques such as fast screening and contingency selection, and smart termination of strongly stable or unstable cases. Parallel computation is straightforward using multiple workstations for different simulation cases; common initiation may be used for the different contingencies.

In the future, dynamic security assessment may be used for control adaptation to current operating conditions. Another possibility is stability control based on neural network or decision-tree pattern recognition. Dynamic security assessment provides the database for pattern recognition techniques. Pattern recognition may be considered data compression of security assessment results.

Industry restructuring requiring near real-time power transfer capability determination may accelerate the implementation of dynamic security assessment, facilitating advanced stability controls.

12.5 "Intelligent" Controls

Mention has already been made of rule-based controls and pattern recognition based controls. As a possibility, Ref. [74] describes a sophisticated self-organizing neural fuzzy controller (SONFC) based on the speed–acceleration phase plane. Compared to the angle–speed phase plane, control tends to be faster and both final states are zero (using angle, the postdisturbance equilibrium angle is not known in advance). The controllers are located at generator plants. Acceleration and speed can be easily measured or computed using, for example, the techniques developed for PSSs.

The SONFC could be expanded to incorporate remote measurements. Dynamic security assessment simulations could be used for updating or retraining of the neural network fuzzy controller. The SONFC is suitable for generator tripping, series or shunt capacitor switching, HVDC control, etc.

12.6 Wide-Area Stability Controls

The development of synchronized phasor measurements, fiber optic communications, digital controllers, and other IT advances have spurred development of wide-area controls. Wide-area controls offer increased observability and controllability, and as mentioned above, may be either continuous or discontinuous. They may augment local controls, or provide supervisory or adaptive functions rather than primary control. In particular, voltage phase angles, related to generator rotor angles, are often advocated as input signals.

The additional time delays because of communications are a concern, and increase the potential for adverse dynamic interactions. Figure 12.10, however, shows that latency for fiber optic communications (SONET) can be less than 25 ms, which is adequate for interarea stability.

Wide-area continuous controls include PSSs applied to generator automatic voltage regulators, and to static var compensators and other power electronic devices. For some power systems, wide-area controls are technically more effective than local controls [75,76].

Referring to Fig. 12.5, discontinuous controls are often wide-area. Control inputs can be from multiple locations and control output actions can be taken at multiple locations. Most wide-area discontinuous controls directly detect fault or outage events (feedforward control). These controls generally involve preplanned binary logic rules and employ programmable logic controllers. For example, if line A and line B trip, then disconnect sending-end generators at power plants C and D. These schemes can be quite complex—BPA's remedial action scheme for the Pacific AC Intertie comprises around 1000 AND/OR decisions, with fault tolerant logic computers at two control centers.

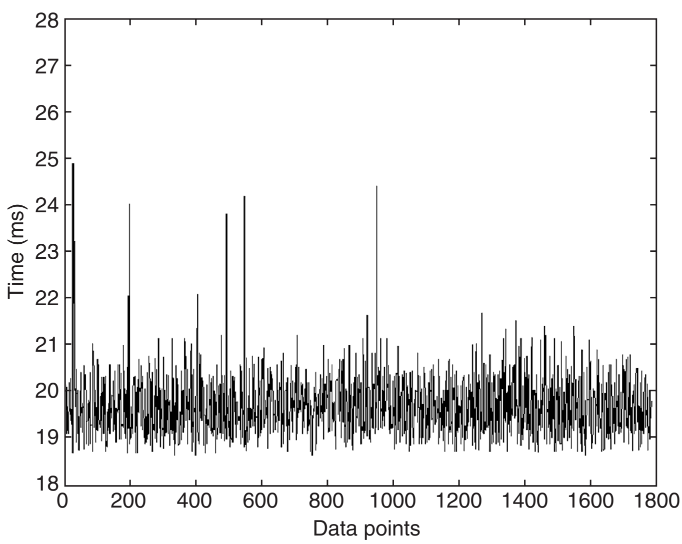


FIGURE 12.10 Fiber optic communications latency over 1 min. Bonneville Power Administration phasor measurement unit at Slatt Substation to BPA control center. (From Taylor, C.W., Erickson, D.C., Martin, K.E., Wilson, R.E., and Venkatasubramanian, V., *Proceedings of the IEEE Special Issue on Energy Infrastructure Defense Systems*, 93, 892, 2005. With permission.)

BPA is developing a feedback wide-area stability and voltage control system (WACS) employing discontinuous control actions [77]. Inputs are from phasor measurements at eight locations, with generator tripping and capacitor or reactor switching actions available at many locations via existing remedial action scheme circuits. The WACS controller has two algorithms that cater to both angle and voltage stability problems.

12.7 Effect of Industry Restructuring on Stability Controls

Industry restructuring has many impacts on power system stability. Frequently changing power transfer patterns cause new stability problems. Most stability and transfer capability problems must be solved by new controls and new substation equipment, rather than by new transmission lines.

Different ownership of generation, transmission, and distribution makes the necessary power system engineering more difficult. New power industry reliability standards along with ancillary services mechanisms are being developed. Generator or load tripping, fast valving, higher than standard exciter ceilings, and PSSs may be ancillary services. In large interconnections, independent grid operators or reliability coordination centers may facilitate dynamic security assessment and centralized stability controls.

12.8 Experience from Recent Power Failures

Recent cascading power outages demonstrated the impact of control and protection failures, the need for "defense-in-depth," and the need for advanced stability controls.

The July 2, 1996 and August 10, 1996 power failures [78–81] in western North America, the August 14, 2003 failure in northeastern North America [82], and other failures demonstrate need for improvements and innovations in stability control areas such as

- Fast insertion of reactive power compensation, and fast generator tripping using response-based controls
- Special HVDC and SVC control
- PSS design and tuning
- Controlled separation
- Power system modeling and data validation for control design
- Adaptation of controls to actual operating conditions
- Local or wide-area automatic load shedding
- Prioritized upgrade of control and protection equipment including generator excitation equipment

12.9 Summary

Power system angle stability can be improved by a wide variety of controls. Some methods have been used effectively for many years, both at generating plants and in transmission networks. New control techniques and actuating equipment are promising.

We provide a broad survey of available stability control techniques with emphasis on implemented controls, and on new and emerging technology.

References

1. CIGRÉ TF 38.02.12, Criteria and Countermeasures for Voltage Collapse, CIGRÉ Brochure No. 101, October 1995. Summary in *Electra*, October 1995.
2. CIGRÉ WG 34.08, Protection against Voltage Collapse, CIGRÉ Brochure No. 128, 1998. Summary in *Electra*, No. 179, pp. 111–126, August 1998.

3. IEEE Power System Relaying Committee WG K12, System Protection and Voltage Stability, 93 THO 596–7 PWR, 1993.
4. Taylor, C.W., *Power System Voltage Stability*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1994.
5. Van Cutsem, T. and Vournas, C., *Voltage Stability of Electric Power Systems*, Kluwer Academic, Dordrecht, 1998.
6. CIGRÉ TF 38.01.07, Analysis and Control of Power System Oscillations, Brochure No. 111, December 1996.
7. Kundur, P., *Power System Stability and Control*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1994.
8. IEEE Discrete Supplementary Control Task Force, A description of discrete supplementary controls for stability, *IEEE Transactions on Power Apparatus and Systems*, PAS-97, 149–165, January/February 1978.
9. Arabi, S., Hamadanizadeh, H., and Fardanesh, B., Convertible static compensator performance studies on the NY state transmission system, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 17(3), 701–706, August 2002.
10. Hauer, J.F., Robust damping controls for large power systems, *IEEE Control Systems Magazine*, January 1989.
11. Studt, T., Computer scientists search for ties to biological intelligence, *R&D Magazine*, 77–78, October 1998.
12. IEEE Special Stability Controls Working Group, Annotated bibliography on power system stability controls: 1986–1994, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 11(2), 794–800, August 1996.
13. Djakov, A.F., Bondarenko, A., Portnoi, M.G., Semenov, V.A., Gluskin, I.Z., Kovalev, V.D., Berdnikov, V.I., and Stroev, V.A., The operation of integrated power systems close to operating limits with the help of emergency control systems, CIGRÉ, paper 39–109, 1998.
14. IEEE/CIGRÉ Committee Report (Anderson, P.M. and LeReverend, B.K.), Industry experience with special protection schemes, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 11(3), 1166–1179, August 1996.
15. Dodge, D., Doel, W., and Smith, S., Power system stability control using fault tolerant technology, *ISA Instrumentation in Power Industry*, Vol. 33, 33rd Power Instrumentation Symposium, May 21–23, 1990, paper 90–1323.
16. CIGRÉ Task Force 13.00.1, Controlled switching—A state-of-the-art survey, *Electra*, 163, 65–97, December 1995.
17. Brunke, J.H., Esztergalyos, J.H., Khan, A.H., and Johnson, D.S., Benefits of microprocessor-based circuit breaker control, CIGRÉ, paper 23/13-10, 1994.
18. Furumasu, B.C. and Hasibar, R.M., Design and installation of 500-kV back-to-back shunt capacitor banks, *IEEE Transactions on Power Delivery*, 7(2), 539–545, April 1992.
19. Torizuka, T. and Tanaka, H., An outline of power system technologies in Japan, *Electric Power Systems Research*, 44, 1–5, 1998.
20. IEEE Digital Excitation Applications Task Force, Digital excitation technology—A review of features, functions and benefits, *IEEE Transactions on Energy Conversion*, 12(3), September 1997.
21. Bollinger, K.E., Nettleton, L., Greenwood-Madsen, T., and Salyzyn, M., Experience with digital power system stabilizers at steam and hydro generating plants, *IEEE Transactions on Energy Conversion*, 8(2), June 1993.
22. Hajagos, L.M., and Gerube, G.R., Utility experience with digital excitation systems, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 13(1), 165–170, February 1998.
23. Arcidiancone, V., Corsi, S., Ottaviani, G., Togno, S., Baroffio, G., Raffaelli, C., and Rosa, E., The ENEL's experience on the evolution of excitation control systems through microprocessor technology, *IEEE Transactions on Energy Conversion*, 13(3), 292–299, September 1998.
24. Rubenstein, A.S. and Walkley, W.W., Control of reactive KVA with modern amplidyne voltage regulators, *AIEE Transactions*, 961–970, December 1957.
25. Dehdashti, A.S., Luini, J.F., and Peng, Z., Dynamic voltage control by remote voltage regulation for pumped storage plants, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 3(3), 1188–1192, August 1988.

26. Lee, D.C. and Kundur, P., Advanced excitation controls for power system stability enhancement, CIGRÉ, paper 38–01, 1986.
27. Taylor, C.W., Mechenbier, J.R., and Matthews, C.E., Transient excitation boosting at grand coulee third power plant, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 8(3), 1291–1298, August 1993.
28. Bhatt, N.B., Field experience with momentary fast turbine valving and other special stability controls employed at AEP's Rockport Plant, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 11(1), 155–161, February 1996.
29. Stigers, C.A., Woods, C.S., Smith, J.R., and Setterstrom, R.D., The acceleration trend relay for generator stabilization at Colstrip, *IEEE Transactions on Power Delivery*, 12(3), 1074–1081, July 1997.
30. Kosterev, D.N., Esztergalyos, J., and Stigers, C.A., Feasibility study of using synchronized phasor measurements for generator dropping controls in the Colstrip system, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 13(3), 755–762, August 1998.
31. Matsuzawa, K., Yanagihashi, K., Tsukita, J., Sato, M., Nakamura, T., and Takeuchi, A., Stabilizing control system preventing loss of synchronism from extension and its actual operating experience, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 10(3), 1606–1613, August 1995.
32. Kojima, Y., Taoka, H., Oshida, H., and Goda, T., On-line modeling for emergency control systems, *IFAC/CIGRÉ Symposium on Control of Power Systems and Power Plant*, 627–632, 1997.
33. Imai, S., Syoji, T., Yanagihashi, K., Kojima, Y., Kowada, Y., Oshida, H., and Goda, T., Development of predictive prevention method for mid-term stability problem using only local information, *Transactions of IEE Japan*, 118-B(9), 1998.
34. Haner, J.M., Laughlin, T.D., and Taylor, C.W., Experience with the *R*–*R*dot out-of-step relay, *IEEE Transactions on Power Delivery*, PWRD-1(2), 35–39, April 1986.
35. Berglund, R.O., Mittelstadt, W.A., Shelton, M.L., Barkan, P., Dewey, C.G., and Skreiner, K.M., One-cycle fault interruption at 500 kV: System benefits and breaker designs, *IEEE Transactions on Power Apparatus and Systems*, PAS-93, 1240–1251, September/October 1974.
36. Esztergalyos, J.H., Yee, M.T., Chamia, M., and Lieberman, S., The development and operation of an ultra high speed relaying system for EHV transmission lines, CIGRÉ, paper 34–04, 1978.
37. Behrendt, K.C., Relay-to-relay digital logic communication for line protection, monitoring, and control, *Proceedings of the 23rd Annual Western Protective Relay Conference*, Spokane, Washington, October 1996.
38. IEEE Committee Report, Single-pole switching for stability and reliability, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, PWRS-1, 25–36, May 1986.
39. Belotelov, A.K., Dyakov, A.F., Fokin, G.G., Ilynichnin, V.V., Leviush, A.I., and Strelkov, V.M., Application of automatic reclosing in high voltage networks of the UPG of Russia under new conditions, CIGRÉ, paper 34–203, 1998.
40. Knutsen, N., Single-phase switching of transmission lines using reactors for extinction of the secondary arc, CIGRÉ, paper 310, 1962.
41. Kimbark, E.W., Suppression of ground-fault arcs on single-pole switched lines by shunt reactors, *IEEE Transactions on Power Apparatus and Systems*, PAS-83(3), 285–290, March 1964.
42. Hasibar, R.M., Legate, A.C., Brunke, J.H., and Peterson, W.G., The application of high-speed grounding switches for single-pole reclosing on 500-kV power systems, *IEEE Transactions on Power Apparatus and Systems*, PAS-100(4), 1512–1515, April 1981.
43. Fitton, D.S., Dunn, R.W., Aggarwal, R.K., Johns, A.T., and Bennett, A., Design and implementation of an adaptive single pole autoreclosure technique for transmission lines using artificial neural networks, *IEEE Transactions on Power Delivery*, 11(2), 748–756, April 1996.
44. Djuric, M.B. and Terzija, V.V., A new approach to the arcing faults detection for fast autoreclosure in transmission systems, *IEEE Transactions on Power Delivery*, 10(4), 1793–1798, October 1995.
45. Bayer, W., Habur, K., Povh, D., Jacobson, D.A., Guedes, J.M.G., and Marshall, D.A., Long distance transmission with parallel ac/dc link from Cahora Bassa (Mozambique) to South Africa and Zimbabwe, CIGRÉ, paper 14–306, 1996.

46. Donnelly, M.K., Smith, J.R., Johnson, R.M., Hauer, J.F., Brush, R.W., and Adapa, R., Control of a dynamic brake to reduce turbine-generator shaft transient torques, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 8(1), 67–73, February 1993.
47. Taylor, C.W., Nassief, F.R., and Cresap, R.L., Northwest power pool transient stability and load shedding controls for generation–load imbalances, *IEEE Transactions on Power Apparatus and Systems,* PAS-100(7), 3486–3495, July 1981.
48. Samuelsson, O. and Eliasson, B., Damping of electro-mechanical oscillations in a multi-machine system by direct load control, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 12(4), 4, 1604–1609, November 1997.
49. Kamwa, I., Grondin, R., Asber, D., Gingras, J.P., and Trudel, G., Active power stabilizers for multi-machine power systems: Challenges and prospects, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 13(4), 1352–1358, November 1998.
50. Dagle, J., Distributed-FACTS: End-use load control for power system dynamic stability enhancement, EPRI Conference, *The Future of Power Delivery in the 21st Century*, 18–20, November 1997, La Jolla, California.
51. Kimbark, E.W., Improvement of system stability by switched series capacitors, *IEEE Transactions on Power Apparatus and Systems*, PAS-85(2), 180–188, February 1966.
52. Christl, N., Sadek, K., Hedin, R., Lützelberger, P., Krause, P.E., Montoya, A.H., McKenna, S.M., and Torgerson, D., Advanced series compensation (ASC) with thyristor controlled impedance, CIGRÉ, paper 14/37/38-05, 1992.
53. Piwko, R.J., Wegner, C.A., Furumasu, B.C., Damsky, B.L., and Eden, J.D., The slatt thyristor-controlled series capacitor project—Design, installation, commissioning and system testing, CIGRÉ, paper 14–104, 1994.
54. Gama, C., Leoni, R.L., Gribel, J., Fraga, R., Eiras, M.J., Ping, W., Ricardo, A., Cavalcanti, J., and Tenório, R., Brazilian North–South interconnection—Application of thyristor controlled series compensation (TCSC) to damp inter-area oscillation mode, CIGRÉ, paper 14–101, 1998.
55. Gama, C., Brazilian North–South interconnection—Control application and operating experience with a TCSC, *Proceedings of 1999 IEEE/PES Summer Meeting*, July 1999.
56. Zhou, X., et al., Analysis and control of Yimin–Fentun 500 kV TCSC system, *Electric Power Systems Research*, 46, 157–168, 1998.
57. Zhou, X. and Liang, J., Overview of control schemes for TCSC to enhance the stability of power systems, *IEE Proceedings—Generation, Transmission and Distribution*, 146(2), 125–130, March 1999.
58. Sybille, G., Giroux, P., Dellwo, S., Mazur, R., and Sweezy, G., Simulator and field testing of Forbes SVC, *IEEE Transactions on Power Delivery*, 11(3), 1507–1514, July 1996.
59. Larsen, E.V. and Chow, J.H., SVC Control Design Concepts for System Dynamic Performance, *Application of Static Var Systems for System Dynamic Performance*, IEEE Special Publication 87TH1087-5-PWR, 36–53, 1987.
60. Stemmler, H. and Güth, G., The thyristor-controlled static phase shifter—A new tool for power flow control in ac transmission systems, *Brown Boveri Review*, 69(3), 73–78, March 1982.
61. Fang, Y.J. and Macdonald, D.C., Dynamic quadrature booster as an aid to system stability, *IEE Proceedings—Generation, Transmission and Distribution*, 145(1), 41–47, January 1998.
62. Rahman, M., Ahmed, M., Gutman, R., O'Keefe, R.J., Nelson, R.J., and Bian, J., UPFC application on the AEP system: Planning considerations, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 12(4), 1695–1701, November 1997.
63. Christensen, J.F., New control strategies for utilizing power system network more effectively, *Electra*, 173, 5–16, August 1997.
64. Cresap, R.L., Taylor, C.W., and Kreipe, M.J., Transient stability enhancement by 120-degree phase rotation, *IEEE Transactions on Power Apparatus and Systems*, PAS-100, 745–753, February 1981.
65. IEEE Committee Report, HVDC controls for system dynamic performance, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 6(2), 743–752, May 1991.

66. Cresap, R.L., Scott, D.N., Mittelstadt, W.A., and Taylor, C.W., Operating experience with modulation of the Pacific HVDC Intertie, *IEEE Transactions on Power Apparatus and Systems*, PAS-98, 1053–1059, July/August 1978.
67. R.L. Cresap, R.L., Scott, D.N., Mittelstadt, W.A., and Taylor, C.W., Damping of Pacific AC Intertie oscillations via modulation of the parallel Pacific HVDC Intertie, CIGRÉ, paper 14–05, 1978.
68. CIGRÉ TF 38.02.17, Advanced Angle Stability Controls, CIGRÉ Brochure No. 155, April 2000.
69. Ohura, Y., Suzuki, M., Yanagihashi, K., Yamaura, M., Omata, K., Nakamura, T., Mitamura, S., and Watanabe, H., A predictive out-of-step protection system based on observation of the phase difference between substations, *IEEE Transactions on Power Delivery*, 5(4), 1695–1704, November 1990.
70. Taylor, C.W., Haner, J.M., Hill, L.A., Mittelstadt, W.A., and Cresap, R.L., A new out-of-step relay with rate of change of apparent resistance augmentation, *IEEE Transactions on Power Apparatus and Systems*, PAS-102(3), 631–639, March 1983.
71. Centeno, V., Phadke, A.G., Edris, A., Benton, J., Gaudi, M., and Michel, G., An adaptive out of step relay, *IEEE Transactions on Power Delivery*, 12(1), 61–71, January 1997.
72. Mansour, Y., Vaahedi, E., Chang, A.Y., Corns, B.R., Garrett, B.W., Demaree, K., Athay, T., and Cheung, K., B.C. Hydro's on-line transient stability assessment (TSA) model development, analysis, and post-processing, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 10(1), 241–253, February 1995.
73. Ota, H., Kitayama, Y., Ito, H., Fukushima, N., Omata, K., Morita, K., and Kokai, Y., Development of transient stability control system (TSC system) based on on-line stability calculation, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 11(3), 1463–1472, August 1996.
74. Chang, H.-C. and Wang, M.-H., Neural network-based self-organizing fuzzy controller for transient stability of multimachine power systems, *IEEE Transactions on Energy Conversion*, 10(2), 339–347, June 1995.
75. Kamwa, I., Grondin, R., and Hebert, Y., Wide-area measurement based stabilizing control of large power systems—A decentralized/hierarchical approach, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 16(1), 136–153, February 2001.
76. Kamwa, I., Heniche, A., Trudel, G., Dobrescu, M., Grondin, R., and Lefebvre, D., Assessing the technical value of FACTS-based wide-area damping control loops, *Proceedings of IEEE/PES 2005 General Meeting*.
77. Taylor, C.W., Erickson, D.C., Martin, K.E., Wilson, R.E., and Venkatasubramanian, V., WACS—Wide-area stability and voltage control system: R&D and on-line demonstration, *Proceedings of the IEEE Special Issue on Energy Infrastructure Defense Systems*, 93(5), 892–906, May 2005.
78. WSCC reports on July 2, 1996 and August 10, 1996 outages—Available at www.wscc.com.
79. Taylor, C.W. and Erickson, D.C., Recording and analyzing the July 2 cascading outage, *IEEE Computer Applications in Power*, 10(1), 26–30, January 1997.
80. Hauer, J., Trudnowski, D., Rogers, G., Mittelstadt, W., Litzenberger, W., and Johnson, J., Keeping an eye on power system dynamics, *IEEE Computer Applications in Power*, 10(1), 26–30, January 1997.
81. Kosterev, D.N., Taylor, C.W., and Mittelstadt, W.A., Model validation for the August 10, 1996 WSCC system outage, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 14(3), 967–979, August 1999.
82. U.S.–Canada Power System Outage Task Force, *Final Report on the August 14, 2003 Blackout in the United States and Canada: Causes and Recommendations*, April 2004.
83. IEEE/CIGRÉ Joint Task Force on Stability Terms and Definitions, Definition and classification of power system stability, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 19(2), 1387–1401, August 2004. Also published as CIGRÉ Technical Brochure No. 231, with summary in *Electra*, June 2003.

13

Power System Dynamic Modeling

William W. Price
GE Energy

13.1 Modeling Requirements

Analysis of power system dynamic performance requires the use of computational models representing the nonlinear differential–algebraic equations of the various system components. While scale models or analog models are sometimes used for this purpose, most power system dynamic analysis is performed with digital computers using specialized programs. These programs include a variety of models for generators, excitation systems, governor-turbine systems, loads, and other components. The user is therefore concerned with selecting the appropriate models for the problem at hand and determining the data to represent the specific equipment on his or her system. The focus of this article is on these concerns.

The choice of appropriate models depends heavily on the timescale of the problem being analyzed. Figure 13.1 shows the principal power system dynamic performance areas displayed on a logarithmic timescale ranging from microseconds to days. The lower end of the band for a particular item indicates the smallest time constants that need to be included for adequate modeling. The upper end indicates the approximate length of time that must be analyzed. It is possible to build a power system simulation model that includes all dynamic effects from very fast network inductance/capacitance effects to very slow economic dispatch of generation. However, for efficiency and ease of analysis, normal engineering practice dictates that only models incorporating the dynamic effects relevant to the particular performance area of concern be used.

This section focuses on the modeling required for analysis of power system stability, including transient stability, oscillatory stability, voltage stability, and frequency stability. For this purpose, it is normally adequate to represent the electrical network elements (transmission lines and transformers) by algebraic equations. The effect of frequency changes on the inductive and capacitive reactances is sometimes included, but is usually neglected, since for most stability analysis, the frequency changes are small. The modeling of the various system components for stability analysis purposes is discussed in

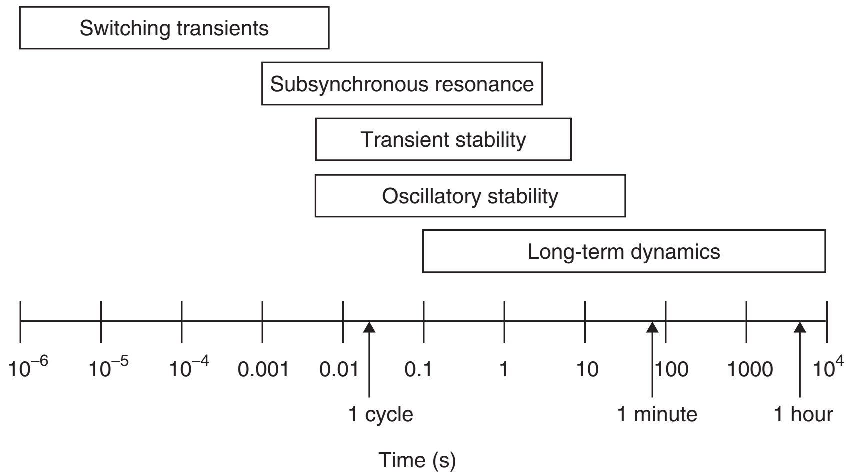


FIGURE 13.1 Timescale of power system dynamic phenomena.

the remainder of this section. For greater detail, the reader is referred to Kundur (1994) and the other references cited below.

13.2 Generator Modeling

The model of a generator consists of two parts: the acceleration equations of the turbine-generator rotor and the generator electrical flux dynamics.

13.2.1 Rotor Mechanical Model

The acceleration equations are simply Newton's second law of motion applied to the rotating mass of the turbine-generator rotor, as shown in block diagram form in Fig. 13.2. The following points should be noted:

1. The inertia constant (H) represents the stored energy in the rotor in MW-seconds, normalized to the MVA rating of the generator. Typical values are in the range of 3 to 15, depending on the type and size of the turbine generator. If the inertia (J) of the rotor is given in kg-m/s, H is computed as follows:

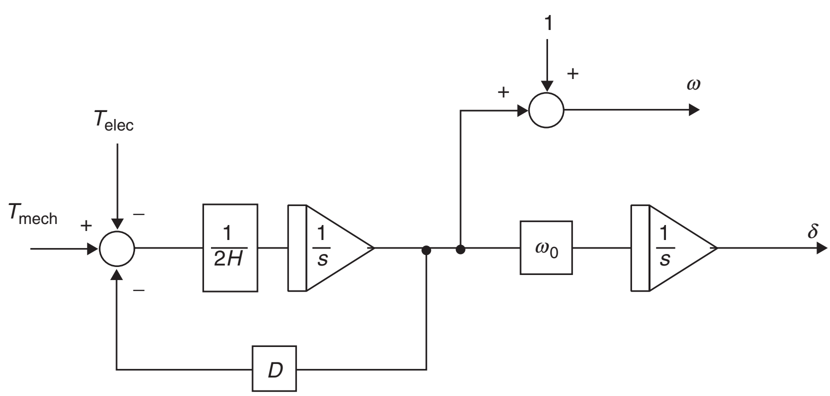


FIGURE 13.2 Generator rotor mechanical model.

$$H = 5.48 \times 10^{-9} \frac{J(\mathrm{RPM})^2}{\mathrm{MVA\ rating}} \mathrm{MW\text{-}s/MVA}$$

2. Sometimes, the mechanical power and electrical power are used in this model instead of the corresponding torques. Since power equals torque multiplied by rotor speed, the difference is small for operation close to nominal speed. However, there will be some effect on the damping of oscillations (IEEE Transactions, February 1999).
3. Most models include the damping factor (D), shown in Fig. 13.2. It is used to model oscillation damping effects that are not explicitly represented elsewhere in the system model. The selection of a value for this parameter has been the subject of much debate (IEEE Transactions, February 1999). Values from 0 to 4 or higher are sometimes used. The recommended practice is to avoid the use of this parameter by including sources of damping in other models, e.g., generator amortisseur and eddy current effects, load frequency sensitivity, etc.

13.2.2 Generator Electrical Model

The equivalent circuit of a three-phase synchronous generator is usually rendered as shown in Fig. 13.3. The three phases are transformed into a two-axis equivalent, with the direct (d) axis in phase with the rotor field winding and the quadrature (q) axis 90 electrical degrees ahead. For a more complete discussion of this transformation and of generator modeling, see IEEE Standard 1110-1991. In this equivalent circuit, r_a and L_l represent the resistance and leakage inductance of the generator stator, L_{ad} and L_{aq} represent the mutual inductance between stator and rotor, and the remaining elements represent rotor windings or equivalent windings. This equivalent circuit assumes that the mutual coupling between the rotor windings and between the rotor and stator windings is the same. Additional elements can be added (IEEE Standard 1110-1991) to account for unequal mutual coupling, but most models do not include this, since the data is difficult to obtain and the effect is small.

The rotor circuit elements may represent either physical windings on the rotor or eddy currents flowing in the rotor body. For solid-iron rotor generators, such as steam turbine generators, the field winding to which the DC excitation voltage is applied is normally the only physical winding. However, additional equivalent windings are required to represent the effects of eddy currents induced in the body

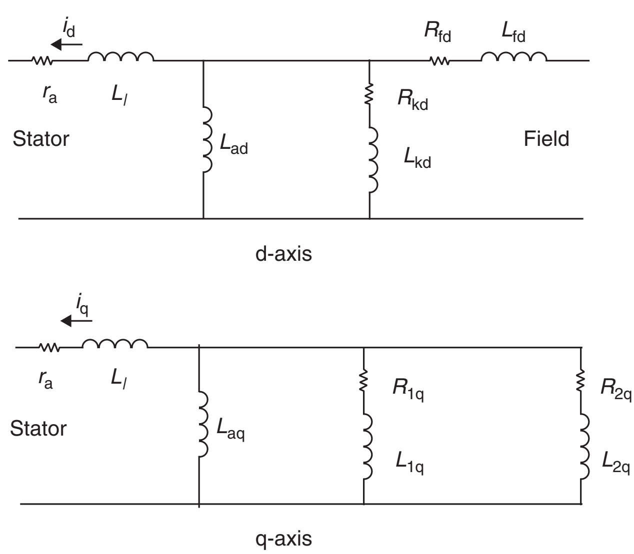


FIGURE 13.3 Generator equivalent circuit.

TABLE 13.1 Generator Parameter Relationships

	d-axis	q-axis
Synchronous inductance	$L_d = L_l + L_{ad}$	$L_q = L_l + L_{aq}$
Transient inductance	$L_d' = L_l + \dfrac{L_{ad}L_{fd}}{L_{ad} + L_{fd}}$	$L_q' = L_l + \dfrac{L_{aq}L_{lq}}{L_{aq} + L_{lq}}$
Subtransient inductance	$L_d'' = L_l + \dfrac{L_{ad}L_{fd}L_{kd}}{L_{ad}L_{fd} + L_{ad}L_{kd} + L_{fd}L_{kd}}$	$L_q'' = L_l + \dfrac{L_{aq}L_{lq}L_{2q}}{L_{aq}L_{1q} + L_{aq}L_{2q} + L_{1q}L_{2q}}$
Transient open circuit time constant	$T_{do}' = \dfrac{L_{ad} + L_{fd}}{\omega_0 R_{fd}}$	$T_{qo}' = \dfrac{L_{aq} + L_{1q}}{\omega_0 R_{1q}}$
Subtransient open circuit time constant	$T_{do}'' = \dfrac{L_{ad}L_{fd} + L_{ad}L_{kd} + L_{fd}L_{kd}}{\omega_0 R_{kd}(L_{ad} + L_{fd})}$	$T_{qo}'' = \dfrac{L_{aq}L_{1q} + L_{aq}L_{2q} + L_{1q}L_{2q}}{\omega_0 R_{2q}(L_{aq} + L_{1q})}$

of the rotor. Salient-pole generators, typically used for hydro-turbine generators, have laminated rotors with lower eddy currents. However, these rotors often have additional amortisseur (damper) windings embedded in the rotor.

Data for generator modeling is usually supplied as synchronous, transient, and subtransient inductances and open circuit time constants. The relationships between these parameters and the equivalent network elements are shown in Table 13.1. Note that the inductance values are often referred to as reactances. At nominal frequency, the per unit inductance and reactance values are the same. However, as used in the generator model, they are really inductances, which do not change with changing frequency.

These parameters are normally supplied by the manufacturer. Two values are often given for some of the inductance values, a saturated (rated voltage) and unsaturated (rated current) value. The unsaturated values should be used, since saturation is usually accounted for separately, as discussed below.

For salient-pole generators, one or more of the time constants and inductances may be absent from the data, since fewer equivalent circuits are required. Depending on the program, either separate models are provided for this case or the same model is used with certain parameters set to zero or equal to each other.

13.2.3 Saturation Modeling

Magnetic saturation effects may be incorporated into the generator electrical model in various ways. The data required from the manufacturer is the open circuit saturation curve, showing generator terminal voltage vs. field current. If the field current is given in amperes, it can be converted to per unit by dividing by the field current at rated terminal voltage on the air gap (no saturation) line. (This value of field current is sometimes referred to as AFAG or IFAG.) Often the saturation data for a generator model is input as only two points on the saturation curve, e.g., at rated voltage and 120% of rated voltage. The model then automatically fits a curve to these points.

The open circuit saturation curve characterizes saturation in the d-axis only. Ideally, saturation of the q-axis should also be represented, but the data for this is difficult to determine and is usually not provided. Some models provide an approximate representation of q-axis saturation based on the d-axis saturation data (IEEE Standard 1110-1991).

13.3 Excitation System Modeling

The excitation system provides the DC voltage to the field winding of the generator and modulates this voltage for control purposes. There are many different configurations and designs of excitation systems.

Stability programs usually include a variety of models capable of representing most systems. These models normally include the IEEE standard excitation system models, described in IEEE Standard 421.5 (1992). Reference should be made to that document for a description of the various models and typical data for commonly used excitation system designs. This standard is periodically updated to include new excitation system designs.

The excitation system consists of several subsystems, as shown in Fig. 13.4. The excitation power source provides the DC voltage and current at the levels required by the generator field. The excitation power may be provided by a rotating exciter, either a DC generator or an AC generator (alternator) and rectifier combination, or by controlled rectifiers supplied from the generator terminals (or other AC source). Excitation systems with these power sources are often classified as “DC,” “AC,” and “static,” respectively. The maximum (ceiling) field voltage available from the excitation power source is an important parameter. Depending on the type of system, this ceiling voltage may be affected by the magnitude of the field current or the generator terminal voltage, and this dependency must be modeled since these values may change significantly during a disturbance.

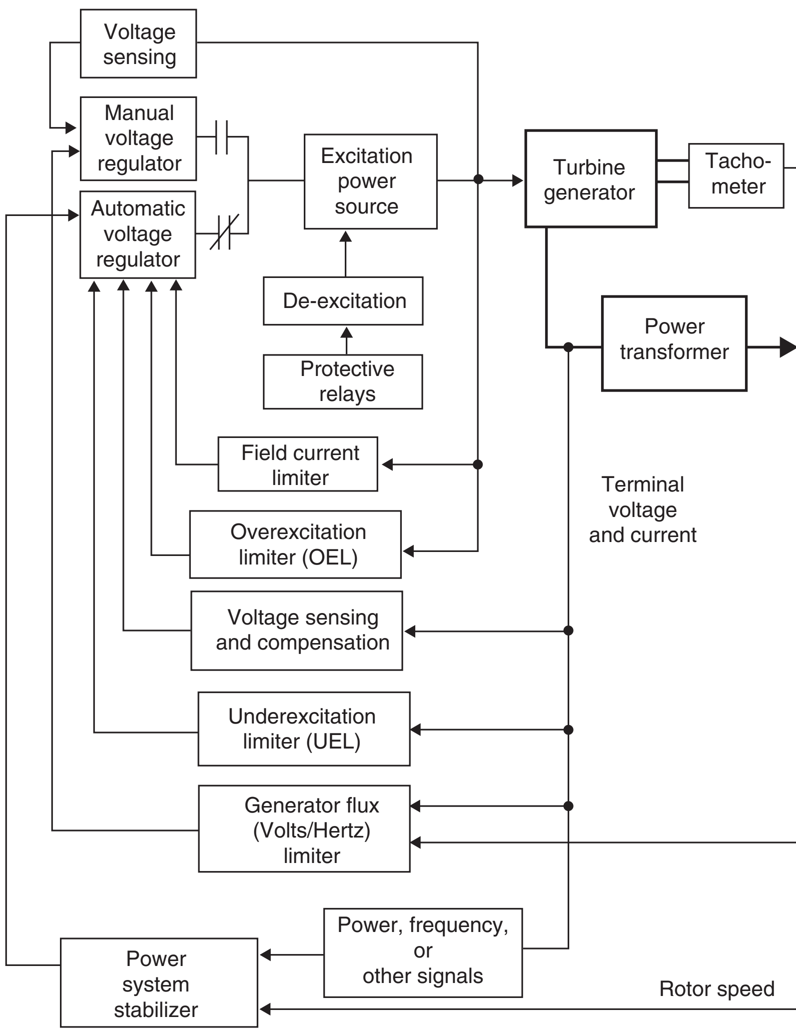


FIGURE 13.4 Excitation system model structure.

The automatic voltage regulator (AVR) provides for control of the terminal voltage of the generator by changing the generator field voltage. There are a variety of designs for the AVR, including various means of ensuring stable response to transient changes in terminal voltage. The speed with which the field voltage can be changed is an important characteristic of the system. For the DC and most of the AC excitation systems, the AVR controls the field of the exciter. Therefore, the speed of response is limited by the exciter's time constant. The speed of response of excitation systems is characterized according to IEEE Standard 421.2 (1990).

A power system stabilizer (PSS) is frequently, but not always, included in an excitation system. It is designed to modulate the AVR input in such a manner as to contribute damping to intermachine oscillations. The input to the PSS may be generator rotor speed, electrical power, or other signals. The PSS usually is designed with linear transfer functions whose parameters are tuned to produce positive damping for the range of oscillation frequencies of concern. It is important that reasonably correct values be used for these parameters. The output of the PSS is limited, usually to $\pm 5\%$ of rated generator terminal voltage, and this limit value must be included in the model.

The excitation system includes several other subsystems designed to protect the generator and excitation system from excessive duty under abnormal operating conditions. Normally, these limiters and protective modules do not come into play for analysis of transient and oscillatory stability. However, for longer-term simulations, particularly related to voltage instability, overexcitation limiters (OEL) and underexcitation limiters (UEL) may need to be modeled. While there are many designs for these limiters, typical systems are described in IEEE Transactions (December and September, 1995).

13.4 Prime Mover Modeling

The system that drives the generator rotor is often referred to as the prime mover. The prime mover system includes the turbine (or other engine) driving the shaft, the speed control system, and the energy supply system for the turbine. The following are the most common prime mover systems:

- Steam turbine
- Fossil fuel (coal, gas, or oil) boiler
- Nuclear reactor
- Hydro turbine
- Combustion turbine (gas turbine)
- Combined cycle (gas turbine and steam turbine)
- Wind turbine

Other less common and generally smaller prime movers include geothermal steam turbine, solar thermal steam turbine, and diesel engine.

For analysis of transient and oscillatory stability, greatly simplified models of the prime mover are sufficient since, with some exceptions, the response times of the prime movers to system disturbances are slow compared with the time duration of interest, typically 10 to 20 s or less. For simple transient stability analysis of only a few seconds duration, the prime mover model may be omitted altogether by assuming that the mechanical power output of the turbine remains constant. An exception is for a steam-turbine system equipped with "fast valving" or "early valve actuation" (EVA). These systems are designed to reduce turbine power output rapidly for nearby faults by quickly closing the intercept valves between the high-pressure and low-pressure turbine sections (Younkins et al., 1987).

For analysis of disturbances involving significant frequency excursions, the turbine and speed control (governor) systems must be modeled. Simplified models for steam and hydro-turbine-governor systems are given in IEEE Transactions (December 1973; February 1992) and these models are available in most stability programs. Models for gas turbines and combined cycle plants are less standard, but typical models have been described in several references (Rowan, 1983; Hannett and Khan, 1993; IEEE Transactions, August 1994).

For long-term simulations involving system islanding and large frequency excursions, more detailed modeling of the energy supply systems may be necessary. There are a great many configurations and designs for these systems. Models for typical systems have been published (IEEE Transactiosn, May 1991). However, detailed modeling is often less important than incorporating key factors that affect the plant response, such as whether the governor is in service and where the output limits are set.

For a fossil fuel steam plant, the coordination between the speed control and steam pressure control systems has an important impact on the speed with which the plant will respond to frequency excursions. If the governor directly controls the turbine valves (boiler-follow mode), the power output of the plant will respond quite rapidly, but may not be sustained due to reduction in steam pressure. If the governor controls fuel input to the boiler (turbine-follow mode), the response will be much slower but can be sustained. Modern coordinated controls will result in an intermediate response to these two extremes. The plant response will also be slowed by the use of "sliding pressure" control, in which valves are kept wide open and power output is adjusted by changing the steam pressure.

Hydro plants can respond quite rapidly to frequency changes if the governors are active. Some reduction in transient governor response is often required to avoid instability due to the "nonminimum phase" response characteristic of hydro turbines, which causes the initial response of power output to be in the opposite of the expected direction. This characteristic can be modeled approximately by the simple transfer function: $(1 - sT_w)/(1 + sT_w/2)$. The parameter T_w is called the water starting time and is a function of the length of the penstock and other physical dimensions. For high-head hydro plants with long penstocks and surge tanks, more detailed models of the hydraulic system may be necessary.

Gas (combustion) turbines can be controlled very rapidly, but are often operated at maximum output (base load), as determined by the exhaust temperature control system, in which case they cannot respond in the upward direction. However, if operated below base load, they may be able to provide output in excess of the base load value for a short period following a disturbance, until the exhaust temperature increases to its limit. Typical models for gas turbines and their controls are found in Rowan (1983) and IEEE Transactions (February 1993).

Combined cycle plants come in a great variety of configurations, which makes representation by a typical model difficult (IEEE Transactions, 1994). The steam turbine is supplied from a heat recovery steam generator (HRSG). Steam is generated by the exhaust from the gas turbines, sometimes with supplementary firing. Often the power output of the steam turbine is not directly controlled by the governor, but simply follows the changes in gas turbine output as the exhaust heat changes. Since the time constants of the HRSG are very long (several minutes), the output of the steam turbine can be considered constant for most studies.

13.4.1 Wind Turbine-Generator Systems

As large clusters of wind turbine generators (WTGs) become more widely installed on power systems, they must be included in system dynamic performance studies. This requires special modeling because the generation technologies used for WTGs differ significantly from the directly connected synchronous generators that are universally used for all of the other types of generation discussed above. There are four principal generation technologies in use for WTGs:

- Induction generator—a "squirrel-cage" induction machine operating at essentially constant speed as determined by the power available in the wind.
- Induction generator with controlled field resistance—a wound-rotor induction machine with external rotor resistance controlled electronically to permit some variation, e.g., $\pm 10\%$, in rotor speed.
- Doubly-fed asynchronous generator—a wound-rotor induction machine with its three-phase field voltage supplied by a power electronic converter connected to the machine terminals. The field voltage magnitude and frequency are controlled to regulate terminal voltage and to vary the machine speed over a wide, e.g., $\pm 30\%$, range.

- Full converter system—a generator connected to the system through a power electronic converter. The generator speed is decoupled from system frequency and can be controlled as desired, while the converter is used to regulate voltage and supply reactive power.

Computational models have been developed for each of these technologies, plus the electrical controls required by the latter three (Kazachkov et al., 2003; Koessler et al., 2003; Miller et al., 2003; Pourbeik et al., 2003). Most large WTGs also have blade pitch control systems that regulate shaft speed in response to wind fluctuations and electrical system disturbances. Several industry groups are working toward the development of standard models for each of these technologies.

For most studies, it is not necessary to represent the individual WTGs in a wind farm (cluster, park). One or a few aggregate machines can be used to represent the wind farm by the following procedures:

1. Aggregate WTG model same as individual but with MVA rating equal n times individual WTG rating
2. Aggregate generator step-up transformer same as individual but with MVA rating equal to n times individual transformer rating
3. Interconnection substation modeled as is
4. Aggregate collector system modeled as a single line with charging capacitance equal to total of the individual collector lines/cables and with series R and X adjusted to give approximately the same P and Q output at the interconnection substation at rated WTG output as the full system

13.5 Load Modeling

For dynamic performance analysis, the transient and steady-state variation of the load P and Q with changes in bus voltage and frequency must be modeled. Accurate load modeling is difficult due to the complex and changing nature of the load and the difficulty in obtaining accurate data on its characteristics. Therefore, sensitivity studies are recommended to determine the impact of the load characteristics on the study results of interest. This will help to guide the selection of a conservative load model or focus attention on where load modeling improvements should be sought.

For most power system analysis purposes, "load" refers to the real and reactive power supplied to lower voltage subtransmission or distribution systems at buses represented in the network model. In addition to the variety of actual load devices connected to the system, the "load" includes the intervening distribution feeders, transformers, shunt capacitors, etc., and may include voltage control devices, including automatic tap-changing transformers, induction voltage regulators, automatically switched capacitors, etc.

For transient and oscillatory stability analysis, several levels of detail can be used, depending on the availability of information and the sensitivity of the results to the load modeling detail. IEEE Transactions (May 1993 and August 1995) discuss recommended load modeling procedures. A brief discussion is given below:

1. *Static load model*—The simplest model is to represent the active and reactive load components at each bus by a combination of constant impedance, constant current, and constant power components, with a simple frequency sensitivity factor, as shown in the following formula:

$$P = P_0\left[P_1\left(\frac{V}{V_0}\right)^2 + P_2\left(\frac{V}{V_0}\right) + P_3\right](1 + L_{DP}\Delta f)$$

$$Q = Q_0\left[Q_1\left(\frac{V}{V_0}\right)^2 + Q_2\left(\frac{V}{V_0}\right) + Q_3\right](1 + L_{DP}\Delta f)$$

   If nothing is known about the characteristics of the load, it is recommended that constant current be used for the real power and constant impedance for the reactive power, with frequency factors of 1 and 2, respectively. This is based on the assumption that typical loads are about equally divided between motor loads and resistive (heating) loads.

Most stability programs provide for this type of load model, often called a ZIP model. Sometimes an exponential function of voltage is used instead of the three separate voltage terms. An exponent of 0 corresponds to constant power, 1 to constant current, and 2 to constant impedance. Intermediate values or larger values can be used if available data so indicates. The following, more general model, permitting greater modeling flexibility, is recommended in IEEE Transactions (August 1995):

$$P = P_0\left[K_{\mathrm{PZ}}\left(\frac{V}{V_0}\right)^2 + K_{\mathrm{PI}}\left(\frac{V}{V_0}\right) + K_{\mathrm{PC}} + K_{\mathrm{PI}}\left(\frac{V}{V_0}\right)^{\mathrm{npV1}}\left(1 + n_{\mathrm{PF1}}\Delta f\right) + K_{\mathrm{P2}}\left(\frac{V}{V_0}\right)^{\mathrm{npV2}}\left(1 + n_{\mathrm{PF2}}\Delta f\right)\right]$$

$$Q = Q_0\left[K_{\mathrm{QZ}}\left(\frac{V}{V_0}\right)^2 + K_{\mathrm{QI}}\left(\frac{V}{V_0}\right) + K_{\mathrm{QC}} + K_{\mathrm{QI}}\left(\frac{V}{V_0}\right)^{\mathrm{nQV1}}\left(1 + n_{\mathrm{QF1}}\Delta f\right) + K_{\mathrm{Q2}}\left(\frac{V}{V_0}\right)^{\mathrm{nQV2}}\left(1 + n_{\mathrm{QF2}}\Delta f\right)\right]$$

2. *Induction motor dynamic model*—For loads subjected to large fluctuations in voltage and/or frequency, the dynamic characteristics of the motor loads become important. Induction motor models are usually available in stability programs. Except in the case of studies of large motors in an industrial plant, individual motors are not represented. But one or two motor models representing the aggregation of all of the motors supplied from a bus can be used to give the approximate effect of the motor dynamics (Nozari et al., 1987). Typical motor data is given in the General Electric Company Load Modeling Reference Manual (1987). For analysis of voltage instability and other low voltage conditions, motor load modeling must include the effects of motor stalling and low-voltage tripping by protective devices.
3. *Detailed load model*—For particular studies, more accurate modeling of certain loads may be necessary. This may include representation of the approximate average feeder and transformer impedance as a series element between the network bus and the bus where the load models are connected. For long-term analysis, the automatic adjustment of transformer taps may be represented by simplified models. Several load components with different characteristics may be connected to the load bus to represent the composition of the load.

Load modeling data can be acquired in several ways, none of which are entirely satisfactory, but contribute to the knowledge of the load characteristics:

1. *Staged testing of load feeders*—Measurements can be made of changes in real and reactive power on distribution feeders when intentional changes are made in the voltage at the feeder, e.g., by changing transformer taps or switching a shunt capacitor. The latter has the advantage of providing an abrupt change that may provide some information on the dynamic response of the load as well as the steady-state characteristics. This approach has limitations in that only a small range of voltage can be applied, and the results are only valid for the conditions (time of day, season, temperature, etc.) when the tests were conducted. This type of test is most useful to verify a load model determined by other means.
2. *System disturbance monitoring*—Measurements can be made of power, voltage, and frequency at various points in the system during system disturbances, which may produce larger voltage (and possibly frequency) changes than can be achieved during staged testing. This requires installation and maintenance of monitors throughout the system, but this is becoming common practice on many systems for other purposes. Again, the data obtained will only be valid for the conditions at the time of the disturbance, but over time many data points can be collected and correlated.
3. *Composition-based modeling*—Load models can also be developed by obtaining information on the composition of the load in particular areas of the system. Residential, commercial, and various types of industrial loads are composed of various proportions of specific load devices.

The characteristics of the specific devices are generally well known (General Electric Company, 1987). The mix of devices can be determined from load surveys, customer SIC classifications, and typical compositions of different types of loads (General Electric Company, 1987).

13.6 Transmission Device Models

For the most part, the elements of the transmission system, including overhead lines, underground cables, and transformers, can be represented by the same algebraic models used for steady-state (power flow) analysis. Lines and cables are normally represented by a pi-equivalent with lumped values for the series resistance and inductance and the shunt capacitance. Transformers are normally represented by their leakage inductance, resistance, and tap ratio. Transformer magnetizing inductance and eddy current (no-load) losses are sometimes included.

Other transmission devices that require special modeling include high-voltage direct current (HVDC) systems (Kundur, 1994) and power electronic (PE) devices. The latter includes static VAr compensators (SVC) (IEEE Transactions, February 1994) and a number of newer devices (TCSC, STATCON, UPFC, etc.) under the general heading of flexible AC transmission systems (FACTS) devices. Many of these devices have modulation controls designed to improve the stability performance of the power system. It is therefore important that these devices and their controls be accurately modeled. Due to the developmental nature of many of these technologies and specialized designs that are implemented, the modeling usually must be customized to the particular device.

13.7 Dynamic Equivalents

It is often not feasible or necessary to include the entire interconnected power system in the model being used for a dynamic performance study. A certain portion of the system that is the focus of the study, the "study system," is represented in detail. The remainder of the system, the "external system," is represented by a simplified model that is called a dynamic equivalent. The requirements for the equivalent depend on the objective of the study and the characteristics of the system. Several types of equivalents are discussed below:

1. *Infinite bus*—If the external system is very large and stiff, compared with the study system, it may be adequate to represent it by an infinite bus, that is, a generator with very large inertia and very small impedance. This is often done for studies of industrial plant power systems or distribution systems that are connected to higher voltage transmission systems.
2. *Lumped inertia equivalent*—If the external system is not infinite with respect to the study system but is connected at a single point to the study system, a simple equivalent consisting of a single equivalent generator model may be used. The inertia of the generator is set approximately equal to the total inertia of all of the generators in the external area. The internal impedance of the equivalent generator should be set equal to the short-circuit (driving point) impedance of the external system viewed from the boundary bus.
3. *Coherent machine equivalent*—For more complex systems, especially when interarea oscillations are of interest, some form of coherent machine equivalent should be used. In this case, groups of generators in the external system are combined into single lumped inertia equivalents if these groups oscillate together for interarea modes of oscillation. Determination of such equivalents requires specialized calculations for which software is available (Price et al., 1996, 1998).

References

Damping representation for power system stability analysis, *IEEE Transactions*, PWRS-14, February 1999, 151–157.

Dynamic models for combined cycle plants in power systems, *IEEE Transactions*, PWRS-9, August 1994, 1698–1708.

Dynamic models for fossil fueled steam units in power system studies, *IEEE Transactions*, PWRS-6, May 1991, 753–761.

Dynamic models for steam and hydro turbines in power system studies, *IEEE Transactions*, PAS-92, December 1973, 1904–1915.

General Electric Company, Load Modeling for Power Flow and Transient Stability Computer Studies—Load Modeling Reference Manual, EPRI Final Report EL-5003, 2, January 1987.

Hannett, L.N. and Khan, A., Combustion turbine dynamic model validation from tests, *IEEE Transactions*, PWRS-8, February 1993, 152–158.

Hydraulic turbine and turbine control models for system dynamic studies, *IEEE Transactions*, PWRS-7, February 1992, 167–179.

IEEE Standard 1110-1991, IEEE guide for synchronous generator modeling practices in stability analysis, 1991.

IEEE Standard 421.2-1990, IEEE guide for identification, testing, and evaluation of the dynamic performance of excitation control systems, 1990.

IEEE Standard 421.5-1992, IEEE recommended practice for excitation system models for power system stability studies, 1992.

Kazachkov, Y.A., Feltes, J.W., Zavadil, R., Modeling wind farms for power system stability studies, Proceedings of the Power Engineering Society General Meeting, Toronto, Ontario, IEEE Publications 0-7803-7989-6/03, July 2003.

Koessler, R.J., Pillutla, S., Trinh, L.H., Dickmander, D.L., Integration of large wind farms into utility grids, Part I, Proceedings of the Power Engineering Society General Meeting, Toronto, Ontario, IEEE Publication 0-7803-7989-6/03, July 2003.

Kundur, P., *Power System Stability and Control*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1994.

Kundur, P., *Power System Stability and Control*, Section 10.9, Modelling of HVDC systems, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1994.

Load representation for dynamic performance analysis, *IEEE Transactions*, PWRS-8, May 1993, 472–482.

Miller, N.W., Sanchez-Gasca, J.J., Price, W.W., Delmerico, R.W., Dynamic modeling of GE 1.5 and 3.6 MW wind turbine-generators for stability simulations, Proceedings of the Power Engineering Society General Meeting, Toronto, Ontario, IEEE Publications 0-7803-7989-6/03, July 2003.

Nozari, F., Kankam, M.D., Price, W.W., Aggregation of induction motors for transient stability load modeling, *IEEE Transactions*, PWRS-2, November 1987, 1096–1103.

Pourbeik, P., Koessler, R.J., Dickmander, D.L., Wong, W., Integration of large wind farms into utility grids, Part 2, Proceedings of the Power Engineering Society General Meeting, Toronto, Ontario, IEEE Publications 0-7803-7989-6/03, July 2003.

Price, W.W., Hargrave, A.W., Hurysz, B.J., Chow, J.H., Hirsch, P.M., Large-scale system testing of a power system dynamic equivalencing program, *IEEE Transactions,* PWRS-13, August 1998, 768–774.

Price, W.W., Hurysz, B.J., Chow, J.H., Hargrave, A.W., Advances in power system dynamic equivalencing, Proceedings of the Fifth Symposium of Specialists in Electric Operational and Expansion Planning (V SEPOPE), Recife, Brazil, May 1996, 155–169.

Recommended models for overexcitation limiting devices, *IEEE Transactions*, EC-10, December 1995, 706–713.

Rowan, W.I., Simplified mathematical representations of heavy-duty gas turbines, *ASME Transactions* (*Journal of Engineering for Power*), 105(1), October 1983, 865–869.

Standard load models for power flow and dynamic performance simulation, *IEEE Transactions*, PWRS-10, August 1995,

Static Var compensator models for power flow and dynamic performance simulation, *IEEE Transactions*, PWRS-9, February 1994, 229–240.

Underexcitation limiter models for power system stability studies, *IEEE Transactions*, EC-10, September 1995, 524–531.

Younkins, T.D., Kure-Jensen, J., et al., Fast valving with reheat and straight condensing steam turbines, *IEEE Transactions,* PWRS-2, May 1987, 397–404.

14

Integrated Dynamic Information for the Western Power System: WAMS Analysis in 2005

John F. Hauer
Pacific Northwest National Laboratory

William A. Mittelstadt
Bonneville Power Administration

Ken E. Martin
Bonneville Power Administration

Jim W. Burns
Bonneville Power Administration

Harry Lee
British Columbia Hydro & Power Authority

14.1 Preface

This chapter deals with the direct analysis of power system dynamic performance. By "direct" we mean that the analysis is performed on the physical system, and that any use of system models is secondary. Many of the tools and procedures are as applicable to simulated response as to measured response, however. Comparison of the results thus obtained is strongly recommended as a means to test model validity, and to determine the realism of model studies.

The resources needed for direct analysis of a large power system represent significant investments in measurement systems, mathematical tools, and staff expertise. New market forces in the electricity industry require that the "value engineering" of such investments be considered very carefully. Many guidelines for this can be found in collective utility experience of the Western Electricity Coordinating Council (WECC), in the western interconnection of the North America power system. Much of this is encapsulated in the WECC plan for compliance with monitoring requirements established by the North American Electric Reliability Council (NERC) [1]. The WECC monitors all aspects of system performance, not just system disturbances.

WECC compliance with NERC monitoring requirements is based on a general wide area measurement system (WECC WAMS). Figure 14.1 is provided as a guide to the associated geography, and to key interactions that govern wide area dynamics there. The WECC WAMS is both a distributed measurement system and a general infrastructure for dynamic information that conventional supervision control and data acquisition (SCADA) technologies cannot resolve. In addition to measurement facilities, the WAMS infrastructure also includes staff, procedures, and practices that are essential to effective use of WAMS data.

General reports concerning direct measurement and analysis of WECC system performance are usually available from Internet Web sites such as ftp://ftp.bpa.gov/pub/WAMS_Information/ or from WECC staff. This and related Web sites are routinely used for off-line exchange of data, working documents, and software associated with WAMS operation.

14.2 Examples of Dynamic Information Needs in the Western Interconnection

The WECC WAMS is a collective response to shared information needs in the western interconnection. Examples below show what sort of information is needed and why.

14.2.1 Damping Control with the Pacific HVDC Intertie

In 1976 the Bonneville Power Administration (BPA) installed a modulation system at the Celilo terminal of the Pacific HVDC Intertie (PDCI), for the purpose of damping intermittent oscillations on the Pacific AC Intertie (PACI). This is now called the California–Oregon Interconnection (COI) [2]. The Celilo Damper, in its final form, had a peak-to-peak modulation capability of 280 MW plus very strong leverage over at least four interarea modes below 1.0 Hz. The most important of these was the north–south mode between Canada and California–Arizona, often called the PACI mode.

The Celilo Damper influenced every generator in the western system, significantly, and in ways that were not always predictable or beneficial. The associated problems, trade-offs, and strategic issues carry over directly to the EPRI flexible AC transmission system (FACTS), and to any similar effort using wide area control to extend transmission capabilities [3,4].

Operating experience with the Celilo Damper underscored information needs that had not been fully appreciated. The PDCI itself is very complex, and the fast response normal to HVDC control provides a broadband interaction path for dynamic processes in the even more complex AC system (Fig. 14.2). It was soon found that AC/DC interactions exhibited behavior that could not be explained with existing models or with existing measurement facilities, and that some of the measurements themselves were

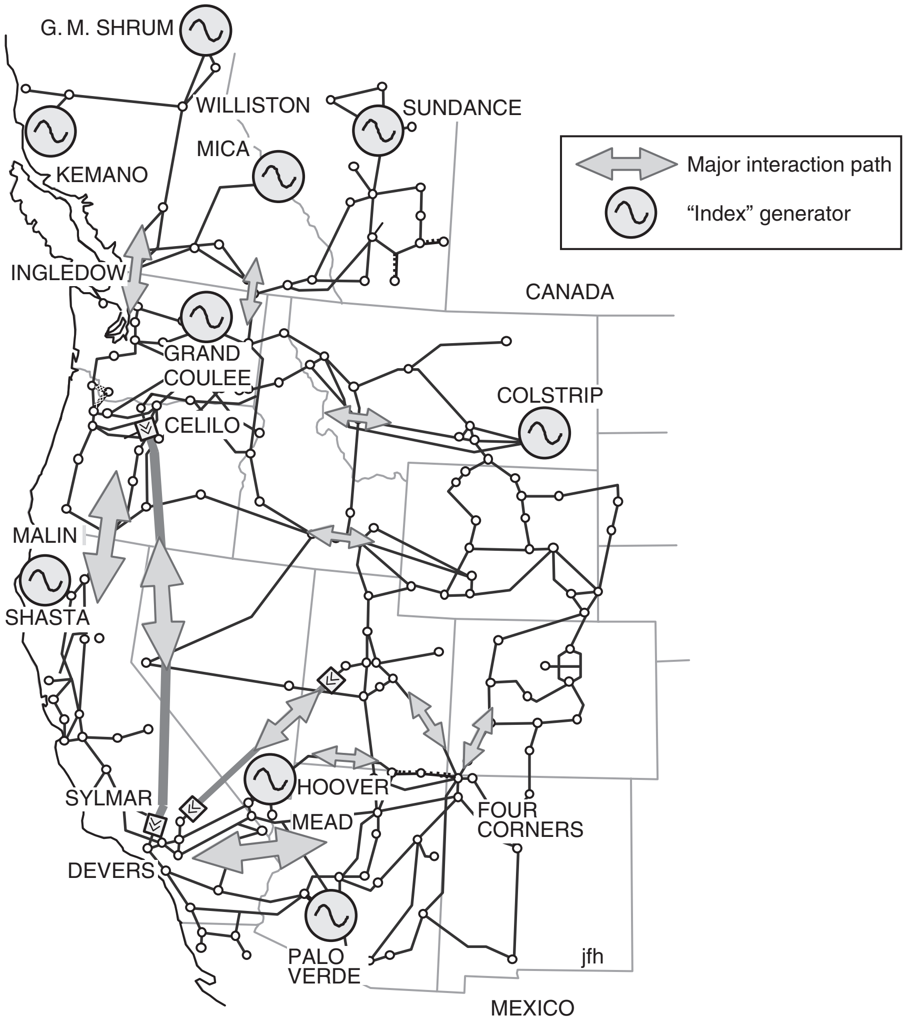


FIGURE 14.1 Key location and interactions in the western interconnection.

suspect [5]. The western utilities then undertook a broad upgrade of both measurements and models, in what became known as the WAMS effort. Early reports on this are provided in Refs. [6,7].

Various findings specific to large-scale stability controls are detailed in Ref. [4], Chapter 8, which deals with the field engineering of large-scale controllers. Chief among these is the conclusion that a damping controller which addresses global objectives needs a reliable source of global information. Requiring that all modulation signals be local can make controller siting a difficult robustness issue. There are many aspects of the controller environment which cannot be predicted from model studies, and which may not be measurable until the controller itself is available to probe system dynamics. Providing the controller (and the control engineer) with an ample reserve of directly measured dynamic information considerably enhances the options for project success.

14.2.2 Threat of 0.7 Hz Oscillations

Starting somewhere near 1985, WSCC model studies gave strong warnings of possible oscillations near 0.7 Hz. These were predicted for certain disturbances under stressed network conditions, such as loss of

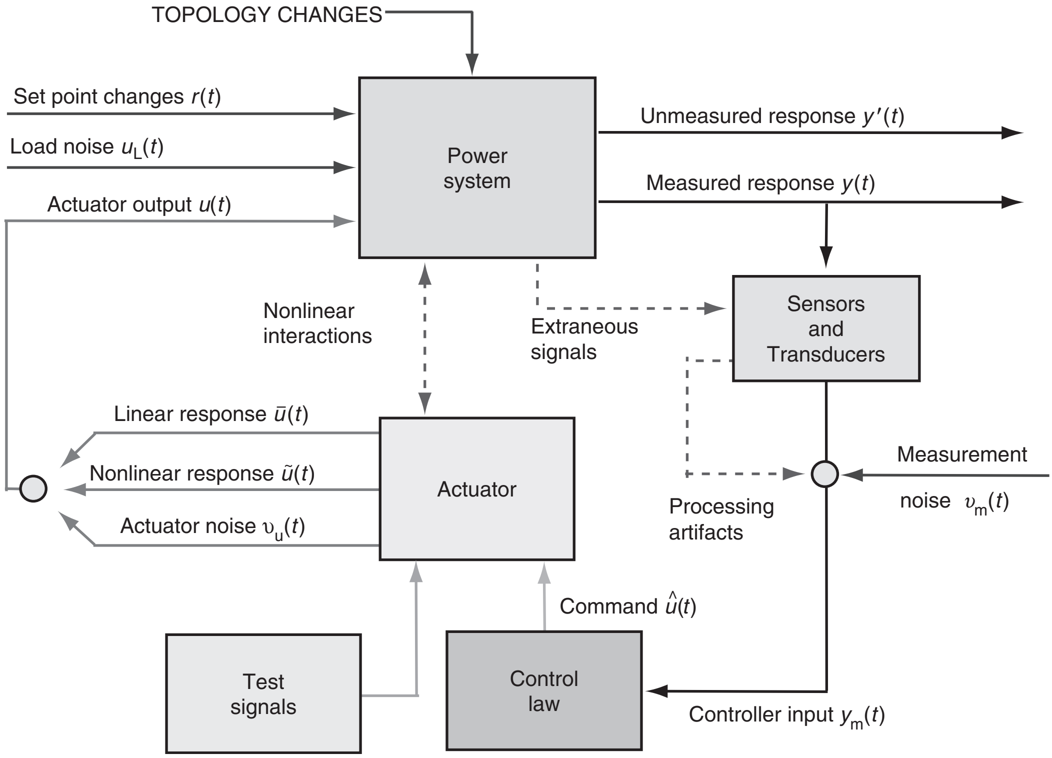


FIGURE 14.2 Operating environment for wide area damping control.

the PDCI. This perceived threat curtailed power transfers on the Arizona–California energy corridor, and it adversely impacted WSCC operation in a number of other ways as well. This enigmatic mode also inspired several damping control projects to mitigate it, and it produced a vast literature on the subject. These same model studies also had a strong tendency to understate the threat of north–south oscillations between Canada and California.

Oscillations near 0.7 Hz had been observed under ambient oscillations and, for the most part, were in the category of controller mischief. The only serious incident is shown in Fig. 14.3. The immediate problem was traced to a controller associated with the Intermountain Power Project (IPP) HVDC line, and it was promptly corrected. The controller bandwidth, about 1 Hz, was modest but still excessive in light of controller objectives and the uncertainties surrounding its dynamic effects.

The incident also illustrates several broader issues. One is that the engineering of a major control system often requires signals and support from neighboring utilities. Another is that transient oscillations present some formidable challenges to the control community.

Unlike oscillations that develop spontaneously under ambient conditions, transient oscillations may be large and violent at the onset. They may also be accompanied by abrupt changes in system topology and dynamics. Addressing the problem through large-scale transient damping controllers incurs the risk of what might be termed "The Star Wars Dilemma." This calls for a very expensive control system that cannot be adequately tested in the field, but that must successfully perform a very-high-priority mission the first time it is needed. It also calls for good models and a "smart" controller [3].

The WSCC formed special work groups to address these issues. Results such as the model validation test are shown in Fig. 14.4 established that 0.7 Hz oscillations were largely a modeling artifact, and means to correct this were identified [6–8]. In the summer of 1996 model studies involving the north–south mode remained much too optimistic.

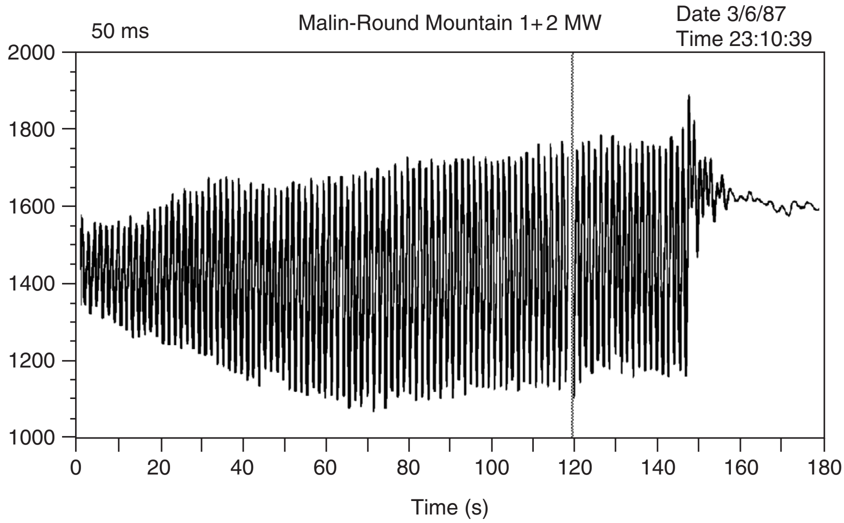


FIGURE 14.3 0.7 Hz oscillations on March 6, 1987.

14.2.3 WSCC Breakup of August 10, 1996

Some grid managers, chiefly independent system operators (ISOs) and electrical utilities engaged in long distance transmission, are developing substantial measurement facilities. The critical path challenge is to extract essential information from the data, and to distribute the pertinent information where and when it is needed. Otherwise system control centers will be progressively inundated by potentially valuable data that they are not yet able to fully utilize.

These issues were brought into sharp and specific focus by the massive breakup experienced by the western interconnection on August 10, 1996. The mechanism of failure (though perhaps not the cause)

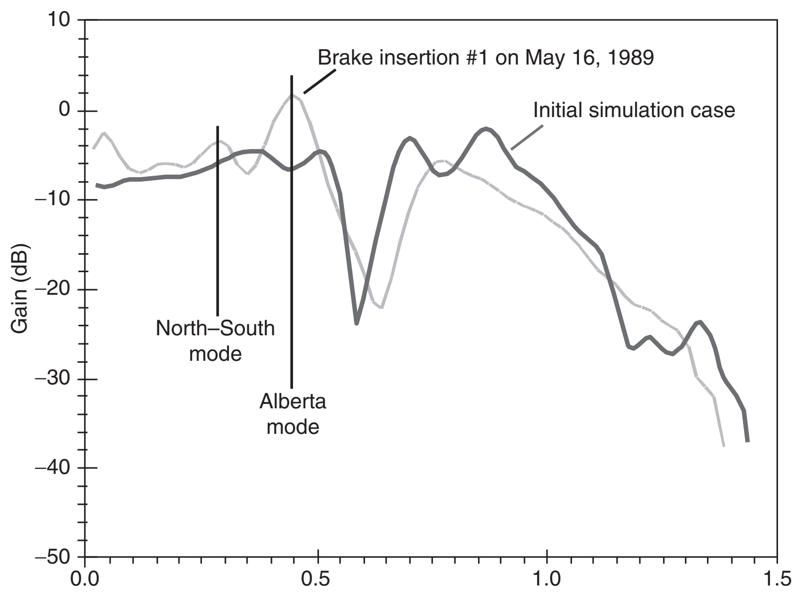


FIGURE 14.4 Model vs. actual response of AC Intertie power to Chief Joseph brake power on May 16, 1989.

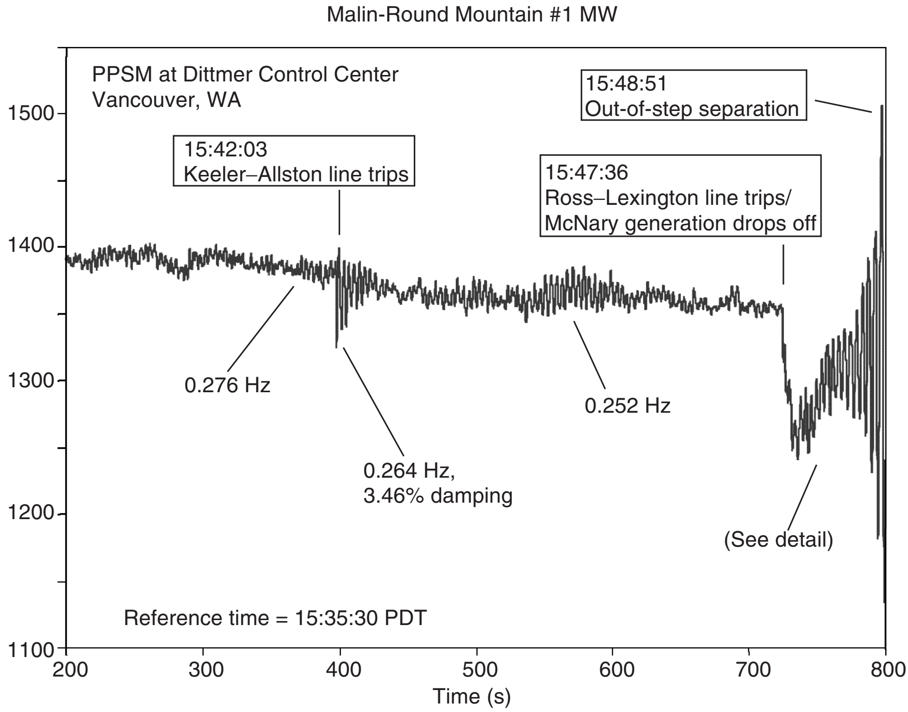


FIGURE 14.5 Oscillation buildup for the WSCC breakup of August 10, 1996.

was a transient oscillation, under conditions of high power transfer on long paths that had been progressively weakened through a series of seemingly routine transmission line outages.

Buried within the measurements at hand lay the information that system behavior was abnormal, and that the system itself was vulnerable. Later analysis of monitor records, as in Figs. 14.5 and 14.6, provides many indications of potential oscillation problems (see Ref. [9] and Section 14.15.1). Verbal accounts also suggest that less direct indications of a weakened system were observed by system operators for some hours, but that there had been no means for interpreting them. The final minutes before breakup represented a situation that had not been anticipated, and for which no operational procedures had been developed.

This event was a warning that utility restructuring, through several mechanisms, was making it impossible to predict system vulnerabilities as accurately or as promptly as the increasingly volatile market demands. It is likely that standard planning models could not have predicted the August 10 breakup, even if the conditions leading up to it had been known in full detail [7,11]. This situation has deep roots and many ramifications [10–13].

An interim solution is to reinforce capabilities for predicting system vulnerability with the capability to detect and recognize its symptoms as evidenced in dynamic measurements. Much of the technology and infrastructure that this requires are being developed as extensions of the DOE/EPRI WAMS Project and related efforts [14–17].

14.3 Needs for "Situational Awareness": US–Canada Blackout of August 14, 2003

US–Canada Blackout on August 14, 2003 was immediately notable for its extent, complexity, and impact. Among many other actions, the event triggered a massive effort to secure and integrate regional

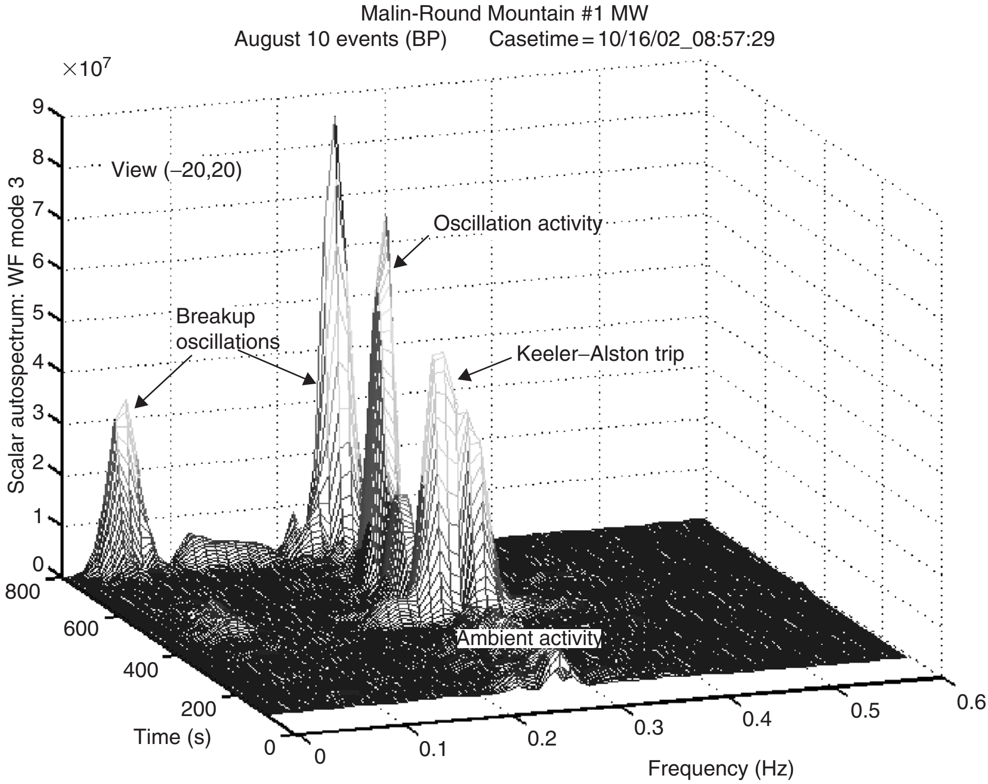


FIGURE 14.6 Oscillation spectra for the WSCC breakup of August 10, 1996.

operating records. Much of this was done at the NERC level, through the US–Canada Power System Outage Task Force [18,19].

Additional background information concerning the event was gathered together by a group of utilities that, collectively, had been developing a WAMS for the eastern interconnection [20]. Like the WECC WAMS in the western interconnection, "WAMS East" had a primary backbone of synchronized phasor measurement units (PMUs) that continuously stream data to phasor data concentrators (PDCs) at central locations for integration, recording, and further distribution. Both WAMSs also employ portable power system monitor (PPSM) units as a secondary backbone, to continuously record analog transducer signals on a local basis [14].

WAMS data collected on August 14 provide a rich cross section of interarea dynamics for the eastern interconnection. Much of this information is imbedded in small ambient interactions, and is readily apparent to spectral analysis. Figure 14.7, for bus frequency fluctuations at the American Electric Power (AEP) Company Kanawha River substation, is typical of data that were collected as far away as Entergy's Waterford substation near New Orleans, Louisiana.

Frequency of the spectral peaks shows a general downward trend, plus sharp discontinuities that are associated with system events. This behavior suggests that the "swing frequencies" associated with interarea modes were declining through increasing stress and network failures on the power system [21]. Though oscillation problems were not a significant factor in the August 14 Blackout, oscillation signatures such as those in Fig. 14.7 provide readily available information that can be factored into "situational awareness" for real-time operation of the overall grid.

The August 14 Blackout provided considerable stimulus to the preexisting Eastern Interconnection Phasor Project (EIPP) [22]. Progress in this effort can be tracked by examining the WAMS Web site http://phasors.pnl.gov/

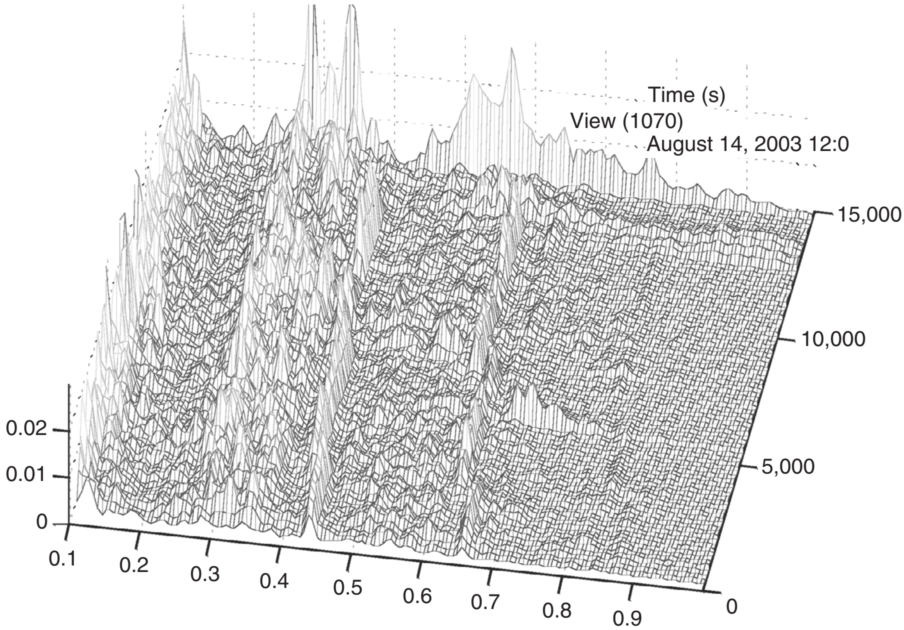


FIGURE 14.7 Spectral history for US–Canada Blackout of August 14, 2003: AEP Kanawha River bus frequency, 12:00–16:10 EDT. Data provided by Navin Bhatt, AEP.

14.4 Dynamic Information in Grid Management

The WECC WAMS is embedded within the broader picture shown in Fig. 14.8. Data generated by measurements and models may be used in many different ways, and in many different time frames. The same measurements that system operators see in real time may contain benchmark performance

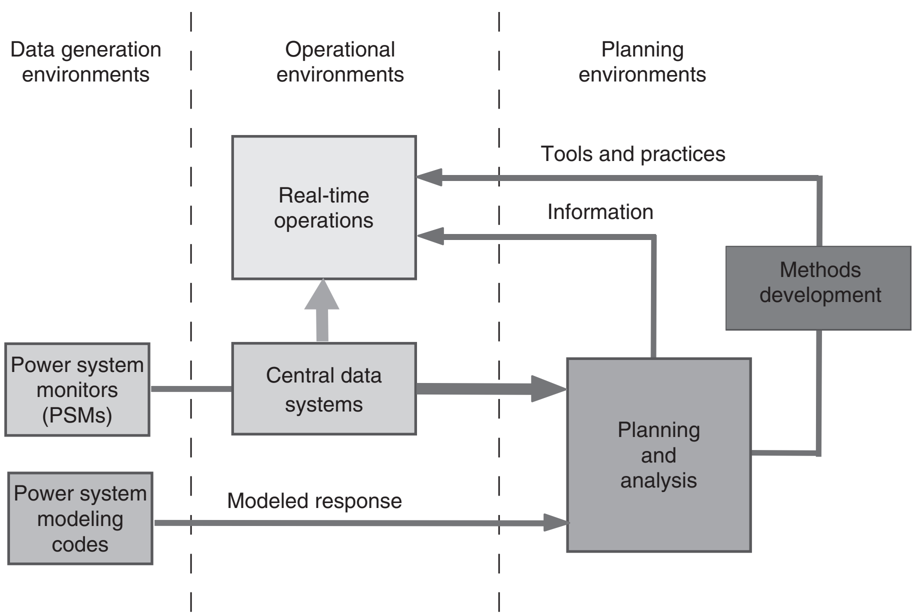


FIGURE 14.8 The role of measurement-based information in planning and operations.

information that is valuable for years into the future. Such measurements may also be needed to determine the sequence of events for a complex disturbance, to construct an operating case model for the disturbance, or as a basis of comparison to evaluate the realism of power system modeling in general.

WAMS infrastructure is built around just two core objectives:

- Obtain good data, and keep them safe.
- Translate WAMS data to useful information, and promptly deliver that information to those who need it.

These outwardly straightforward objectives involve some rather complex issues. One of these is shared support for WAMS deployment and operation. Another is the balancing of grid management needs against the proprietary rights of data owners.

A major WAMS usually evolves incrementally, building upon existing resources to address additional needs. This implies a mixture of technologies, data sources, functionalities, operators, and data consumers. Some governing realities are the following:

- *System configuration* is strongly influenced by geography, ownership, selected technology, and the technology already in service (legacy systems).
- *Required functionalities* are determined by who should (or should not) see what, when, and in what form.

Overall, the forces at work strongly favor WAMSs that evolve as "networks of networks" through collaborative agreements among many parties.

There are advantages to this situation. Interleaving networks that have different topologies and different base technologies can make the overall network much more reliable, while broadening the alternatives for value engineering. It also permits utility level networks to be operated and maintained on the basis of ownership, and permits a utility to withhold certain data until they are no longer sensitive. Disadvantages include protracted reliance upon obsolescent or incompatible equipment types, plus various institutional impediments to sharing of costs and timely information. These are major factors in the deployment, operation, and value of the WAMS infrastructure.

14.5 Placing a Value on Information

The main thrust of the WAMS effort is to suitably incorporate measurement-based information into the grid management process. Planning the necessary investments encounters a very basic question: just how do you place a value on information? A partial answer is this:

The value of information is precisely that of the decisions derived from it.

The paradigm of Fig. 14.9 is useful for expanding upon this statement.

Decision processes in a power system range from the very rapid ones preprogramed into protective control equipment to the very slow ones associated with expansion planning. In all cases the decisions are derived, with varying degrees of immediacy, from system measurements. In some cases the extracted information is encapsulated in a model, or perhaps in operating policies. In others the data are processed immediately—e.g., as a controller input or as a signal to system operators.

Accumulated over time, information provides a knowledge base that permeates utility practices and those of the industry. Such long-term effects, together with the multiplicity of paths by which information enters utility decision processes, will defeat any direct attempt to place a value upon it. More constructive results follow from considerations of affordability and risk management:

- *Consider information an insurance policy* against operational uncertainty:
  - How much insurance is enough?
  - How much risk is too much?
- *Distinguish between value, cost, and affordability.*
- *Consider all cost elements*, especially lead time and staff demands.

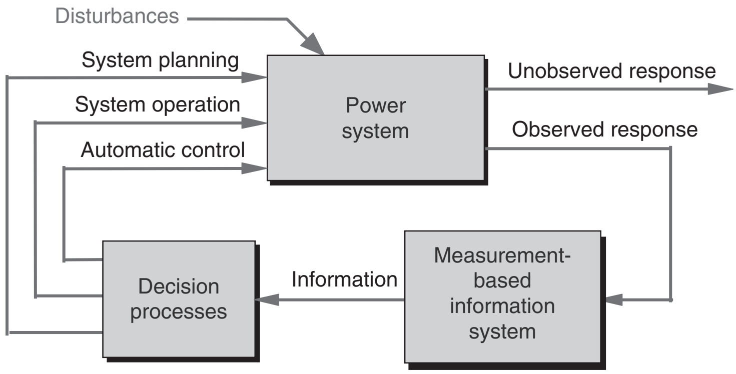


FIGURE 14.9 The cycle of measurement, information, and decisions.

Another factor, one that may preempt many of these considerations, is regulatory mandates issued by NERC and at various levels of government [23]. It is likely that an infrastructure for developing and exchanging dynamic information will be found necessary for assuring power system reliability and, thereby, the public interest.

14.6 An Overview of the WECC WAMS

The WECC WAMS is designed to serve the specific applications listed in Table 14.1. Many other objectives are implicit in this, and other electrical interconnections might state or prioritize their objectives differently.

Annual reports on deployment and use of the WECC WAMS are available on the associated Web sites. The description presented here is based on the 2004 report [17].

Regular operation of the WECC WAMS involves about 1400 "primary" signals that are continuously recorded in their raw form. These primary signals are the basis for several thousand derived signals that are viewed in real time, or during off-line analysis of power system performance. Data sources are of many kinds, and they may be located anywhere in the power system. This is also true for those who need the data, or those who need various kinds of information extracted from the data.

The primary "backbone" for the WECC WAMS consists of phasor networks as represented in Fig. 14.10. PMUs stream precisely synchronized data to PDC units, and the PDCs stream integrated PMU data to StreamReader units and sometimes to other PDCs. The StreamReaders provide display, continuous archiving, and add-on functionalities such as spectral analysis or event detection. Remote dial-in access to PDC and StreamReader units is available when security considerations permit.

TABLE 14.1 Key Applications of the WECC WAMS

- Real-time observation of system performance
- Early detection of system problems
- Real-time determination of transmission capacities
- Analysis of system behavior, especially major disturbances
- Special tests and measurements, for purposes such as
  - – special investigations of system dynamic performance
  - – validation and refinement of planning models
  - – commissioning or recertification of major control systems
  - – calibration and refinement of measurement facilities
- Refinement of planning, operation, and control processes essential to best use of transmission assets

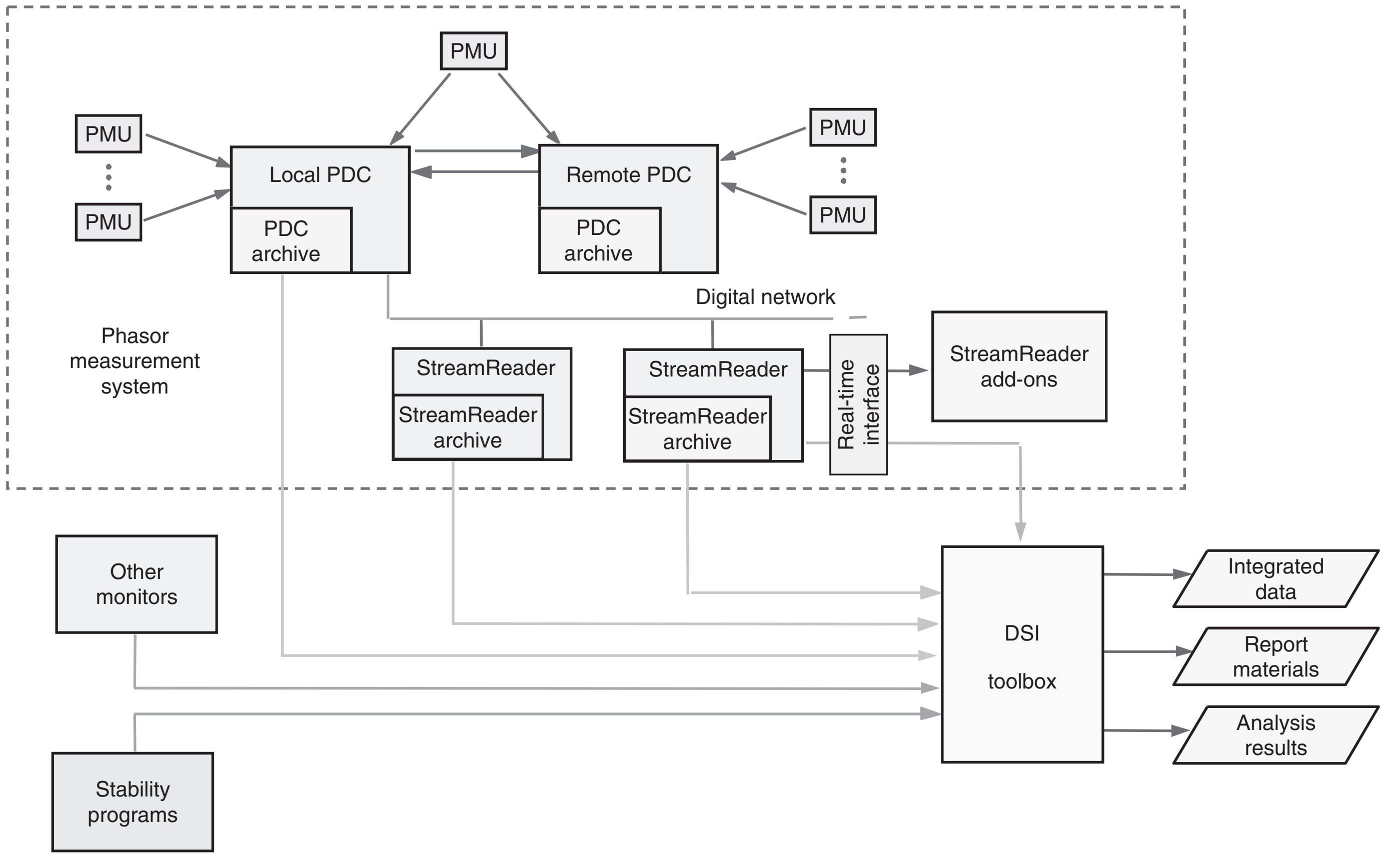


FIGURE 14.10 Flow of multisource data within an integrated WAMS network.

TABLE 14.2 Inventory of WECC Monitor Facilities, February 2004

Phasor measurement facilities (continuous recording, 30 sps)
56 integrated PMUs
15 stand-alone PMUs (local archiving downloaded to Alberta ISO upon request)
7 primary PDCs (7 data sharing links)
1 data access PDC (at California ISO)
478 phasors
$\sim$956 primary signals (2 $\times$ number of phasors)
PPSM units (continuous recording, 20–2000 sps)
1 central unit (plus backup) for RMS signals
17 local units for RMS signals
5 local units for point on wave signals
$\sim$600 primary signals
Monitors of other kinds (triggered recording, excludes DFRs)
5–20 local units
$\sim$100 primary signals

Each PDC has the potential of providing real-time data for power system behavior across a broad region of the power system. Some PDCs share signals to extend this coverage, and higher level networks are evolving that will consist of PDCs entirely. For the present, however, most of the directly integrated phasor networks are isolated from one another and the data they collect are selectively integrated off-line (Table 14.2).

The WECC WAMS of 2004 is well along in the transition from synchronized phasor measurement (SPM) networks to a much more general synchronized system measurement (SSM) network that accommodates signals of all kinds [24,25]. Recent progress items in this area include:

- SPM networks in western Canada
- Publication of the de facto BPA standard for PDC networks [24]. This is readily expanded into an SSM standard
- A growing WECC network of PDC units that share data in real time
- Deployment of local PMU/StreamReader packages tailored to generation facilities
- Deployment of high-speed GPS synchronized monitors that continuously record point on wave data, or signals from FACTS-like controllers
- A growing dialog with vendors of control equipment concerning export of signals into a general SSM network

The phasor networks in Canada are especially welcome. Oscillatory dynamics in the western interconnection are strongly influenced by large plants on the far edges of the network. In the northern part of the system at least four plants are noteworthy in this respect. The Kemano, G.M. Shrum, Sundance, and Colstrip plants all feed power into the main grid through long radial connections. The size of these plants, together with the long connections, exercises a major role in the interaction patterns for associated interarea modes below 1 Hz. Generator controls at these plants have considerable influence upon damping of the associated modes, and correct modeling of these plants is especially important to valid planning studies. Even when damping and modeling are not of immediate concern, the plants are still of special interest as sources of information and understanding about wide area dynamics.

Figure 14.11 shows the PDC units that are operational in the WECC, plus the linkages among them. Several types of PMU are in service, from at least four commercial vendors. The PDC units and the StreamReader units are BPA technology.

Signals collected on the WAMS backbone are continuously recorded at a rate of 20, 30, or 240 samples per second (sps); about half of the signals are phasor measurements. When needed, data from local monitors are integrated with data collected on the PDC network to form more detailed records of system behavior in areas of special interest. Some of the local monitors are "snapshot" disturbance monitors

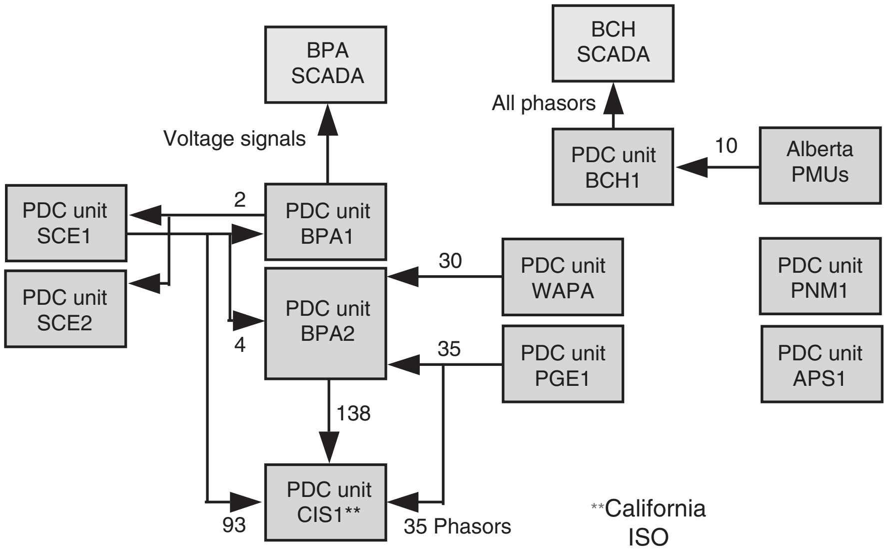


FIGURE 14.11 Evolving PDC network in the WECC WAMS.

that use a local signal to initiate brief recordings. Digital fault recorders and some other point on wave recorders are in this category.

At present there are no fully automated Information Manager Units (IMUs) for WECC monitor data. Instead, the core IMU functions of data management, analysis, and report generation are produced as a staff activity. The established WECC toolset for this, the dynamic system identification (DSI) toolbox, is the latest generation of software that has supported BPA and WECC performance validation work since 1975. It is coded in MATLAB, and its core elements are distributed as freeware from WAMS Web sites.

14.7 Direct Sources of Dynamic Information

There are a variety of means by which dynamic information can be extracted from a large power system. These include:

- *Disturbance analysis*
- *Ambient noise measurements*
  - spectral signatures
  - open- and closed-loop spectral comparisons
  - correlation analysis
- *Direct tests* with
  - low-level noise inputs
  - midlevel inputs with special waveforms
  - high-level pulse inputs
  - network switching

Each has its own merits, disadvantages, and technical implications [15,26–30]. For comprehensive results, at best cost, a sustained program of direct power system analysis will draw upon all of these in combinations that are tailored to the circumstances at hand.

Power system monitoring is often regarded as a passive operation that does not include staged tests. In that sense monitoring is a subset of measurement operations. Even so, it is the monitor facilities that provide the measurements backbone for the dynamic information infrastructure.

Wide area monitoring for a large power system involves the following general functions:

- *Disturbance monitoring*, characterized by large signals, short event records, moderate bandwidth, and straightforward processing. Highest frequency of interest is usually in the range of 2 Hz to perhaps 5 Hz. Operational priority tends to be very high.
- *Interaction monitoring*, characterized by small signals, long records, higher bandwidth, and fairly complex processing (such as correlation analysis). Highest frequency of interest ranges to 20–25 Hz for RMS quantities but may be substantially higher for direct monitoring of phase voltages and currents. Operational priority is variable with the application and usually less than for disturbance monitoring.
- *System condition monitoring*, characterized by large signals, very long records, very low bandwidth. Usually performed with data from SCADA or other EMS facilities. Highest frequency of interest is usually in the range of 0.1 Hz to perhaps 2 Hz. Core-processing functions are simple, but associated functions such as state estimation and dynamic or voltage security analysis can be very complex. Operational priority tends to be very high.

These functions are all quite different in their objectives, priorities, technical requirements, and information consumers. At many utilities they are supported by separate staff structures and by separate data networks.

14.8 Interactions Monitoring: A Definitive WAMS Application

The western interconnection is characterized by incessant dynamic interactions among generator groups and the various power system controls. These interactions, indicated in Fig. 14.1, often extend across the entire system. Technologies used in the WECC WAMS are designed to examine and assess this activity.

Figure 14.12 illustrates interaction levels observed in analog transducer signals for the western system breakup of August 10, 1996. At Malin the 0.276 Hz precursor oscillations in the MW signal, just before the decisive line trip, constitute roughly 1% of the total signal, and the associated voltage oscillations there constitute perhaps 0.2% of the total signal. Figure 14.13 shows torsional oscillations at roughly these same percentages. Close analysis of such signals, to detect trouble on the system or to assess controller effects, requires a signal resolution that is about 20 times smaller.

Examination of other signals and other sites indicates that transducer resolution, expressed as a fraction of full dynamic range, would ideally be in the vicinity of one part in 10,000 (0.01% or 80 dB). The resolution of top quality analog transducers approaches this value, and that of some PMUs or other digital transducers may even exceed it.

For many purposes it is necessary to determine the pattern, or *mode shape*, of dynamic interactions. An important case of this is shown in Fig. 14.14 plus the Prony analysis "compass plot" of Fig. 14.15 [31]. The relative strength and phase of the signals indicate the dominant activity was the Colstrip plant in eastern Montana swinging against the Williston area of British Columbia, in what may be an east–west counterpart to the north–south interaction that lead to the WSCC breakup on August 10, 1996. Figures 14.16 and 14.17 show an outwardly similar event on October 9, 2003, but with far smaller oscillations at Williston.

Both events represent new and unusual behavior in the WECC system that is not well understood, and for which WECC modeling is not entirely accurate. Mode shapes, by revealing the degree to which specific generators and paths are involved in the oscillation mode, provide essential information for resolving both uncertainties. Mode shapes are also a key tool for distinguishing between different interactions that have similar frequencies, and for comparing dynamic events for which the frequencies of key modes have shifted.

Mode shape analysis is perhaps the most demanding application for WAMS data. The instruments at key sites must resolve small oscillations with sufficient detail to establish their modal composition

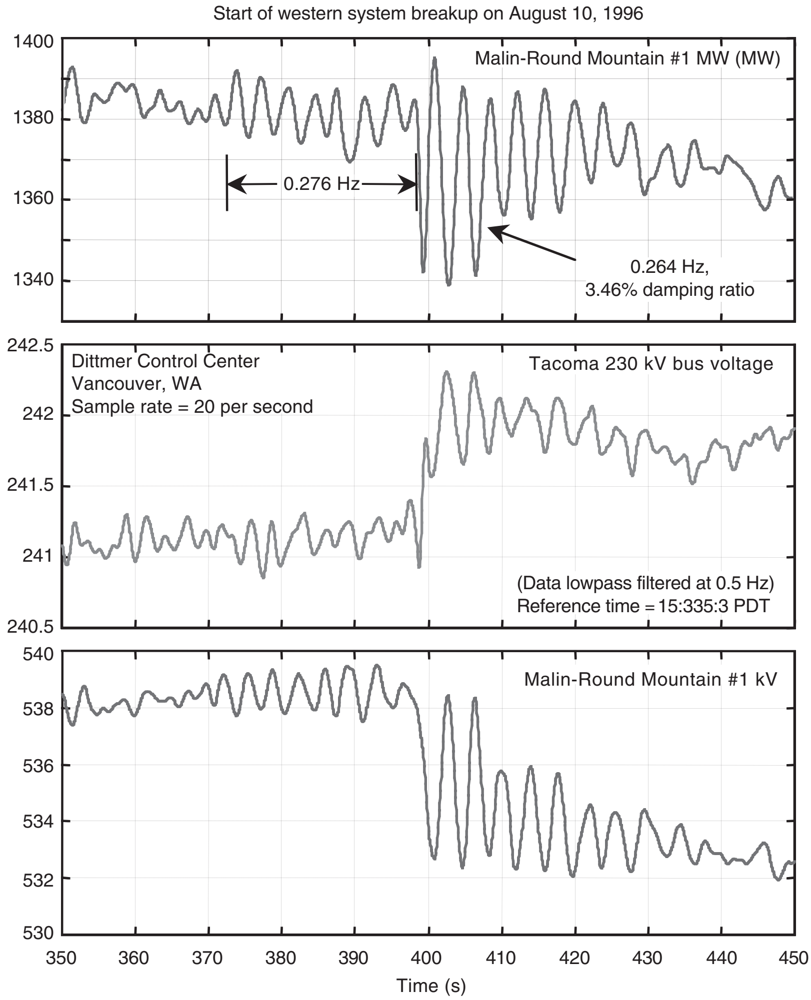


FIGURE 14.12 Shift of western system dynamics with loss of Keeler–Alston 500 kV line. Start of WSCC breakup on August 10, 1996.

(frequencies and dampings). And, in addition to this, the overall measurement system must present an integrated portrait of the oscillation in which the instrument signals are consistent enough to establish the mode shape for each oscillation component.

The effective resolution of particular signals can often be improved through filtering, correlation analysis, or model fitting. Figure 14.18 demonstrates that the Prony fitting procedure smoothes and processes low-frequency oscillations quite accurately. Enhancing the timing consistency of acquired signals can be less straightforward.

14.9 Observability of Wide Area Dynamics

Close examination of WAMS data will, over time, provide insight into behavior of the power system and of the WAMS itself. This requires many operating conditions and events, with special attention to events that permit cross validation of WAMS data sources.

Switching events generally produce a signature like that in Fig. 14.19. Frequency transients at electrically remote sites, like the Sundance plant in Alberta, involve many low-frequency generator

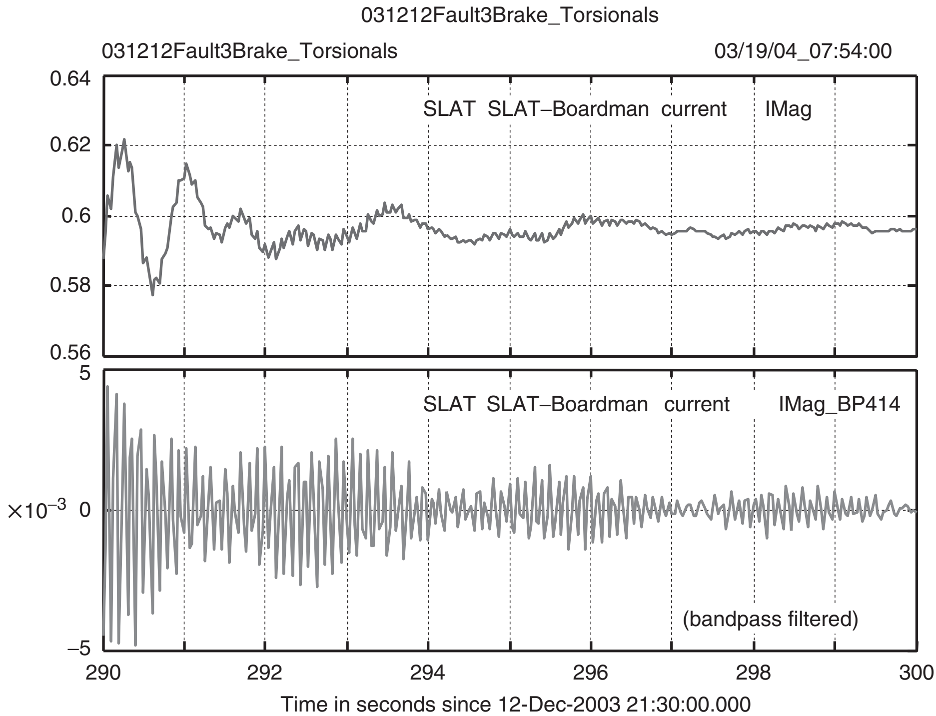


FIGURE 14.13 Torsional signatures in current magnitude on the Slatt–Boardman line Malin fault on December 12, 2003.

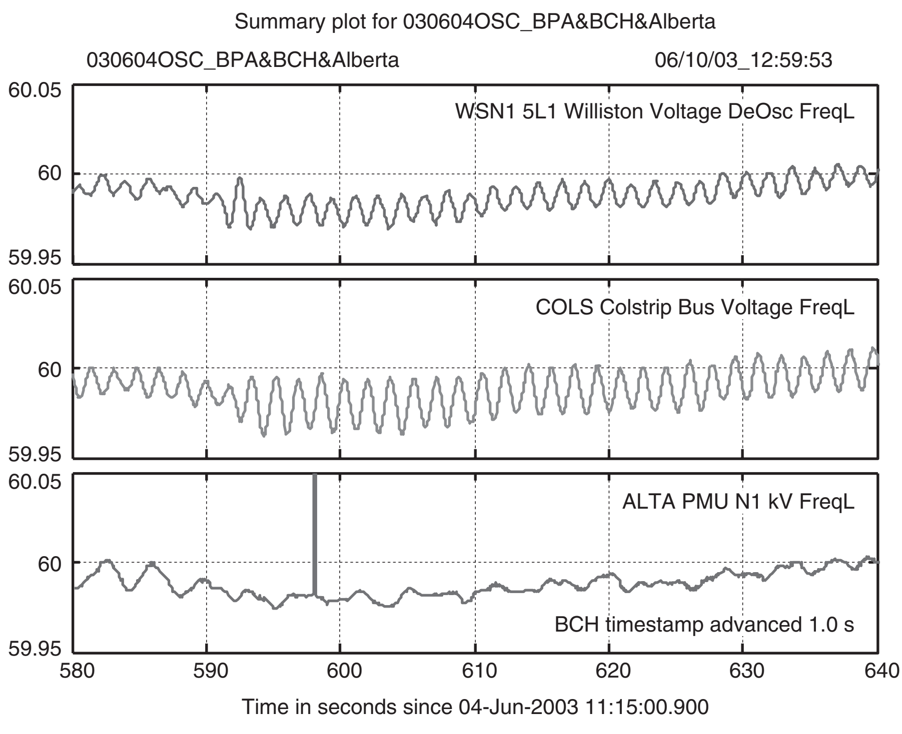


FIGURE 14.14 Key frequency signals for NW oscillation event on June 4, 2003.

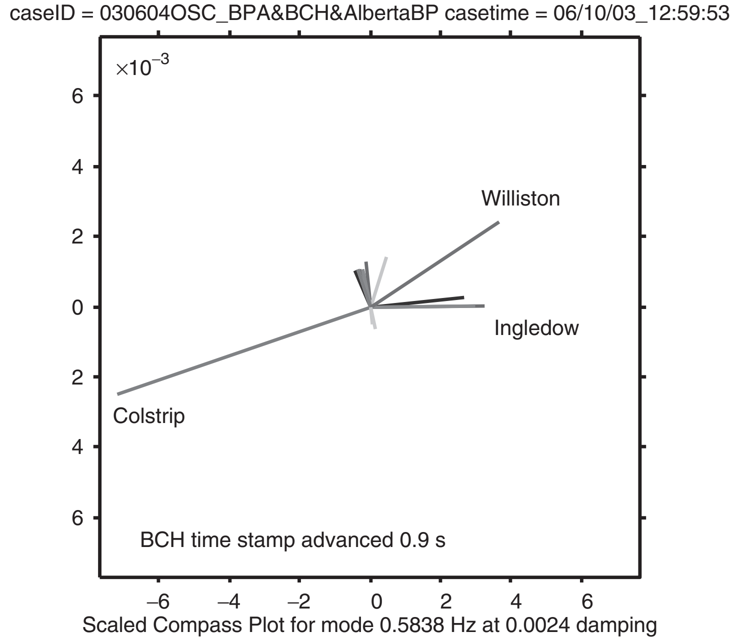


FIGURE 14.15 Mode shape for 0.584 Hz oscillation in local frequency NW oscillation event on June 4, 2003.

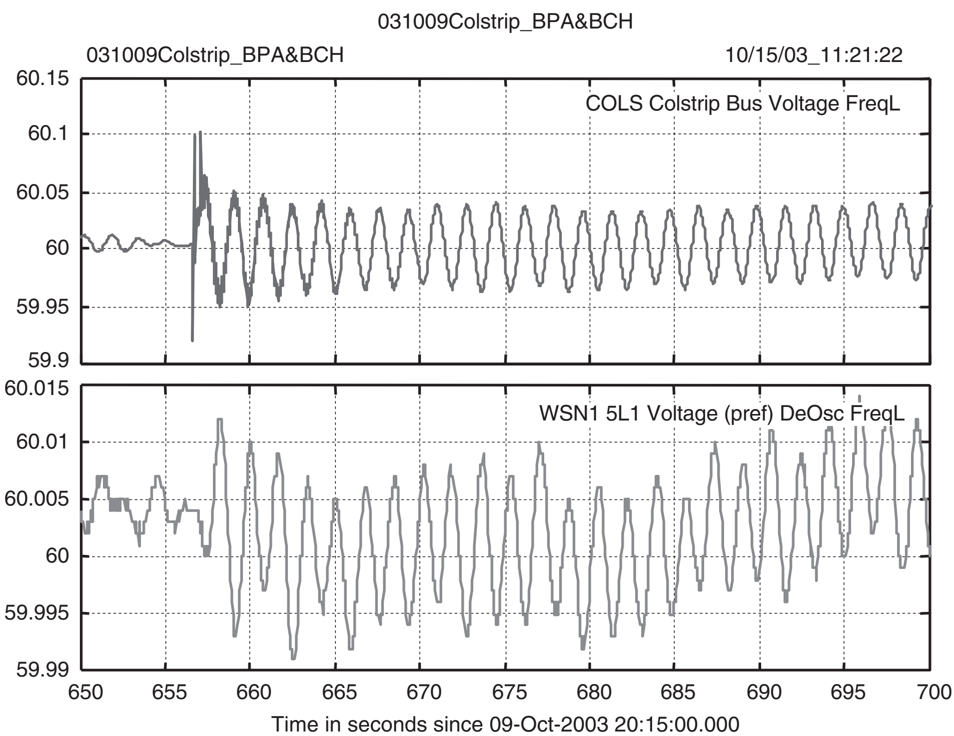


FIGURE 14.16 Key frequency signals for NW oscillation event on October 9, 2003.

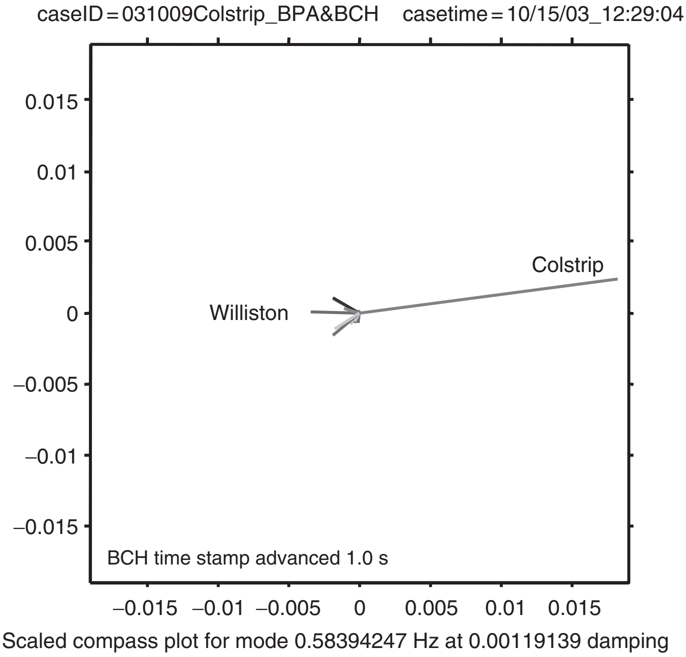


FIGURE 14.17 Mode shape for 0.584 Hz oscillation in local frequency NW oscillation event on October 9, 2003.

interactions and resemble the step response of a high order filter. Their starting points are usually not apparent to direct examination, and their use in record alignment checks may produce poor results.

Voltage magnitude and voltage angle generally produce sharper signatures for record alignment, provided that the voltage transient penetrates far enough into the transmission network. Examples below show that bus faults can be very useful for this.

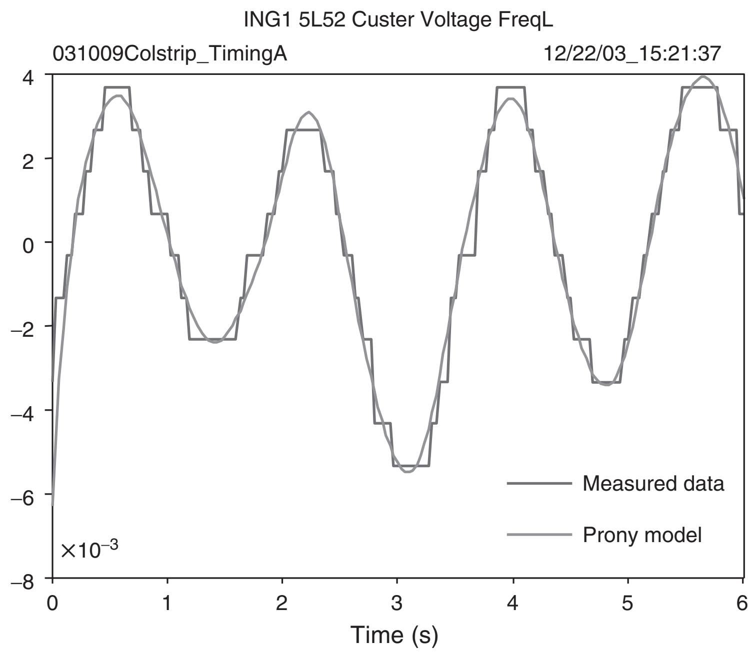


FIGURE 14.18 Typical Prony fit to NW oscillation on October 9, 2003.

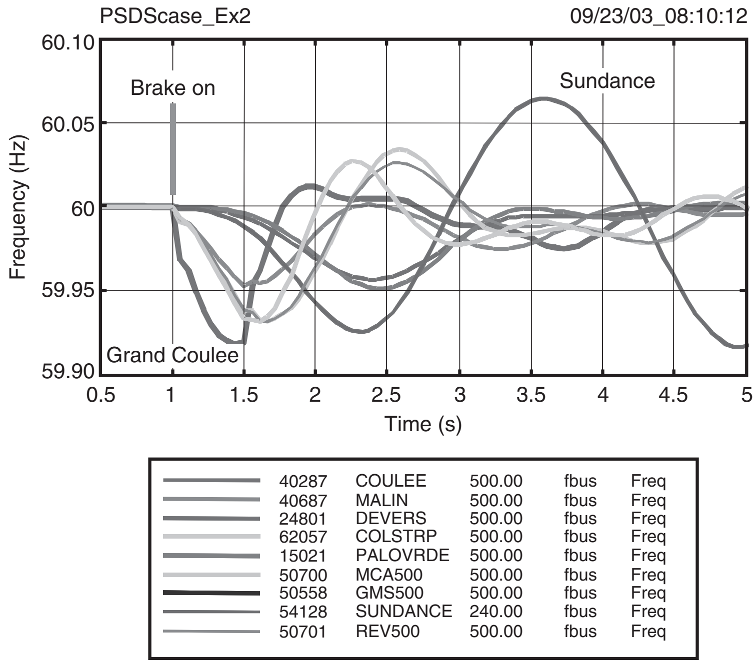


FIGURE 14.19 WECC simulation case for insertion of the Chief Joseph brake.

14.9.1 WECC Event 031212: Three-Phase Fault at Malin

Three phase faults on major transmission facilities are rare events. However, severe weather during the winter of 2003–2004 caused at least two such events in the Malin area. On December 12, 2003 a fault plus protective control actions launched sharp voltage transients that were observable to PMUs throughout much of the western interconnection.

This transient produced conspicuous high-frequency ripples in signals along the Ashe–Slatt leg of the COI, as indicated in Figs. 14.13 and 14.20. Peaks in Fig. 14.21 match known frequencies for generator shaft oscillations at the Columbia Generating Station (CGS) near Ashe substation, and at the Boardman plant [17]. These plants are near McNary dam on the Columbia River, and some 280 miles from Malin.

Voltage transients from this fault were observable as far away as Colorado, and provided a useful check on the alignment of PMU and PDC records. Figure 14.22 shows good consistency among voltage phasors collected on BPAs PDC units. Locations for these signals extend from eastern Montana to the west coast of the United States, and southward along the coast to southern California. A similar degree of consistency between BPA and WAPA records is shown in Fig. 14.23. Though the voltage magnitude transients in WAPA signals was too small to verify record alignment, the angle transients were quite suitable for this purpose. The PMU at Bears Ears is located near Denver Colorado, and is some 700 miles from Malin.

14.9.2 WECC Event 030604: Northwest Oscillations

The oscillation shown in Fig. 14.14 was first observed as voltage cycling in SCADA displays for the Spokane area in eastern Washington State. Phasor data collected at BPA and BCH soon revealed this as a small but widespread oscillation at a steady frequency of 0.584 Hz. Figure 14.24 shows that this frequency was dominant, though some lower frequency modes were present. Mode shape identifies this as the Kemano mode, though frequency of the Kemano mode is usually about 0.63 Hz.

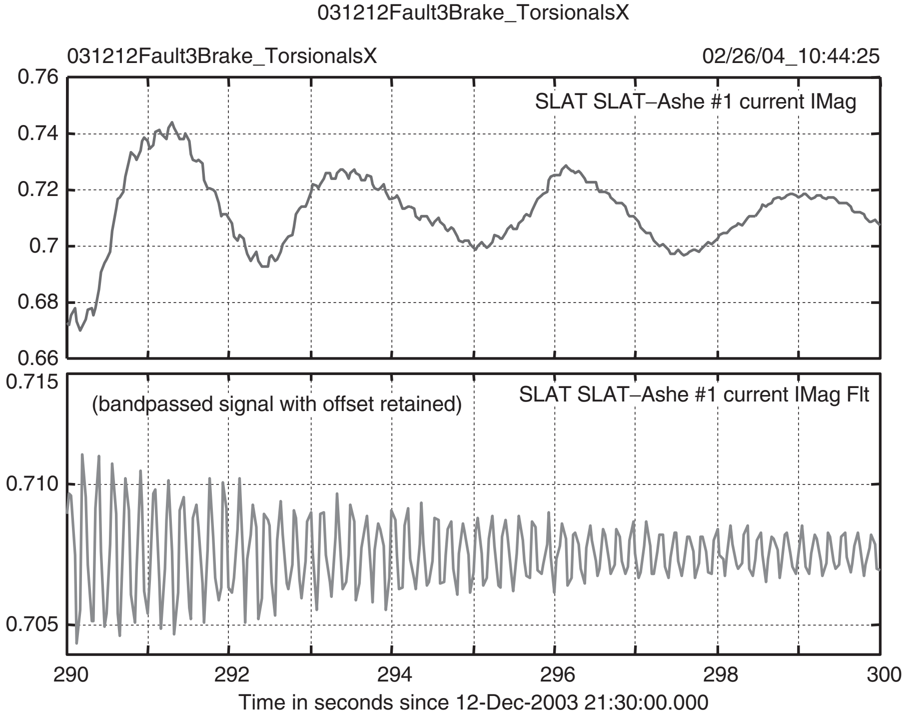


FIGURE 14.20 Torsional signatures in current magnitude on the Slatt–Ashe #1 line Malin fault on December 12, 2003.

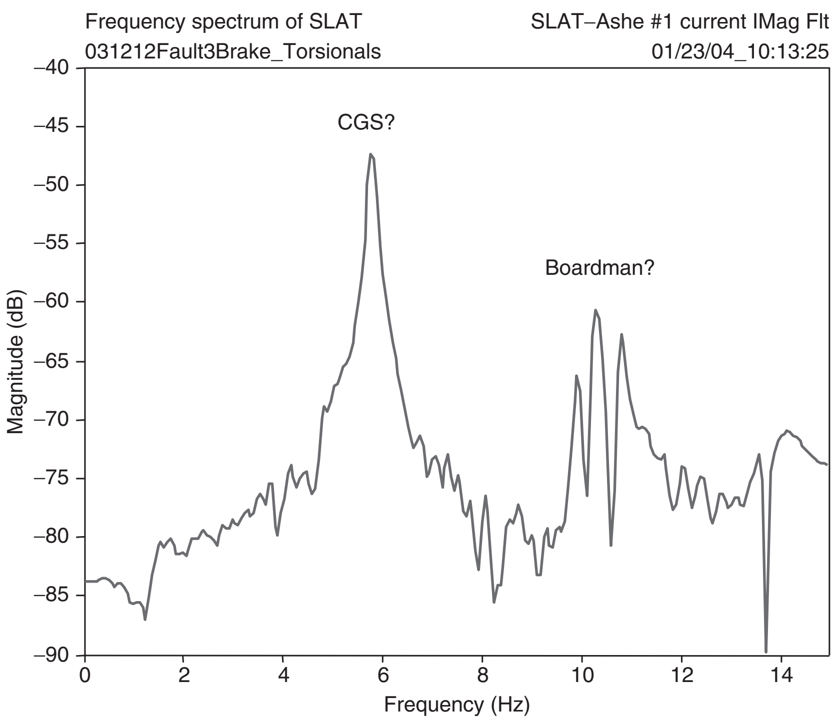


FIGURE 14.21 Torsional signatures on the Slatt–Ashe #1 line (signals have been bandpass filtered) Malin fault on December 12, 2003.

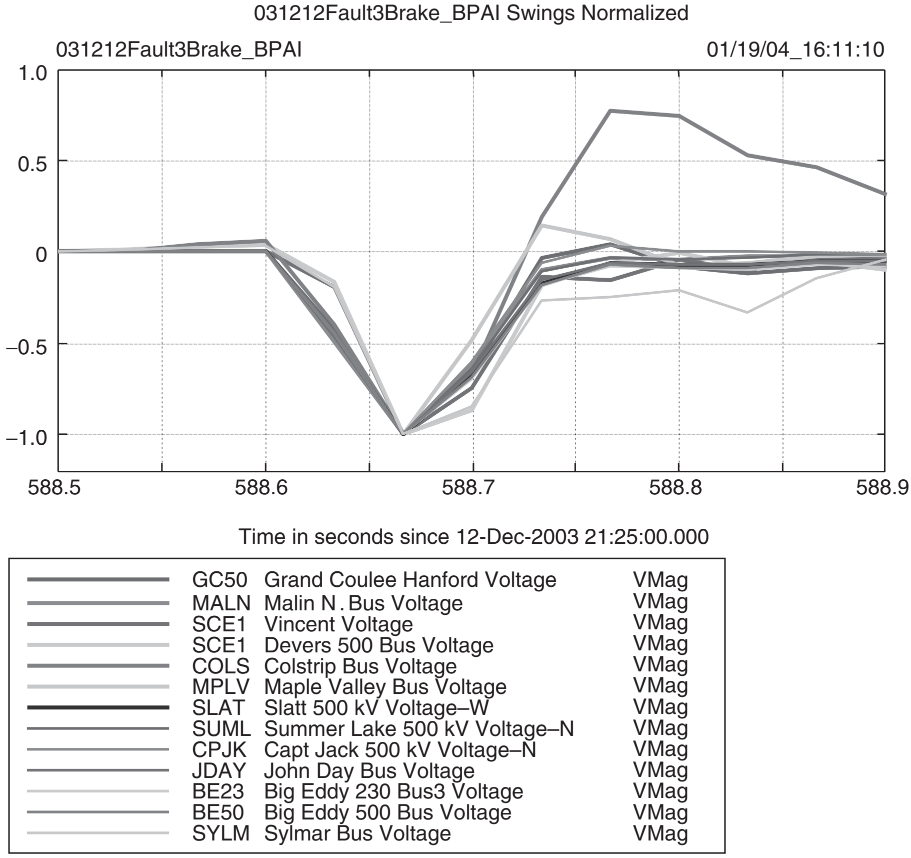


FIGURE 14.22 Transients in normalized voltage magnitude Malin fault on December 12, 2003.

Correlation against MW swings on the Williston–Kelly Lake line revealed corresponding power oscillations on key tielines throughout the system, including very small ones on the PDCI. Figure 14.25 shows that the interaction was clearly apparent in the coherency function for the Palo Verde-Devers line, even though this line is some 1400 miles from Williston and the signal is barely visible in the time-domain data of Fig. 14.26.

The primary objective of this broader analysis is to understand the event, but an important secondary objective is to validate the measurements. Small oscillations at the frequency of an interarea mode can well be something else, such as aliased signals or instrument artifacts. Both PMUs in Fig. 14.27 have the same inputs. Voltage magnitude signals from the older unit, PMU A, show a parasitic oscillation that is proportional to the voltage angle. This is easily mistaken for an actual power system oscillation, in part, because similar activity is displayed by similar PMUs in the region. Comparison against current signals and/or instruments of other types reveals it as a processing artifact, however.

14.10 Challenge of Consistent Measurements

A major challenge to integrated processing for a large WAMS is to assure that measurements from the various data sources are consistent. Dissimilar filtering among analog instruments is a notorious cause of inconsistent signals, and some signals may require special compensation [32]. Digital technologies, and phasor measurements in particular, offer a welcome opportunity to avoid this burden. Many details

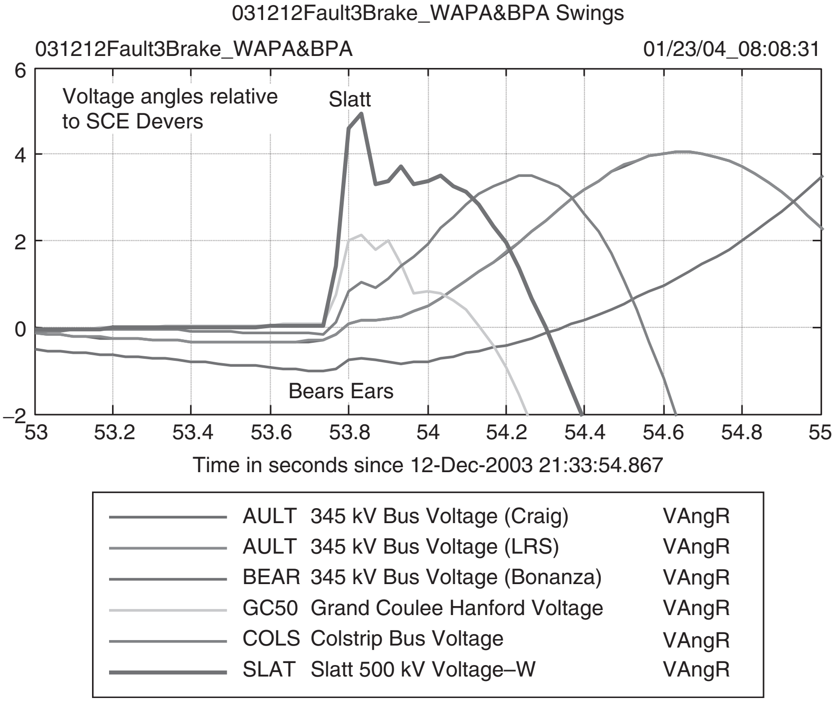


FIGURE 14.23 Transients in voltage angles relative to SCE Devers Malin fault on December 12, 2003.

remain unresolved, however, and cross validation of multisource data remains a necessary precaution in the analysis of major system events.

Phasor instruments and phasor networks represent new technologies that are still adapting to a very wide range of situations. Once installed, a PMU will very likely undergo one or more upgrades. Some of

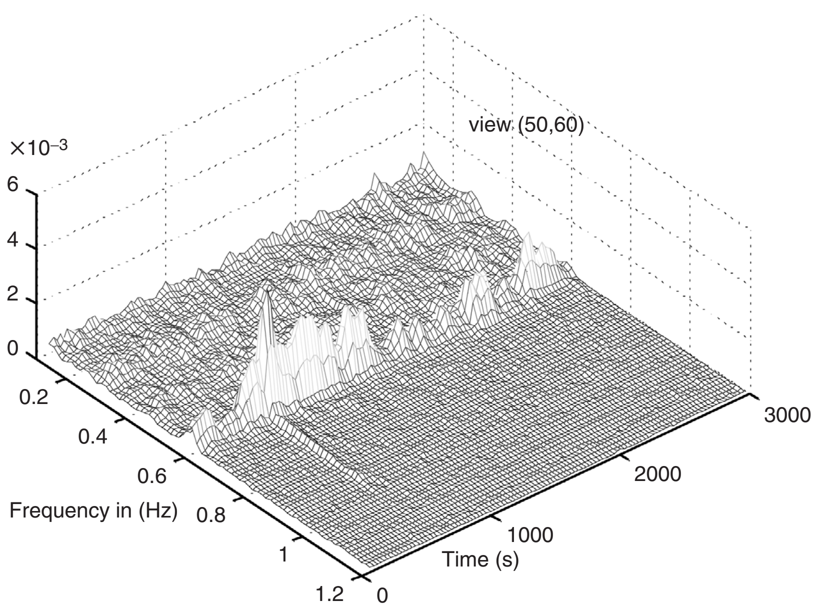


FIGURE 14.24 Waterfall plot for oscillation on June 4, 2003—local frequency at Williston.

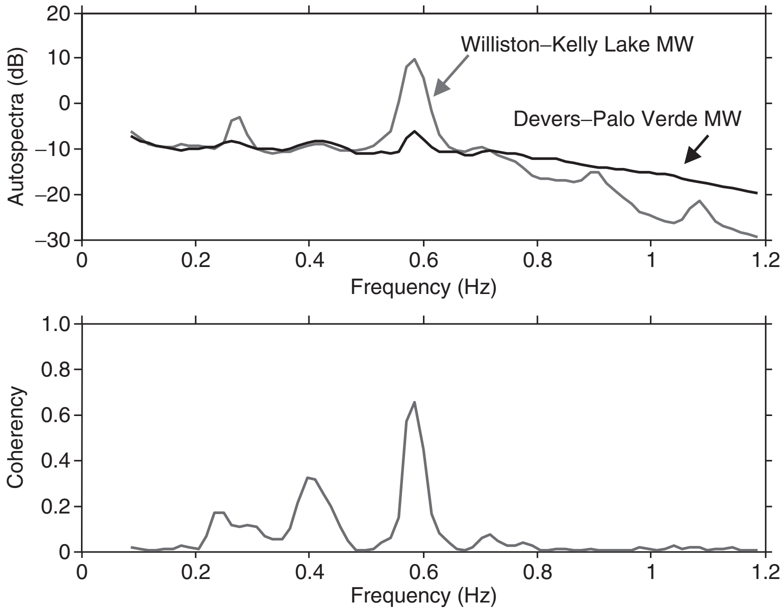


FIGURE 14.25 Correlation functions for MW oscillations on June 4, 2003.

these upgrades may significantly change the dynamic response of the instrument and/or the degree to which its outputs are consistent with outputs from other units.

Anomalies, once detected, are usually corrected within days to weeks. Important records may be acquired before that time, however, and it is not unusual for the correction of one PMU anomaly to reveal or produce yet another one. This leads to a data archive in which some signals must be repaired or

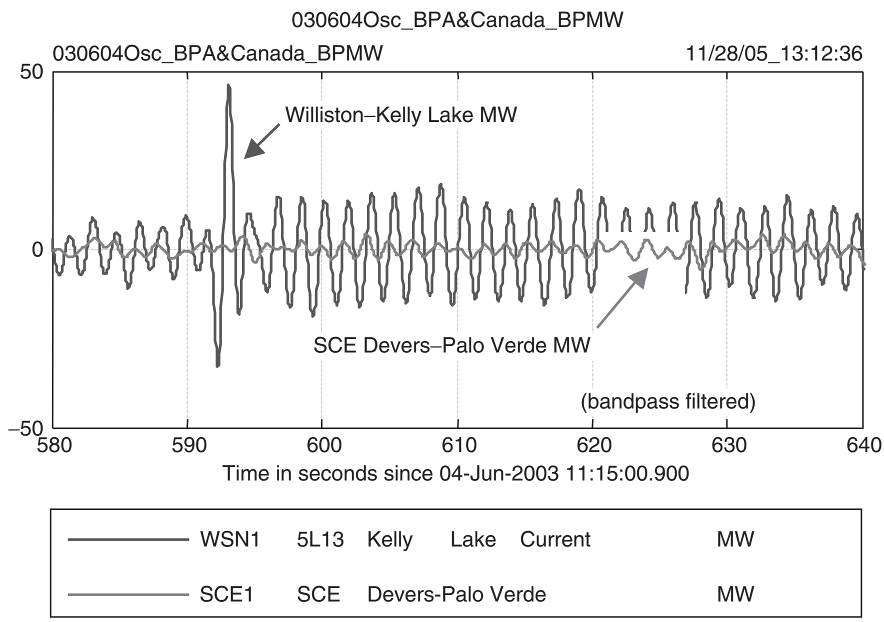


FIGURE 14.26 MW oscillations on June 4, 2003.

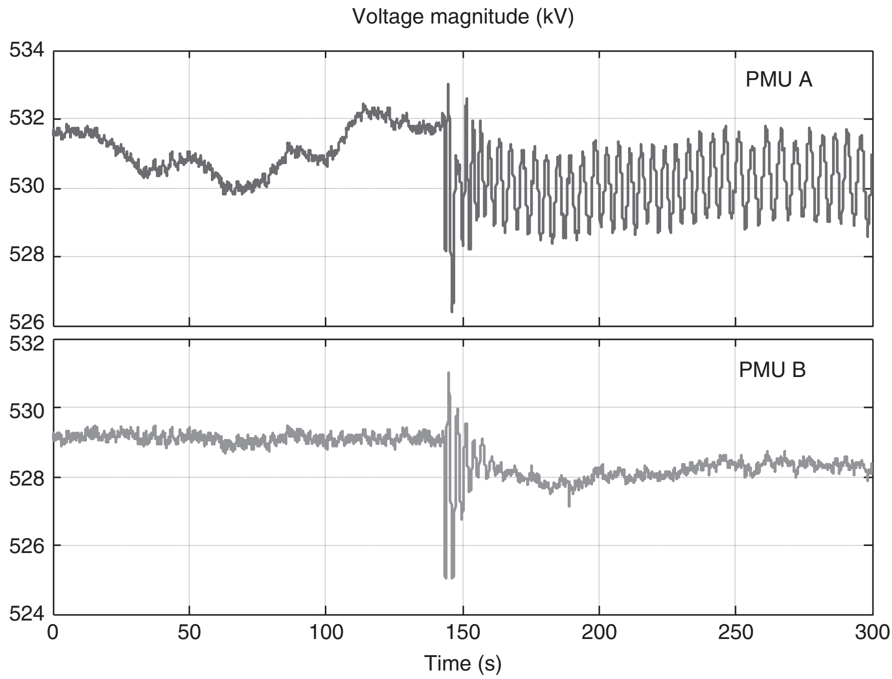


FIGURE 14.27 Parasitic oscillations in an older PMU (PMU A).

compensated in different ways for different recording times. Sometimes the need and the information to do this are not revealed until well after the data are recorded. A comprehensive log of PMU configuration and firmware is essential, and so is a corresponding library of data repair tools.

14.10.1 Inconsistencies Produced by Filter Differences

PMUs and other transducers produce RMS signals through some kind of averaging process involving or equivalent to a filter. The extent to which transducer filtering can "color" the view of power system transients is illustrated in Fig. 14.28. All signals are from the Malin area, near the Oregon–California border, and were recorded at BPAs Dittmer Control Center. Despite their obvious differences, all of the signals were obtained for essentially identical inputs to the various transducers. Except for fixed offsets (not shown) plus higher levels of measurement noise, the enhanced analog transducers on the Malin circuits produce signals that are closely consistent with each other and with the corresponding PMU signal. However, the signals produced by the standard transducers are somewhat different and both are seriously inconsistent with the other signals. They have lost their sharper features, and they have been delayed by roughly 400 ms. These are the effects of low-pass filtering, within the transducers themselves and possibly within the analog communication channels from Malin to Dittmer.

Within the context of their filtering the signals from the narrow bandwidth analog transducers are valid and useful. Figure 14.29, produced by spectral analysis under quiescent conditions, shows that all of the analog transducer signals contain the same basic information about dynamic activity. As briefly indicated in a later example, correlation analysis permits the filtering differences to be determined, modeled, and compensated when the need arises.

PMUs are not free of inconsistent filtering. The next section shows laboratory test results for this, and that the response of four specific PMUs would differ by $\pm 15°$ for a 1.4 Hz local mode oscillation.

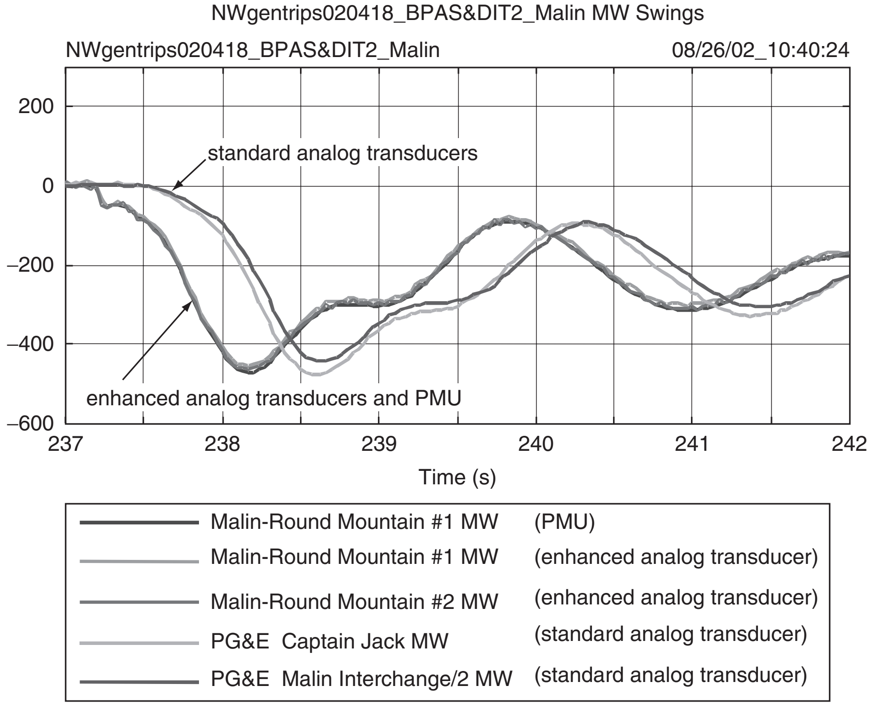


FIGURE 14.28 Malin area signals for NW generation trip event of April 18, 2002 (initial offsets removed).

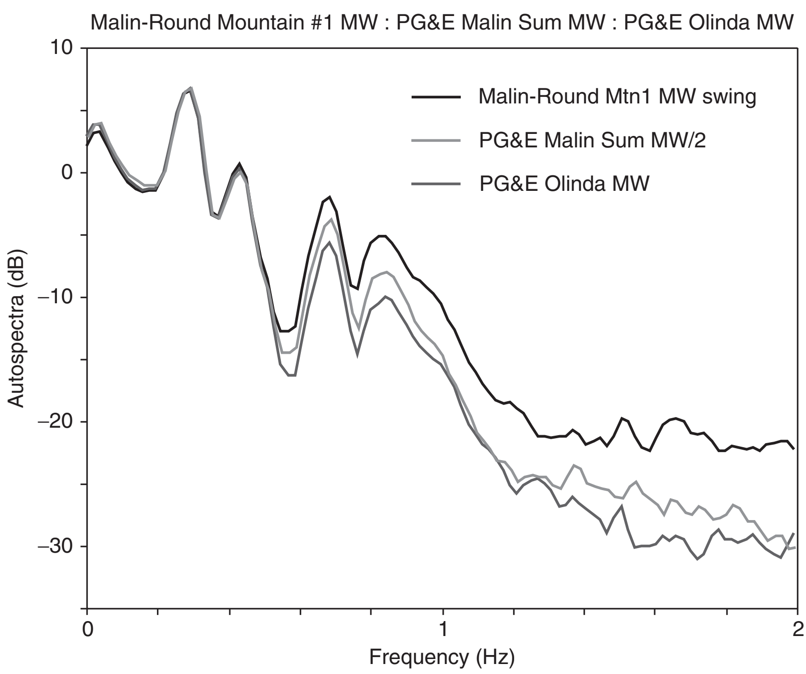


FIGURE 14.29 Ambient noise autospectra for Malin area transducers (1996).

There are many measurement applications in which such discrepancies would introduce unacceptable errors.

14.10.2 Timing Inconsistencies Produced as Pure Time Delays

Erroneous time delays among PMU signals have been encountered from the following sources:

1. Time stamps that do not match the time at which the PMU output was produced
2. PMU frequency signals that are not time aligned with the phasor outputs
3. PMU outputs that were not produced at a standard time (the time stamps may be correct)

Important event data that are acquired before these problems are corrected must be either repaired or discarded.

Examples of PMU timing errors are shown in Figs. 14.13 and 14.14 for fault tests performed at BCH. PMU MPLV is located at BPAs Maple Valley substation, near Seattle, Washington, and the remaining PMUs are located within the BCH system. PMU ING1 and PMU ING2, at Ingledow substation, share the same inputs but are of different types.

Earlier fault tests showed that the BCH signals were out of time with the BPA signal, and that no two of the BCH signals were timed consistently. This lack of timing consistency was partly because ING1 had just received a partial software update. Additional updates produced the much better timing shown in Fig. 14.30, though signals produced with older software were still out of time by about 1 s. An error of this sort is easily corrected by editing the time stamp for the entire PMU record, but one must know which PMU data to correct and by how much.

Figure 14.31 shows a case in which the PMU frequency signal is not time aligned with the phasor outputs. Correcting the data for this error is somewhat laborious, and estimating the size of the correction can be more so. This situation is fairly common, and a good countermeasure is to replace some or all instrument frequencies by estimated frequencies derived from bus angles.

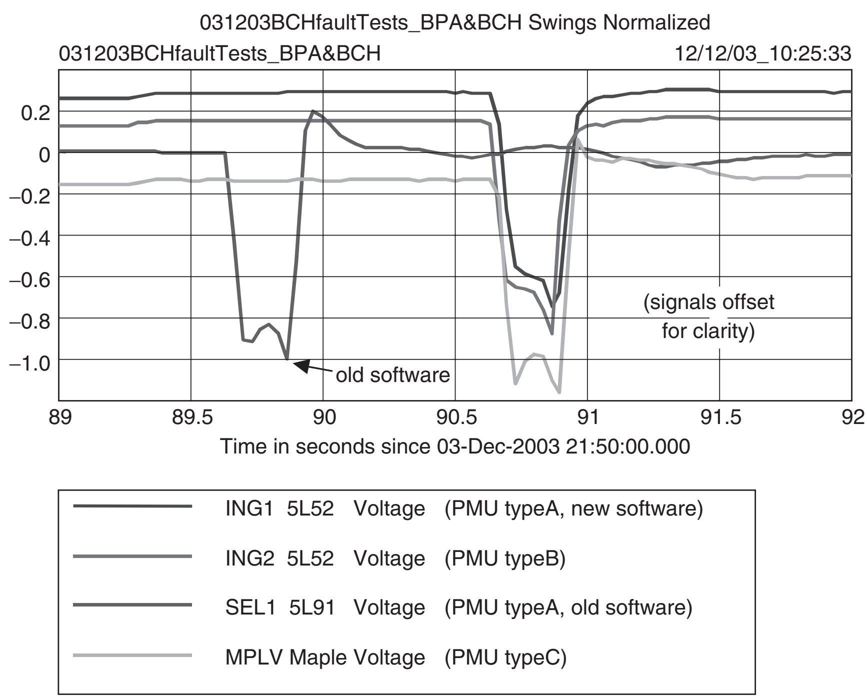


FIGURE 14.30 Relative timing of VMag signals BCH fault test on December 3, 2003.

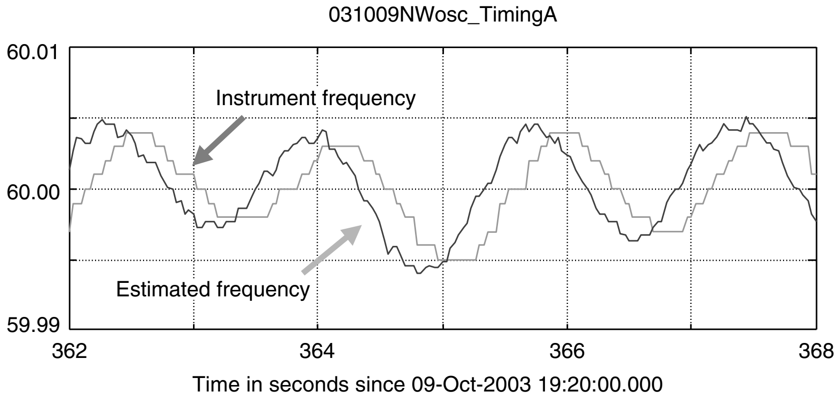


FIGURE 14.31 Timing anomaly in FreqL signal from ING1 PMU NW oscillation on October 9, 2003.

PMU outputs that were not produced at a standard time can produce major errors in bus angle. An example of this is mentioned in Ref. [33] but not shown. Resampling will repair such data, provided that the time stamps are correct.

14.10.3 Evaluation of PMU Performance

A PMU is both a network element and an RMS transducer. Evaluation of PMU performance is a complex matter that draws upon laboratory tests, model simulations, and comparative measurements under field-operating conditions [34,35].

Full evaluation of PMU performance must consider both its network performance, and its performance as an RMS transducer for steady stand and dynamic information on the power system. All of these are major issues, and attention here is focused on dynamic performance only. Though the discussion is phrased in terms of PMUs, much of it applies to transducers and RMS calculations of other kinds.

RMS transducers provide average measures of point on wave input signals that represent local voltages and/or currents in the power system. The inputs can be thought of as sets of modulated carriers, containing dynamic information that is impressed through a combination of amplitude modulation and frequency modulation. The carrier frequencies are usually but not always harmonically related to the system-operating frequency. Transducer inputs occasionally contain additive components for which the frequencies are essentially arbitrary, and which probably have no direct association with generator activity [36].

The overall situation is depicted in Fig. 14.32. It is useful to think of the carrier levels as *powerflow information*, and the impressed modulation as *dynamic information*. Additive signals, if present, are in a special category and potentially troublesome.

Amplitude modulation is the primary means by which dynamic information is impressed on the POW carriers. Such modulation produces sideband pairs according to the relation

$$\sin(x)\sin(y) = \frac{1}{2}[\cos(x-y) - \cos(x+y)] \tag{14.1}$$

e.g., if x represents a 60 Hz carrier frequency and y represents a 1.2 Hz modulation then the sidebands will be produced at $60 \pm 1.2 = [58.8\ \ 61.2]$ Hz. Figure 14.33 provides an example with amplitude modulation sources at 1.05, 1.46, and 18.2 Hz. The example also includes an additive signal at 52 Hz, which is representative of a network resonance encountered during operation of the Celilo Damper.

A useful first test under laboratory conditions is shown in Fig. 14.34, for a carrier frequency of 60.06 Hz and applied amplitude modulation frequencies in the sequence [0 0.28 1.4 6.64 12.0 15.0 21.72

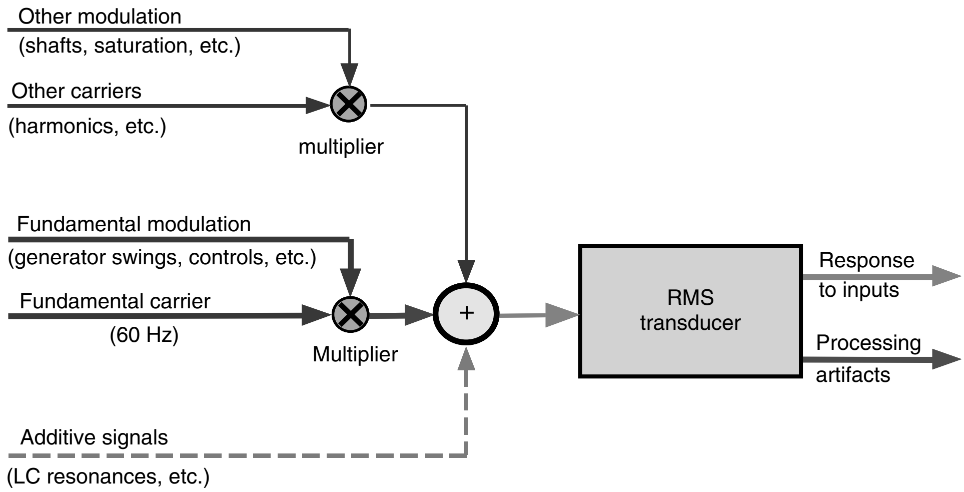


FIGURE 14.32 Signal environment for a power system transducer.

28.7 30.0 30.85 36.89 45.0] Hz. The test signals for this are contained in a playback file (PMU_AMod6006seriesA) for controlling voltage and current inputs to the PMUs, which were prototype units from commercial vendors.

The output rate for these instruments is 30 Hz, which can support no output frequency higher than the Nyquist frequency of $30/2 = 15$ Hz. Response to inputs higher than this will necessarily be "aliased" to a lower frequency—e.g., a generator shaft oscillation at 21.72 Hz would produce an output at 1.28 Hz, and mimic a generator swing mode. The secondary axes in Fig. 14.34 show the relationship for this, and the overall figure shows that none of these instruments is fully protected against aliasing. This same information is implicit in the single frequency response scans of Fig. 14.35.

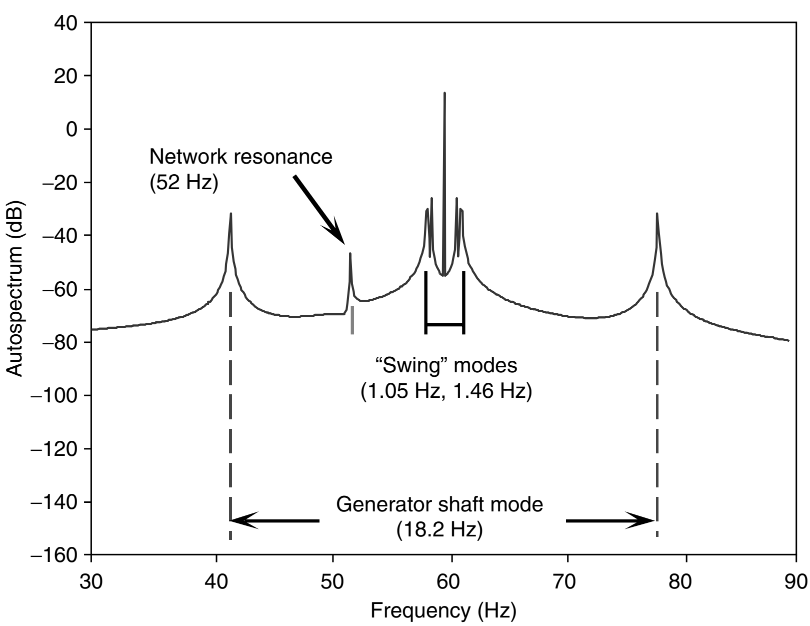


FIGURE 14.33 Components of the information spectrum for an RMS transducer.

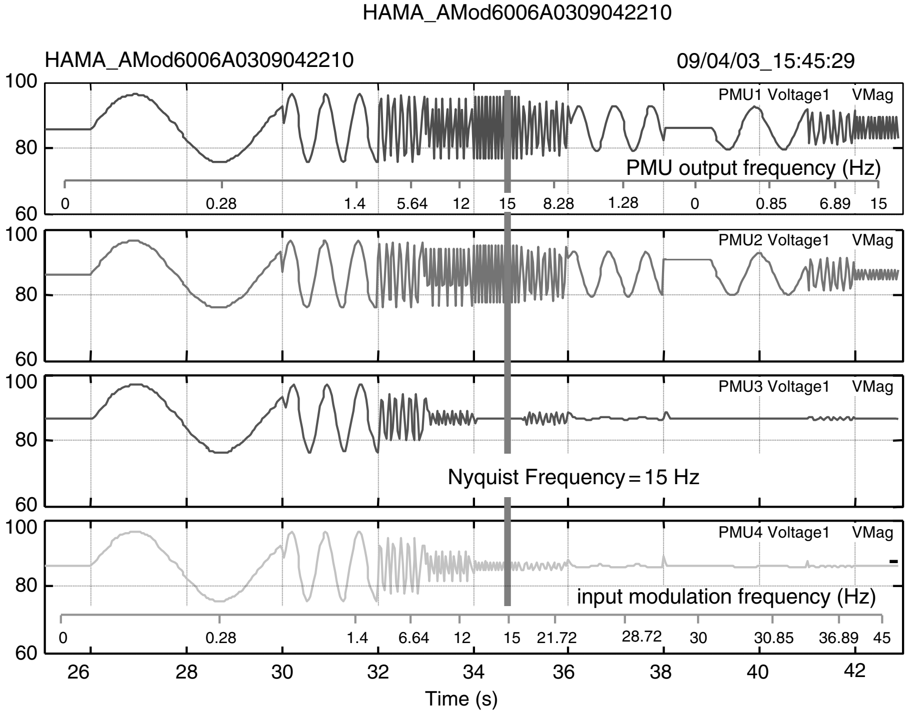


FIGURE 14.34 Amplitude modulation scan of four PMUs (playback file AMod6006MseriesA).

Another class of problems is shown in Fig. 14.36, where amplitude modulation of some PMUs has produced spurious cross modulation of their frequency signals. This appears to be a result of asymmetric filtering in PMUs that do not compensate for off nominal system-operating frequencies.

Several other kinds of information can be extracted from the amplitude modulation scan. Examining PMU outputs across a time interval of zero modulation provides general indications of their relative

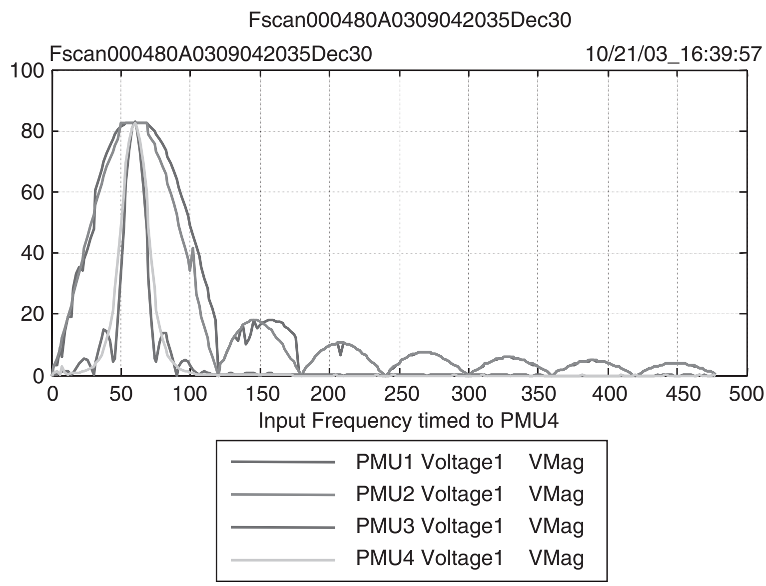


FIGURE 14.35 Single frequency response scan of four PMUs (downsampled) (playback test file Fscan000480A).

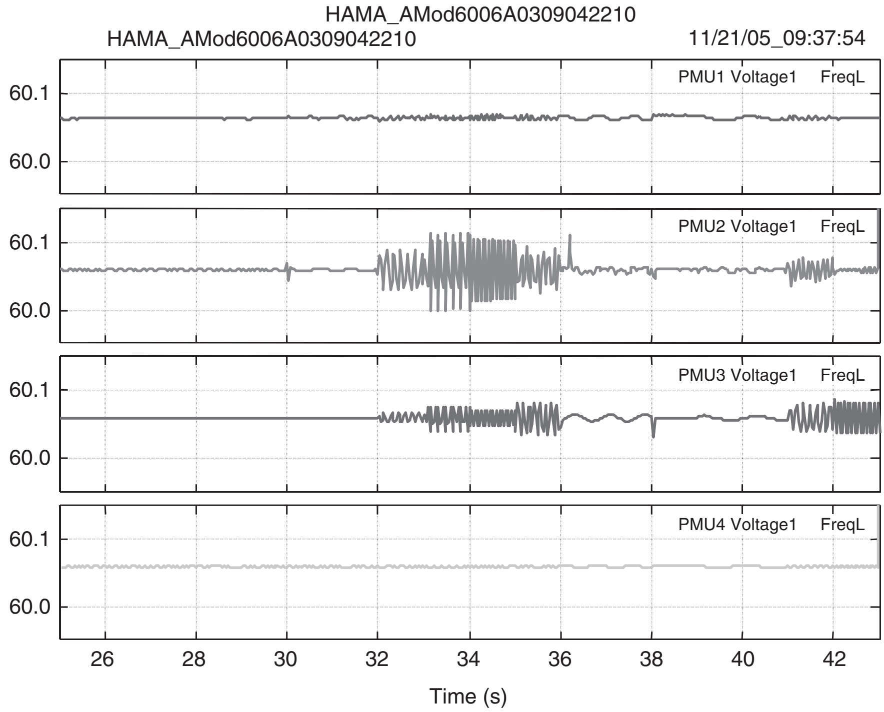


FIGURE 14.36 Spurious cross modulation of PMU frequency outputs (playback file AMod6006MseriesA).

accuracy, offsets, and noise characteristics. Relative timing, gain, and waveform distortion can be determined very accurately through Prony analysis of PMU response to the lower modulation frequencies (e.g., up to perhaps half the Nyquist frequency).

Table 14.3 indicates that the voltage output from PMU3 is about 34 ms later than that from PMU4, and some 55 ms later than that from PMU2. Mode shape analysis, if based upon this collection of PMUs, would have an uncertainty of $\pm 14°$ for a 1.4 Hz local mode oscillation. These output discrepancies exist even though the instruments, nominally at least, are synchronized within a few microseconds at their inputs. Evolving filter standards in the IEEE synchrophasor standard [37] address such problems.

14.10.4 Need for Reference Signals

Calling signals consistent implies that there is some standard of comparison. Once an instrument is placed in field operation it is rarely possible to test it directly. Its performance must then be judged by comparisons against other signals of assumed or proven quality.

The overlapping monitor coverage at Malin is a case in point. The high-quality analog signals from Malin are directly valuable for the dynamic information they provide about power system behavior, and

TABLE 14.3 Relative Timing of Four PMUs (Playback File AMod6006MseriesA, 1.40 Hz)

Sorted PRS Table for Pole1: Interarea Oscillation: TRange = [5.4667 7.0] + 24.8 s					
Signal	Frequency (Hz)	Damp Ratio (pu)	Res. Mag.	Res. Angle	Rel. Delay (ms)
PMU1 VMag	1.40003246	0.00004210	10.3309	160.562	8.7
PMU2 VMag	1.40003246	0.00004210	10.3400	175.578	−21.1
PMU3 VMag	1.40003246	0.00004210	10.2610	147.745	34.2
PMU4 VMag	1.40003246	0.00004210	10.2632	164.957	0.0

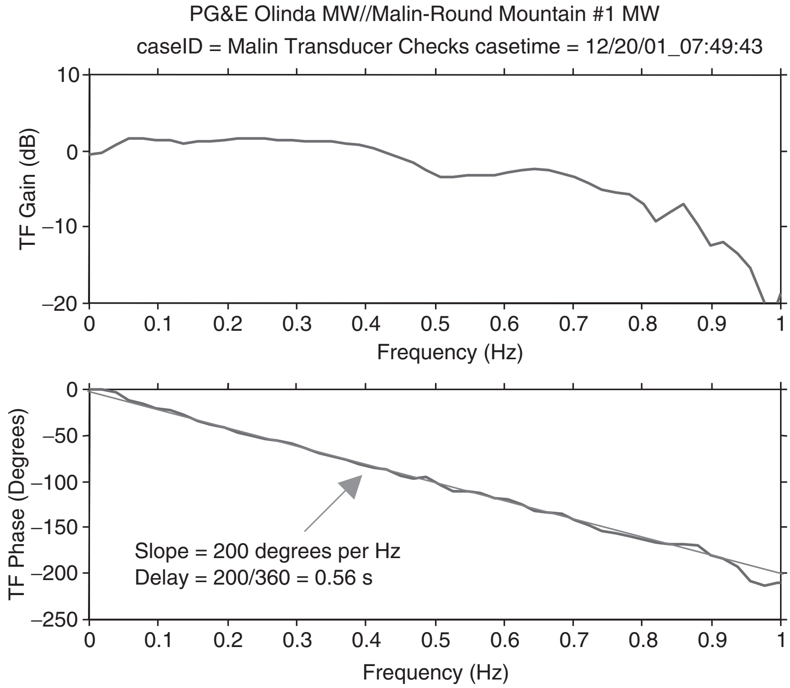


FIGURE 14.37 Virtual frequency response of PG&E Olinda MW to Malin-Round Mountain #1 MW.

they provide a useful check on the corresponding PMU signals. In addition to this, the high bandwidth signals of both kinds display sharp features from which timing information can be established when clock-based time stamps are suspect or absent. The high bandwidth signals provide a basis for modeling and compensating filter effects in more sluggish transducers [32]. A brief example of this is shown in Fig. 14.37, where correlation of ambient noise signals has provided a virtual transfer function from the Malin-Round Mountain signal to the PG&E-Olinda signal (shown as PG&E Captain Jack MW in Fig. 14.28). Through these secondary contributions the high-quality analog signals enhance the overall value of the legacy analog system, and they provide a means by which the more heavily filtered signals can be interpreted properly.

14.11 Monitor System Functionalities

The measurement of low-level interactions sets the quality requirements for measurement of WAMS data [26]. However, it is the real-time evaluation of system dynamic performance that sets the quality requirements for the display and analysis of the data. This is particularly critical during staged tests, when a close balance must be maintained between system security and the quality of test results. It is also important during routine monitor operations, as a means for identifying important data and for generation of operator alerts.

Functions for this are the following:

- *Signal conditioning and data repair*, to assure the measurement quality and prompt observability of important signal features.
- *Archival recording*, to assure safekeeping of important results. This should be as comprehensive as possible, and include all phases of testing that involve switching operations or application of test signals.

- *Interactive recording*, to permit prompt examination of data that cannot be fully assessed in real time. This also provides backup recording of high priority signals.
- *Time-domain display*, to permit frequent review of signal waveforms for evidence of data quality and emerging trouble on the power system.
- *Frequency-domain display*, to permit frequent review of signal spectra for evidence of data quality and possible trouble on the power system.

Some of the analysis tools underlying these displays are also used in event detection logic (EDL) to trigger automatic functions such as accessory data capture, information routing, or operator alerts.

Not all monitors are interaction monitors, and many interaction monitors lack some of the functions shown. The required functionality resides in the overall measurement system. The power system contains many devices that can serve as monitors for some processes and purposes. For the purposes at hand the following definition is appropriate:

A monitor is any device that automatically records power system data, either selectively or continuously, according to some mechanism that permits the data to be retrieved later for analysis and display.

The usual disturbance monitor is a snapshot recorder that captures local data for disturbances that are strongly observable in the monitor inputs. A circulating prehistory buffer retains the most recently acquired data, assuring that a certain amount of information will be provided about system conditions before the disturbance is detected.

WECC experience indicates that triggered data capture does not provide an adequate basis for wide area measurements. Even rather large events may not be sensed by trigger logic that is remote from the site of the disturbance. Records for a cascading failure that develops slowly, from some fairly small initiating event, are unlikely to present a comprehensive view of the mechanism by which the small failure propagated into a very large one.

Figure 14.3, in an earlier section, illustrates the point. The record there, collected on BPAs earlier Power System Disturbance Monitor, indicates peak-to-peak 0.7 Hz swings of roughly 900 MW on the PACI. It failed to capture the all-important interval during which the oscillations started. Without this, whatever indications there may have been to warn system operators of pending trouble remain unknown.

Monitors that are explicitly designed to operate in a continuous recording mode are more reliable, and usually require less staff attention. Present technology readily supports "stream to archive" monitors that will maintain a continuous data record for periods ranging to several weeks.

14.12 Event Detection Logic

There are four basic factors involved in detecting the onset of a dynamic event. They are *magnitude*, *persistence*, *frequency content*, and *context*. A simple disturbance trigger might examine just magnitude and persistence, in tests of form *Do the latest M samples each exceed threshold T(M)?* [38]. It is useful to think of the context factor as adjusting such thresholds to system conditions, such as network stress or the operational status of key system resources.

Data signatures through which events can be detected, and perhaps recognized, include the following:

- Steps or swings in tieline power
- Large change, or rate of change, in bus voltage or frequency
- Sustained or poorly damped oscillations, perhaps in conjunction with some other event
- Large increase in system noise level
- Increase of system activity in some critical frequency band
- Unusual correlation or phasing between fluctuations in two given signals

The tools needed to extract useful signature information from measured data range from straightforward heuristics to very advanced methods of signal analysis. Recognition of the underlying events calls for pattern recognition logic to match extracted signatures against known event templates.

14.13 Monitor Architectures

A fully evolved monitor system for main grid performance must provide the following services:

- *Comprehensive recording of operating data*, in secure archives that are promptly accessible for grid management
- *Analytical displays of system behavior*, using time- and frequency-domain tools to highlight critical aspects of system behavior
- *Automatic detection of unusual conditions or activity*, producing operator alerts and cross-trigger commands to secondary recording systems

Providing these services implies an integrated set of processing functionalities equivalent to that in Fig. 14.38. In a full-scale WAMS these may be distributed across many devices and replicated in many places. This is especially true of the archiving and display functionalities. Linkages to the energy management system (EMS) are likely.

The indicated triggers are both external and internal, manual and automatic. The internal automatic triggers are classified as short or long (fast or slow), depending upon length of the data segment needed by the associated EDL. Short EDL can work with a short block of recent data, and is usually sufficient for disturbance monitoring.

A distinguishing feature in this architecture is the signal-processing buffer (SPB) used for advanced triggers (in the long EDL) and in special displays. SPB functionality is essential for extracting interaction signatures, and for presenting those signatures to operations staff for their interpretation and review. At hardware level, however, this functionality can be distributed among one or more buffers internal to the monitor itself plus external buffers for shared access to the record stream at file level.

A next step in monitor refinement is to enhance the EDL and trigger coordination functions of Fig. 14.38 through artificial intelligence. Figure 14.39 represents a dynamic event scanner (DES) suitable for this purpose, and for an Archive Scanner to review central data collections.

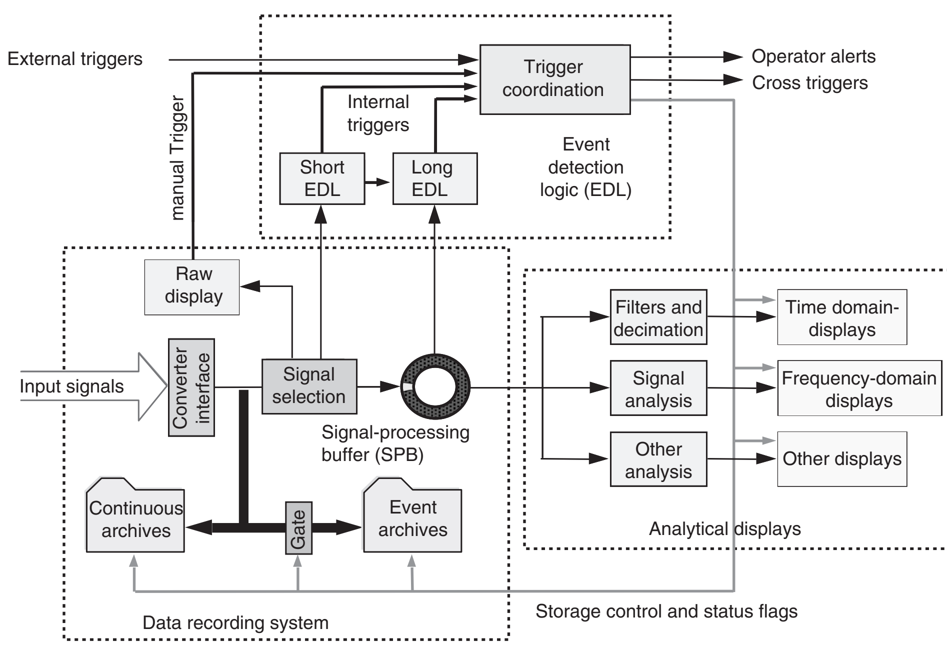


FIGURE 14.38 Processing functionalities in a fully evolved power system performance monitor.

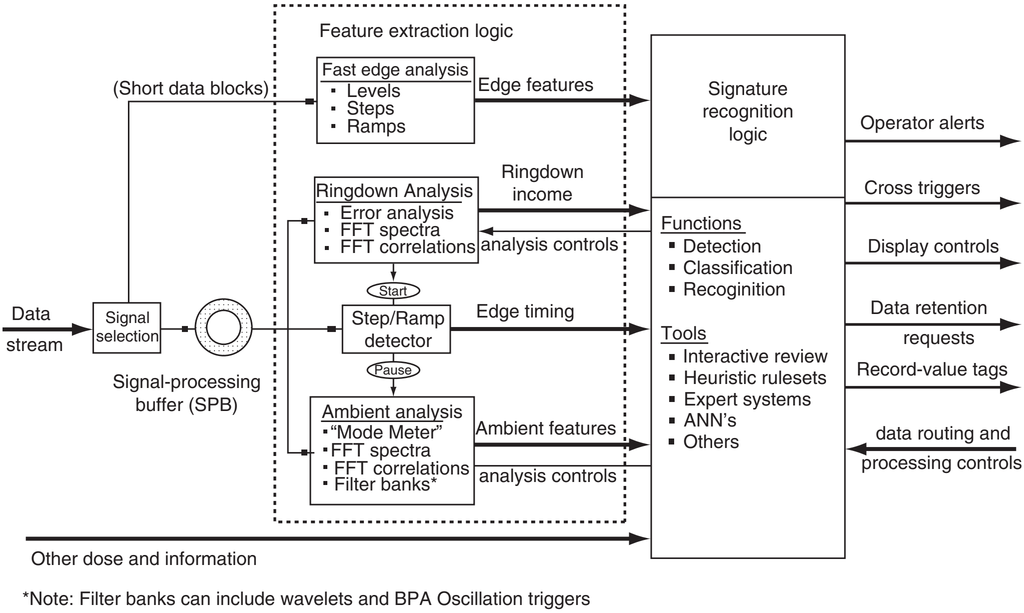


FIGURE 14.39 Dynamic event scanner within a continuous monitor.

14.14 Organization and Management of WAMS Data

A major test or disturbance on a large power system produces literally thousands of data objects in the form of raw or processed measurements, modeling results, message traffic, staff activity logs, and reports. In many cases the signals derived from measurements are analyzed in parallel with equivalent signals that have been obtained from computer simulations.

The WAMS database for a major event on the power system may be far larger than that for regular system operation. The analysis itself is usually much more thorough, and it usually produces a greater number of analysis products. Also, as insight into the event evolves, the analysis will often extend to secondary data that are not usually examined. It is necessary to smoothly manage the database as it expands, and to do so in a manner that observes confidentiality agreements among data owners or system managers.

Organization of the WAMS database relies upon

- *A standard dictionary* for naming power system signals
- *A summary processing log* indicating where the signals originated and how they have been processed
- *Data management conventions* that name and store the data objects according to the system event

This aspect of WECC practice is built into "workflow" patterns that have evolved among WAMS facility owners and various WECC technical groups. Some parts of it have been automated into the DSI toolbox, which is the standard WECC tool for WAMS analysis.

Other parts are incorporated into WAMS operation, or into the measurement system itself. One of these is the data source *configuration file*, which provides information for the following purposes:

- *Converting raw data to engineering units*, includes initial corrections to known offsets in the data.
- *Automatically naming of extracted signals*, includes renaming to control information concerning data sources and ownership.
- *Logging of data source characteristics*, links to data servicing tools for repair, adjustment, or other modifications that may be required immediately or at some future time.
- *Standardizing naming of the data source*, links to dictionaries that contain processing menus that have been customized for specific users and/or operating environments.

The same measurements that system operators see in real time may contain benchmark performance information that is valuable for years into the future. Such measurements may also be needed to determine the sequence of events for a complex disturbance, to construct an operating case model for the disturbance, or as a basis of comparison to evaluate the realism of power system models in general.

These observations imply two general rules for the organization of WAMS data:

Rule #1. WAMS data must remain retrievable and useable for many years after acquisition.

Rule #2. Procedures and toolsets for analysis of the WAMS database must be applicable to simulated measurements produced by model studies.

The above two rules are actually basic requirements from which many other rules, practices, or guidelines can be derived. For example, from Rule #1 we can derive the following:

Rule #3. Any WAMS data or analysis product must be clearly tagged to indicate—the origin of the data
- The conditions under which the data were acquired
- The processing applied to the data

And, expanding upon Rule #2, for any large power system we have

Rule #4. Procedures and toolsets for analysis of the WAMS database must permit integrated analysis of
- Measured power system behavior as obtained from any recorder in general use
- Simulated power system behavior as obtained from any modeling program in general use

Application of these rules is demonstrated in Fig. 14.40, for a disturbance near Phoenix Arizona on June 14, 2004. The resulting frequency transients are shown for locations that range from western Canada to southern California and Arizona. The figure provides the following general information:

- It was produced by a processing case called 040614PaloVerde_BusSigs1D
- The processing case was initiated at a local time of 02/09/05_13:22:51

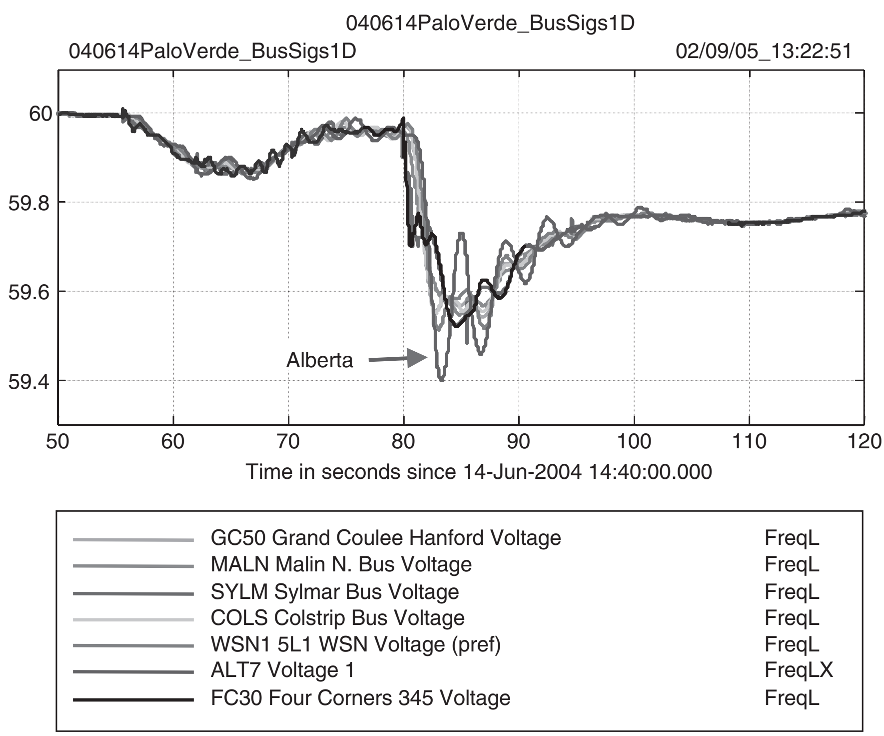


FIGURE 14.40 WECC Event June 14, 2004: Overview of PMU frequency signals.

- All signals are of type *FreqL* and thus local frequencies. The specific names indicate the sources as PMUs.
- The X in *FreqLX* for ALT7 in Alberta Canada indicates that the associated PMU had probably lost its GPS synchronization.

The name of the processing case, shown in the figure, indicates parent data files in the WAMS database at PNNL. Farther details of this example are provided in Refs. [39,40].

14.15 Mathematical Tools for Event Analysis

Figure 14.41 is a paradigm for the tools and procedures used in WAMS analysis. Modeling is a major topic in its own right, and not pursued here. The eigenanalysis derived from model data is closely linked to signal analysis, however, and some basic notions are needed here.

Modal analysis of oscillatory dynamics builds upon a tentative assumption that the dynamics are essentially linear for small motions about the equilibrium state. To the extent that this assumption is valid, the "swings" following a brief disturbance will be a sum of modal response terms like

$$m(t) = M\exp(-\sigma t)\cos(\omega t + \theta) \tag{14.2}$$

Here (σ, ω) are *mode parameters* that denote the frequency and damping of a mode, and (M, θ) are *mode shape parameters* that denote the strength and phase of that mode within signal $m(t)$. Mathematically, the mode parameters are expressed as a complex *eigenvalue* $\lambda = \sigma + j\omega$ and the mode shape parameters are expressed as a *residue*.

Underlying Eq. (14.2) are the system equations $\dot{x} = Ax + Bu$ and $y = Cx + Du$, where $\dot{x}$ denotes differentiation of x with respect to time. Variables u and y are respectively the *input* and the *output* of the system; x, the *internal state* of the system, is usually taken to be a vector of n elements.

Full eigenanalysis is based upon modal decompositions of the A matrix, which in turn requires a source model from which to extract it [8]. This produces a full set of eigenvalues plus associated eigenvectors. The eigenvalues lead to residue matrices with mode shape information that is specific to very special kinds of inputs and outputs.

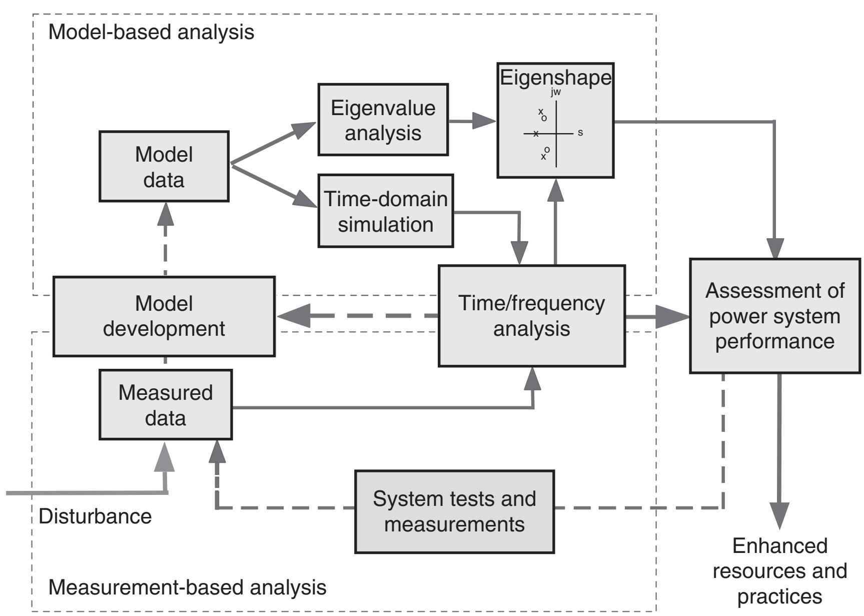


FIGURE 14.41 Integrated use of measurement and modeling tools.

Prony analysis, by contrast, is based upon modal decompositions of output vector $y(t)$. The modes and the modal parameters are those for a subset of A that is estimated from a subset of $y(t)$; the mode shape parameters are specific to whatever stimulus may have produced the output. Given sufficient knowledge of $u(t)$, an approximating subset can be constructed for $\{A, B, C, D\}$ [41,42].

In practice $u(t)$ is usually a sequence of discrete switching events that are not immediately known. Small signal analysis assumes that the response to each event is a free ring down of form

$$x(t) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} R^{(i)} x_0 \exp(\lambda_i t) \tag{14.3}$$

where $R^{(i)}$ is a residue matrix and state x_0 is the deviation from final equilibrium. Most events will redefine x_0, and some events or discrete control actions may significantly alter the underlying system parameters. Hence proper analysis must proceed on a piecewise basis.

All of these methods are approximate, and none can generate results of higher quality than the information provided to them. Results from model-based eigenanalysis are colored by errors in the model, and by linear approximations to nonlinear phenomena such as saturation and dead zones. Results from measurement-based eigenanalysis are colored by the extent and quality of the available signals. Some modes may not be sufficiently observable within the signal set. Those which are observable may be obscured by noise, by dynamic nonlinearities, and by hidden inputs to the system.

Prony analysis, in the present context, is considered to include any algorithm that directly fits time-domain signals with the "Prony model" of Eq. (14.2). This model generalizes that of Fourier analysis, and can sometimes be used for the same purposes. Fourier methods remain a mainstay of WAMS analysis, however [43]. Examples of such analysis are provided below.

14.15.1 Western System Breakup of August 10, 1996

Comprehensive data for the August 10 breakup were captured on a PPSM unit at BPAs Dittmer Control Center, which was recording continuously at 20 sps. The existing archive extends from 0951 to 1154 PDT, and then from 1258 to 1603 PDT. Key portions of the overall record are shown in Figs. 14.5, 14.12, 14.42, and 14.43. Tripping of McNary generation was a major factor in the breakup.

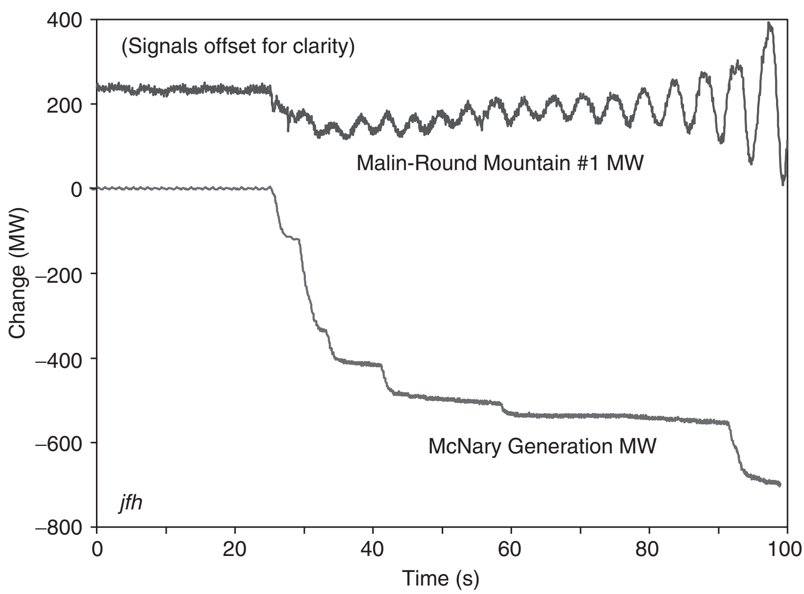
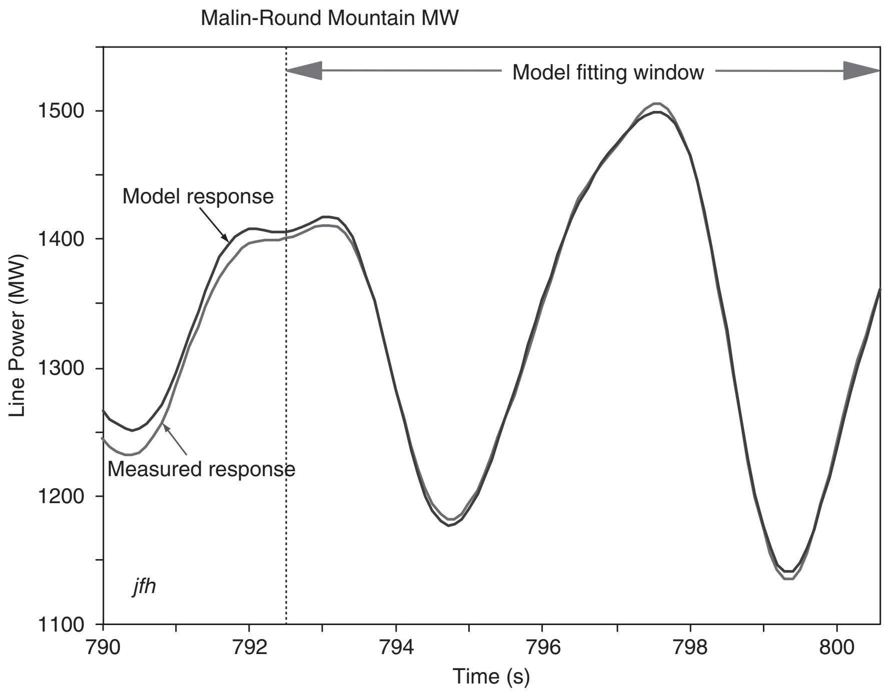


FIGURE 14.42 McNary plant generation during WSCC breakup of August 10, 1996.



Prony Model Table

Mode	Frequency (Hz)	Damping Ratio
PACI	0.216	–0.0628
signal trend	0.0596	–0.0216
Alberta	0.448	–0.0234
Kemano	0.615	–0.0234

FIGURE 14.43 Oscillation modes just prior to final separation on August 10, 1996.

Tables 14.4 and 14.5 show that frequency and damping of the PDCI mode were normal in the morning of August 10, but lower than normal after the John Day–Marion line trip. Though the system (and mode frequency) recovered, this event may have been a near miss [9]. Though the Keeler–Allston line trip produced a similar drop in mode parameters, it occurred under weaker conditions leading to

TABLE 14.4 Behavior of the PACI Mode to August 10, 1996

Date/Event	Frequency (Hz)	Damping (%)
12/08/92 (Palo Verde trip)	0.28	7.5
03/14/93 (Palo Verde trip)	0.33	4.5
07/11/95 (Brake insertion)	0.28	10.6
07/02/96 (System breakup)	0.22	1.2

TABLE 14.5 Behavior of the PACI Mode on August 10, 1996

Time/Event	Frequency (Hz)	Damping (%)
10:52:19 (Brake insertion)	0.285	8.4
14:52:37 (John Day–Marion)	0.264	3.7
15:18 (Ringing)	0.276	
15:42:03 (Keeler–Allston)	0.264	3.5
15:45 (Ringing)	0.252	
15:47:40 (Oscillation start)	0.238	−3.1
15:48:50 (Oscillation finish)	0.216	−6.3

successive generator trips and increasingly violent oscillations [11,13,44]. By that time the only way to mitigate them would have been to cut the interaction paths by islanding the system.

Much of this information is readily apparent to Fourier analysis. Figure 14.44 shows spectral changes produced by the Keeler–Allston line trip, and Fig. 14.6 shows evolving spectra for the final minutes before the breakup time/frequency displays of this sort are easily implemented and highly recommended.

14.15.2 Effects of the Alberta Connection

The Alberta power system, with a capacity of roughly 10,000 MW, is usually connected to the remainder of the western power system through a 500 kV tie plus two much weaker lines. However, it is not unusual for the Alberta system to operate as an island for days at a time.

Operational status of the 500 kV Alberta connection defines two distinct patterns for modes in the overall power system. Typical effects are shown in Figs. 14.45 and 14.46, and in Table 14.6 [16]. Model studies must consider both of these, and the settings for some kinds of stability controls would have to be "scheduled" differently for each condition. This is especially likely for wide area damping controls based on modulation of HVDC, TCSC, or SVC equipment.

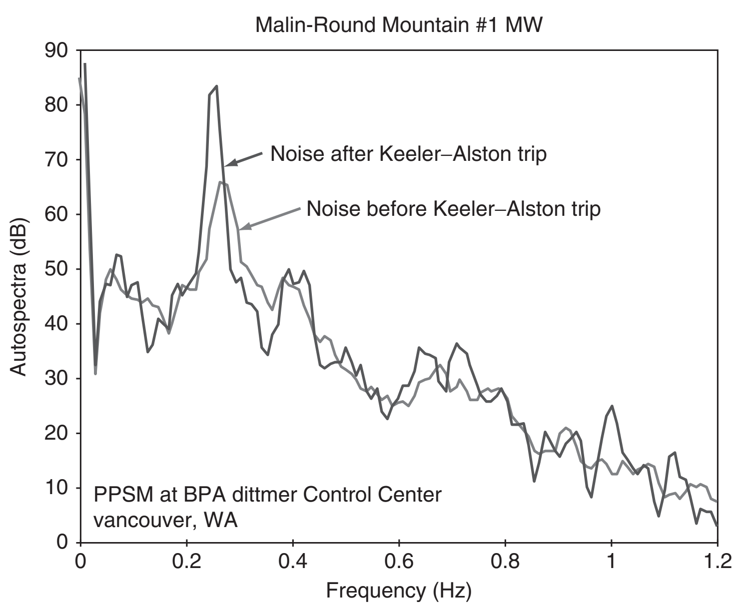


FIGURE 14.44 Spectra for Keeler–Alston line trip just before WSCC breakup.

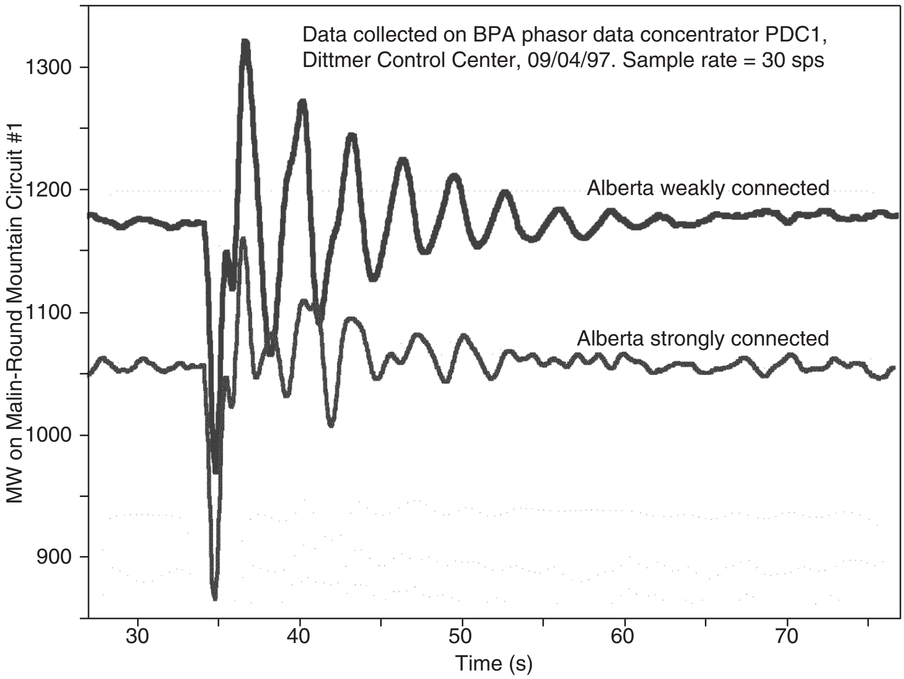


FIGURE 14.45 Effects of the Alberta connection: COI response to energization of the 1400 MW Chief Joseph dynamic brake.

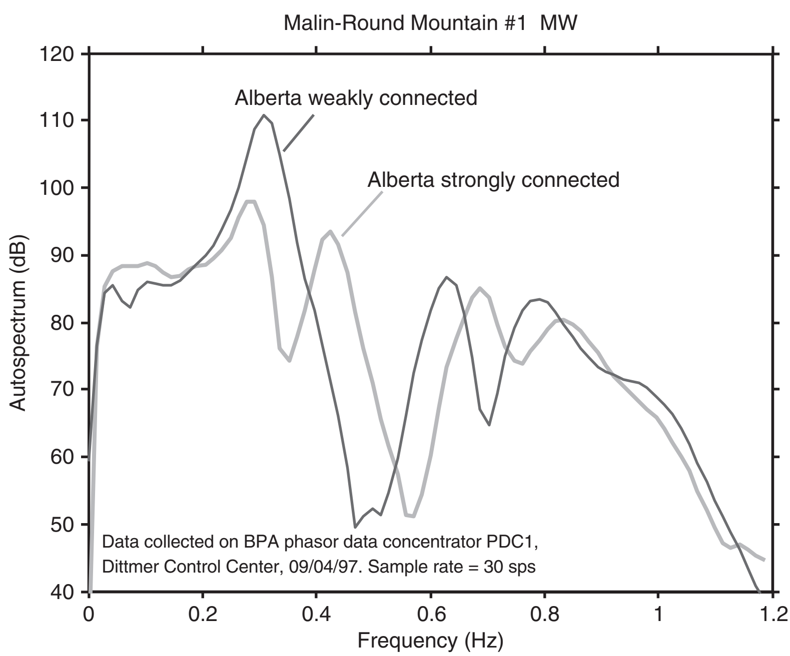


FIGURE 14.46 Effects of the Alberta connection: COI response to energization of the 1400 MW Chief Joseph dynamic brake.

TABLE 14.6 Effects of the Alberta Connection on WECC Modes

Mode	Alberta Strongly Connected	Alberta Weakly Connected
North–South	0.296 Hz at 4.9%	0.314 Hz at 5.7%
Alberta	0.424 Hz at 4.3%	
Kemano	0.637 Hz at 5.1%	
Kemano?	0.703 Hz at 7.5%	
Colstrip	0.751 Hz at 8.5%	0.751 Hz at 6.8%

14.15.3 Model Validation against WSCC Tests on June 7, 2000

On June 7, 2000, the WSCC performed a series of benchmark tests to examine system dynamic performance with the Alberta system strongly connected [45,46]. One product of the tests was a series of planning models calibrated against measured response.

Figure 14.47 presents a frequency-domain view of comparative model response for insertion of the Chief Joseph dynamic brake. The model is outwardly realistic for the North–South mode and for the Alberta mode. An immediate question is whether its representation of the Kemano mode is within the normal range of system behavior, and thus marginally acceptable.

Such questions require comparisons against historical records. Figure 14.48, for brake insertions between 1997 and 2004, show that this modeling of the Kemano mode is either unrealistic or very atypical. Actual frequency of the Kemano mode can also be determined by spectral analysis of ambient noise and transient disturbances recorded in the BCH system.

14.15.4 ACDC Interaction Tests in September 2005

On September 13 and 14, 2005 the BPA performed comprehensive probing tests extending those of June 7, 2000. These tests were performed in coordination with WECC technical groups, following an official Test Plan [47] and general guidelines presented in Ref. [48].

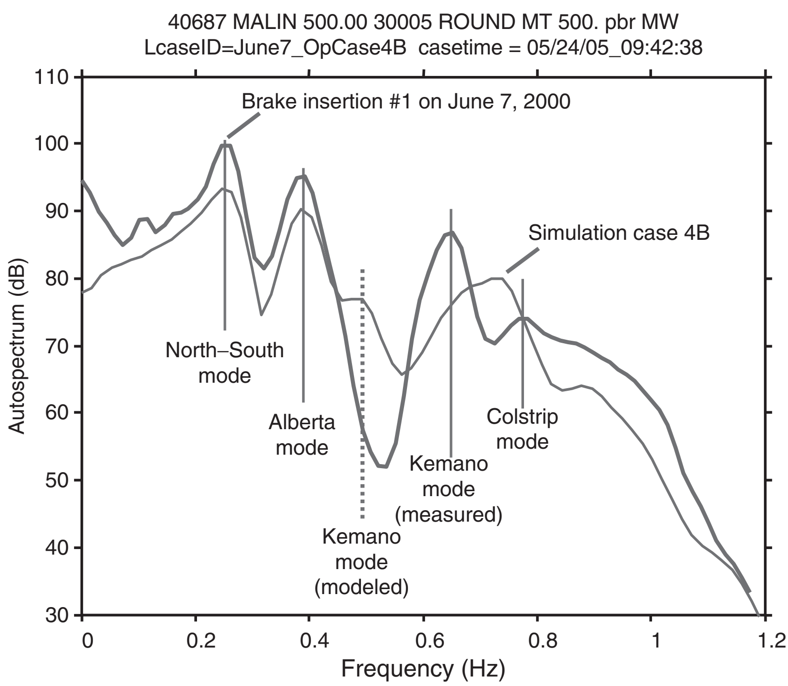


FIGURE 14.47 Brake insertion #1 on June 7, 2000 (Alberta strongly connected).

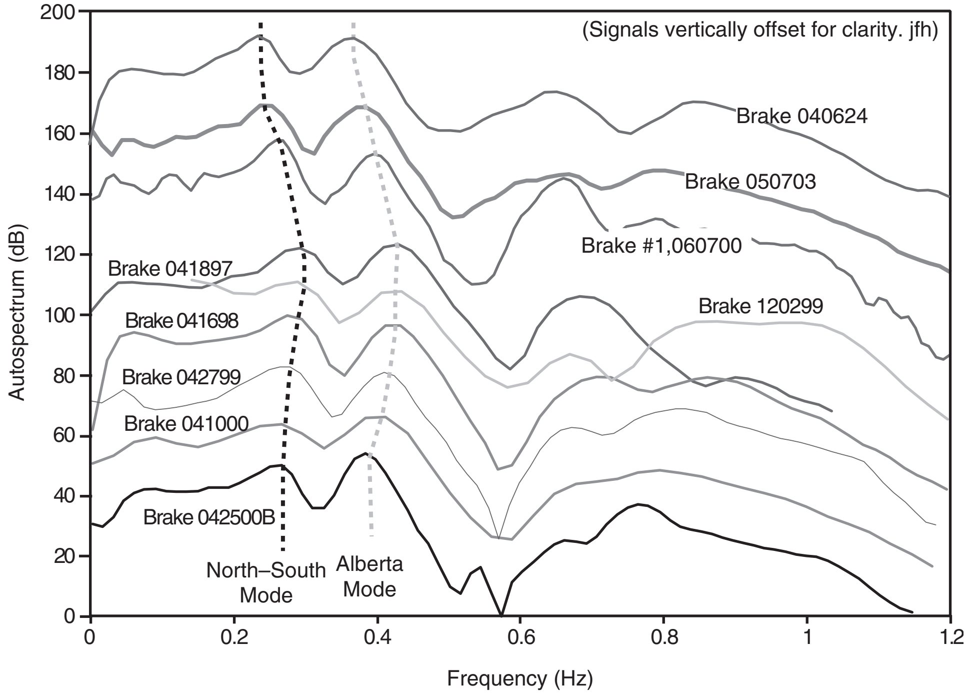


FIGURE 14.48 Ringdown signatures for recent insertions of the Chief Joseph dynamic brake (Alberta strongly connected).

The test objectives included the following:

A. Obtain a seasonal benchmark for dynamic performance of the WECC system
B. Develop comparative data to evaluate and refine the realism of WECC modeling tools
C. Refine and validate methods that identify power system dynamics with minimal or no use of probing signals

Distinguishing features of the June 2005 tests were a strong focus on objective C, plus greatly improved instrumentation and software for achieving this objective. This section shows initial results obtained for probing with low-level pseudorandom noise, and the Alberta system disconnected from the remainder of the grid (Fig. 14.49).

The basic strategy in low-level probing is to start with a very weak probing signal, and to progressively adjust that signal to the minimum level that produces acceptable results. Key real-time resources for this are PDC StreamReaders, accompanied by an add-on dynamic signal analyzer (DSA) tool for spectral analysis (shown earlier in Fig. 14.10). Off-line tools for full analysis include SYSFIT [49], for transfer function fitting, plus a range of advanced tools that are applied in time domain [50–52].

Results shown in Figs. 14.50 through 14.52 were obtained with band-limited white noise having limits of ± 20 MW dc and a standard deviation of 14 MW. These indicate that good measurements can be obtained with a probing signal that roughly doubles the apparent noise that is natural to the power system, and is essentially invisible to all but the closest examination.

14.16 Conclusions

Extracting useful information from power system behavior requires integrated use of measurements, models, and mathematics in a collaborative effort of many entities. SSM networks, of which PMU networks are a salient example, provide the enabling platform for the infrastructure.

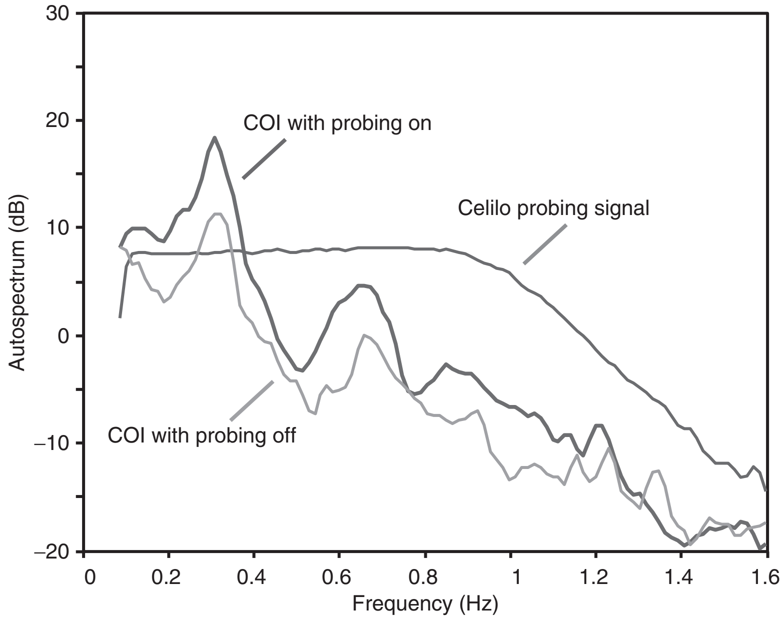


FIGURE 14.49 Autospectra for low-level noise probing.

PMUs are an important and representative aspect of the ongoing transition from analog technology to digital technology. They offer the promise of standardized measurements that greatly improve upon the quality of their analog predecessors, and of information networks that provide detailed real-time portraits of entire power systems. And, like most digital technology, they are undergoing significant

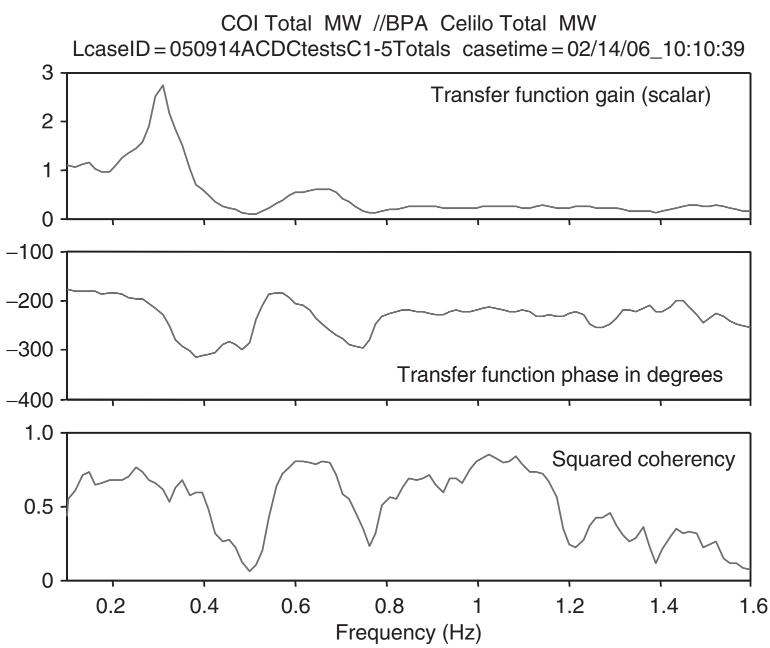


FIGURE 14.50 Correlation results for low-level noise probing.

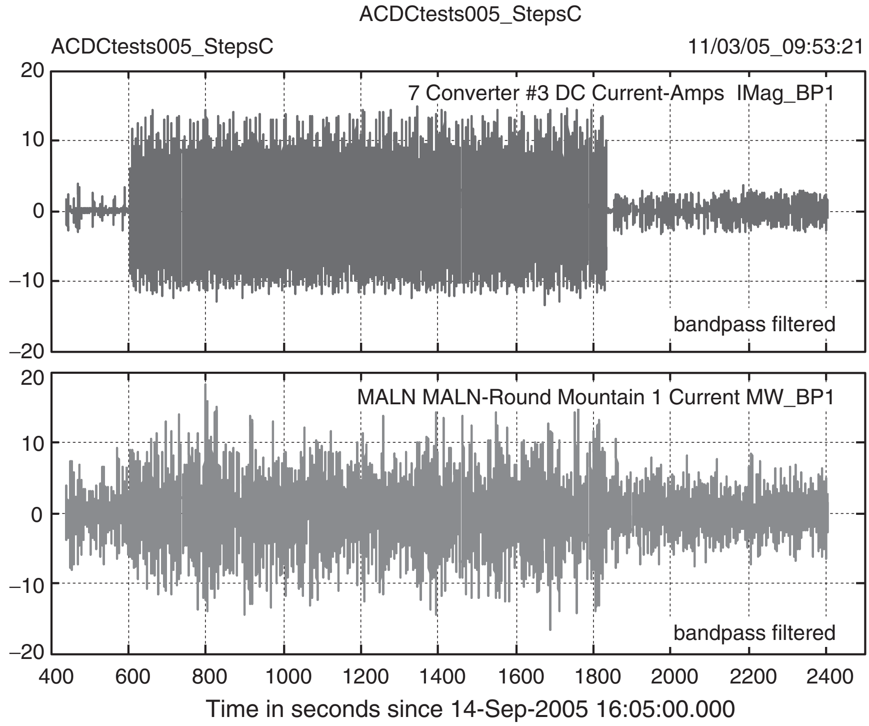


FIGURE 14.51 Response of Malin-Round Mountain MW to low-level noise probing.

evolutionary changes after being placed in service. Basic issues to be resolved are the operating environment in which the technology must perform, the information functions that it must support, and how that information enters the grid management process.

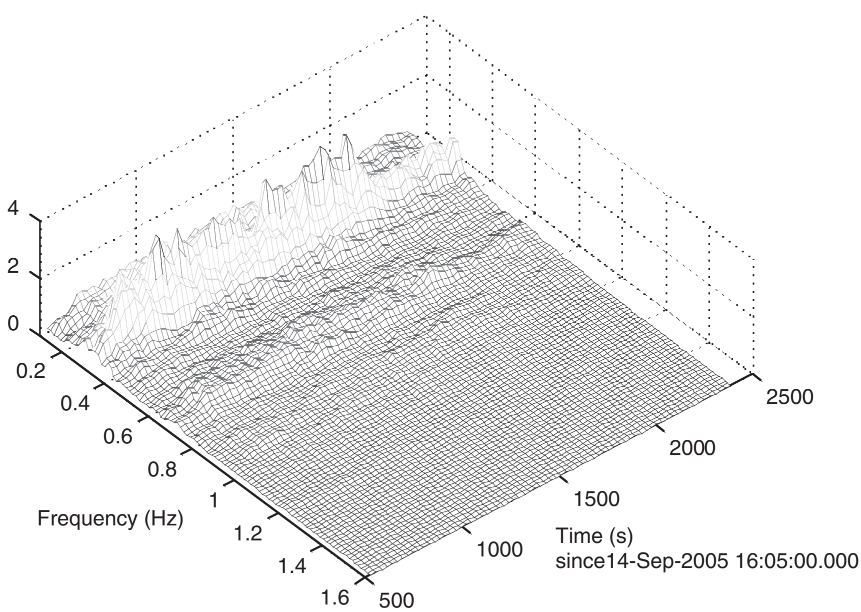


FIGURE 14.52 Response of Malin-Round Mountain MW to low-level noise probing.

Given a sharper perspective on these matters, the community of technology users can join with that of technology developers to better define the performance expected of SSM technologies, and to develop suitable means for determining the degree to which a particular instrument has met those expectations. Resolving these issues for PMU technology provides the basis for a future common standard that is applicable to all devices which export phasor signals (including some digital relays and controllers), and that can be extended to multirate SSM networks that are not restricted to phasor signals.

Glossary of Terms

DSA	dynamic signal analyzer
DSM	dynamic system monitor
GPS	global positioning satellite
IMU	information management unit
PDC	phasor data concentrator
PMU	phasor measurement unit
PPSM	portable power system monitor
PSM	power system monitor (primary definition)
PSM	power system measurements (secondary definition)
SCADA	supervision control and data acquisition
SPM	synchronized phasor measurements
SSM	synchronized system measurements
AGC	automatic generation control
FACTS	flexible AC transmission system
HVDC	high-voltage direct current
PSS	power system stabilizer
SVC	static VAR compensator
TCSC	thyristor-controlled series capacitor
EIPP	Eastern Interconnection Phasor Project
WACS	wide area control system
WAMS	wide area measurement system
ISO	independent system operator
NERC	North American Electric Reliability Council
WECC	Western Electricity Coordinating Council
WSCC	Western Systems Coordinating Council (predecessor to WECC)
AEP	American Electric Power Company
APS	Arizona Public Service Company
BCH	British Columbia Hydro and Power Authority
BPA	Bonneville Power Administration
PNNL	Pacific Northwest National Laboratory
WAPA	Western Area Power Administration
DMWG	Disturbance Monitoring Work Group of the WECC
M&VWG	Monitoring & Validation Work Group of the WECC
PVTF	Performance Validation Task Force of the M&VWG
COI	California–Oregon Interconnection
PACI	Pacific AC Intertie
PDCI	Pacific DC Intertie
pow	point on wave
sps	samples per second
DSI	dynamic system identification
FFT	fast Fourier transform
PRS	Prony solution

Appendix A WECC Requirements for Monitor Equipment

In 2001, the WECC approved its Dynamic Performance and Disturbance Monitoring Plan to address NERC Planning Standard I.F., *System Adequacy and Security—Disturbance Monitoring*. Within this Plan the WECC established a reimbursement program to assist member utilities with the cost of equipment and maintenance associated with dynamic disturbance monitors at selected system locations.

A monitor shall be judged as meeting basic WECC performance requirements if it satisfies the following technical criteria [53]:

- *Frequency response of overall data acquisition*:
  - is -3 dB or greater at 5 Hz
  - does not exceed -40 dB at frequencies above the Nyquist frequency (a limit of -60 dB is preferred)
  - does not exceed -60 dB at frequencies that are harmonics of the actual power system-operating frequency (for design purposes, assume all frequencies in the range of 59 to 61 Hz)
  - does not produce excessive ringing in records for step disturbances
- *Data sampling rate*:
  - Overall frequency response requirements imply a minimum sample rate that is 4 to 5 times the -3 dB bandwidth of overall data acquisition.
  - For compatibility with other monitors, the sample rate should be an integer multiple of 20 or 30 sps. A multiple of 30 sps is preferred.
- *Numerical resolution and dynamic range*:
  - Resolution of the analog-to-digital (A/D) conversion process must be 16 bits or higher.
  - Scaling of signals entering the A/D conversion should assure that 12–14 bits are actively used to represent them. Signals for which this scaling may overload the A/D during large transients may be recorded on two channels, in which one has less resolution but a greater dynamic range.
- *Measurement noise must be within the normal limits of modern instrument technology*. Noise levels for frequency transducers that are based upon zero-crossing logic tend to be unacceptable.
- *Documentation for the data acquisition process*:
  - must be sufficiently detailed that overall quality of the acquisition system can be assessed
  - must be sufficiently detailed that acquired records can be compensated for attenuation and phase lags introduced by the acquisition system
- *The monitor or monitor system stores data continuously and retains the last 240 h (10 days) at all times without operator intervention*. A monitor that automatically erases the oldest file and stores the newest file will meet this criterion if the buffer area is 10 days or more. If the monitor requires an operator to remove old data to prevent storage overflow, a 60-day buffer is required to accommodate typical practices with monitor systems.
- *The monitor is able to typically store event data files for 60 days without operator intervention*. Since events are inherently unpredictable, this is only a "typical" value based on operating experience. If the monitor stores continuous data, it does not have to store events.
- *The monitor demonstrates synchronization to universal time coordinated (UTC) to a 100 μs level or better*. Synchronization to GPS-based timing with suitable technique is preferred. Other approaches may be acceptable.
- Data access is by network, leased line, or dial-up with software for transfer, storage, and data archiving.
- Data formats are well defined and reasonable. Preferred formats for real-time data transfer are those equivalent to or meeting IEEE standards IEEE1344 or PC37.118 or the PDCstream format for concentrator output. The preferred file format is PhasorFile described in PhasorFileFormat.doc (*.dst) commonly in use in the WECC.

Figure 14.53 represents the filtering requirements in graphical form and applies it to an order 4 Butterworth filter that has a 12 Hz bandwidth and an output rate of 60 sps.

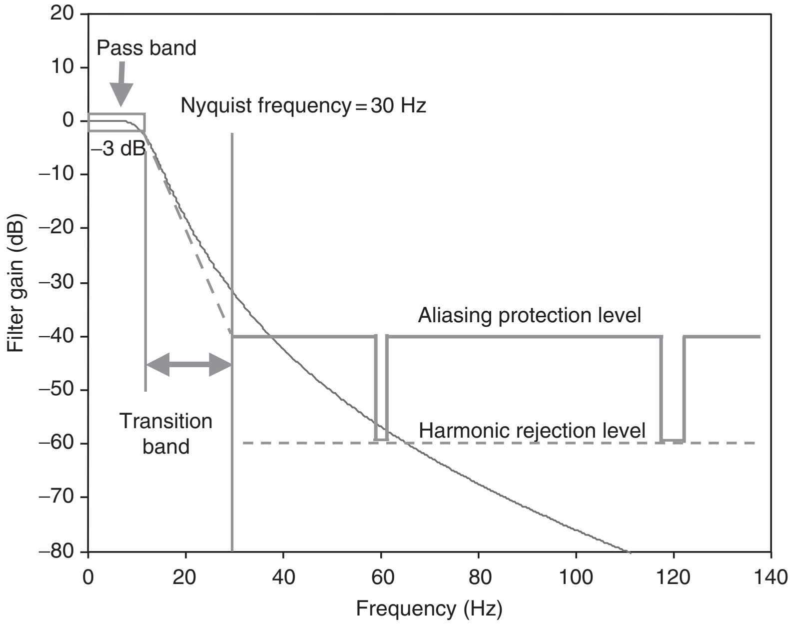


FIGURE 14.53 12 Hz Butterworth filter vs. WECC Filtering Standard.

These minimum requirements are indicated as sufficient for meeting WECC needs, but they may not be seen as necessary in some cases. They are intended as quantified guidelines for monitor evaluation, and they are deliberately stated in a simple manner. There are many underlying assumptions, plus considerable room for engineering judgment.

Appendix B Toolset Functionalities for Processing and Analysis of WAMS Data

Certain functionalities are basic to the efficient and effective use of WAMS data. The DSI toolbox, which has evolved through some three decades of WECC use, is used here as a representative example of what is usually required.

File reading

- All data types from regional monitor systems. Include data repair and standardized naming of derived signals.
- All data from transient stability programs.
- Data produced during system analysis.

File writing

- Standardized files for merging, continued analysis, or export to other users. Includes internal documentation, substitution of generic names to conceal data sources.

File merging

- *Time stamp editing*: Important for merging mismatched files covering the same event
- *Signal resampling*: Required before merging files, adjusting timesteps, etc.
- Automatic renaming of signals to facilitate sorting
- Series and parallel merging of multiple files

Primary Modules in the DSI Toolbox

Operation	Module
1	*Batch Plots*: Plot all or selected signals, control axes, send to printer, save to file, manipulate, etc. Can plot any signal against any other, including sample number
2	*Angle/freq refs.*: Select angle or frequency signal as reference, and subtract from all other signals of that type; estimate frequency from angle signals. At user option, data from this operation overstore or are appended to original data
3	*Filter/decimate*: Input data are filtered and/or decimated. Filter types include high-, low-, and band-pass Butterworth, several kinds of moving average, the BPA "activity filter" for oscillation detection, and filters defined by the user under keyboard control
4	*Backload filtered*: Data from the filter operation overstore or are appended to present data. Decimated data must overstore present data, due to change in sample rate
5	*Fourier*: Fast Fourier transforms (FFT), inverse FFT, windowing, autospectra vs. frequency, coherency vs. frequency, waterfall plots, calculate transfer function using non-parametric gain and phase vs. frequency
6	*Histograms*: Provides statistical information concerning signal activity. Usually preceded by one or more cycles of bandpass filtering are done first
7	*Ringdown GUI*: Calculate mode frequencies, damping ratios, mode shapes, and transfer functions from ringdown signals using Prony analysis. Many algorithms are provided
8	*Ringdown utilities*: Provides tabular and graphical display for ringdown GUI, constructs linear models for control system design
9	*AutoCorrelations*: Time-domain counterpart to the Fourier processing option. Experimental code seeks modes and damping from system noise response
21	*ModeMeter*: Custom codes for estimating mode frequencies, damping ratios, mode shapes, and transfer functions from ambient noise and other signals. Several codesets under development by universities in DOE/EPSCoR project, BPA, PNNL, and others. Some codesets build upon proprietary codes distributed by the Math Works, other National Laboratories, and the NASA Langley Research Center
22	*EventScan*: Custom codes that open and scan long file sequences for dynamic events. Not integrated into the DSI toolbox as yet
41	*Phasor utilities*: Custom codes for deriving phasors from point-on-wave signals. Undocumented toolset for expert users
42	*Backload phasor results*: Replaces original point-on-wave signals by derived phasors
51	*Special displays*: Custom display codes provided by or for special users. Experimental versions are under development at BPA, perhaps elsewhere
94	*DownSelect signals*: Sorts and/or downselects the signals in active memory
95	*Load new data*: Loads a new data set for analysis, with optional restart of the automatic processing log
96	*Save results*: Saves analysis results and processing log to output file. User can reduce data time span, select between PSMT and SWX output formats; future option will provide extended.dst format compatible with PDC utilities
97	*Keyboard*: Provides direct access to MATLAB Command Window (MCW) during a DSI toolbox session. A primary means for linking into third party toolsets
98	*Defaults on/off*: Toggles the default settings that customize processing for efficient performance of predefined task sequences
99	*End case*: Terminates execution of the DSI toolbox

Acknowledgments

The Pacific Northwest National Laboratory (PNNL) is operated for the U.S. Department of Energy by the Battelle Memorial Institute under contract DE-AC06-76RLO 1830. Support to the WECC is partly funded by the Consortium for Electric Reliability Technology Solutions (CERTS) as a reliability outreach activity of the U.S. Department of Energy (DOE).

References

WECC documents cited here are available at ftp.bpa.gov/pub/WAMS%20Information/, http://www.wecc.biz/committees/JGC/DMWG/documents/, or by special request to the authors.

1. *WSCC Plan for Dynamic Performance and Disturbance Monitoring*, prepared by the WECC Disturbance Monitoring Work Group, October 4, 2000.

2. R.L. Cresap, W.A. Mittelstadt, D.N. Scott, and C.W. Taylor, Operating experience with modulation of the Pacific HVDC Intertie, *IEEE Transactions on PAS*, July/August 1978, 1053–1059.
3. J.F. Hauer, Robust damping controls for large power systems, *IEEE Control Systems Magazine*, January 1989, 12–19.
4. CIGRE Task Force 38.01.07, *Control of Power System Oscillations*. CIGRE Technical Brochure, December 1996.
5. J.F. Hauer, Reactive power control as a means for enhanced interarea damping in the Western U.S. power system—A frequency-domain perspective considering robustness needs, *Application of Static Var Systems for System Dynamic Performance*, IEEE Publication 87TH0187-5-PWR, 1987, pp. 79–92.
6. *Evaluation of Low Frequency System Response: Study Results and Recommendations*. Report of the WSCC 0.7 Hz Oscillation Ad Hoc Work Group, September 1990.
7. J.F. Hauer and J.R. Hunt, in association with the WSCC System Oscillations Work Groups, Extending the realism of planning models for the Western North America power system, *Fifth Symposium of Specialists in Electric Operational and Expansion Planning (SEPOPE)*, Recife (PE) Brazil, May 19–24, 1996.
8. *Eigenanalysis and Frequency Domain Methods for System Dynamic Performance*, IEEE Publication 90TH0292-3-PWR, 1990.
9. J.F. Hauer and J.E. Dagle, *Review of Recent Reliability Issues and System Events*, PNNL technical report PNNL-13150, prepared for the U.S. Department of Energy Transmission Reliability Program by the Consortium for Electric Reliability Solutions (CERTS), December 1999.
10. K.E. Stahlkopf and M.R. Wilhelm, Tighter controls for Busier systems, *IEEE Spectrum*, 34(4), April 1997, 48–52.
11. D.N. Kosterev, C.W. Taylor, and W.A. Mittelstadt, Model validation for the August 10, 1996 WSCC system outage, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 14(3), August 1999, 967–979.
12. J.F. Hauer and C.W. Taylor, Information, reliability, and control in the new power system, *Proceedings of the 1998 American Control Conference*, Philadelphia, PA, June 24–26, 1998.
13. C.W. Taylor, Improving grid behavior, *IEEE Spectrum*, 36(6), June 1999, 40–45.
14. J.F. Hauer, D.J. Trudnowski, G.J. Rogers, W.A. Mittelstadt, W.H. Litzenberger, and J.M. Johnson, Keeping an eye on power system dynamics, *IEEE Computer Applications in Power*, October 1997, 50–54.
15. J.F. Hauer, W.A. Mittelstadt, W.H. Litzenberger, C. Clemans, D. Hamai, and P. Overholt, *Wide Area Measurements for Real-Time Control and Operation of Large Electric Power Systems—Evaluation and Demonstration of Technology for the New Power System*. Prepared for U.S. Department of Energy Under BPA Contracts X5432-1, X9876-2; January 1999. This report and associated attachments are available on compact disk.
16. J.F. Hauer, F.J. Hughes, D.J. Trudnowski, G.J. Rogers, J.W. Pierre, L.L. Scharf, and W.H. Litzenberger, *A Dynamic Information Manager for Networked Monitoring of Large Power Systems*, EPRI Report TR-112031, May 1999.
17. J.F. Hauer, W.A. Mittelstadt, K.E. Martin, and J.W. Burns, *Integrated Dynamic Information for the Western Power System: The WECC WAMS in 2004*, Report of the WECC Disturbance Monitoring Work Group, September 10, 2004.
18. *Final Report on the August 14, 2003 Blackout in the United States and Canada: Causes and Recommendations*. Issued by the U.S.–Canada Power System Outage Task Force, April 5, 2004.
19. J.E. Dagle, *Data Management Issues Associated with the August 14, 2003 Blackout Investigation*, IEEE/PES Panel on Major Grid Blackouts of 2003 in North America and Europe, IEEE PES General Meeting, Denver, CO, June 6–12, 2004.
20. J.F. Hauer, Navin Bhatt, Kirit Shah, and Sharma Kolluri, *Performance of 'WAMS East' in Providing Dynamic Information for the North East Blackout of August 14, 2003*, IEEE/PES Panel on Major Grid Blackouts of 2003 in North America and Europe, IEEE PES General Meeting, Denver, CO, June 6–12, 2004.

21. R.P. Schulz, *Power System Dynamics in the Eastern US—Canada Interconnection: Some Experiences*, AEP Internal Report, July 30, 2004. Available at: http://phasors.pnl.gov/
22. Matt Donnelly, Paul Barber, and Jim Dyer, *Progress Toward a High-Speed Data Network for the Eastern Interconnection—The Eastern Interconnection Phasor Project*, Proceedings of the Georgia Tech Fault and Disturbance Analysis Conference, Atlanta, April 26–27, 2004.
23. *August 14, 2003 Blackout: Final NERC Report—Conclusions and Recommendations*. July 13, 2004. Available at: http://www.nerc.com/~filez/blackout.html
24. K.E. Martin, *Synchronized System Measurement Networks in North America: Operating Process and System Formats Based Upon BPA's Phasor Data Concentrator*, WAMS Working Note, June 1, 2004.
25. J.F. Hauer and K.E. Martin, *Data Concentrator Technologies for Integrated Phasor Measurements: A Perspective on Required Functionalities and the Status of Present Technologies*, WAMS internal communication, February 10, 2003.
26. J.F. Hauer, BPA experience in the measurement of power system dynamics, *Inter-Area Oscillations in Power Systems*, IEEE Publication 95 TP 101, pp. 158–163.
27. A.G. Phadke, Synchronized phasor measurements in power systems, *IEEE Computer Applications in Power Systems*, April 1993, 10–15.
28. *Real-Time Phasor Measurement for Monitoring and Control*, EPRI Report TR-103640S, December 1993.
29. J.F. Hauer, D.C. Erickson, D.J. Trudnowski, and M.K. Donnelly, Value engineering: A dynamic information technology package for power system applications, *1995 Fault and Disturbance Analysis/Precise Measurements in Power Systems Conference*, Arlington, VA, November 8–10, 1995.
30. J.F. Hauer, Validation of phasor calculation in the macrodyne PMU for California–Oregon transmission project tests of March 1993, *IEEE Transactions on Power Delivery*, 11, July 1996, 1224–1231.
31. J.F. Hauer, C.J. Demeure, and L.L. Scharf, Initial results in Prony analysis of power system response signals, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, February 1990, 80–89.
32. J.F. Hauer, *Use of Synchronized Phasor Measurements to Correct Timestamp and Filter Effects in Monitor Records Collected from Analog Instrumentation: Applied to Records of June 7, 2000 and August 10, 1996*, M&VWG Working Note, December 21, 2001.
33. J.F. Hauer, Navin Bhatt, Kirit Shah, and Sharma Kolluri, *Performance of 'WAMS East' in Providing Dynamic Information for the North East Blackout of August 14, 2003*, IEEE/PES Panel on Major Grid Blackouts of 2003 in North America and Europe, IEEE PES General Meeting, Denver, CO, June 6–12, 2004.
34. J.F. Hauer, Ken Martin, and Harry Lee, *Evaluating Dynamic Performance of Phasor Measurement Units: Experience in the Western Power System*, Interim Report of the WECC Disturbance Monitoring Work Group, partial draft of August 5, 2005.
35. J.F. Hauer and others, *PMU Performance During Stressed Operating Conditions: Harmonic Effects for Off-Nominal Frequencies*, Working Note for the WECC Disturbance Monitoring Work Group, partial draft of January 16, 2004.
36. J.F. Hauer, Validation of phasor calculation in the macrodyne PMU for California–Oregon transmission project tests of March 1993, *IEEE Transactions on Power Delivery*, 11, July 1996, pp. 1224–1231.
37. *PC37.118/D7.3 Draft Standards for Synchrophasors for Power Systems*, recommended by the Power System Relaying Committee of the IEEE Power Engineering Society, September 22, 2005.
38. J.F. Hauer and F. Vakili, An oscillation trigger for power system monitoring, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, February 1990, 74–79.
39. J.F. Hauer, *Database Organization for Analysis of Major System Events Recorded on the WECC WAMS*, Working Note for the WECC Disturbance Monitoring Work Group, February 22, 2005.
40. J.F. Hauer, *Integrated Monitor Facilities for the Eastern Interconnection: Management & Analysis of WAMS Data Following a Major System Event*, Working Note of the Eastern Interconnection Phasor Project (EIPP), December 16, 2004.

41. J.N. Juang, *Applied System Identification*, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ, 1994.
42. P. Van Overshee and B. De Moor, *Subspace Identification for Linear Systems*, Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht, 1996.
43. J.S. Bendat and A.G. Piersol, *Engineering Applications of Correlation and Spectral Analysis*, John Wiley, New York, 1980.
44. *Western Systems Coordinating Council Disturbance Report for the Power System Outage That Occurred on the Western Interconnection August 10, 1996 1548 PAST*. Approved by the WSCC Operations Committee on October 18, 1996. Available at: http://www.wscc.com/outages.htm
45. J.F. Hauer, M.J. Beshir, and W.A. Mittelstadt, *Dynamic Performance Validation in the Western Power System*, in association with WSCC work groups. APEx 2000 Conference in Kananaskis, Alberta, October 2000.
46. J.F. Hauer, *Interim Report on the Model Validation Tests of June 7, 2000—Part 1: Oscillatory Dynamics*, Principal investigator WSCC Performance Validation Task Force (PVTF) of the Modeling and Validation Work Group, October 26, 2000.
47. *Performance Validation and Noise Injection Staged Tests—Test Plan Comprehensive Report*. WAMS Working Note distributed August 30, 2005 and updated September 12, 2005 to reflect small changes in test schedule.
48. J.F. Hauer, *A Perspective on Use of the Pacific HVDC Intertie for Wide Area Tests of Western Power System Dynamics*, WAMS Working Note developed under BPA/EPRI Tailored Collaboration, June 10, 1997. (Attachment to WAMS Information Manager Report EPRI Report TR-112031, May 1999)
49. J.F. Hauer, Power system identification by fitting structured models to measured frequency response, *IEEE Transactions on PAS*, April 1982, 915–923.
50. R.W. Wies, J.W. Pierre, and D.J. Trudnowski, Use of ARMA block processing for estimating stationary low-frequency electromechanical modes of power systems, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 18(1), February 2003, 167–173.
51. M.G. Anderson, N. Zhou, J.W. Pierre, and R.W. Wies, Bootstrap-based confidence interval estimates for electromechanical modes from multiple output analysis of measured ambient data, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 20(2), May 2005, 943–950.
52. N. Zhou, J. Pierre, and J.F. Hauer, Initial results in power system identification from injected probing signals using a subspace method, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 21(3), 1296–1302, 2006.
53. Principal investigator K.E. Martin, *WECC Disturbance/Performance Monitor Equipment: Proposed Standards for WECC Certification and Reimbursement*, Draft Report of the WECC Disturbance Monitoring Work Group, March 17, 2004.

15

Dynamic Security Assessment

Peter W. Sauer
University of Illinois at Urbana-Campaign

Kevin L. Tomsovic
Washington State University

Vijay Vittal
Arizona State University

15.1 Definitions and Historical Perspective

Power system security in the context of this chapter is concerned with the technical performance and quality of service when a disturbance causes a change in system conditions. Strictly speaking, every small change in load is a disturbance that causes a change in system conditions; however, this topic focuses on what could be called "large changes" in system conditions. These changes are referred to as "contingencies." Most commonly, contingencies result in relay operations that are designed to protect the system from faults or abnormal conditions. Typical relay operations result in the loss of a line, transformer, generator, or major load.

When changes occur, the various components of the power system respond and hopefully reach a new equilibrium condition that is acceptable according to some criteria. Mathematical analysis of these responses and new equilibrium condition is called security analysis. If the analysis evaluates only the expected postdisturbance equilibrium condition (steady-state operating point), this is called static security assessment (SSA). If the analysis evaluates the transient performance of the system as it progresses after the disturbance, this is called dynamic security assessment (DSA). DSA has been formally defined by the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE), Power Engineering Society's (PES), working group on DSA as

> Dynamic Security Assessment is an evaluation of the ability of a certain power system to withstand a defined set of contingencies and to survive the transition to an acceptable steady-state condition.

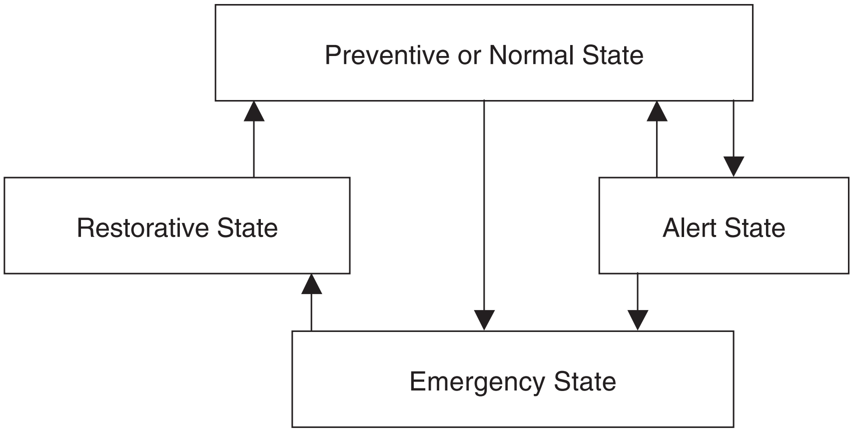


FIGURE 15.1 Operating states.

Very early power systems were often separate and isolated regions of generators and loads. As systems became larger and more interconnected, the possibility of disturbances propagating long distances increased. The Northeast blackout of November 1965 started a major emphasis on the reliability and security of electric power systems. The benchmark paper by Tom Dy Liacco introduced the concept of the preventive (normal), emergency, and restorative operating states and their associated controls (Dy Liacco, 1967). The preventive state is the normal state wherein the system is stable with all components within operating constraints. The emergency state arises when the system begins to lose stability, or when component operating constraints are violated. The restorative state is when service to some customers has been lost—usually due to progression through the emergency state and the operation of protective devices. A significant extension added the alert state between the preventative (or normal) state and the emergency state as shown in Fig. 15.1 (Cihlar et al., 1969).

This is a significant extension because it introduced the concept of a "potential emergency." If the occurrence of a likely contingency causes instability or operation with constraint violations, the system is said to be in the alert state and classified as "insecure." An extensive report of DSA practices in North America in the late 1980s summarized the status of DSA as it had emerged up to that time (Fouad, 1988).

15.2 Criteria for Security

In terms of operating states, a system is said to be secure if it is in the normal state and will remain in the normal state following any single likely contingency. If a system is in the normal state but will not remain in the normal state following any single likely contingency, then it is reclassified into the alert state and considered insecure. The first key criterion here is the concept of "remain in the normal state." SSA can be used to quickly determine if the system is insecure by simply looking at the static outcome of each contingency. However, to be fully secure, DSA must be used to determine if the associated dynamics of each contingency are acceptable. For example, while the voltage levels of the postcontingency system may be normal (as determined by SSA), it is possible that the transient voltage dips during the disturbance may be unacceptable. Furthermore, SSA cannot easily determine if the postcontingency system is stable, or can even be reached due to the transients of the contingency.

The second key criterion is the definition of "likely contingency." The list of likely contingencies varies from control area to control area, depending on operating practice. In most cases, the list consists of single outages such as the loss of a line, transformer, or generator. This is called the "$N-1$" security criterion—where N refers to the total number of possible elements that could be outaged. In other cases, the list may include more complex contingencies that are known to occur with some frequency, and may include a sequence of events such as a fault on for a specified time followed by relay clearing.

15.3 Assessment and Control

The adoption of security concepts for electric power systems clearly separates the two functions of assessment and control. Assessment is the analysis necessary to determine the outcome of a "likely" contingency (possibly including all existing automatic controls). Control is the operator intervention or automatic action that might be designed for use to avoid the contingency entirely, or to remedy unacceptable postcontingency conditions. When the controls are implemented, they may then become a part of the assessment analysis through a modification of the contingency description.

Preventative control is the action taken to maneuver the system from the alert state back to the normal state. This type of control may be slow, and may be guided by extensive analysis. Emergency control is the action taken when the system has already entered the emergency state. This type of control must be fast and guided by predefined automatic remedial schemes. Restorative control is the action taken to return the system from the restorative state to the normal state. This type of control may be slow, and may be guided by analysis and predefined remedial schemes.

15.4 Dynamic Phenomena of Interest

While there are numerous phenomena that are of interest in dynamic analysis, typical DSA programs focus primarily on two phenomena—voltage transients and system stability. The voltage transients are important because they must remain within acceptable limits to avoid further damage or loss of equipment. Normally the effects of under/over voltage transients are not included in the large-scale programs that are used for DSA. That is, the automatic tripping and relaying associated with under/over voltage are not normally modeled as part of the simulation that is being used for DSA. Since these possible actions are not explicitly modeled, the programs simply monitor voltage levels as they progress during a transient.

One of the most basic concepts of system stability is the issue of maintaining synchronous operation of the AC generators. This is usually referred to as "transient stability," and is discussed later in this chapter. Current DSA programs focus primarily on this type of stability and its associated constraint on operations.

As generator electromechanical dynamics progress during a disturbance, the system voltages and currents can change markedly. These changes can impact voltage-sensitive loads and result in conditions that may be unacceptable even though the generators remain in synchronism. In severe cases, voltage levels can reach points where recovery to nominal levels is impossible. Such voltage collapse conditions normally result in further deterioration of the system and additional relay action or loss of synchronism (Taylor, 1994). The extent to which such phenomena can be detected in DSA programs depends on the level of modeling detail for control systems, relays, and loads.

15.5 Timescales

Power system dynamics include a very wide timescale classification (Sauer and Pai, 1998). These can be loosely described by six categories as shown in Table 15.1.

In order to analyze this wide range of timescale behavior, considerable care must be given both to efficient modeling and numerical techniques. The majority of current DSA programs consider the

TABLE 15.1 Power System Timescales

Lightning propagation	Microseconds to milliseconds
Switching surges	Microseconds to tenths of seconds
Electrical transients	Milliseconds to seconds
Electromechanical	Hundredths of seconds to tens of seconds
Mechanical	Tenths of seconds to hundreds of seconds
Thermal	Seconds to thousands of seconds

dynamics ranging from hundredths of seconds to tens of seconds (the electromechanical dynamics). The challenge of modeling this time range includes properly including the effects of the faster phenomena without explicitly including their fast transients.

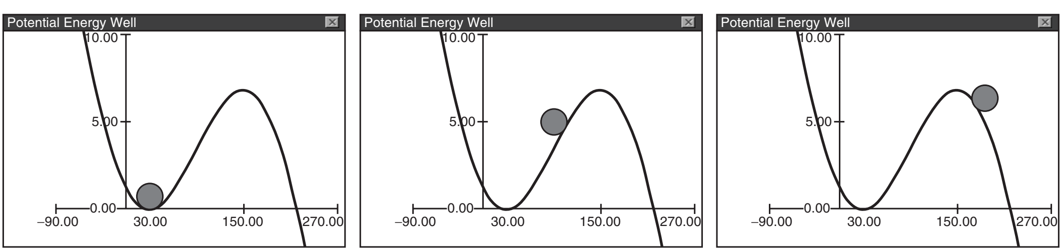
15.6 Transient Stability

In alternating current (AC) systems, the generators must all operate in synchronism in steady state. When a fault occurs on the system, the electrical power output of some generators (usually those near the fault) will tend to decrease. Since the turbine power input does not change instantaneously to match this, these generators will accelerate above the nominal synchronous speed. At the same time, the electrical power output of other generators may increase, resulting in deceleration below the nominal synchronous speed. As a fundamental property of rotating equipment, the generators must all reverse their trends before the energy imbalances become so large that return to synchronous operation is impossible. Transient stability analysis focuses on this phenomenon, which can be visualized through a ball resting in a potential energy well as shown in Fig. 15.2a. In steady state, the ball is at rest (signifying all generators in synchronism) in the well bottom. Clearly any small, temporary displacement of the ball will result in a return to the "stable" well bottom. However, if the disturbance is large enough that the ball is pushed over the well boundary, it will not return to the same well bottom. While it may come to rest at some other point, transient stability analysis is concerned with the detection of when the ball will leave the initial well boundary. That is, a fault will cause the ball to move up the side of the well, and must be cleared soon enough in time that the ball never leaves the well (Fig. 15.2b). When the fault remains on the system for too long, the ball picks up sufficient kinetic energy to carry it over the well boundary (Fig. 15.2c).

When generators accelerate or decelerate with respect to each other, their speed deviations (and corresponding angle deviations) constitute swings. If two or more generators swing apart in speed and then reverse, their return to synchronism could be considered "first-swing stable," if the analysis concludes at the point of return. In many cases, this is sufficient to ensure that the system will remain in synchronism for all time after the return. However, in other cases, the system dynamics may be such that the loss of synchronism does not occur until generators have experienced multiple swings. Deciding when to stop a simulation and declare the result either stable or unstable remains a challenge in DSA analysis.

15.7 Modeling

In order to perform computer simulation of the dynamics that may arise during and after a contingency, it is necessary to formulate mathematical equations that capture the fundamental transients. For the phenomena and timescales of interest in current DSA, ordinary differential equations are considered sufficient. Since the primary dynamics of interest are the electromechanical transients (shaft speeds), there will be two differential equations for each generator modeled. In addition, there may be many



(a) Stable well bottom (b) Swing within well (c) Swing outside well

FIGURE 15.2 Transient stability and the energy well.

associated dynamics and controls that influence the electromechanical transients. Finally, there are the quasisteady-state approximations of the remaining faster and slower dynamics that enter the model as algebraic equations. The resulting mathematical model has the form given in the following equations:

$$\frac{d\delta}{dt} = \omega - \omega_s \tag{15.1}$$

$$\frac{d\omega}{dt} = f(\omega, x, y) \tag{15.2}$$

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = g(\omega, x, y) \tag{15.3}$$

$$0 = h(\delta, x, y) \tag{15.4}$$

In addition, the algebraic equations may need to be modified during simulation to reflect the changes that occur in the network topology as time progresses between a fault application and subsequent clearing. Since it is difficult to guarantee the existence of a "y" solution for the algebraic equations as the dynamic states evolve, this combination of differential and algebraic equations poses theoretical as well as numerical challenges for DSA. Details of the composition of these mathematical models are given in references (Anderson and Fouad, 1993; Kundur, 1994; Sauer and Pai, 1998). Additional issues are often important in DSA analysis as discussed in the following section.

15.8 Criteria and Methods

In practice, the typical criteria for DSA include (IEEE, 1998):

Inertial stability criteria. This mainly concerns the evolution of relative machine angles and frequencies.
Voltage excursions (dip or rise) beyond specified threshold level and duration. These include separate voltage excursion threshold/duration pairs for voltage dip and voltage rise, and maximum/minimum instantaneous excursion thresholds.
Relay margin criteria. These are defined for predisturbance and postdisturbance conditions. If relay margin is violated for more than a maximum specified time after the disturbance, it is identified as insecure.
Minimum damping criteria. For a designated list of contingencies, if the postdisturbance system exhibits oscillations, they must be positively damped (decreasing in amplitude).

Identifying the specific set of security constraints to be introduced for the dynamic security studies is based on experience, knowledge of the system, and judgment of the planning and operations engineers. Generally, the objective of DSA is to determine the contingencies that may cause power system limit violations or system instability. The ultimate goal is to generate the operating guidelines for defining the areas of secure operation. Generating the operating guidelines includes selecting contingencies, performing a detailed stability study, and analyzing the results for violations. Proposed methods for DSA can be divided into three areas: simulation (numerical integration method, direct or Lyapunov methods, and probabilistic), heuristic (expert system), and database or pattern matching approaches. An overview of these methods is provided below.

15.8.1 Numerical Integration

The numerical integration algorithms are used to solve the set of first-order differential equations that describe the dynamics of a system model (Dommel and Sato, 1972). Numerical integration provides solutions relating to the stability of the system depending on the detail of the models employed. This is the most widely applied approach in off-line environments, but is generally too computationally intensive for on-line application.

15.8.2 Direct/Lyapunov Methods (See also Chapter 11)

This approach is also referred to as the transient energy function (TEF) methods. The idea is to replace the numerical integration by stability criteria. The value of a suitably designed Lyapunov function V is calculated at the instant of the last switching in the system and compared to a previously determined critical value V_{cr}. If V is smaller than V_{cr}, the postfault transient process is stable (Ribbens-Pavella and Evans, 1985). In practice, there are still some unresolved problems and drawbacks of this approach. The efficiency of this method depends on simplification of the system variables. The integration of the fault on system equations is needed to obtain the critical value for assessing stability. It is difficult to construct the appropriate Lyapunov function to reflect the internal characteristics of the system. The method is rigorous only when the operating point is within the estimated stability region.

15.8.3 Probabilistic Methods (Anderson and Bose, 1983)

With these methods, stability analysis is viewed as a probabilistic rather than a deterministic problem because the disturbance factors (type and location of the fault) and the condition of the system (loading and configuration) are probabilistic in nature. Therefore, this method attempts to determine the probability distributions for power system stability. It assesses the probability that the system remains stable should the specified disturbance occur. A large number of faults are considered at different locations and with different clearing schemes. In order to have statistically meaningful results, a large amount of computation time is required (Patton, 1974). Therefore, this method is more appropriate for planning. Combined with pattern recognition techniques, it may be of value for on-line application.

15.8.4 Expert System Methods

In this approach, the expert knowledge is encoded in a rule-based program. An expert system is composed of two parts: a knowledge base and a set of inference rules. Typically, the expertise for the knowledge base is derived from operators with extensive experience on a particular system. Still, information obtained off-line from stability analyses could be used to supplement this knowledge. The primary advantage of this approach is that it reflects the actual operation of power systems, which is largely heuristic based on experience. The obvious drawback is that it has become increasingly difficult to understand the limits of systems under today's market conditions characterized by historically high numbers of transactions.

15.8.5 Database or Pattern Recognition Methods

The goal of these methods is to establish a functional relationship between the selected features and the location of system state relative to the boundary of the region of stability (Patton, 1974; Hakim, 1992; Wehenkel, 1998). This method uses two stages to classify the system security: (a) feature extraction and (b) classification. The first stage includes off-line generation of a training set of stable and unstable operation states and a space transformation process that reduces the high dimensionality of the initial system description. The second stage is the determination of the classifier function (decision rule) using a training set of labeled patterns. This function is used to classify the actual operating state for a given contingency. Typically, the classifier part of this approach is implemented using artificial neural networks (ANNs).

15.9 Recent Activity

In recent years, there have been several database or pattern matching methods introduced for finding security limits (El-Keib and Ma, 1995; Chauhan and Dava, 1997; Chen et al., 2000). The essential idea is to select a set of representative features (such as line flows, loads, and generator limits) and then train an estimator (typically an ANN) on simulation data in order to estimate the security margin. The estimator is expected to interpolate or generalize to similar unstudied cases. For on-line application, a pattern matching or interpolation method rather than analytic approaches may be most appropriate. Among the alternative methods, ANNs seems very promising (Sobajic and Pao, 1989; Pao and Sobajic, 1992; Mansour et al., 1997) because they have excellent generalization capabilities, superior noise rejection, and fast execution (with most of the calculations occurring during the initial off-line training).

A recent report with survey results (Sauer et al., 2004) quite clearly showed that there is a major gap in the operations security tools. This gap is the lack of an ability to evaluate stability margins in real time. This report also included results from a project that focused on this gap and investigated the feasibility of a new technique for bringing dynamic analysis into the operations environment. The work started with two of the most time-consuming aspects of stability margin analysis: time-domain simulation and static voltage margin computations. In a previous Power System Engineering Research Center (PSERC) project (Tomsovic et al., 2003), it was shown that a system of estimators based on neural networks could accurately and quickly estimate security margins for on-line application. This project produced a number of contributions to the development of dynamic security analysis techniques.

- A comprehensive framework was developed for on-line estimation of security margins, calculated based on current operating practices.
- The framework proposed families of estimators, each specialized for specific system limits and the appropriate security criteria (i.e., static, dynamic, or voltage). The estimators can be combined to provide an overall assessment of system operating conditions.
- A system of estimators was implemented and tested on a modified New England 39 bus system.
- On the basis of the insights from the New England system, a more sophisticated set of estimators were implemented and tested on a 6000 bus model of the Western area system. The focus of this study was the California–Oregon Intertie transfer limits.
- A number of software tools were developed to help automate the process of evaluating security margins in off-line studies.
- The results show that it is possible to very accurately estimate security margins for large systems on-line. The main limitation of the approach resides in the ability of time-consuming off-line studies to accurately model system dynamics.

15.10 Off-Line DSA

In off-line DSA analysis, detailed time-domain stability analysis is performed for all credible contingencies and a variety of operating conditions. In most cases, this off-line analysis is used to determine limits of power transfers across important system interfaces. These limits then are used in an operating environment that is hopefully not significantly different from those conditions considered. Since the analysis is performed off-line, there is not a severe restriction on computation time and therefore detailed analysis can be done for a wide range of conditions and contingencies. These studies include numerical integration of the models discussed above for a certain proposed power transfer condition and for a list of contingencies typically defined by a faulted location and specified fault-clearing time (based on known relay settings).

The trajectories of the simulation are analyzed to see if voltage transients are acceptable, and to see if transient stability is maintained for the specified fault-clearing time. If the results for one level of power transfer are acceptable for all credible contingencies, the level of proposed power transfer is increased and the analysis is repeated. This process continues until the level of power transfer reaches a point where the system cannot survive all of the credible contingencies. The maximum allowable transfer level is then fixed at the last acceptable level, or reduced by some small amount to provide a margin that would account for changes in conditions when the actual limit is in force.

15.11 On-Line DSA

On-line DSA is used to supplement (or update) off-line DSA to consider current operating conditions. A basic on-line DSA framework includes essentially two steps. The first involves a rapid screening process to limit the number of contingencies that must be evaluated in detail. This rapid screening process might consist of some direct method that avoids long numerical integration times (Pai, 1989; Fouad and Vittal, 1992; Pavella and Murthy, 1993; Chadalavada et al., 1997). In addition to giving fast stability evaluation, these methods inherently include a mechanism for assessing the severity of a contingency. That is, if a system is determined to be stable, the direct methods also provide an indication of "how stable" the system is. This indication usually takes the form of an "energy margin." For example, in reference to the ball motion of Fig. 15.2, the maximum swing of the ball up the side of the energy well could be used to quantify how "close" the ball was to leaving the well.

Most of these methods still require some numerical integration to simulate the impact of a major disturbance and then predict stability or compute a margin to instability. Computation of the margin usually requires the simulation to force the system into an instability, perhaps either by using a sustained fault, or reapplication of the fault after scheduled clearing (Vaahedi et al., 1996).

This first step includes a decision process of which contingencies must be studied in greater detail. Those that are judged to be "sufficiently stable" need not be studied further. Those that are considered "marginal" must be studied further. This process includes a ranking strategy that is usually based on the energy margin computed in the direct method. Additional criteria involving artificial intelligence approaches can also be used to aid the decision process (El-Kady et al., 1990).

The second step involves traditional time-domain simulation that includes extensive numerical integration to reveal swing trajectories and voltage variations. This is performed on a small subset of contingencies that were judged to be marginal according to the screening process of step one.

In on-line studies, the time for computation is a severe constraint in addition to the challenge of interpretation and quantification of results. Typical performance goals for on-line DSA program are to process 30 contingencies (each having 10 s of simulated time) for a 2000 bus, 250 generator system in 10 min (Ejebe, 1998).

15.12 Status and Summary

A recent survey of existing DSA tools provides a detailed description of the status of DSA tools (Vittal et al., 2005). With the increase in transactions on the bulk power system there is a critical need to determine transient security in an on-line setting and also perform preventive or corrective control if the analysis indicates that the system is insecure. In recent years, the industry has seen the development of large generation projects at concentrated areas of available fuel supplies. The stability properties of the system have been drastically altered, while the new "nonutility" plants are not cognizant of their impact on system stability. In this environment, stability issues may and will affect available transfer capability. Stability problems may not happen frequently, but their impact, when they do happen, can be enormous. Most of the time, off-line studies are performed to determine conservative limits. In the new environment, the responsibility of monitoring system stability may be vested with the regional transmission organization (RTO) and on-line stability monitoring may be necessary.

This section deals with reviewing the current state-of-the-art in the area of on-line transient stability assessment, evaluating promising new technologies, and identifying technical and computational requirements for calculating transient stability limits and corrective and preventive control strategies for cases that are transiently insecure.

Six on-line transient stability package vendors were identified by conducting a literature survey. A detailed questionnaire that addressed several pertinent issues relating to on-line transient stability assessment was prepared. All six vendors responded to the questionnaire. The responses received were carefully analyzed. This analysis provided a detailed overview of the capabilities of available tools, performance metrics, modeling features, and protective and corrective control measures.

An elaborate questionnaire was then prepared and sent to all PSERC member companies. This questionnaire addressed specific needs in terms of required features, preferred performance, and control capabilities. A detailed analysis of the received responses provided a clear picture of the desired features and performance specifications of an on-line transient stability assessment tool.

A comparison of the analysis conducted on the vendor responses and the PSERC member company responses identified areas and topics that needed further development and research. This information will be useful in soliciting new research proposals and providing vendors a guide to the features that need to be developed and implemented.

A literature survey was also conducted on new analytical developments in on-line transient stability analysis. On the basis of this review, novel concepts based on quadratized models for power system components were explored to investigate whether there would be a significant advantage gained in using these models in terms of accuracy and computational burden.

DSA is concerned with the ability of an electric power system to survive a major disturbance. It must assess the quality of the transient behavior as well as stability. DSA is performed both in off-line and on-line environments and is computationally intensive due to the numerical integration involved in evaluating the transient behavior of the system during major disturbances. Several recent and ongoing projects have addressed the computational issue through screening techniques that provide rapid analysis of stability outcomes and stability margins (Demaree et al., 1994; Meyer et al., 1997). Research in this area is continuing as the need for DSA to evaluate available transfer capability (ATC) becomes stronger in the restructured industry.

References

Anderson, P.M. and Bose, A., A probabilistic approach to power system stability analysis, *IEEE Transactions on Power Apparatus and Systems*, PAS-102(8), 2430–2439, August 1983.

Anderson, P.M. and Fouad, A.A., *Power System Control and Stability*, Iowa State University Press, Ames, IA, 1977, Reprinted by IEEE Press, 1993.

Chadalavada, V., Vittal, V., Ejebe, G.C., Irisarri, G.D., Tong, J., Pieper, G., and McMullen, M., An on-line contingency filtering scheme for dyanmic security assessment, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 12(1), 153–159, February 1997.

Chauhan, S. and Dava, M.P., Kohonen neural network classifier for voltage collapse margin estimation, *Electric Machines and Power Systems*, 25(6), 607–619, July 1997.

Chen, L., Tomsovic, K., Bose, A., and Stuart, R., Estimating reactive margin for determining transfer limits, Proceedings, 2000 IEEE Power Engineering Society Summer Meeting, 2000. IEEE, Volume 1, July 2000.

Cihlar, T.C., Wear, J.H., Ewart, D.N., and Kirchmayer, L.K., Electric utility system security, *Proceedings of the American Power Conference*, 31, 891–908, 1969.

Demaree, K., Athay, T., Chung, K., Mansour, Y., Vaahedi, E., Chang, A.Y., Corns, B.R., and Garett, B.W., An on-line dynamic security analysis system implementation, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 9(4), 1716–1722, November 1994.

Dommel H.W. and Sato, N., Fast transient stability solutions, *IEEE Transactions on Power Apparatus and Systems*, 91, 1643–1650, July/August 1972.

Dy Liacco, T.E., The adaptive reliability control system, *IEEE Transactions on Power Apparatus and Systems*, PAS-86(5), 517–531, May 1967.

Ejebe, G.G., On-line dynamic security assessment, Slides presented to the 1998 IEEE PES Working Group on Dynamic Security Assessment Meeting, February 1998, Tampa, Florida (available from the author).

El-Kady, M.A., Fouad, A.A., Liu, C.C., and Venkataraman, S., Use of expert systems in dynamic security assessment of power systems, Proceedings 10th PSCC, Graz, Austria, 1990.

El-Keib, A.A. and Ma, X., Application of artificial neural networks in voltage stability assessment, *IEEE Transactions on Power System*, 10(4), 1890–1896, November 1995.
Fouad, A.A. (Chairman. IEEE PES Working Group on DSA), Dynamic security assessment practices in north america, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 3(3), 1310–1321, August 1988.
Fouad, A.A. and Vittal, V., *Power System Transient Stability Analysis Using the Transient Energy Function Method*, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ, 1992.
Hakim, H. Application of pattern recognition in transient security assessment, *Journal of Electrical Machines and Power Systems*, 20, 1–15, 1992.
IEEE Committee Report, Dynamic security assessment practices in North America, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 3(3), 1310–1321, August 1988.
Kundur, P., *Power System Stability and Control*, McGraw Hill, New York, 1994.
Mansour, Y., Chang, A.Y., Tamby, J., Vaahedi, E., Corns, B.R., and El-Sharkawi, M.A., Large scale dynamic security screening and ranking using neuron networks, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 12(2), 954–960, May 1997.
Meyer, B. (Convener) and Nativel, G. (Secretary), New Trends and Requirements for Dynamic Security Assessement, Cigre Task Force 38.02.13 Report, 21 rue d'Artois-R-75008 Paris, France, December 1997.
Pai, M.A., *Energy Function Analysis for Power System Stability*, Kluwer, Boston, MA, 1989.
Pao, Y., and Sobajic, D.J., Combined use of unsupervised and supervised learning for dynamic security assessment, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 7(2), 878–884, February 1992.
Patton, A.D. Assessment of the security of operating electric power system using probability methods, *Proceedings of IEEE*, 62(7), July 1974.
Pavella, M. and Murthy, P.G., *Transient Stability of Power Sytems: Theory and Practice*, John Wiley, New York, 1993.
Ribbens-Pavella M. and Evans, F.J., Direct methods for studying dynamics of large-scale electric power systems—A survey, *Automatica*, 21(1), 1–21, 1985.
Sauer, P.W. and Pai, M.A., *Power System Dynamics and Stability*, Prentice-Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ, 1998.
Sauer, P.W., Tomsovic, K., Dagle, J., Widergren, S., Nguyen, T., and Schienbein, L., Integrated Security Analysis Final Report, CERTS Publication, July 2004.
Sobajic, D. and Pao, Y., Artificial neural net based dynamic security assessment for electric power systems, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 4(1), 220–228, February 1989.
Taylor, C.W., *Power System Voltage Stability*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1994.
Tomsovic, K., Bose, A., and Sauer, P., Integrated Security Analysis Final Report, PSERC Publication 03-06, Power Systems Engineering Research Center, May 2003.
Vaahedi, E., Mansour, Y., Chang, A.Y., Corns, B.R., and Tse, E.K., Enhanced "second kick" methods for on-line dynamic security assessment, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 11(4), 1976–1982, November 1996.
Vittal, V., Sauer, P., and Meliopoulos, S., On-Line Transient Stability Assessment Scoping Study Final Project Report, PSERC Publication 05-04, Power Systems Engineering Research Center, February 2005.
Wehenkel, L., *Automatic Learning Techniques in Power Systems*, Kluwer Academic Publishers, Boston, MA, 1998.

16

Power System Dynamic Interaction with Turbine Generators

Richard G. Farmer
Arizona State University

Bajarang L. Agrawal
Arizona Public Service Company

Donald G. Ramey
Consultant

16.1 Introduction

Turbine-generators for power production are critical parts of electric power systems, which provide power and energy to the user. The power system can range from a single generator and load to a complex system. A complex system may contain hundreds of power lines at various voltage levels and hundreds of transformers, turbine-generators, and loads. When the power system and its components are in the normal state, the synchronous generators produce sinusoidal voltages at synchronous frequency (60 Hz in the U.S.) and desired magnitude. The voltages cause currents to flow at synchronous frequency through the power system to the loads. The only current flowing in the generator rotor is the direct current in the generator field. Mechanical torque on the turbine-generator rotor produced by the turbine is constant and unidirectional. There is a reaction torque produced by the magnetic field in the generator, which balances the mechanical torque and maintains constant speed. The system is said to be in synchronism and there is no dynamic interaction between the power system and the turbine-generators.

At other times, the system and its components are disturbed, thereby causing a periodic exchange of energy between the components of the power system. If there is a periodic exchange of energy between a turbine-generator and the power system, we will refer to this energy exchange as power system dynamic interaction with a turbine-generator. When this occurs the magnetic interaction in the generator together with motion of the generator rotor results in oscillating torques on the shafts of the turbine-generator. If the frequency of these torques is equal to, or near, one of the natural mechanical frequencies of the turbine-generator, excessive mechanical stress may occur along the turbine-generator rotor at critical locations. In addition, excessive voltage and current may occur in the generator and power system. Turbine-generator components known to be affected by such interaction are shafts, turbine blades, and generator retaining rings.

There have been several dramatic events resulting from power system dynamic interaction with turbine-generators, including significant turbine-generator damage. Analysis of these events has made the power engineering community aware of the potential for even more extensive turbine-generator damage from power system dynamic interaction. For these reasons, methods have been developed to identify and analyze the potential for power system dynamic interaction and countermeasures have been developed to control such interaction.

This article addresses the types of power system dynamic interaction with turbine-generators that have been identified as potentially hazardous. For each type of interaction there is a discussion of known events, physical principles, analytic methods, possible countermeasures, and references. The types of interaction to be addressed are:

- Subsynchronous resonance
- Device-dependent subsynchronous oscillations
- Supersynchronous resonance
- Device-dependent supersynchronous oscillations
- Transient shaft torque oscillations

For all of these interactions the natural frequencies and mode shapes for turbine-generator rotor systems are critical factors. As generating plants age modifications may be made that modernize or allow uprating of the units. Typical changes that can have significant effects on the rotor dynamics are replacement of shaft driven exciters with static excitation systems and replacement of turbine rotors. In a few instances electric generators or generator rotors have been replaced. All of these changes have the potential for either reducing or increasing the dynamic interaction for the specific turbine-generator. It is important that system engineers, new equipment design engineers, and service engineers all be aware of the interactions that are addressed in this article and of the potential for their occurrence at a specific plant.

16.2 Subsynchronous Resonance

Series capacitors have been used extensively since 1950 as a very effective means of increasing the power transfer capability of a power system that has long (150 miles or more) transmission lines. Series capacitors provide a capacitive reactance in series with the inherent inductive reactance of a transmission line thereby reducing the effective inductive reactance. Series capacitors significantly increase transient and steady-state stability limits, in addition to being a near perfect means of var and voltage control. One transmission project, consisting of 1000 miles of 500 kV transmission lines, estimates that the application of series capacitors reduced the project cost by 25%. Until about 1971, it was generally believed that up to 70% series compensation could be used in any transmission line with little or no concern. However, in 1971 it was learned that series capacitors can create an adverse interaction between the series compensated electrical system and the spring-mass mechanical system of the turbine-generators. This effect is called *subsynchronous resonance* (SSR) since it is the result of a resonant condition, which has a natural frequency below the fundamental frequency of the power system [1].

16.2.1 Known SSR Events

In 1970, and again in 1971, a 750 MW cross compound Mohave turbine-generator in southern Nevada experienced shaft damage. The damage occurred when the system was switched so that the generator was radial to the Los Angeles area on a 176-mile, series compensated 500 kV transmission line. The shaft damage occurred in the slip ring area of the high-pressure turbine-generator. Metallurgical analysis showed that the shaft had experienced cyclic fatigue, leading to plasticity. Fortunately, the plant operators were able to shut the unit down before there was a shaft fracture. In each case, the turbine-generator had to be taken out of service for several months for repairs [2]. Intensive investigation in the electric power industry led to the conclusion that the Mohave events were caused by an SSR condition referred to as *torsional interaction*. Torsional interaction created sustained torsional oscillations in the second torsional mode, which has a stress concentration point in the slip ring area of the affected turbine-generator.

16.2.2 SSR Terms and Definitions

A set of terms and definitions has been developed so engineers can communicate clearly using consistent terminology. Following are definitions for the most commonly used terms. These are consistent with the terms and definitions presented in Ref. [3].

Subsynchronous: Electrical or mechanical quantities associated with frequencies below the synchronous frequency of a power system.

Supersynchronous: Electrical or mechanical quantities associated with frequencies above the synchronous frequency of a power system.

Subsynchronous resonance: The resonance between a series capacitor compensated electric system and the mechanical spring-mass system of the turbine-generator at subsynchronous frequencies.

Self-excitation: The sustainment or growth of response of a dynamic system without externally applied excitation.

Induction generator effect: The effect of having subsynchronous positive sequence currents in the armature of a synchronously rotating generator.

Torsional interaction: Self-excitation of the combined mechanical spring-mass system of a turbine-generator and a series capacitor compensated electric network when the subsynchronous rotor motion developed torque is opposite polarity and greater in magnitude than the mechanical damping torque of the rotor.

Torque amplification: The amplification of turbine-generator shaft torque at one or more of the natural frequencies of the rotor system caused by transient oscillations at subsynchronous natural frequencies of series capacitor compensated transmission systems or unfavorable timing of switching events in the electric network.

Subsynchronous oscillation: The exchange of energy between the electric network and the mechanical spring-mass system of the turbine-generator at subsynchronous frequencies.

Torsional mode frequency: A natural frequency of the mechanical spring-mass system of the turbine-generator in torsion.

Torsional damping: A measure of the decay rate of torsional oscillations.

Modal model: The mathematical spring-mass representation of the turbine-generator rotor corresponding to one of its mechanical natural torsional frequencies.

Torsional mode shape: The relative angular position or velocity at any instant of time of the individual rotor masses of a turbine-generator unit during torsional oscillation at a natural frequency.

16.2.3 SSR Physical Principles

For this discussion the simplest possible system will be considered with a single turbine-generator connected to a single series compensated transmission line as shown in Fig. 16.1. The turbine-generator has only two masses connected by a shaft acting as a torsional spring. There are damping elements between the two masses and each mass has a damping element. The electrical system of Fig. 16.1 has a single resonant frequency, f_{er}, and the mechanical spring-mass system has a single natural frequency, f_n. It must be recognized that the electrical system may be a complex grid with many series compensated

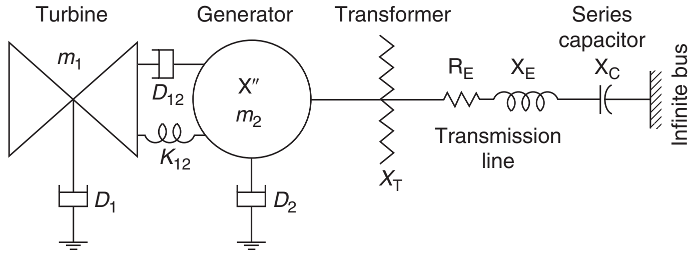


FIGURE 16.1 Turbine-generator with series compensated transmission line. (From IEEE Committee Report, Terms, definitions and symbols for Subsynchronous Resonance, *IEEE Transactions*, v. PAS-104, June 1985, © 1984 IEEE. With permission.)

lines resulting in numerous resonance frequencies f_{er1}, f_{er2}, f_{er3}, etc. Likewise, the turbine-generator may have several masses connected by shafts (springs), resulting in several natural torsional frequencies (torsional modes) f_{n1}, f_{n2}, f_{n3}, etc. Even so, the system of Fig. 16.1 is adequate to present the physical principles of SSR.

SSR is a phenomenon that results in significant energy exchange between the electric system and a turbine-generator at one of the natural frequencies of the turbine-generator below the synchronous frequency, f_o. When the electric system of Fig. 16.1 is series compensated, there will be one subsynchronous natural frequency, f_{er}. For any electric system disturbance, there will be armature current flow in the three phases of the generator at frequency f_{er}. The positive sequence component of these currents will produce a rotating magnetic field at an angular electrical speed of $2\pi f_{er}$. Currents are induced in the rotor winding due to the relative speed of the aforementioned rotating field and the speed of the rotor. The resulting rotor current will have a frequency of $f_r = f_o - f_{er}$. A subsynchronous rotor current creates induction generator effect as will be discussed further in Section 16.2.3.1. The armature magnetic field, rotating at an angular frequency of f_{er}, interacts with the rotor's dc field, rotating at an angular frequency of f_o, to develop an electromagnetic torque component on the generator rotor at an angular frequency of $f_o - f_{er}$. This torque component contributes to torsional interaction, which will be discussed further in Section 16.2.3.2, and to torque amplification, which will be discussed further in Section 16.2.3.3 [3].

16.2.3.1 Induction Generator Effect

Induction generator effect involves only the electric system and the generator (does not involve turbines). For an induction machine the effective rotor resistance as seen from the armature and external power system is given by the following equations:

$$R_r' = \frac{R_r}{s} \tag{16.1}$$

$$s = \frac{f_{er} - f_o}{f_{er}} \tag{16.2}$$

where R_r' = apparent rotor resistance viewed from the armature
R_r = rotor resistance
s = slip
f_{er} = frequency of the subsynchronous component of current in the armature
f_o = synchronous frequency

Combining Eqs. (16.1) and (16.2) yields

$$R_r' = \frac{R_r f_{er}}{f_{er} - f_o} \tag{16.3}$$

Since f_{er} is subsynchronous it will always be less than f_o. Therefore, the effective generator resistance as viewed from the armature circuit will always be negative. If this equivalent resistance exceeds the sum of the positive armature resistance and system resistance at the resonant frequency f_{er}, the armature currents can be sustained or growing. This is known as induction generator effect [1,12].

16.2.3.2 Torsional Interaction

Torsional interaction involves both the electrical and the mechanical systems. Both systems have one or more natural frequency. The electrical system natural frequency is designated f_{er} and the mechanical spring-mass system natural frequency is designated f_n. Generator rotor oscillations at a natural torsional frequency, f_n, induce armature voltage components of subsynchronous frequency, $f_{en}^{-} = f_o - f_n$, and supersynchronous frequency, $f_{en}^{+} = f_o + f_n$. When the frequency of the subsynchronous component of armature voltage, f_{en}^{-}, is near the electric system natural frequency, f_{er}, the resulting subsynchronous current flowing in the armature is phased to produce a rotor torque that reinforces the initial rotor torque at frequency f_n. If the resultant torque exceeds the inherent damping torque of the turbine-generator for mode *n*, sustained or growing oscillations can occur. This is known as torsional interaction. For a more detailed mathematical discussion of torsional interaction, see Refs. [4,5].

16.2.3.3 Torque Amplification

When there is a major disturbance in the electrical system, such as a short circuit, there are relatively large amounts of electrical energy stored in the transmission line inductance and series capacitors. When the disturbance is removed from the system, the stored energy will be released in the form of current flowing at the electrical system resonant frequency, f_{er}. If all, or a portion of the current, flows through a generator armature, the generator rotor will experience a subsynchronous torque at a frequency $f_o - f_{er}$. If the frequency of this torque corresponds to one of the torsional modes of the turbine-generator spring-mass system, the spring-mass system will be excited at that natural torsional frequency and cyclic shaft torque can grow to the endurance limit in a few cycles. This is referred to as torque amplification. For more in-depth treatments of torque amplification, see Refs. [6,7].

16.2.4 SSR Mitigation

If series capacitors are to be applied, or seriously considered, it is essential that SSR control be thoroughly investigated. The potential for SSR must be evaluated and the need for countermeasures determined. When a steam-driven turbine-generator is connected directly to a series compensated line, or a grid containing series compensated lines, a potential for SSR problems exists. There are three types of series capacitor applications for which SSR would not be expected. The first type occurs when the turbine-generator includes a hydraulic turbine. In this case, the ratio of generator mass to turbine mass is relatively high, resulting in larger modal damping and modal inertia than exists for steam turbine-generators [8]. The second type of series capacitor application that is generally free from SSR concerns has turbine-generators connected to an uncompensated transmission system which is overlaid by a series compensated transmission system. The California–Oregon transmission system is of this type with a 500 kV system that has 70% series compensation overlaying an uncompensated 230 kV transmission system. Turbine-generators are connected to the 230 kV system. Extensive study of this system has failed to identify any potential SSR problems. The third type involves series-capacitor-compensation levels below 20%. There have been no potential SSR problems identified for compensation levels below 20%.

For those series capacitor applications that are identified as having potential SSR problems, an SSR countermeasure will be required. Such countermeasures can range from a simple operating procedure to equipment costing millions of dollars. Numerous SSR countermeasures have been proposed and several have been applied [9]. Fortunately, for every series capacitor installation investigated an effective SSR countermeasure has been identified.

An orderly approach to planning and providing SSR mitigation has been proposed [1]. This includes the five steps presented below.

16.2.4.1 Screening Studies

Screening studies need to be made to determine the potential SSR problems for every turbine-generator near a series capacitor installation. These studies will probably need to be conducted using estimated data for torsional damping and modal frequencies for the turbine-generator unless the turbine-generator is in place and available for testing. Accurate modal frequencies and damping can only be obtained from tests although manufacturers will usually provide their best estimate. The most popular analytic tool for screening studies is the frequency scanning technique. This technique can provide an approximate assessment of the potential and severity for the three types of SSR: induction generator effect, torsional interaction, and torque amplification [10]. To conduct the frequency scan studies the positive sequence model for the power system is required. Generator impedance as a function of frequency is needed and may be estimated. The best estimate for turbine-generator torsional damping and modal frequencies are required. If the screening study is conducted using estimated data for the turbine-generator, data sensitivity should be examined.

16.2.4.2 Accurate Studies

If screening studies indicate any potential SSR problem, additional studies are required using the most accurate data as it becomes available from the manufacturer and from tests. The frequency scan program may be adequate for assessment of induction generator effect and torsional interaction but an eigenvalue study is desirable if large capital expenditures are being considered for self-excitation countermeasures. If the screening studies show any potential for torque amplification, detailed studies should be conducted to calculate the shaft torque levels to be expected and the probability of occurrence. The manufacturer can provide an estimated spring-mass model for the turbine-generator, which can be used for the initial torque amplification studies. The studies can be updated, as more accurate data becomes available from tests. The well-known electromagnet transient program (EMTP) is usually used for these studies.

16.2.4.3 SSR Interim Protection

If series capacitors are to be energized prior to acquiring accurate data from turbine-generator tests and the above studies indicate a potential SSR problem, interim protection must be provided. Such protection might consist of reduced levels of series compensation, operating procedures to avoid specific levels of series compensation and/or transmission line configurations, and/or relays to take the unit off-line in the event an SSR condition is detected. These precautions should also be taken when a new turbine-generator is added to an existing series compensated transmission system if studies show potential for SSR concerns.

16.2.4.4 SSR Tests

Some SSR testing will be required unless the studies discussed above show no or very low probability for the hazards of SSR. The torsional natural frequencies of the spring-mass system can probably be measured through monitoring during normal turbine-generator and system operation. To measure modal damping it is necessary to operate the turbine-generator at varying load levels while stimulating the spring-mass system. Testing will be discussed in more detail in Section 16.2.8.

16.2.4.5 Countermeasure Requirements

The countermeasure selection must assure that sustained or growing oscillations do not occur and it may involve an analysis of the acceptable fatigue life expenditure (FLE) for damped oscillations. See Section 16.2.5.3.5 for a discussion of FLE. Implementation of the selected countermeasures requires careful coordination. If the countermeasures involve hardware, the effectiveness of the hardware should be determined by testing. Countermeasures will be presented in more detail in Section 16.2.6.

16.2.5 SSR Analysis

SSR analysis involves the identification of all system and generator operating conditions that result in SSR conditions and the determination of the severity by calculating the negative damping and shaft torque amplification. The primary computer programs used in the industry for SSR analysis are frequency scanning, eigenvalue, and transient torque (EMTP). Some program validation has been made in the industry by comparing the results of these analytic methods with test results [11].

16.2.5.1 Frequency Scanning

The frequency scanning technique involves the determination of the driving point impedance over the frequency range of interest as viewed from the neutral of the generator being studied [10]. For frequency scanning the following modeling is required:

A positive sequence model of the power system, including series compensation, as viewed from the generator terminals.

The generator being studied is represented by its induction generator equivalent impedance as a function of slip. This can generally be obtained from the generator manufacturer. If not, an approximation is presented in Ref. [12]. Other generators in the system are generally modeled by their short circuit equivalent. Load is generally represented by the short circuit equivalent impedance viewed from the transmission system side of the transformer connecting the transmission and distribution networks.

Figure 16.2 is a typical output from a frequency-scanning program. The plots consist of the reactance and resistance as a function of frequency as viewed from the generator neutral. In addition, the 60 Hz complements of the modal frequencies have been superimposed and labeled by mode number. The use of frequency scanning to evaluate the three types of SSR will be presented below.

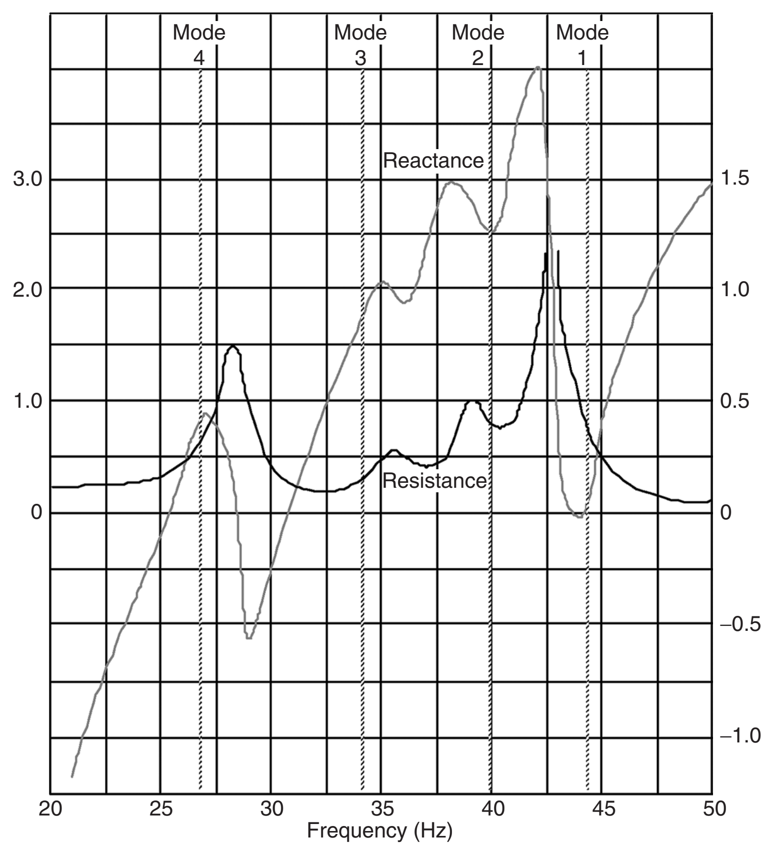


FIGURE 16.2 Frequency scan for the Navajo Project generator connected to the 500 kV system. (From Anderson, P.M. and Farmer, R.G., Subsynchronous resonance, *Series Compensation of Power Systems*, PBLSH!, San Diego, 1996. With permission.)

16.2.5.1.1 Induction Generator Effect

Frequency scanning is an excellent tool for analysis of induction generator effect. Induction generator effect is indicated when the frequency scan shows that the reactance crosses zero at frequencies corresponding to negative resistance. Such points can be identified by inspection from frequency scan plots.

16.2.5.1.2 Torsional Interaction

When a resonant frequency of the electrical system, as viewed from the generator neutral, corresponds to the 60 Hz complement of one of the turbine-generator modal frequencies, negative damping of the turbine-generator exists. If this negative damping exceeds the positive modal damping of the turbine-generator, sustained or growing shaft torque would be experienced. Such negative damping can be approximated from frequency scanning results according to Ref. [4].

Using the method of Ref. [4], the amount of negative damping for torsional mode n is directly related to the conductance, G_n, for that mode and can be calculated by the following approximate formula:

$$\Delta\sigma_n = \frac{60 - f_\mathrm{n}}{8 f_\mathrm{n} H_n} G_n \tag{16.4}$$

where

$\Delta\sigma_n$ = negative damping for mode n in rad/s
H_n = Equivalent p.u. stored energy for a pure modal oscillation (see Ref. [10])
G_n = p.u. conductance of the electrical system including the generator on the generator MVA base at $(60 - f_\mathrm{n})$ Hz

$$G_n = \frac{R_n}{R_n^2 + X_n^2}$$

R_n = resistance from frequency scan at $(60 - f_\mathrm{n})$ Hz
X_n = reactance from frequency scan at $(60 - f_\mathrm{n})$ Hz

Equation 16.4 neglects the damping due to the supersynchronous components of current. This is generally negligible. Equation 6.4 in Ref. [1] includes the supersynchronous effect. Reference [10] includes a sample calculation for H_n.

The existence and severity of torsional interaction can now be determined by comparing the negative damping, $\Delta\sigma_n$, determined from frequency scanning for mode n, with the natural mechanical damping of the turbine-generator for mode n. In equation form, this is

$$\sigma_\mathrm{net} = \sigma_n - \Delta\sigma_n \tag{16.5}$$

where

σ_net = net torsional damping for mode n
σ_n = turbine-generator damping for mode n
$\Delta\sigma_n$ = negative damping for mode n due to torsional interaction

If the net damping, σ_net, is negative, torsional interaction instability for mode n is indicated at the operating condition being studied. From the same frequency scan case $\Delta\sigma_n$ can be calculated for all other active modes and then compared with the natural damping, σ_n, for the corresponding mode. This provides an indication of the severity of torsional interaction for the operating condition (case) being studied. This process should be repeated for all credible operating conditions that are envisioned.

The natural torsional frequencies and modal damping for the turbine-generator will only be known accurately if the machine has been tested. If estimated data is being used the possible variations should be accounted for. The simplest way to account for variations in modal frequency is to apply margin. One way is to calculate the maximum conductance for Eq. (16.4) within a frequency range. Reference [10] suggests a frequency range of ± 1 Hz of the predicted modal frequency. Experience has shown that estimated modal damping can significantly vary from the measured damping. Hence unless the estimated damping values are based upon measurements from other similar units, a very conservative value of damping should be used in the studies.

The frequency scanning technique, as used to calculate negative damping, has been validated through comparison with test results. There has been reasonable correlation, as shown in Refs. [10,11], when the turbine-generator model parameters are accurate. Frequency scanning is a cost effective means to study induction generator effect and torsional interaction. The results must be used with care. If the study results indicate that positive damping exists for all system conditions, but there are large reactance dips [10], tests should be conducted to validate the study results prior to making a final decision not to implement any countermeasures. Also, if frequency scanning studies indicate an SSR problem for which countermeasures are required, it is prudent to validate the studies by tests prior to committing to costly countermeasures or series compensation reduction [1].

16.2.5.1.3 Torque Amplification

Frequency scanning cannot be used to quantify the torque to be expected for a specific disturbance but it is a very good tool for determining the potential for torque amplification problems and the system configurations that need to be investigated in detail using EMTP. Reference [10] suggests that, if a frequency scan case shows a significant reactance dip within ± 3 Hz of the 60 Hz complement of a modal frequency of the turbine-generator, torque amplification might be expected. This provides an excellent screening tool for developing a list of EMTP cases to be studied. The frequency scan results in Fig. 16.2 suggest potential torque amplification for Modes 1 and 2. The largest reactance dip is near Mode 1, but is slightly detuned. The reactance dip for Mode 2 is smaller but is nearly perfectly tuned. The system configuration represented by Fig. 16.2 was studied using EMTP and found to have serious torque amplification problems, see Ref. [22].

16.2.5.2 Eigenvalue Analysis

Eigenvalue analysis for SSR is straightforward for torsional interaction and induction generator effect since they can be analyzed by linear methods [1]. The approach follows:

1. Model the power system by its positive sequence model.
2. Model the generator electrical circuits.
3. Model the turbine-generator spring-mass system with zero damping.
4. Calculate the eigenvalues of the interconnected systems.
5. The real component of eigenvalues that correspond to the subsychronous modes of the turbine-generator spring-mass system shows the severity of torsional interaction.
6. The real component of eigenvalues that correspond to only electric system resonant frequencies shows the severity of the induction generator effects problem.

The eigenvalues to be analyzed for torsional interaction can be identified by comparing the imaginary part of each eigenvalue with the modal frequencies of the spring-mass system. The corresponding real part of the eigenvalue is a quantitative indication of the damping for that mode. If the eigenvalue has a negative real part, positive damping is indicated. If it has a positive real part, negative damping is indicated. The real part of the eigenvalue is a direct measure of the positive or negative damping for each mode. Adding the calculated damping algebraically to the inherent modal damping results in the net modal damping for the system. For a mathematical treatment of modeling for eigenvalue analysis, see Ref. [5].

16.2.5.3 Transient Analysis

Transient analysis is required to determine the potential for SSR torque amplification. The well-known EMTP is very well suited for such analysis [13]. There are various versions of the program. Bonneville

Power Administration (BPA) developed the program and has added contributions from other engineers and upgraded it through the years. A version referred to as ATP is in the public domain. Several other versions of the EMTP are commercially available. EMTP provides for detailed modeling of those elements required for assessing the severity of SSR torque amplification. This includes the power system, the generators in the system, and the mechanical model of the turbine-generator being studied.

16.2.5.3.1 EMTP Power System Model

Three-phase circuits, a neutral circuit, and a ground connection model the electrical elements of the power system. The data for the model can generally be provided in the form of phase components or symmetrical components. Special features of series capacitors can be modeled, including capacitor protection by gap flashing or nonlinear resistors. Load is usually included in a short circuit equivalent circuit at the point where it connects to the portion of the network being modeled in detail.

16.2.5.3.2 EMTP Generator Model

The electrical model for a synchronous generator being studied in EMTP is a two-axis Park's equivalent with several rotor circuits on the direct and quadrature axes. The input data can be in the form of either winding data or conventional stability data. The generator data can be obtained from the manufacturer in the form of conventional stability data. All generators in the system, other than the study generator, can generally be represented by a voltage source and impedance without affecting the study accuracy. For a detailed treatment of generator modeling for SSR analysis, see Ref. [5].

16.2.5.3.3 EMTP Turbine-Generator Mechanical Model

The turbine-generator mechanical model in EMTP consists of lumped masses, spring constants, and dampers. For torque amplification studies mechanical damping is not a critical factor. The peak shaft torque would be expected to only vary by about 10% over a range of damping from zero to maximum [1]. Hence the turbine-generator mechanical damping is generally neglected in EMTP studies.

16.2.5.3.4 Critical Factors for Torque Amplification

The most important use of EMTP for SSR analysis is to find the peak transient shaft torque that is to be expected when series capacitors are applied. It is necessary to understand that the major torque amplification events due to SSR will occur either during a power system fault or after the clearing of a power system fault. The energy stored in series capacitors during a fault will be discharged as subsynchronous frequency current that can flow in a generator armature, creating amplified subsynchronous torque. The peak shaft torque to be expected depends on many factors. Experience has shown that the dominant factors that should be varied during a torque amplification study are electric system tuning, fault location, fault clearing time, and capacitor control parameters and the largest transient torques occur when the unit is fully loaded. For a detailed discussion on system tuning and faults, see Ref. [1]. For information on capacitor controls, see Ref. [7].

16.2.5.3.5 Computing Fatigue Life Expenditure

When the torque of a turbine-generator shaft exceeds a certain minimum level (endurance limit), fatigue life is expended from the shaft during each torsion cycle. The machine manufacturer can generally furnish an estimate of FLE per cycle corresponding to shaft torque magnitude for each shaft. When plotted this is referred to as an *S–N* curve. EMTP can then be used to predict the FLE for a specific system disturbance. One method requires the complete simulation and FLE calculation of an event over approximately 30 s, which may be costly, if numerous scenarios are to be investigated. An alternate simplified method requires some approximation. For this method EMTP studies are conducted to find the peak shaft torque that will occur for a given scenario. Since the peak shaft torques generally occur within 0.5 s, EMTP simulation and FLE calculation time are minimized. It is assumed that after the shaft torque has peaked, it will decay at a rate corresponding to the mechanical damping of the excited modes. The FLE for the simulated event can then be calculated from knowledge of the peak torque, the decay rate, and the *S–N* curve. This gives conservative estimates of FLE. It is important to recognize that FLE for each incident is accumulative. When the accumulated FLE reaches 100%, the shaft is expected to experience cracks at its surface but not gross failure. For more detail on computing FLE, see Ref. [1].

16.2.5.4 Data for SSR Analysis

Data requirements for SSR analysis consist of system data and turbine-generator data.

16.2.5.4.1 System Data

System data for eigenvalue and frequency scanning studies is generally of the same form as the positive sequence data used for power flow, short circuit, and power system stability studies. The data may require refinement to account for the resistance variations with frequency and for system equivalents. The classical short circuit equivalent may not be adequate when the equivalent system includes series capacitors. In such cases an RLC equivalent might be developed. It should be checked with the frequency-scanning program to determine if the equivalent reasonably approximates the driving point impedance of the system it is to represent over the frequency range of interest (10 to 50 Hz). Large load centers near the machine being analyzed may need to be represented by a special equivalent. For one outstanding case where the apparent impedance as viewed from the study generator terminal was actually measured over the frequency range of 15 to 45 Hz, it was found that the Phoenix, Arizona load must be modeled to provide a good equivalent [14]. In that case, it was found that the following load model could form an accurate equivalent:

60% of the total load consists of induction motor load with x''_{d} of 0.135 per unit.
40% of the load is purely resistive.

The validity of such a model for other locations has not been determined.

For torque amplification studies using EMTP, the system data requirements are much more extensive since all three phases and ground are represented. In EMTP the series capacitors can be modeled in detail, including the capacitor protective equipment. For more detail on system data for SSR analysis, see Ref. [1].

16.2.5.4.2 Turbine-Generator Data

The IEEE SSR Working Group has developed a set of recommended SSR data items that should be furnished by the turbine-generator manufacturer. This is generally the minimum data required for SSR studies. Following is a description of the three types of data:

Generator electrical model

1. Resistance and reactance as a function of frequency for the generator as viewed from the generator terminals. This should include armature and rotor circuits.
2. Typical stability format data for the "Park's equivalent" generator model.

Turbine-generator mechanical model

1. The inertia constant for each turbine element, generator, and exciter.
2. The spring constants for each shaft connecting turbine elements, generator, and exciter.
3. The natural torsional frequencies and mode shapes as determined for the mechanical model defined by items 1 and 2.
4. The modal damping as a function of load corresponding to the mechanical model defined by items 1 and 2.

Life expenditure curves For each shaft connecting the turbine elements, generator, and exciter a plot of the life expended per transient incident as a function of the peak oscillating torque, or an *S–N* curve showing torque vs. number of cycles to crack initiation or crack propagation. The manufacturers should provide all assumptions made in the preparation of these curves.

For more detail on turbine-generator modeling, see Ref. [1,5].

16.2.6 SSR Countermeasures

If series capacitors are to be used and SSR analysis shows that damaging interactions may exist for one or more system configurations, countermeasures must be provided, even if the probability of an SSR event is low. Such countermeasures may not completely eliminate turbine-generator shaft FLE. Even so, prudent countermeasure selections can probably limit the FLE of any shaft to less than 100% over the expected life of the turbine-generator. A strategy for SSR countermeasure selection should be formulated during the SSR analysis stage so that it can be used as a guide for the studies to be conducted. Reference [15] presents one utility's guidelines that were developed to guide countermeasure selection, including the required SSR studies.

Numerous SSR countermeasures have been studied [16] and 12, or so, have been applied. Following is a list of the countermeasures known to have been applied with references for each. These are separated into unit-tripping and nonunit-tripping types.

16.2.6.1 Unit-Tripping SSR Countermeasures

The following countermeasures will cause the generator to be electrically separated from the power system when a hazardous condition is detected.

Torsional motion relay [17,18]: Such relays typically derive their input from rotor motion at one or two places on the turbine-generator. Rotor motion signals are typically obtained from toothed wheels mounted on the shaft. The signal is first conditioned and then analyzed for presence of modal components. The trip logic is based upon the level of signal and rate of growth. One needs to have the turbine generator stress vs. cycles to failure information to properly set the relays.

The torsional motion based relays are usually very effective in protecting against torsional interaction type of SSR problems. However, these relays may not be fast enough to protect against the worst case of torque amplification problem. The newer torsional motion based relays are microprocessor based compared to the older relays which were analog type relays.

Armature current relay [19,20]: The armature-based relays use generator current as the input signal and condition the input signal to filter out the normal 50/60 Hz component. The signal is then filtered to derive the modal component of the current. The tripping logic is based upon the level of SSR current and rate of growth. Since these relays use armature current as the input, they are capable of protecting against the torque amplification type of SSR problem.

Since the SSR current is a function of system impedance, it is usually necessary to set the relays very sensitive to be able to protect against all possible conditions. One disadvantage of setting them very sensitive is the possibility of false trips. Unfortunately, these relays are not commercially available any more.

Unit-tripping logic schemes [21]: The unit-tripping logic scheme is usually a hard-wired logic scheme, which will take the unit off-line if predetermined system conditions exist. Such schemes can be used only if there are only low probability conditions for which SSR conditions exist and one is reasonably sure that there are no other unknown system conditions for which an SSR condition can occur. Since it is difficult to assess all possible conditions for which an SSR condition may exist, this countermeasure should be applied very carefully.

16.2.6.2 Nonunit-Tripping SSR Countermeasures

The following SSR countermeasures will provide varying levels of SSR protection without electrically separating the generator from the power system. Each countermeasure is designed to offer protection for specific SSR concerns and the choice of which one to employ is based on the nature and severity of the concern. The static blocking filter provides the broadest range of protection, but it has both the highest price and most demanding maintenance requirement.

- Static blocking filter [22,23]
- Dynamic stabilizer [24–26]
- Excitation system damper [27,28]
- Turbine-generator modifications [1]
- Pole face Amortisseur windings [9,22]
- Series capacitor bypassing [7]
- Coordinated series capacitor control with loading [9]
- Operating procedures [1]

16.2.6.3 Thyristor-Controlled Series Capacitor

The thyristor-controlled series capacitor (TCSC) is a capacitor in series with the transmission line, with a thyristor pair and small reactor in parallel with the capacitor. It can function as a series capacitor if the thyristors are blocked, as a series reactor if the thyristors fully conduct, or as a variable impedance when the duty cycle of the thyristors is varied. The device has been applied to improve stability in weak AC networks and to protect the series capacitor from transient overvoltage. It is expected that TCSCs will be used to control SSR interactions in the future.

Two installations in the United States have demonstrated control algorithms for SSR concerns [29,30]. These projects were in locations where there was a low probability of sustained or growing oscillations, but they provided both demonstrations of control algorithms and equipment installation and operation. They also provide information about required ratings for the components of the TCSC and reliability of the power electronic components, the cooling systems, and the control systems.

There have been a large number of technical studies and papers describing control algorithms, equipment sizes, and the most effective location in the network for TCSC installations. A sample of this information is contained in Refs. [31–33]. These circuits are considered to be the most effective means to directly control SSR in the transmission network. As network loading increases and the need to have high levels of series compensation increases, there will be greater justification for this equipment.

16.2.7 Fatigue Damage and Monitoring

Fatigue damage of turbine-generator shafts is certainly undesirable, but it may not be practical to completely avoid it. Therefore, it is important to understand the consequences of fatigue damage, and to know how to quantify any fatigue damage experienced so that gross shaft failure is avoided [3,18].

The consequences of high cycle fatigue and low cycle fatigue differ. In the case of high cycle fatigue, where purely elastic deformation occurs, there is no permanent deformation and no irreparable damage. High cycle fatigue is characterized by millions of stress cycles, consequently it rarely occurs in the main shaft sections of a turbine-generator. It is said that 100% FLE occurs when cracks are initiated at the stress concentration points on the shaft surfaces. When this point is reached, cracks will be propagated as additional torsional stresses above the endurance limit (at the stress concentration point at the end of the crack) are experienced. This does not mean that shaft failure will occur when 100% FLE is reached. On the contrary, the ultimate strength of the shaft in torsion is not significantly reduced. It does mean that cracks will be expected to increase in number and size if appropriate action is not taken. Fortunately, machining the shaft surface to remove the cracks can effectively restore the total shaft integrity. Cracks can be identified by visual inspection at stress concentration points on the shaft. Even so, it may be very costly to shut a unit down for a visual inspection following an incident suspected to result in significant FLE. For this reason, torsional monitoring techniques have been developed to provide a permanent history of torque experienced by each turbine-generator shaft. The most likely phenomenon leading to high cycle fatigue is sustained torsional interaction where the torsional amplitude is limited by nonlinear damping.

In the case of low cycle fatigue, characterized by a small number of very large amplitude stress cycles for which plastic deformation occurs, the consequences may be quite different from those in high cycle fatigue. When plastic deformation occurs, there is irreversible shaft deformation in torsion (kink). In the most severe cases this can result in a bending moment being applied to the shaft each revolution. If the unit continues to operate in this condition, shaft failure in the bending mode may occur. If a monitor detects low cycle fatigue and there is a corresponding increase in lateral vibration, the shaft should be inspected. Whether there should be an immediate unit shutdown for such an incident is subject to judgment. The most likely phenomenon leading to low cycle fatigue is torque amplification.

Shaft torque monitoring techniques have been developed which will provide a permanent history of the approximate torque experienced by each turbine-generator shaft. This information is extremely useful in making a decision following a unit trip by SSR relay action or an unusual event such as out-of-phase synchronization. The options are:

1. Take the unit off-line and inspect the shaft.
2. Inspect the shaft at the next scheduled outage.
3. Synchronize, load the unit, and continue to operate without interruption.

A wrong decision could cause significant shaft damage or an unnecessary unit outage. Several methods have been developed for monitoring shaft torque as reported in the literature [18,34–38].

16.2.8 SSR Testing

The analytic methods and corresponding software for SSR analysis can be very detailed, but they have limited value unless the required data for the electric system, generators, and turbine-generator spring-mass-damping system is available and is reasonably accurate. It has been found from tests that the torsional frequencies are usually within 1 Hz of that predicted by the manufacturer. This implies that the spring-mass model data is reasonably accurate. The turbine-generator manufacturers estimate torsional damping, but testing has shown that damping predictions, when compared with site tests, may have large variations. Therefore, little confidence can be placed in predicted damping unless it is based upon measured data from similar units. Accurate torsional damping values can only be obtained from tests.

SSR tests can vary in their complexity, depending on their purpose, availability of turbine-generator rotor motion monitoring points, type of generator excitation system, power system configuration, and other factors. The minimum and simplest tests are those used to identify the natural torsional frequencies of a turbine-generator. Tests to measure torsional damping are more difficult, particularly at high loading. Various types of tests may be devised to test the effectiveness of countermeasures.

16.2.8.1 Torsional Mode Frequency Tests

The objective of these tests is to perform a spectrum analysis of rotor motion or shaft strain in torsion at points that respond to all active modes of interest. Rotor motion signals can be obtained by demodulating the output of a proximity probe mounted adjacent to a toothed wheel on the rotor. Shaft strain is obtainable from strain gauges fixed to the shaft [39]. With the use of digital spectrum analyzers, natural torsional frequencies can be measured by merely recording the appropriate signals during normal operation of the turbine-generator unit without any special switching [1].

16.2.8.2 Modal Damping Tests

The most successful methods for measuring damping is to excite the spring-mass system by some means and then measure the natural decay rate following removal of the stimulus. Two methods have been used to excite the torsional modes. These methods are referred to as the "impact method" and the "steady-state method."

The impact method requires the application of an electrical torque transient to the turbine-generator being tested. The transient must be large enough to allow the decay rate of each modal response to be measured during ring down. Rotor motion is generally the preferred signal, but shaft stress has also been used successfully. Since the transient excites all modes, a series of narrow-band and band-reject filters are applied to the signal to separate the response into the modal components of interest. Switching series capacitor banks or line switching can create the required transient. Synchronizing the generator to the power system may also provide adequate stimulus. Such tests are described in Refs. [39,40].

The steady-state method uses a sinusoidal input signal to the voltage regulator of the excitation system, which produces a sinusoidal component of generator field voltage. Some types of excitation systems can create a large enough sinusoidal response of the generator rotor to provide meaningful analysis. The frequency of the signal is varied to obtain a pure modal response of rotor motion or shaft strain. When a steady-state condition with pure mode stimulus has been obtained the stimulus is removed and the decaying modal oscillation is recorded and plotted. The decay rate is a measure of the modal damping. This process is repeated for each torsional mode of interest. The steady-state method is the preferred method since pure modes can be exited. This method is only applicable to generators whose excitation system has sufficient gain and speed of response to produce a significant torque from the voltage regulator input signal. Such tests are reported in detail in Refs. [39,40].

The damping measured from either of the two test methods is the net damping of the coupled mechanical and electrical systems. Depending on the system configuration during the damping tests, the measured damping may include positive or negative damping due to interaction of the mechanical and electrical systems. This effect can be calculated from eigenvalue studies or from frequency scanning studies in conjunction with the interaction Eq. (16.4). To obtain the true mechanical damping, the measured damping must be corrected to account for the interaction in accordance with the following equation:

$$\sigma_n = \sigma_{\text{meas}} \pm \Delta\sigma_n \tag{16.6}$$

where

σ_n = mechanical modal damping for mode n
σ_{meas} = measured damping from tests
$\Delta\sigma_n$ = positive or negative damping due to interaction

It is usually important to have measured torsional damping of all active subsynchronous modes as a function of load, ranging from no load to full load. It is often more difficult to obtain full load damping because modal response decreases as damping increases and damping generally increases with load. It may be impossible to obtain adequate torsional excitation at full load. See Fig. 16.3 for results of such tests reported in Ref. [39]. Fortunately, it is the damping values at low loads that are of most interest because they represent the most severe interactions.

16.2.8.3 Countermeasure Tests

Testing the effectiveness of any countermeasure to be applied is important, but may not be feasible. For example, if a countermeasure is to limit loss of shaft life for the most severe transient, it is not reasonable to conduct such a test. Tests for effectiveness of torsional interaction countermeasures are practical and should be made whenever possible. One method is to conduct damping tests, as described in Section 16.2.8.2, with the countermeasure in service and the system configured to yield significant negative damping due to torsional interaction. Such tests are described in Refs. [23,41].

If SSR relays are to be applied, it may be possible to initiate a unit trip by SSR relay action under controlled conditions to verify proper operation. This has been accomplished, at least at one plant, by reducing the relay settings to a very sensitive level, and then causing rotor oscillations by the steady-state method described above. The stimulus can be increased to a level of sustained modal oscillations that will cause the relay to pick up. For the reduced setting, the shaft torques are kept below the endurance limit. Such a test provides confidence in both the relay capabilities to initiate a unit trip and the correct wiring of the circuits from the relay output to the circuit breaker trip coils.

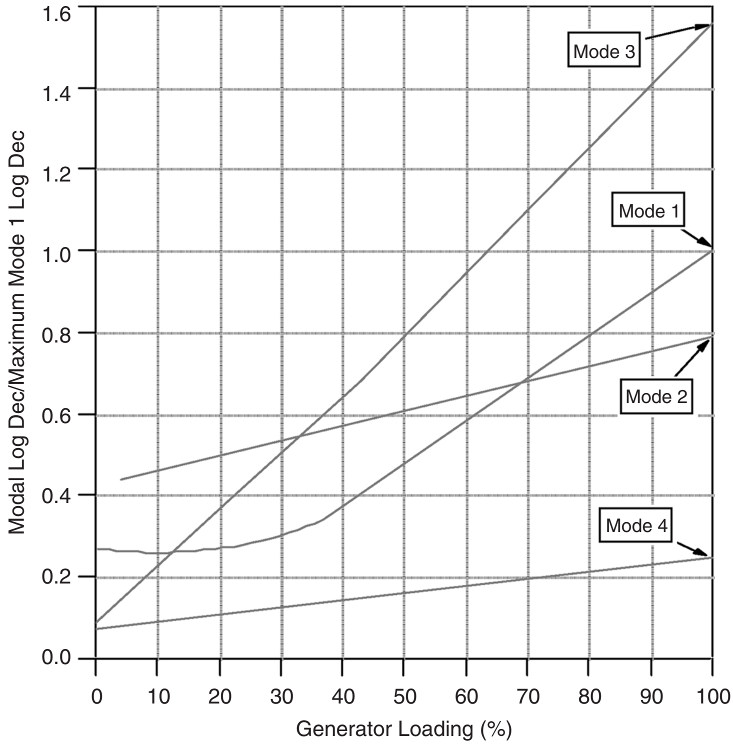


FIGURE 16.3 Variations of modal damping as a function of generator load for Navajo Generators. (From Anderson, P.M. and Farmer, R.G., Subsynchronous resonance, *Series Compensation of Power Systems*, PBLSH!, San Diego, 1996. With permission.)

16.2.9 Summary

Consideration must be given to the potential for SSR whenever series capacitors are to be applied. Even so, the ability to analyze and control SSR for the extreme problems encountered has been clearly demonstrated over the last 30 years. Various countermeasures for SSR control have been developed and successfully applied. In many cases, the sole SSR protection can be provided by relays. Monitoring has a place in the SSR field to provide a permanent history of the torques experienced by the shafts and the accumulative shaft life expenditure. Such information can be used to schedule shaft inspection and maintenance, as required, to maintain shaft integrity. Continuous monitoring of SSR countermeasure performance by modern digital equipment can also be cost effective.

If potential SSR problems are identified when series capacitor applications are considered, there is a clear course established by the utility industry. Analytical methods are available for either cursory or detailed analysis. Countermeasure selection guidelines used by others are available. Testing methods have been developed that vary from simple monitoring to sophisticated signal processing and system switching. SSR can be controlled, thus making it possible to benefit from the distinct advantages of series capacitors.

16.3 Device-Dependent Subsynchronous Oscillations

Device-dependent subsynchronous oscillations have been defined as interaction between turbine-generator torsional systems and power system components. Such interaction with turbine-generators has been observed with DC converter controls, variable speed motor controllers, and power system stabilizers (PSS). There is potential for such interaction for any wide bandwidth power controller located near a turbine-generator.

16.3.1 HVDC Converter Controls

In 1977, tests were conducted to determine the interaction of the Square Butte HVDC converter in North Dakota with the Milton Young #2 turbine-generator. It was found that both the high-gain power modulation control and the HVDC firing angle control destabilized the first torsional mode of the turbine-generator at 11.5 Hz. Fortunately it was also found that the basic HVDC controls created growing torsional oscillations of the turbine-generator in the first torsional mode for a specific system configuration that nearly isolated the turbine-generator and HVDC converter from the rest of the AC network. Careful analysis of this phenomenon shows that any HVDC converter has the potential for creating subsynchronous torsional oscillations in turbine-generators that are connected to the same bus as the HVDC converter. The potential reduces as the impedance between the two increases or as additional AC circuits are connected. The HVDC system appears as a load to the turbine-generator. The load would be positively damped for crude firing angle control. Successful converter operation requires sophisticated firing angle control. This sophisticated control may make the converter appear as a negatively damped load in the range of 2–20 Hz. The potential problem of HVDC converter control interaction with turbine-generators can be investigated by eigenvalue analysis. If negative damping is expected the problem may be solved by retuning converter controls. Also a subsynchronous damping controller has been conceptually designed as reported in Ref. [42]. Reference [43] describes a field test and analysis of interaction between a turbine-generator and a HVDC system.

16.3.2 Variable Speed Motor Controllers

In 1979 and 1980, a European fossil fired power plant experienced subsynchronous oscillations of a 775 MW, 3000 RPM turbine-generator. The plant was equipped with variable speed drives for the boiler feedwater pumps. The pump drives are equipped with six-pulse subsynchronous converter cascades. For such a converter, the load power to the motors has a component at six times the motor slip frequency. At specific load levels the feedwater pump speed is such that the load has a component whose frequency corresponds to the 50 Hz complement of one of the natural torsional frequencies of the turbine-generator. Under these conditions, the pump load acts as a continuous torsional stimulus of the turbine-generator. FLE could occur under such conditions, depending on the magnitude of the torsional oscillations. A torsional stress monitor detected the event discussed above. Modeling and analysis in EMTP or similar programs could probably predict such an event but there is no record of such an analysis. The countermeasure applied to the above problem controls feedwater pump speed to avoid speeds that would excite the natural torsional modes of the turbine-generator [44].

16.3.3 Power System Stabilizers

In 1969, a 500 MW unit was commissioned at the Lambton Generating Station. A PSS was added some time later to provide positive damping for the local mode of about 1.67 Hz. The PSS derived its input signal from rotor motion at a point adjacent to the generator mass. When the PSS was initially tested sustained 16.0 Hz torsional oscillations of the generator were observed. 16.0 Hz corresponds to the first torsional mode of the turbine-generator mechanical system [45]. From analysis and simulation it was determined that if the torsional oscillations were allowed to continue, severe turbine-generator shaft damage would occur. It was also learned that any small generator rotor motion at the first torsional mode (16.0 Hz) creates a 16.0 Hz signal input to the PSS. The gain and phase of the PSS and the excitation system created an oscillating torque on the generator at 16.0 Hz, which reinforced the initiating 16.0 Hz oscillation. This type of problem can be analyzed using either eigenvalue or EMTP-type computer programs, which have provisions for modeling the turbine-generator mechanical system. The essence of the problem can be analyzed manually or using any software, which will provide the data for Bode plots.

There are various countermeasures that can be applied to deal with the PSS problem. The countermeasures used at Lambton consisted of moving the rotor motion sensing location to a point of the spring-mass system, which has no torsional motion, or provides positive damping, at the active torsional modes. In addition, a 16.35 Hz notch filter was included in the PSS to drastically reduce the gain for the first torsional mode. Others use a high order low pass filter or a wide-band band-reject filter in the PSS loop to insure that torsional oscillations are not generated by the PSS.

16.3.4 Other

In general, any device that controls or responds rapidly to power or speed variations in the subsynchronous frequency range is a potential source for excitation of subsynchronous oscillations. The technical literature includes the effect of governor characteristics on turbine-generator shaft torsionals [46] and subsynchronous torsional interactions with static var compensators (SVCs) [47].

16.4 Supersynchronous Resonance

The term supersynchronous resonance (SPSR) is used here to refer to a torsional resonant condition of a turbine-generator mechanical system at a frequency greater than the frequency corresponding to rated turbine speed and power system rated frequency. Such a resonant condition can be excited from the power system. There have been at least three incidents of turbine blade failure contributed to the excitation of turbine-generator torsional modes that are very near to twice the AC operating frequency (120 Hz for 60 Hz AC systems).

The excitation for these events is the double frequency torque that results from unbalanced phase currents in the AC system. In per unit the magnitude of this torque is very nearly equal to the magnitude of the negative sequence AC current. This value is dependent on transmission line design and balance in system loads. For most systems it is less that 2% of rated torque, but it may increase for some contingencies. The excitation frequency will also vary due to variations in synchronous frequency. This variation is most pronounced in very weak systems and in isolated systems.

16.4.1 Known SPSR Events

In 1985, a turbine-generator outside the United States experienced the failure of eight blades in the last stage of a 1800-RPM low-pressure turbine with 43-in. last-stage blades. The blades failed at the root attachments to the rotor disk due to high cycle fatigue. A one-year outage was required to repair the unit. In 1993, a turbine-generator in the United States experienced the failure of two blades in the next to last row of a 1800-RPM low-pressure turbine with 38-in. last-stage blades. The blades failed at the dovetails on the rotor disk. A 49-day outage was required to repair the unit. The turbine-generator units for both incidents were from the same manufacturer and both have relatively long turbine blades on 1800-RPM low-pressure turbines. Similar events occurred in the 1970s to a 1800-RPM turbine-generator from a different manufacturer [48].

16.4.2 SPSR Physical Principles

Long turbine blades, such as the 38- and 43-in. blades on 1800-RPM low-pressure turbines, often have a natural vibration frequency near 120 Hz when coupled to the rotor disk. A blade-disk with a natural frequency near 120 Hz may be excited by torsional oscillations near 120 Hz [49]. Although individual turbines are designed to avoid 120 Hz natural torsional frequencies (torsional modes) with at least 0.5 Hz margin, the complex modes of coupled shaft systems at these frequencies are difficult to calculate with sufficient accuracy. The following scenario can contribute to turbine blade failure due to high cycle fatigue.

Negative sequence current flows in the generator armature due to unbalanced loads, untransposed lines, or unbalanced faults. The resulting magnetic flux interacting with the field flux results in a double AC system frequency electromagnetic torque applied to the generator rotor. This will excite torsional oscillations if there is a torsional mode of the shaft system at this frequency with sufficient net torque along the generator rotor. Torsional oscillations, at points along the shaft where long turbine blades are attached, can excite blade vibration if the blade-disk natural frequency is approximately the same as the rotor mode frequency (120 Hz for 60 Hz systems) and the coupled mode can be excited by torque applied to the generator rotor. Continuous blade vibration, or numerous transient events, will initiate cracks at the stress concentration points and finally blades will fail.

For the above scenario, generally there is a torsional mode within 0.5 Hz of 120 Hz. Turbine-generator designers have made efforts to avoid torsional frequencies near 120 Hz but have not always had the technology to accurately calculate the frequencies for the higher torsional modes near 120 Hz. The 1993 blade failure has been contributed to an undetected torsional mode within 0.5 Hz of 120 Hz. For the 1985 blade failure, there were no natural modes within 0.5 Hz of 120 Hz but the turbine-generator was operating in a relatively small power system whose frequency varied significantly. These frequency variations, in conjunction with negative sequence generator current, excited the torsional modes that were 1–2 Hz away from 120 Hz.

Tests and experience have shown that generators experience continuous negative sequence current ranging from 1 to 3%. Of course, much higher negative sequence currents occur during unbalanced fault conditions. Therefore, if the blade-disk natural frequencies are near 120 Hz, it is essential that there are no natural torsional frequencies between 119.5 and 120.5 Hz that can be excited by torque applied to the generator rotor. The turbine-generator manufacturer calculates the blade-disk natural frequencies and the torsional natural frequencies. Unfortunately, the calculated frequencies may not be sufficiently accurate to determine if blade failure is to be expected. The turbine-generator natural frequencies can be accurately determined from tests. An off-line test has been devised which will accurately show the natural torsional frequencies at no load. This is called a ramp test and consists of monitoring torsional strain at critical points while negative-sequence current flows in the generator armature circuit and the turbine-generator speed is accelerated. The negative sequence current is induced by shorting two generator terminals and controlling field voltage with a separate power supply. The ramp test and other tests are described in Refs. [48,50]. Using accurate test data, an analytic model can be developed by an iterative process. The resulting analytic model can be used to find appropriate countermeasures.

16.4.3 SPSR Countermeasures

The countermeasures that have been applied to avoid turbine blade failure, caused by SPSR, involve either moving natural torsional frequencies away from 120 Hz or changing the mode shapes, of modes near 120 Hz, so that they are not excited by electrical torque applied to the generator rotor. This has been successfully accomplished by several methods. One is to braze the tie wires on all last-stage blades. This modification may increase torsional frequencies and it alters the participation of individual blades in the oscillation. A second countermeasure involves adding a mass ring at an appropriate location along the torsional spring-mass system. This modification may reduce the critical torsional frequencies and it will change the mode shapes. Other methods include machining critical sections along the shaft system and changing the generator pole face slotting to move frequencies and modify mode shapes. Tests to determine the natural torsional frequencies following modifications should be made to verify the analytic model [48,50]. A relay has been proposed to alarm or trip the turbine-generator for combinations of negative sequence current and off-nominal frequency operation deemed to be excessive.

16.5 Device-Dependent Supersynchronous Oscillations

There has been a series of events that resulted in turbine-generator damage due to SPSR stimulated by a power system device. This type of interaction is referred to as device-dependent supersynchronous oscillations (DDSPSO).

16.5.1 Known DDSPSO Events

The Comanche Unit 2 near Pueblo, Colorado went into service in 1975 and during the period of 1987 to 1994, the unit suffered generator damage. In 1987, there was a crack in the generator shaft. In 1993, there were two failures of the rotating exciter. In 1994, there was a retaining ring failure resulting in serious rotor and stator damage [51]. All have been contributed to the same phenomena.

16.5.2 DDSPSO Physical Principles

Comanche Unit 2 is about 3 miles from 2–60 MVA steel mill arc furnaces. The arc furnaces have an SVC for flicker control. It has been found that the SVC had a control loop instability that caused negative sequence current to flow in the armature of Comanche 2 at a frequency near 55 Hz. The instability resulted in a 5 Hz amplitude modulation of the 60 Hz SVC current. This modulation created upper and lower sidebands of 55 and 65 Hz in all three phases, but in reverse rotation. The 65 Hz component did not appear outside the SVC delta winding but a 55 Hz negative sequence component flowed in the generator armature. The frequency of this component varied between 54 and 58 Hz, depending on the steel mill operating conditions. This produced a component of electromagnetic torque in the frequency range of 114 to 118 Hz. The natural torsional frequency for Mode 6 of Comanche 2 was about 118 Hz prior to the retaining ring failure. The mode shape for Mode 6 shows large displacement at the two ends of the generator. Therefore, stimulus from the SVC created torsional oscillations was sufficiently large and sustained to result in high cycle fatigue of the generator shaft, rotating exciter, and retaining ring before the root cause of the problem was found.

16.5.3 DDSPSO Countermeasure

Extensive testing was performed to determine natural modal frequencies for the turbine-generator, the components of armature current, and the arc furnace and SVC stimulus. Once the root cause of the problem was determined, it was a simple matter to retune the control circuit of the SVC [51].

16.6 Transient Shaft Torque Oscillations

Turbine-generator design has been guided for many years by a simple requirement for the strength of the shaft system. This requirement in the American National Standards Institute (IEEE/ANSI) Standard C50.13 states "A generator shall be designed so that it can be fit for service after experiencing a sudden short circuit of any kind at its terminals while operating at rated load and 1.05 per unit rated voltage, provided that the fault is limited by the following conditions:

- The maximum phase current does not exceed that obtained from a three-phase sudden short circuit
- The stator winding short time thermal requirements are not exceeded." [52]

Although this requirement does not refer to the turbine-generator shaft, this transient has been used for many years to verify the shaft design. It has generally been assumed that the more frequent shocks resulting from more remote short circuits, out-of-phase synchronizing, and transmission line switching would have low enough magnitudes and be infrequent enough that fatigue issues did not have to be considered. Experience has verified this assumption. While there have been reports of damage to coupling faces and coupling bolts, there have not been many reports of more severe damage.

When shaft damage due to dynamic interactions between turbine-generators and transmission systems became a concern, more detailed analysis of the effects of short circuit and line switching transients was performed [53]. This analysis generally confirmed that system disturbances did not result in larger shaft torques than terminal short circuits unless these disturbances involved dynamic interactions, series capacitors, or multiple switching events. The most common scenario for multiple switching events is fault clearing in the transmission system. When a fault occurs in the network, turbine-generators experience a step change in torque. The fault clearing 50–150 ms later produces a second step change usually in the opposite direction. This second shock can reinforce oscillations initiated by the fault if the timing coincides with critical timing for one of the shaft natural frequencies.

Unsuccessful high-speed reclosing events coupled with low damping for shaft oscillations would provide more opportunities for further amplification. For this reason turbine-generator manufacturers requested that the practice of high-speed reclosing be discontinued for multiphase faults on transmission lines connected to generating stations.

Very recently damage has been reported at one of the older operating nuclear stations in the United States [54]. Both turbine-generators at this station had to be removed from service when changes in shaft vibration became unacceptable. Relatively long cracks were discovered emanating from coupling keyways in the generator shaft. The analysis determined that these cracks were caused by multiple torsional events during the lifetime of the machines. There is no detailed history of the specific transients, but repairs including a redesign of the coupling and keyways make the units less susceptible to further damage. This experience has renewed industry interest in transient shaft torque oscillations and suggests that further analysis and monitoring are warranted.

References

1. Anderson, P.M. and Farmer, R.G., Subsynchronous resonance, in *Series Compensation of Power Systems*, PBLSH!, San Diego, 1996, chap. 6.
2. Hall, M.C. and Hodges, D.A., Experience with 500-kV subsynchronous resonance and resulting turbine generator shaft damage at Mohave Generating Station, in IEEE PES Special Publication, *Analysis and Control of Subsynchronous Resonance*, IEEE Publication 76 CH 1066-0-PWR, 1976, pp. 22–29.
3. IEEE Committee Report, Terms, definitions and symbols for subsynchronous resonance, *IEEE Transactions*, PAS-104, June 1985, 1326–1334.
4. Kilgore, L.A., Ramey, D.G., and Hall, M.C., Simplified transmission and generation system analysis procedures for subsynchronous resonance. *IEEE Transactions*, PAS-96, Nov./Dec. 1977, 1840–1846.
5. Anderson, P.M., Agrawal, B.L., and Van Ness, J.E., *Subsynchronous Resonance in Power Systems*, IEEE Press, New York, 1990.
6. Joyce, J.S., Kulig, T., and Lambrecht, D., Torsional fatigue of turbine-generator shafts caused by different electrical system faults and switching operations, *IEEE Transactions*, PAS-97, Sept./Oct. 1978, 965–977.
7. IEEE Committee Report, Series capacitor controls and settings as a countermeasure to subsynchronous resonance, *IEEE Transactions*, PAS-101, June 1982, 1281–1287.
8. Anderson, G., Atmuri, R., Rosenqvist, R., and Torseng, S., Influence of hydro units generator-to-turbine ratio on damping of subsynchronous oscillations, *IEEE Transactions*, PAS-103, 4, Aug. 1984, 2352–2361.
9. IEEE Committee Report, Countermeasures to subsynchronous resonance problems, *IEEE Transactions*, PAS-99, Sept./Oct. 1980, 1810–1818.
10. Agrawal, B.L. and Farmer, R.G., Use of frequency scanning technique for subsynchronous resonance analysis, *IEEE Transactions*, PAS-98, Mar./Apr. 1979, 341–349.
11. IEEE Committee Report, Comparison of SSR calculations and test results, *IEEE Transactions*, PWRS-4, 1, Feb. 1989, 336–344.
12. Kilgore, L.A., Elliott, L.C., and Taylor, E.T., The prediction and control of self-excited oscillations due to series capacitors in power systems, *IEEE Transactions*, PAS-96, Nov./Dec. 1977, 1840–1846.
13. Gross, G. and Hall M.C., Synchronous machine and torsional dynamics simulation in the computation of electro-magnetic transients, *IEEE Transactions*, PAS-97, July/Aug. 1978, 1074–1086.
14. Agrawal, B.L., Demcko, J.A., Farmer, R.G., and Selin, D.A., Apparent impedance measuring system (AIMS), in *IEEE Transactions*, PWRS-4(2), May 1989, 575–582.
15. Farmer, R.G. and Agrawal, B.L., Guidelines for the selection of subsynchronous resonance countermeasures, in IEEE Special Publication, *Symposium on Countermeasures for Subsynchronous Resonance*, IEEE Publication 81TH0086-9-PWR, 1981, pp. 81–85.
16. IEEE Committee Report, Reader's guide to subsynchronous resonance, *IEEE Transactions*, PWRS-7(1), Feb. 1992, 150–157.

17. Bowler, C.E.J., Demcko, J.A., Menkoft, L., Kotheimer, W.C., and Cordray, D., The Navajo SMF type subsynchronous resonace relay, *IEEE Transactions*, PAS-97(5), Sep./Oct. 1978, 1489–1495.
18. Ahlgren, L., Walve, K., Fahlen, N., and Karlsson, S., Countermeasures against oscillatory torque stresses in large turbogenerators, in CIGRÉ, Paris, 1982.
19. Sun, S.C., Salowe, S., Taylor, E.R., and Mummert, C.R., A subsynchronous oscillation relay—Type SSO, *IEEE Transactions*, PAS-100, July 1981, 3580–3589.
20. Farmer, R.G. and Agrawal, B.L., Application of subsynchronous oscillation relay—Type SSO, *IEEE Transactions*, PAS-100(5), May 1981, 2442–2451.
21. Perez, A.J., Mohave Project subsynchronous resonance unit tripping scheme, in IEEE Special Publication, *Symposium on Countermeasures for Subsynchronous Resonance*, IEEE Publication 81TH0086-9-PWR, 1981, pp. 20–22.
22. Farmer, R.G., Schwalb, A.L., and Katz, E., Navajo Project report on subsynchronous resonance analysis and solution, *IEEE Transactions*, PAS-96(4), July/Aug. 1977, 1226–1232.
23. Bowler, C.E.J., Baker, D.H., Mincer, N.A., and Vandiveer, P.R., Operation and test of the Navajo SSR protective equipment, *IEEE Transactions*, PAS-95, July/Aug. 1978, 1030–1035.
24. Ramey, D.G., Kimmel, D.S., Dorney, J.W., and Kroening, F.H., Dynamic stabilizer verification tests at the San Juan Station, *IEEE Transactions*, PAS-100, Dec. 1981, 5011–5019.
25. Ramey, D.G., White, I.A., Dorney, J.H., and Kroening, F.H., Application of dynamic stabilizer to solve an SSR problem, *Proceedings of American Power Conference*, 43, 1981, 605–609.
26. Kimmel, D.S., Carter, M.P., Bednarek, J.N., and Jones, W.H., Dynamic stabilizer on-line experience, *IEEE Transactions*, PAS-103(1), Jan. 1984, 198–212.
27. Bowler, C.E.J. and Baker, D.H., Concepts of countermeasures for subsynchronous supplementary torsional damping by excitation modulation, in IEEE Special Publication, *Symnposium on Countermeasures for Subsynchronous Resonance*, IEEE Publication 81TH0086-9-PWR, 1981, pp. 64–69.
28. Bowler, C.E.J. and Lawson, R.A., Operating experience with supplemental excitation damping controls, in IEEE Special Publication, *Symnposium on Countermeasures for Subsynchronous Resonance*, IEEE Publication 81TH0086-9-PWR, 1981, pp. 27–33.
29. Christl, N., Hedin, R., Sadek, K., Lützelberger, P., Krause, P.E., Mckenna, S.M., Montoya, A.H., and Torgerson, D., Advanced series compensation (ASC) with thyristor controlled impedance, CIGRÉ 34 Session, Paris, 1992.
30. Piwko, R.J., Wagner, C.A., Kinney, S.J., and Eden, J.D., Subsynchronous resonance performance tests of the slatt thyristor-controlled series capacitor, *IEEE Transactions on Power Delivery*, 11, 1112–1119, Apr. 1996.
31. Hedin, R.A., Weiss, S., Torgerson, D., and Eilts, L.E., SSR characteristics of alternative types of series compensation schemes, T-PWRS, May 95, 845–852.
32. Pilotto, L.A.S., Bianco, A., Long, W.F., and Edris, A.-A., Impact of TCSC control methodologies on subsynchronous oscillations, T-PWRD, July 03, 988–993.
33. N. Kakimoto and Phongphanphanee, A., Subsynchronous resonance damping control of thyristor-controlled series capacitor, *IEEE Transactions on Power Delivery*, 18(3), 1051–1059, July 2003.
34. Walker, D.N., Placek, R.J., Bowler, C.E.J., White, J.C., and Edmonds, J.S., Turbine generator shaft torsional fatigue and monitoring, in CIGRÉ, paper 11–07, 1984.
35. Joyce, J.S., and Lambrecht, D., Monitoring the fatigue effects of electrical disturbances on steam turbine-generators, *Proceedings of American Power Conference*, 41, 1979, 1153–1162.
36. Stein, J. and Fick, H., The torsional stress analyzer for continuously monitoring turbine generators, *IEEE Transactions*, PAS-99(2), Mar./Apr. 1980, 703–710.
37. Ramey, D.G., Demcko, J.A., Farmer, R.G., and Agrawal, B.L., Subsynchronous resonance tests and torsional monitoring system verification at the Cholla station, *IEEE Transactions*, PAS-99(5), Sep. 1980, 1900–1907.
38. Agrawal, B.L., Demcko, J.A., Farmer, R.G., and Selin, D.A., Shaft torque monitoring using conventional digital fault recorders, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 7(3), Aug. 1992, 1211–1217.

39. Walker, D.N. and Schwalb, A.L., Results of subsynchronous resonance test at Navajo, in IEEE PES Special Publication, *Analysis and Control of Subsynchronous Resonance*, IEEE Publication 76 CH 1066-0-PWR, 1976, pp. 37–45.
40. Walker, D.N., Bowler, C.E.J., Jackson, R.L., and Hodges, D.A., Results of the subsynchronous resonance tests at Mohave, *IEEE Transactions*, PAS-94(5), Sep./Oct. 1975, 1878–1889.
41. Tang, J.F. and Young, J.A., Operating experience of Navajo static blocking filter, in IEEE Special Publication, Symposium on Countermeasures for Subsynchronous Resonance, IEEE Publication 81TH0086-9-PWR, 1981, pp. 23–26.
42. Bahrman, M.P., Larsen, E.V., Piwko, R.J., and Patel, H.S., Experience with HVDC—turbine-generator interaction at SquareButte, *IEEE Transactions on PA&S*, PAS-99, 1980, 966–975.
43. Mortensen, K., Larsen, E.V., and Piwko, R.J., Field test and analysis of torsional interaction between the Coal Creek turbine-generator and the CU HVDC system, *IEEE Transactions*, PAS-100, 336–344, Jan. 1981.
44. Lambrecht, D. and Kulig, T., Torsional performance of turbine generator shafts especially under resonant excitation, *IEEE Transactions*, PAS-101(10), Oct. 1982.
45. Watson, W., and Coultes, M.E., Static exciter stabilizing signals on large generators—Mechanical problems, *IEEE Transactions on PA&S*, PAS-92, 204–211, Jan./Feb. 1973.
46. Lee, D.C., Beaulieu, R.E., and Rogers, G.J., Effect of governor characteristics on turbo-generator shaft torsionals, *IEEE Transactions on PA&S*, PAS-104, 1255–1259, June 1985.
47. Piwko, R.J., Rostamkolai, N., Larsen, E.V., Fisher, D.A., Mobarak, M.A., and Poitras, A.E., Subsynchronous torsional interactions with static var compensators—Concepts and practical implications, *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems*, 1324–1332, Nov. 1990.
48. Raczkowski, C. and Kung, G.C., Turbine-generator torsional frequencies—Field reliability and testing, in Proceedings of the American Power Conference, Vol. 40, 1978.
49. Kung, G.C. and LaRosa, J.A., Response of turbine-generators to electrical disturbances, Presented at the Steam Turbine—Generator Technology Symposium, Charlotte, North Carolina, Oct. 4–5, 1978.
50. Evans, D.G., Giesecke, H.D., Willman, E.C., and Moffitt, S.P., Resolution of torsional vibration issues for large turbine geneators, in Proceedings of the American Power Conference, Vol. 57, 1985.
51. Andorka, M. and Yohn, T., Vibration induced retaining ring failure due to steel mill—Power plant electromechanical interaction, in IEEE 1996 Summer Power Meeting Panel Session on "Steel-Making, Inter-Harmonics and Generator Torsional Impacts, July 1996, Denver, Colorado.
52. IEEE/ANSI Standard C50.13, Standard for Cylindrical-Rotor 50 and 60 Hz, Synchronous Generators Rated 10 MVA and Above, 2005.
53. Ramey, D.G., Sismour A.C., and Kung, G.C., Important parameters in considering transient torques on turbine-generator shaft systems, in IEEE PES Special Publication 79TH0059-6-PWR, pp. 25–31, 1979.
54. Excelon Corporation Internal Report, Root Cause Report, Dresden Unit 2 & 3 Generator Cracked Rotors Caused by Intermittent Oscillating Torsional Loads requiring Unit Shutdowns.

III

Power System Operation and Control

Bruce F. Wollenberg
University of Minnesota

17

Energy Management

Neil K. Stanton
Stanton Associates

Jay C. Giri
AREVA T&D Corporation

Anjan Bose
Washington State University

Energy management is the process of monitoring, coordinating, and controlling the generation, transmission, and distribution of electrical energy. The physical plant to be managed includes generating plants that produce energy fed through transformers to the high-voltage transmission network (grid), interconnecting generating plants, and load centers. Transmission lines terminate at substations that perform switching, voltage transformation, measurement, and control. Substations at load centers transform to subtransmission and distribution levels. These lower-voltage circuits typically operate radially, i.e., no normally closed paths between substations through subtransmission or distribution circuits. (Underground cable networks in large cities are an exception.)

Since transmission systems provide negligible energy storage, supply and demand must be balanced by either generation or load. Production is controlled by turbine governors at generating plants, and automatic generation control is performed by control center computers remote from generating plants. Load management, sometimes called demand-side management, extends remote supervision and control to subtransmission and distribution circuits, including control of residential, commercial, and industrial loads.

Events such as lightning strikes, short circuits, equipment failure, or accidents may cause a system fault. Protective relays actuate rapid, local control through operation of circuit breakers before operators can respond. The goal is to maximize safety, minimize damage, and continue to supply load with the least inconvenience to customers. Data acquisition provides operators and computer control systems with status and measurement information needed to supervise overall operations. Security control analyzes the consequences of faults to establish operating conditions that are both robust and economical.

Energy management is performed at control centers (see Fig. 17.1), typically called system control centers, by computer systems called *energy management systems* (EMS). Data acquisition and remote control is performed by computer systems called *supervisory control and data acquisition* (SCADA) systems. These latter systems may be installed at a variety of sites including system control centers. An EMS typically includes a SCADA "front-end" through which it communicates with generating plants, substations, and other remote devices.

Figure 17.2 illustrates the applications layer of modern EMS as well as the underlying layers on which it is built: the operating system, a database manager, and a utilities/services layer.

FIGURE 17.1 Manitoba Hydro Control Center in Winnipeg, Manitoba, Canada. (Photo used with permission of ALSTOM ESCA Corporation.)

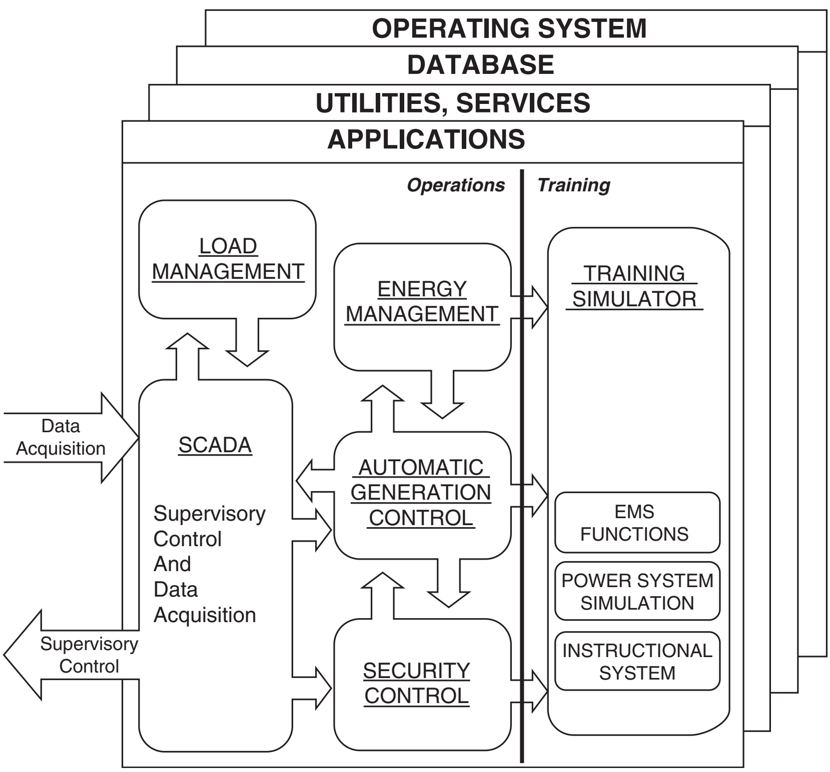


FIGURE 17.2 Layers of a modern EMS.

17.1 Power System Data Acquisition and Control

A SCADA system consists of a master station that communicates with remote terminal units (RTUs) for the purpose of allowing operators to observe and control physical plants. Generating plants and transmission substations certainly justify RTUs, and their installation is becoming more common in distribution substations as costs decrease. RTUs transmit device status and measurements to, and receive control commands and setpoint data from, the master station. Communication is generally via dedicated circuits operating in the range of 600 to 4800 bits/s with the RTU responding to periodic requests initiated from the master station (polling) every 2 to 10 s, depending on the criticality of the data.

The traditional functions of SCADA systems are summarized:

- Data acquisition: Provides telemetered measurements and status information to operator.
- Supervisory control: Allows operator to remotely control devices, e.g., open and close circuit breakers. A "select before operate" procedure is used for greater safety.
- Tagging: Identifies a device as subject to specific operating restrictions and prevents unauthorized operation.
- Alarms: Inform operator of unplanned events and undesirable operating conditions. Alarms are sorted by criticality, area of responsibility, and chronology. Acknowledgment may be required.
- Logging: Logs all operator entry, all alarms, and selected information.
- Load shed: Provides both automatic and operator-initiated tripping of load in response to system emergencies.
- Trending: Plots measurements on selected time scales.

Since the master station is critical to power system operations, its functions are generally distributed among several computer systems depending on specific design. A dual computer system configured in primary and standby modes is most common. SCADA functions are listed below without stating which computer has specific responsibility.

- Manage communication circuit configuration
- Downline load RTU files
- Maintain scan tables and perform polling
- Check and correct message errors
- Convert to engineering units
- Detect status and measurement changes
- Monitor abnormal and out-of-limit conditions
- Log and time-tag sequence of events
- Detect and annunciate alarms
- Respond to operator requests to:
  - Display information
  - Enter data
  - Execute control action
  - Acknowledge alarms
- Transmit control action to RTUs
- Inhibit unauthorized actions
- Maintain historical files
- Log events and prepare reports
- Perform load shedding

17.2 Automatic Generation Control

Automatic generation control (AGC) consists of two major and several minor functions that operate on-line in realtime to adjust the generation against load at minimum cost. The major functions are load frequency control and economic dispatch, each of which is described below. The minor functions are reserve monitoring, which assures enough reserve on the system; interchange scheduling, which initiates and completes scheduled interchanges; and other similar monitoring and recording functions.

17.2.1 Load Frequency Control

Load frequency control (LFC) has to achieve three primary objectives, which are stated below in priority order:

1. To maintain frequency at the scheduled value
2. To maintain net power interchanges with neighboring control areas at the scheduled values
3. To maintain power allocation among units at economically desired values

The first and second objectives are met by monitoring an error signal, called *area control error* (ACE), which is a combination of net interchange error and frequency error and represents the power imbalance between generation and load at any instant. This ACE must be filtered or smoothed such that excessive and random changes in ACE are not translated into control action. Since these excessive changes are different for different systems, the filter parameters have to be tuned specifically for each control area. The filtered ACE is then used to obtain the proportional plus integral control signal. This control signal is modified by limiters, deadbands, and gain constants that are tuned to the particular system. This control signal is then divided among the generating units under control by using participation factors to obtain *unit control errors* (UCE).

These participation factors may be proportional to the inverse of the second derivative of the cost of unit generation so that the units would be loaded according to their costs, thus meeting the third objective. However, cost may not be the only consideration because the different units may have different response rates and it may be necessary to move the faster generators more to obtain an acceptable response. The UCEs are then sent to the various units under control and the generating units monitored to see that the corrections take place. This control action is repeated every 2 to 6 s.

In spite of the integral control, errors in frequency and net interchange do tend to accumulate over time. These time errors and accumulated interchange errors have to be corrected by adjusting the controller settings according to procedures agreed upon by the whole interconnection. These accumulated errors as well as ACE serve as performance measures for LFC.

The main philosophy in the design of LFC is that each system should follow its own load very closely during normal operation, while during emergencies, each system should contribute according to its relative size in the interconnection without regard to the locality of the emergency. Thus, the most important factor in obtaining good control of a system is its inherent capability of following its own load. This is guaranteed if the system has adequate regulation margin as well as adequate response capability. Systems that have mainly thermal generation often have difficulty in keeping up with the load because of the slow response of the units.

The design of the controller itself is an important factor, and proper tuning of the controller parameters is needed to obtain "good" control without "excessive" movement of units. Tuning is system-specific, and although system simulations are often used as aids, most of the parameter adjustments are made in the field using heuristic procedures.

17.2.2 Economic Dispatch

Since all the generating units that are online have different costs of generation, it is necessary to find the generation levels of each of these units that would meet the load at the minimum cost. This has to take into account the fact that the cost of generation in one generator is not proportional to its generation level but is a nonlinear function of it. In addition, since the system is geographically spread out, the transmission losses are dependent on the generation pattern and must be considered in obtaining the optimum pattern.

Certain other factors have to be considered when obtaining the optimum generation pattern. One is that the generation pattern provide adequate reserve margins. This is often done by constraining the generation level to a lower boundary than the generating capability. A more difficult set of constraints to consider are the transmission limits. Under certain real-time conditions it is possible that the most economic pattern may not be feasible because of unacceptable line flows or voltage conditions. The present-day economic dispatch (ED) algorithm cannot handle these security constraints. However, alternative methods based on optimal power flows have been suggested but have not yet been used for real-time dispatch.

The minimum cost dispatch occurs when the incremental cost of all the generators is equal. The cost functions of the generators are nonlinear and discontinuous. For the equal marginal cost algorithm to work, it is necessary for them to be convex. These incremental cost curves are often represented as monotonically increasing piecewise-linear functions. A binary search for the optimal marginal cost is conducted by summing all the generation at a certain marginal cost and comparing it with the total power demand. If the demand is higher, a higher marginal cost is needed, and vice versa. This algorithm produces the ideal setpoints for all the generators for that particular demand, and this calculation is done every few minutes as the demand changes.

The losses in the power system are a function of the generation pattern, and they are taken into account by multiplying the generator incremental costs by the appropriate penalty factors. The penalty factor for each generator is a reflection of the sensitivity of that generator to system losses, and these sensitivities can be obtained from the transmission loss factors.

This ED algorithm generally applies to only thermal generation units that have cost characteristics of the type discussed here. The hydro units have to be dispatched with different considerations. Although there is no cost for the water, the amount of water available is limited over a period, and the displacement of fossil fuel by this water determines its worth. Thus, if the water usage limitation over a period is known, say from a previously computed hydro optimization, the water worth can be used to dispatch the hydro units.

LFC and the ED functions both operate automatically in realtime but with vastly different time periods. Both adjust generation levels, but LFC does it every few seconds to follow the load variation, while ED does it every few minutes to assure minimal cost. Conflicting control action is avoided by coordinating the control errors. If the unit control errors from LFC and ED are in the same direction, there is no conflict. Otherwise, a logic is set to either follow load (permissive control) or follow economics (mandatory control).

17.2.3 Reserve Monitoring

Maintaining enough reserve capacity is required in case generation is lost. Explicit formulas are followed to determine the spinning (already synchronized) and ready (10 min) reserves required. The availability can be assured by the operator manually, or, as mentioned previously, the ED can also reduce the upper dispatchable limits of the generators to keep such generation available.

17.2.4 Interchange Transaction Scheduling

The contractual exchange of power between utilities has to be taken into account by the LFC and ED functions. This is done by calculating the net interchange (sum of all the buy and sale agreements) and adding this to the generation needed in both the LFC and ED. Since most interchanges begin and end on the hour, the net interchange is ramped from one level to the new over a 10- or 20-min period straddling the hour. The programs achieve this automatically from the list of scheduled transactions.

17.3 Load Management

SCADA, with its relatively expensive RTUs installed at distribution substations, can provide status and measurements for distribution feeders at the substation. Distribution automation equipment is now available to measure and control at locations dispersed along distribution circuits. This equipment can monitor sectionalizing devices (switches, interruptors, fuses), operate switches for circuit reconfiguration, control voltage, read customers' meters, implement time-dependent pricing (on-peak, off-peak rates), and switch customer equipment to manage load. This equipment requires significantly increased functionality at distribution control centers.

Distribution control center functionality varies widely from company to company, and the following list is evolving rapidly.

- Data acquisition: Acquires data and gives the operator control over specific devices in the field. Includes data processing, quality checking, and storage.
- Feeder switch control: Provides remote control of feeder switches.
- Tagging and alarms: Provides features similar to SCADA.
- Diagrams and maps: Retrieves and displays distribution maps and drawings. Supports device selection from these displays. Overlays telemetered and operator-entered data on displays.
- Preparation of switching orders: Provides templates and information to facilitate preparation of instructions necessary to disconnect, isolate, reconnect, and reenergize equipment.
- Switching instructions: Guides operator through execution of previously prepared switching orders.
- Trouble analysis: Correlates data sources to assess scope of trouble reports and possible dispatch of work crews.
- Fault location: Analyzes available information to determine scope and location of fault.
- Service restoration: Determines the combination of remote control actions that will maximize restoration of service. Assists operator to dispatch work crews.
- Circuit continuity analysis: Analyzes circuit topology and device status to show electrically connected circuit segments (either energized or deenergized).
- Power factor and voltage control: Combines substation and feeder data with predetermined operating parameters to control distribution circuit power factor and voltage levels.
- Electrical circuit analysis: Performs circuit analysis, single-phase or three-phase, balanced or unbalanced.
- Load management: Controls customer loads directly through appliance switching (e.g., water heaters) and indirectly through voltage control.
- Meter reading: Reads customers' meters for billing, peak demand studies, time of use tariffs. Provides remote connect/disconnect.

17.4 Energy Management

Generation control and ED minimize the current cost of energy production and transmission within the range of available controls. Energy management is a supervisory layer responsible for economically scheduling production and transmission on a global basis and over time intervals consistent with cost optimization. For example, water stored in reservoirs of hydro plants is a resource that may be more valuable in the future and should, therefore, not be used now even though the cost of hydro energy is currently lower than thermal generation. The global consideration arises from the ability to buy and sell energy through the interconnected power system; it may be more economical to buy than to produce from plants under direct control. Energy accounting processes transaction information and energy measurements recorded during actual operation as the basis of payment for energy sales and purchases.

Energy management includes the following functions:

- System load forecast: Forecasts system energy demand each hour for a specified forecast period of 1 to 7 days.
- Unit commitment: Determines start-up and shut-down times for most economical operation of thermal generating units for each hour of a specified period of 1 to 7 days.

- Fuel scheduling: Determines the most economical choice of fuel consistent with plant requirements, fuel purchase contracts, and stockpiled fuel.
- Hydro-thermal scheduling: Determines the optimum schedule of thermal and hydro energy production for each hour of a study period up to 7 days while ensuring that hydro and thermal constraints are not violated.
- Transaction evaluation: Determines the optimal incremental and production costs for exchange (purchase and sale) of additional blocks of energy with neighboring companies.
- Transmission loss minimization: Recommends controller actions to be taken in order to minimize overall power system network losses.
- Security constrained dispatch: Determines optimal outputs of generating units to minimize production cost while ensuring that a network security constraint is not violated.
- Production cost calculation: Calculates actual and economical production costs for each generating unit on an hourly basis.

17.5 Security Control

Power systems are designed to survive all probable contingencies. A contingency is defined as an event that causes one or more important components such as transmission lines, generators, and transformers to be unexpectedly removed from service. Survival means the system stabilizes and continues to operate at acceptable voltage and frequency levels without loss of load. Operations must deal with a vast number of possible conditions experienced by the system, many of which are not anticipated in planning. Instead of dealing with the impossible task of analyzing all possible system states, security control starts with a specific state: the current state if executing the real-time network sequence; a postulated state if executing a study sequence. Sequence means sequential execution of programs that perform the following steps:

1. Determine the state of the system based on either current or postulated conditions.
2. Process a list of contingencies to determine the consequences of each contingency on the system in its specified state.
3. Determine preventive or corrective action for those contingencies which represent unacceptable risk.

Real-time and study network analysis sequences are diagramed in Fig. 17.3.

Security control requires topological processing to build network models and uses large-scale AC network analysis to determine system conditions. The required applications are grouped as a network subsystem that typically includes the following functions:

- Topology processor: Processes real-time status measurements to determine an electrical connectivity (bus) model of the power system network.
- State estimator: Uses real-time status and analog measurements to determine the "best" estimate of the state of the power system. It uses a redundant set of measurements; calculates voltages, phase angles, and power flows for all components in the system; and reports overload conditions.
- Power flow: Determines the steady-state conditions of the power system network for a specified generation and load pattern. Calculates voltages, phase angles, and flows across the entire system.
- Contingency analysis: Assesses the impact of a set of contingencies on the state of the power system and identifies potentially harmful contingencies that cause operating limit violations.
- Optimal power flow: Recommends controller actions to optimize a specified objective function (such as system operating cost or losses) subject to a set of power system operating constraints.
- Security enhancement: Recommends corrective control actions to be taken to alleviate an existing or potential overload in the system while ensuring minimal operational cost.
- Preventive action: Recommends control actions to be taken in a "preventive" mode before a contingency occurs to preclude an overload situation if the contingency were to occur.

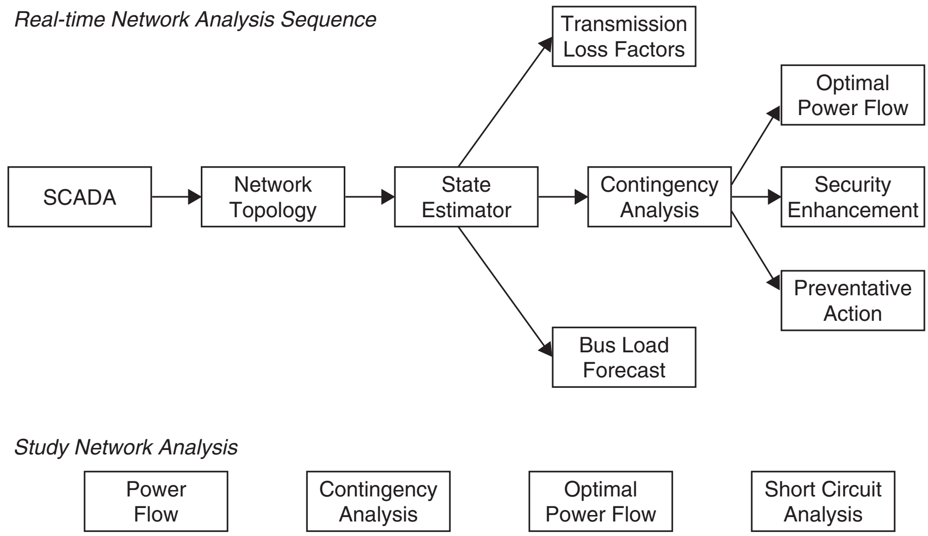


FIGURE 17.3 Real-time and study network analysis sequences.

- Bus load forecasting: Uses real-time measurements to adaptively forecast loads for the electrical connectivity (bus) model of the power system network.
- Transmission loss factors: Determines incremental loss sensitivities for generating units; calculates the impact on losses if the output of a unit were to be increased by 1 MW.
- Short-circuit analysis: Determines fault currents for single-phase and three-phase faults for fault locations across the entire power system network.

17.6 Operator Training Simulator

Training simulators were originally created as generic systems for introducing operators to the electrical and dynamic behavior of power systems. Today, they model actual power systems with reasonable fidelity and are integrated with EMS to provide a realistic environment for operators and dispatchers to practice normal, every-day operating tasks and procedures as well as experience emergency operating situations. The various training activities can be safely and conveniently practiced with the simulator responding in a manner similar to the actual power system.

An operator training simulator (OTS) can be used in an investigatory manner to recreate past actual operational scenarios and to formulate system restoration procedures. Scenarios can be created, saved, and reused. The OTS can be used to evaluate the functionality and performance of new real-time EMS functions and also for tuning AGC in an off-line, secure environment.

The OTS has three main subsystems (Fig. 17.4).

17.6.1 Energy Control System

The energy control system (ECS) emulates normal EMS functions and is the only part of the OTS with which the trainee interacts. It consists of the supervisory control and data acquisition (SCADA) system, generation control system, and all other EMS functions.

17.6.2 Power System Dynamic Simulation

This subsystem simulates the dynamic behavior of the power system. System frequency is simulated using the "long-term dynamics" system model, where frequency of all units is assumed to be the same.

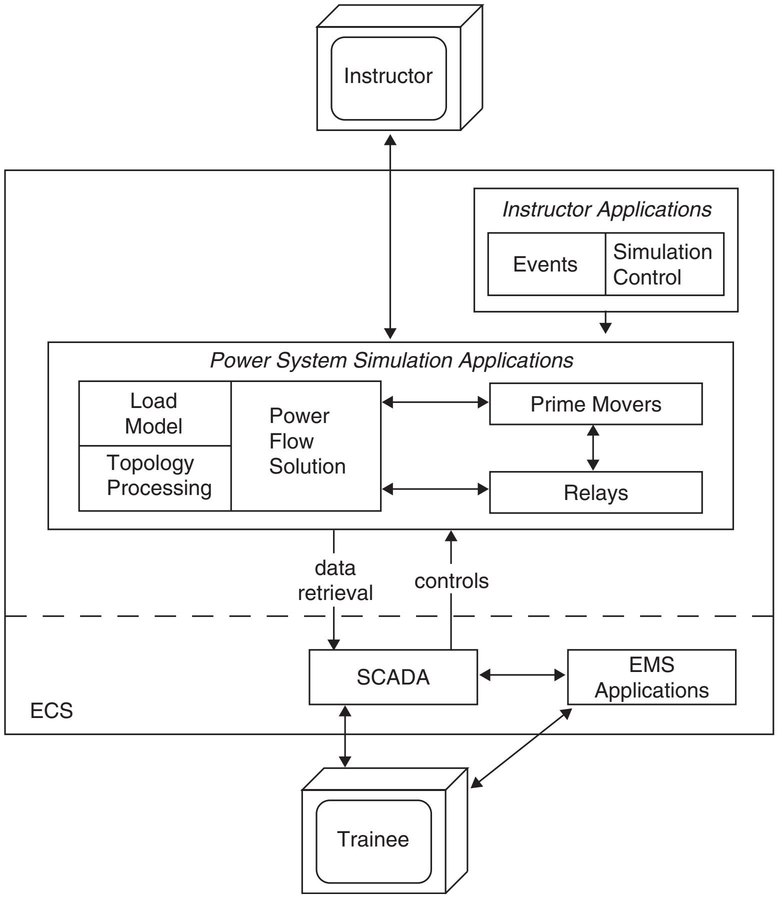


FIGURE 17.4 OTS block diagram.

The prime-mover dynamics are represented by models of the units, turbines, governors, boilers, and boiler auxiliaries. The network flows and states (bus voltages and angles, topology, transformer taps, etc.) are calculated at periodic intervals. Relays are modeled, and they emulate the behavior of the actual devices in the field.

17.6.3 Instructional System

This subsystem includes the capabilities to start, stop, restart, and control the simulation. It also includes making savecases, retrieving savecases, reinitializing to a new time, and initializing to a specific real-time situation.

It is also used to define event schedules. Events are associated with both the power system simulation and the ECS functions. Events may be deterministic (occur at a predefined time), conditional (based on a predefined set of power system conditions being met), or probabilistic (occur at random).

References

Application of Optimization Methods for Economy/Security Functions in Power System Operations, IEEE tutorial course, IEEE Publication 90EH0328-5-PWR, 1990.

Distribution Automation, IEEE Power Engineering Society, IEEE Publication EH0280-8-PBM, 1988.

C.J. Erickson, *Handbook of Electrical Heating*, IEEE Press, 1995.

Energy Control Center Design, IEEE tutorial course, IEEE Publication 77 TU0010-9 PWR, 1977.
Fundamentals of Load Management, IEEE Power Engineering Society, IEEE Publication EH0289-9-PBM, 1988.
Fundamentals of Supervisory Controls, IEEE tutorial course, IEEE Publication 91 EH0337-6 PWR, 1991.
M. Kleinpeter, *Energy Planning and Policy,* New York: Wiley, 1995.
Special issue on computers in power system operations, *Proc. IEEE,* 75, 12, 1987.
W.C. Turner, *Energy Management Handbook,* Fairmont Press, 1997.

Further Information

Current innovations and applications of new technologies and algorithms are presented in the following publications:

- *IEEE Power Engineering Review* (monthly)
- *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems* (bimonthly)
- *Proceedings of the Power Industry Computer Application Conference* (biannual)

18

Generation Control: Economic Dispatch and Unit Commitment

Charles W. Richter, Jr.
AREVA T&D Corporation

An area of power system control having a large impact on cost and profit is the optimal scheduling of generating units. A good schedule identifies which units to operate, and the amount to generate at each online unit in order to achieve a set of economic goals. These are the problems commonly referred to as the unit commitment (UC) problem, and the economic dispatch calculation, respectively. The goal is to choose a control strategy that minimizes losses (or maximizes profits), subject to meeting a certain demand and other system constraints. The following sections define EDC, the UC problem, and discuss methods that have been used to solve these problems. Realizing that electric power grids are complex interconnected systems that must be carefully controlled if they are to remain stable and secure, it should be mentioned that the tools described in this chapter are intended for steady-state operation. Short-term (less than a few seconds) changes to the system are handled by dynamic and transient system controls, which maintain secure and stable operation, and are beyond the scope of this discussion.

18.1 Economic Dispatch

18.1.1 Economic Dispatch Defined

An *economic dispatch calculation* (EDC) is performed to *dispatch*, or schedule, a set of online generating units to collectively produce electricity at a level that satisfies a specified demand in an economical manner. Each online generating unit may have many characteristics that make it unique, and which must be considered in the calculation. The amount of electricity demanded can vary quickly and the schedule produced by an EDC should leave units able to respond and adapt without major implications to cost or profit. The electric system may have limits (e.g., voltage, transmission, etc.) that impact the EDC and hence should be considered. Generating units may have prohibited generation levels at which resonant frequencies may cause damage or other problems to the system. The impact of transmission losses, congestion, and limits that may inhibit the ability to serve the load in a particular region from a particular generator (e.g., a low-cost generator) should be considered. The market structure within an operating region and its associated regulations must be considered in determining the specified demand, and in determining what constitutes economical operation. An independent system operator (ISO) tasked with maximizing social welfare would likely have a different definition of "economical" than does a generation company (GENCO) wishing to maximize its profit in a competitive environment. The EDC must consider all of these factors and develop a schedule that sets the generation levels in accordance with an economic objective function.

18.1.2 Factors to Consider in the EDC

18.1.2.1 The Cost of Generation

Cost is one of the primary characteristics of a generating unit that must be considered when dispatching units economically. The EDC is concerned with the short-term operating cost, which is primarily determined by fuel cost and usage. Fuel usage is closely related to generation level. Very often, the relationship between power level and fuel cost is approximated by a quadratic curve: $\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{aP^2} + \mathbf{bP} + \mathbf{c}$. $\mathbf{c}$ is a constant term that represents the cost of operating the plant, $\mathbf{b}$ is a linear term that varies directly with the level of generation, and $\mathbf{a}$ is the term that accounts for efficiency changes over the range of the plant output. A quadratic relationship is often used in the research literature. However, due to varying conditions at certain levels of production (e.g., the opening or closing of large valves may affect the generation cost [Walters and Sheblé, 1992]), the actual relationship between power level and fuel cost may be more complex than a quadratic equation. Many of the long-term generating unit costs (e.g., costs attributed directly to starting and stopping the unit, capital costs associated with financing the construction) can be ignored for the EDC, since the decision to switch on, or *commit*, the units has already been made. Other characteristics of generating units that affect the EDC are the minimum and maximum generation levels at which they may operate. When binding, these constraints will directly impact the EDC schedule.

18.1.2.2 The Price

The price at which an electric supplier will be compensated is another important factor in determining an optimal economic dispatch. In many areas of the world, electric power systems have been, or still are, treated as a natural monopoly. Regulations allow the utilities to charge rates that guarantee them a nominal profit. In competitive markets, which come in a variety of flavors, price is determined through the forces of supply and demand. Economic theory and common sense tell us that if the total supply is high and the demand is low, the price is likely to be low, and vice versa. If the price is consistently below a GENCO's average total costs, the company may soon be bankrupt.

18.1.2.3 The Quantity Supplied

The amount of electric energy to be supplied is another fundamental input for the EDC. Regions of the world having regulations that limit competition often require electric utilities to serve all electric demand within a designated service territory. If a consumer switches on a motor, the electric supplier must provide the electric energy needed to operate the motor. In competitive markets, this *obligation to serve* is limited to those with whom the GENCO has a contract. Beyond its contractual obligations, the GENCO may be willing (if the opportunity arises) to supply additional consumer demand. Since the consumers have a choice of electric supplier, a GENCO determining the schedule of its own online generating units may choose to supply all, none, or only a portion of that additional consumer demand. The decision is dependent on the objective of the entity performing the EDC (e.g., profit maximization, improving reliability, etc.).

18.1.3 EDC and System Limitations

A complex network of transmission and distribution lines and equipment are required to move the electric energy from the generating units to the consumer loads. The secure operation of this network depends on bus voltage magnitudes and angles being within certain tolerances. Excessive transmission line loading can also affect the security of the power system network. Since superconductivity is a relatively new field, lossless transmission lines are expensive and are not commonly used. Therefore, some of the energy being transmitted over the system is converted into heat and is consequently lost. The schedule produced by the EDC directly affects losses and security; hence, constraints ensuring proper system operation must be considered when solving the EDC problem.

18.1.4 The Objective of EDC

In a regulated, vertically integrated, monopolistic environment, the obligated-to-serve electric utility performs the EDC for the entire service area by itself. In such an environment, providing electricity in an "economical manner" means minimizing the cost of generating electricity, subject to meeting all demand and other system operating constraints. In a competitive environment, the way an EDC is done can vary from one market structure to another. For instance, in a decentralized market, the EDC may be performed by a single GENCO wishing to maximize its expected profit given the prices, demands, costs, and other constraints described above. In a power pool, a central coordinating entity may perform an EDC to centrally dispatch generation for many GENCOs. Depending on the market rules, the generation owners may be able to mask the cost information of their generators. In this case, bids would be submitted for various price levels and used in the EDC.

18.1.5 The Traditional EDC Mathematical Formulation

Assuming operation under a vertically integrated, monopolistic environment, we must meet all demand, D. We must also consider minimum and maximum limits for each generating unit, $P_i^{\min}$ and $P_i^{\max}$. We will assume that the fuel costs of the ith operating plant may be modeled by a quadratic equation as shown in Eq. (18.1), and shown graphically in Fig. 18.1. Note that the average fuel costs are also shown in Fig. 18.1.

$$F_i = a_i P_i^2 + b_i P_i + c_i \quad \text{(fuel costs of ith generator)} \tag{18.1}$$

Thus, for N online generating units, we can write a Lagrangian equation, L, which describes the total cost and associated demand constraint, D.

$$\mathrm{L} = \mathrm{F_T} + \lambda\left(D - \sum_{i=1}^{N} P_i\right) = \sum_{i=1}^{N}\left(a_i P_i^2 + b_i P_i + c_i\right) + \lambda \cdot \left(D - \sum_{i=1}^{N} P_i\right)$$

$$F_T = \sum_{i=1}^{N} F_i \qquad \text{(Total fuel cost is a summation of costs for all online plants)}$$

$$P_i^{\min} \le P_i \le P_i^{\max} \quad \text{(Generation must be set between the min and max amounts)} \tag{18.2}$$

Additionally, note that c_i is a constant term that represents the cost of operating the ith plant, b_i is a linear term that varies directly with the level of generation, P_i, and a_i are terms that account for efficiency changes over the range of the plant output.

In this example, the objective will be to minimize the cost of supplying demand with the generating units that are online. From calculus, a minimum or a maximum can be found by taking the N + 1 derivatives of the Lagrangian with respect to its variables, and setting them equal to zero. The shape of the curves is often assumed well behaved—monotonically increasing and convex—so that determining the second derivative is unnecessary.

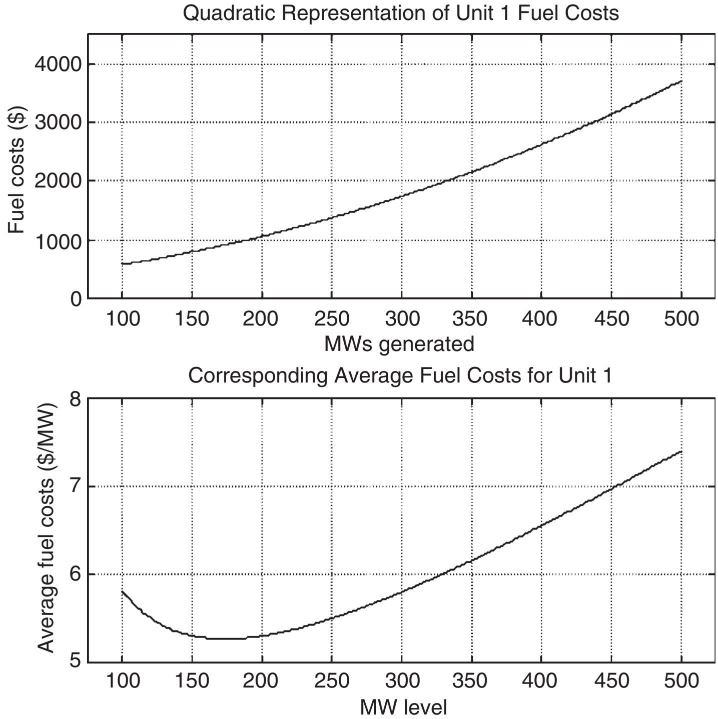


FIGURE 18.1 Relationship between fuel input and power output.

$$\frac{\partial L}{\partial P_i} = 2a_iP_i + b_i - \lambda = 0 \Rightarrow \lambda = 2a_iP_i + b_i \tag{18.3}$$

$$\frac{\partial L}{\partial \lambda} = \left(D - \sum_1^N P_i\right) = 0 \tag{18.4}$$

λ_i is the commonly used symbol for the "marginal cost" of the i-th unit. At the margin of operation, the marginal cost tells us how many additional dollars the GENCO will have to spend to increase the generation by an additional MW. The marginal cost curve is an positively sloped line if a quadratic equation is being used to represent the fuel curve of the unit. The higher the quantity being produced, the greater the cost of adding an additional unit of the goods being produced. Economic theory says that if a GENCO has a set of plants and it wants to increase production by one unit, it should increase production at the plant that provides the most benefit for the least cost. The GENCO should do this until that plant is no longer providing the greatest benefit for a given cost. At that point it finds the plant now giving the highest benefit-to-cost ratio and increases its production. This is done until all plants are operating at the same marginal cost. When all unconstrained online plants have the same marginal cost, λ (i.e., $\lambda_1 = \lambda_2 = \ldots = \lambda_i = \ldots = \lambda_{SYSTEM}$), then the cost is at a minimum for that amount of generation. If there were binding constraints, it would prevent the GENCO from achieving that scenario.

If a constraint is binding on a particular unit (e.g., P_i becomes P_i^{max} when attempting to increase production), the marginal cost of that unit is considered to be infinite. No matter how much money is available to increase plant production by one unit, it cannot do so. (Of course, in the long term, things may be done that can reduce the effect of the constraint, but that is beyond the scope of this discussion.)

18.1.6 EDC Solution Techniques

There are many ways to obtain the optimum power levels that will achieve the objective for the EDC problem being considered. For very simple situations, one may solve the solution directly; but when the number of constraints that introduce nonlinearities to the problem grows, iterative search techniques become necessary. Wood and Wollenberg (1996) describe many such methods of calculating economic dispatch, including the graphical technique, the lambda-iteration method, and the first and second-order gradient methods. Another method that works well, even when fuel costs are not modeled by a simple quadratic equation, is the genetic algorithm.

In highly competitive scenarios, each inaccuracy in the model can result in losses to the GENCO. A very detailed model might include many nonlinearities, (e.g., valve-point loading, prohibited regions of operation, etc.). Such nonlinearities may mean that it is not possible to calculate a derivative. If the relationship is not well-behaved, there may be no proof that the solution can ever be optimal. With greater detail in the model comes an increase in the amount of time to perform the EDC. Since the EDC is performed quite frequently (on the order of every few minutes), and because it is a real-time calculation, the solution technique should be quick. Since an inaccurate solution may produce a negative impact on the company profits, the solution should also be accurate.

18.1.7 An Example of Cost Minimizing EDC

To illustrate how the EDC is solved via the graphical method, an example is presented here. Assume that a GENCO needs to supply 1000 MW of consumer demand, and that Table 18.1 describes the system on-line units that it is dispatching in a traditional, i.e., vertically integrated, monopolistic environment. Figure 18.2 shows the marginal costs of each of the units over their entire range. It also shows an aggregated marginal cost curve that could be called the system marginal cost curve. This aggregated system curve was created by a horizontal summation of the four individual graphs. Once the system curve is created, one simply finds the desired power level (i.e., 1000 MW) along the x-axis. Follow it up to the curve, and then look to the left. On the y-axis, the system marginal cost can be read. Since no limits were reached, each of the individual λ_is is the same as the system λ. The GENCO can find the λ_i on each of the unit curves and draw a line straight down from the point where the marginal cost, λ, crosses the curve to find its power level. The generation levels of each online unit are easily found and the solution is shown in the right-hand columns of Table 18.1. The procedure just described is the graphical method of EDC. If the system marginal cost had been above the diagonal portion of an individual unit curve, then we simply set that unit at its P^{max}.

18.1.8 EDC and Auctions

Competitive electricity markets vary in their operating rules, social objectives, and in the mechanism they use to allocate prices and quantities to the participants. Commonly, an auction is used to match buyers with sellers and to achieve a price that is considered fair. Auctions can be sealed bid, open out-cry,

TABLE 18.1 Generator Data and Solution for EDC Example

	Unit Parameters					Solution		
Unit Number	P_{min}	P_{max}	A	B	C	P_i (MW)	\$/MW (λ_i)	Cost \$/hour
1	100	500	.01	1.8	300	233.2456	6.4649	1263.90
2	50	300	.012	2.24	210	176.0380	6.4649	976.20
3	100	400	.006	2.35	290	342.9094	6.4649	1801.40
4	100	500	.008	2.5	340	247.8070	6.4649	1450.80

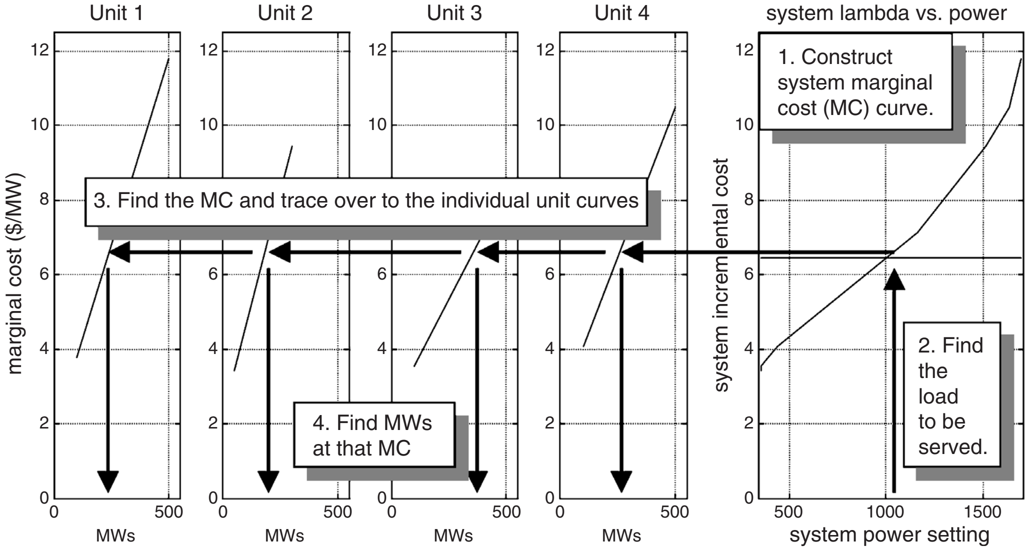


FIGURE 18.2 Unit and aggregated marginal cost curves for solving EDC with the graphical method.

ascending ask English auctions, descending ask Dutch auctions, etc. Regardless of the solution technique used to find the optimal allocation, the economic dispatch is essentially performing the same allocation that an auction would. Suppose an auctioneer were to call out a price, and ask the participating/online generators how much power they would generate at that level. The reply amounts could be summed to determine the production level at that price. If all of the constraints, including demand, are met, then the most economical dispatch has been achieved. If not, the auctioneer adjusts the price and asks for the amounts at the new price. This procedure is repeated until the constraints are satisfied. Prices may ascend as in the English auction, or they may descend as in the Dutch auction. See Fig. 18.3 for a graphical depiction of this process. For further discussion on this topic, the interested reader is referred to Sheblé (1999).

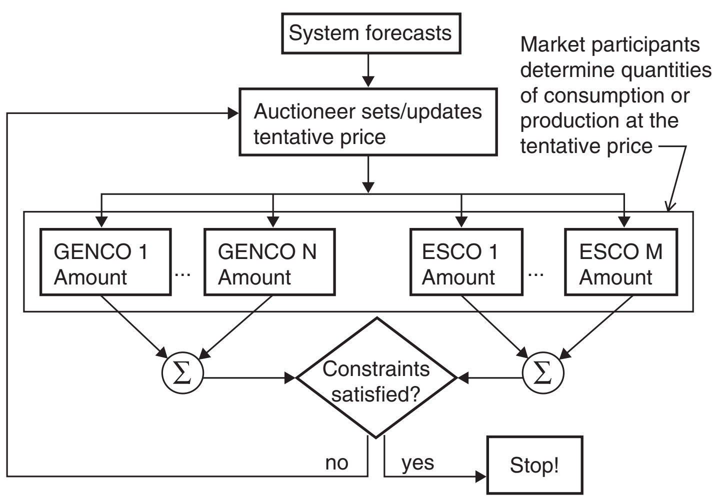


FIGURE 18.3 Economic dispatch and/or unit commitment as an auction.

18.2 The Unit Commitment Problem

18.2.1 Unit Commitment Defined

The *unit commitment* (UC) problem is defined as the scheduling of a set of generating units to be on, off, or in stand-by/banking mode for a given period of time to meet a certain objective. For a power system operated by a vertically integrated monopoly, committing units is performed centrally by the utility, and the objective is to minimize costs subject to supplying all demand (and reserve margins). In a competitive environment, each GENCO must decide which units to commit, such that profit is maximized, based on the number of contracted MW; the additional MWhr it forecasts that it can profitably wrest from its competitors in the spot market; and the prices at which it will be compensated.

UC Schedule

Hour	1 2 3 4 5 6 ... T
Gen#1:	1 1 1 1 1 1 ... 0
Gen#2:	0 0 0 1 1 1 ... 1
Gen#3:	1 1 1 0 0 0 ... 1
...	
Gen#N:	1 1 1 1 1 1 ... 0

0 = unit off-line 1 = unit on-line

FIGURE 18.4 A typical unit commitment schedule.

A UC schedule is developed for N units and T periods. A typical UC schedule might look like the one shown in Fig. 18.4. Since uncertainty in the inputs becomes large beyond one week into the future, the UC schedule is typically developed for the following week. It is common to consider schedules that allow unit-status change from hour to hour, so that a weekly schedule is made up of 168 periods. In finding an optimal schedule, one must consider fuel costs, which can vary with time, start-up and shut-down costs, maximum ramp rates, the minimum up-times and minimum down-times, crew constraints, transmission limits, voltage constraints, etc. Because the problem is discrete, the GENCO may have many generating units, a large number of periods may be considered, and because there are many constraints, finding an optimal UC is a complex problem.

18.2.2 Factors to Consider in Solving the UC Problem

18.2.2.1 The Objective of Unit Commitment

The objective of the unit commitment algorithm is to schedule units in the most economical manner. For the GENCO deciding which units to commit in the competitive environment, economical manner means one that maximizes its profits. For the monopolist operating in a vertically integrated electric system, economical means minimizing the costs.

18.2.2.2 The Quantity to Supply

In systems with vertically integrated monopolies, it is common for electric utilities to have an obligation to serve all demand within their territory. Forecasters provide power system operators an estimated amount of power demanded. The UC objective is to minimize the total operational costs subject to meeting all of this demand (and other constraints they may be considering).

In competitive electric markets, the GENCO commits units to maximize its profit. It relies on spot and forward bilateral contracts to make part of the total demand known *a priori*. The remaining share of the demand that it may pick up in the spot market must be predicted. This market share may be difficult to predict since it depends on how its price compares to that of other suppliers.

The GENCO may decide to supply less demand than it is physically capable of. In the competitive environment, the obligation to serve is limited to those with whom the GENCO has a contract. The GENCO may consider a schedule that produces less than the forecasted demand. Rather than switching on an additional unit to produce one or two unsatisfied MW, it can allow its competitors to provide that 1 or 2 MW that might have substantially increased its average costs.

18.2.2.3 Compensating the Electricity Supplier

Maximizing profits in a competitive environment requires that the GENCO know what revenue is being generated by the sale of electricity. While a traditional utility might have been guaranteed a fixed rate of return based on cost, competitive electricity markets have varying pricing schemes that may price electricity at the level of the last accepted bid, the average of the buy, ask, and sell offer, etc. When submitting offers to an auctioneer, the GENCO's offer price should reflect its prediction market share, since that determines how many units they have switched on, or in banking mode. GENCOs recovering costs via prices set during the bidding process will note that the UC schedule directly affects the average cost, which indirectly affects the offering price, making it an essential input to any successful bidding strategy.

Demand forecasts and expected market prices are important inputs to the profit-based UC algorithm; they are used to determine the expected revenue, which in turn affects the expected profit. If a GENCO produces two UC schedules each having different expected costs and different expected profits, it should implement the one that provides for the largest profit, which will not necessarily be the one that costs the least. Since prices and demand are so important in determining the optimal UC schedule, price prediction and demand forecasts become crucial. An easy-to-read description of the cost-minimizing UC problem and a stochastic solution that considers spot markets has been presented in Takriti, Krasenbrink, and Wu (1997).

18.2.2.4 The Source of Electric Energy

A GENCO may be in the business of electricity generation, but it should also consider purchasing electricity from the market, if it is less expensive than its own generating unit(s). The existence of liquid markets gives energy trading companies an additional source from which to supply power that may not be as prevalent in monopolistic systems. See Fig. 18.5. To the GENCO, the market supply curve can be thought of as a pseudo-unit to be dispatched. The supply curve for this pseudo-unit represents an aggregate supply of all of the units participating in the market at the time in question. The price forecast essentially sets the parameters of the unit. This pseudo-unit has no minimum uptime, minimum downtime, or ramp constraints; there are no direct start-up and shutdown costs associated with dispatching the unit.

The liquid markets that allow the GENCO to schedule an additional pseudo unit, also act as a load to be supplied. The total energy supplied should consist of previously arranged bilateral or multilateral contracts arranged through the markets (and their associated reserves and losses). While the GENCO is determining the optimal unit commitment schedule, the energy demanded by the market (i.e., market demand) can be represented as another DISTCO or ESCO buying electricity. Each entity buying electricity should have its own demand curve. The market demand curve should reflect the aggregate of the demand of all the buying agents participating in the market.

18.2.3 Mathematical Formulation for UC

The mathematical formulation for UC depends upon the objective and the constraints that are considered important. Traditionally, the monopolist cost-minimization UC problem has been formulated (Sheblé, 1985):

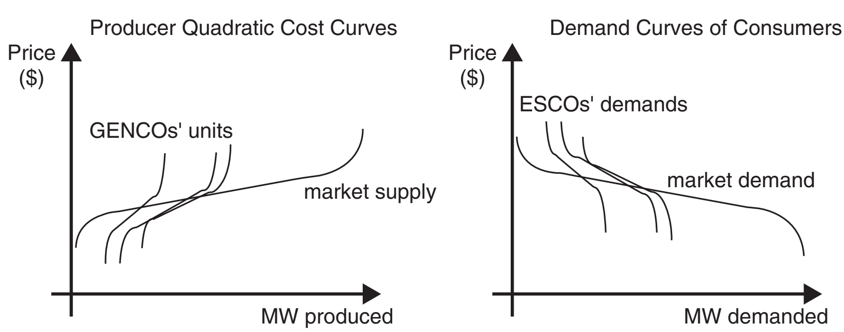


FIGURE 18.5 Treating the market as an additional generator and/or load.

$$\text{Minimize } F = \sum_{n}^{N}\sum_{t}^{T}[(C_{nt} + MAINT_{nt}) \cdot U_{nt} + SUP_{nt} \cdot U_{nt}(1 - U_{nt}) + SDOWN_{nt} \cdot (1 - U_{nt}) \cdot U_{nt-1}] \tag{18.5}$$

subject to the following constraints:

$$\sum_{n}^{N}(U_{nt} \cdot P_{nt}) = D_t \qquad \text{(demand constraint)}$$

$$\sum_{n}^{N}(U_{nt} \cdot \text{Pmax}_n) \geq D_t + R_i \qquad \text{(capacity constraint)}$$

$$\sum_{n}^{N}(U_{nt} \cdot \text{Rsmax}_n) \geq R_t \qquad \text{(system reserve constraint)}$$

When formulating the profit-maximizing UC problem for a competitive environment, the obligation-to-serve is gone. The demand constraint changes from an equality to an inequality ($\leq$). In the formulation presented here, we lump the reserves in with the demand. Essentially we are assuming that buyers are required to purchase a certain amount of reserves per contract. In addition to the above changes, formulating the UC problem for the competitive GENCO changes the objective function from cost minimization to profit maximization as shown in Eq. (18.6) below. The UC solution process is shown in block diagram form in Fig. 18.6.

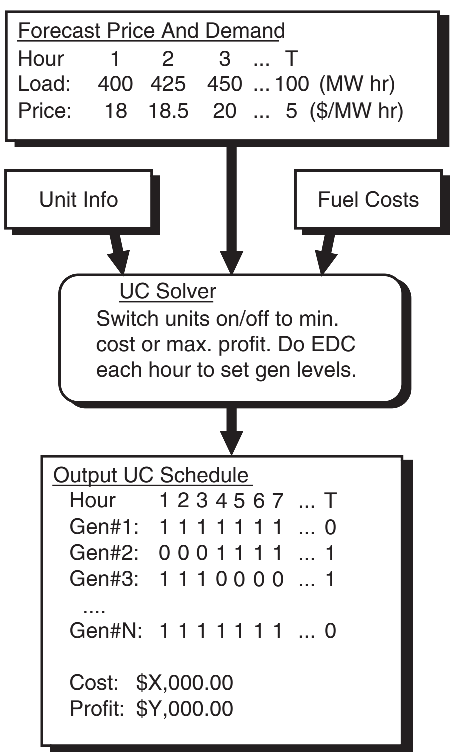


FIGURE 18.6 Block diagram of the UC solution process.

$$\mathrm{Max}\Pi = \sum_{n}^{N}\sum_{t}^{T}(\mathrm{P_{nt}} \cdot fp_t) \cdot U_{nt} - F \tag{18.6}$$

subject to:

$$D_t^{contracted} \leq \sum_{n}^{N}(U_{nt} \cdot P_{nt}) \leq D_t' \quad \text{(demand constraint w/out obligation-to-serve)}$$

$$P\mathrm{min}_n \leq P_{nt} \leq P\mathrm{max}_n \quad \text{(capacity limits)}$$

$$|P_{nt} - P_{n,t-1}| \leq \mathrm{Ramp}_n \quad \text{(ramp rate limits)}$$

where individual terms are defined as follows:

U_{nt}	=	up/down time status of unit n at time period t ($U_{nt} = 1$ unit on, $U_{nt} = 0$ unit off)
P_{nt}	=	power generation of unit n during time period t
D_t	=	load level in time period t
D_t'	=	forecasted demand at period t (includes reserves)
$D_t^{contract}$	=	contracted demand at period t (includes reserves)
fp_t	=	forecasted price/MWhr for period t
R_t	=	system reserve requirements in time period t
C_{nt}	=	production cost of unit n in time period t
SUP_{nt}	=	start-up cost for unit n, time period t
$SDOWN_{nt}$	=	shut-down cost for unit n, time period t
$MAINT_{nt}$	=	maintenance cost for unit n, time period t
N	=	number of units
T	=	number of time periods
$Pmin_n$	=	generation low limit of unit n
$Pmax_n$	=	generation high limit of unit n
$Rsmax_n$	=	maximum contribution to reserve for unit n

Although it may happen in certain cases, the schedule that minimizes cost is not necessarily the schedule that maximizes profit. Providing further distinction between the cost-minimizing UC for the monopolist and the profit maximizing competitive GENCO is the obligation-to-serve; the competitive GENCO may choose to generate less than the total consumer demand. This allows a little more flexibility in the UC schedules. In addition, our formulation assumes that prices fluctuate according to supply and demand. In cost-minimizing paradigms, it is assumed that leveling the load curve helps to minimize the cost. When maximizing profit, the GENCO may find that under certain conditions, it may profit more under a non-level load curve. The profit depends not only on cost, but also on revenue. If revenue increases more than the cost does, the profit will increase.

18.2.4 The Importance of EDC to the UC Solution

The economic dispatch calculation (EDC) is an important part of UC. It is used to assure that sufficient electricity will be available to meet the objective each hour of the UC schedule. For the monopolist in a vertically integrated environment, EDC will set generation so that costs are minimized subject to meeting the demand. For the price-based UC, the price-based EDC adjusts the power level of each online unit each has the same incremental cost (i.e., $\lambda_1 = \lambda_2 = \ldots = \lambda_i = \ldots = \lambda_T$). If a GENCO is operating in a competitive framework that requires its bids to cover fixed, start-up, shutdown, and other costs associated with transitioning from one state to another, then the incremental cost used by EDC must embed these costs. We shall refer to this modified marginal cost as a pseudo λ. The competitive generator will generate if the pseudo λ is less than or equal to the competitive price. A simple way to allocate the fixed and transitional costs that result in a \$/MWhr figure is shown in Eq. (18.7):

$$\lambda_t = fp_t - \frac{\sum_t \sum_n (transition\ costs) + \sum_t \sum_n (fixed\ costs)}{\sum_t^T \sum_n^N P_{nt}} \tag{18.7}$$

Other allocation schemes that adjust the marginal cost/price according to the time of day or price of power would be just as easy to implement and should be considered in building bidding strategies. Transition costs include start-up, shutdown, and banking costs, and fixed costs (present for each hour that the unit is on), which would be represented by the constant term in the typical quadratic cost curve approximation. For the results presented later in this chapter, we approximate the summation of the power generated by the forecasted demand.

The competitive price is assumed to be equal to the forecasted price. If the GENCO's supply curve is indicative of the system supply curve, then the competitive price will correspond to the point where the demand and supply curves cross. EDC sets the generation level corresponding to the point where the GENCO's supply curve crosses the demand curve, or to the point where the forecasted price is equal to the supply curve, whichever is lower.

18.2.5 Solution Methods

Solving the UC problem to find an optimal solution can be difficult. The problem has a large solution space that is discrete and nonlinear. As mentioned above, solving the UC problem requires that many economic dispatch calculations be performed. One possible way to determine the optimal schedule is to do an exhaustive search. Exhaustively considering all possible ways that units can be switched on or off for a small system can be done, but for a reasonably sized system this would take too long. Solving the UC problem for a realistic system generally involves using methods like Lagrangian relaxation, dynamic programming, genetic algorithms, or other heuristic search techniques. The interested reader may find many useful references regarding cost-minimizing UC for the monopolist in Sheblé and Fahd (1994) and Wood and Wollenberg (1996). Another heuristic technique that has shown much promise and that offers many advantages (e.g., time-to-solution for large systems and ability to simultaneously generate multiple solutions) is the genetic algorithm.

18.2.6 A Genetic-Based UC Algorithm

18.2.6.1 The Basics of Genetic Algorithms

A genetic algorithm (GA) is a search algorithm often used in nonlinear discrete optimization problems. The development of GAs was inspired by the biological notion of evolution. Initially described by John Holland, they were popularized by David Goldberg who described the basic genetic algorithm very well (Goldberg, 1989). In a GA, data, initialized randomly in a data structure appropriate for the solution to the problem, evolves over time and becomes a suitable answer to the problem. An entire population of candidate solutions (data structures with a form suitable for solving for the problem being studied) is "randomly" initialized and evolves according to GA rules. The data structures often consist of strings of binary numbers that are mapped onto the solution space for evaluation. Each solution (often termed a creature) is assigned a fitness—a heuristic measure of its quality. During the evolutionary process, those creatures having higher fitness are favored in the parent selection process and are allowed to procreate. The parent selection is essentially a random selection with a fitness bias. The type of fitness bias is determined by the parent selection method. Following the parent selection process, the processes of crossover and mutation are utilized and new creatures are developed that ideally

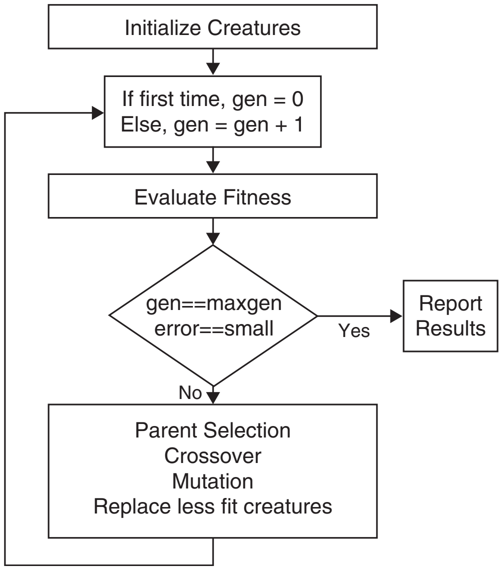


FIGURE 18.7 A simple genetic algorithm.

explore a different area of the solution space. These new creatures replace less fit creatures from the existing population. Figure 18.7 shows a block diagram of the general GA.

18.2.6.2 GA for Price-Based UC

The algorithm presented here solves the UC problem for the profit maximizing GENCO operating in the competitive environment (Richter et al., 1999). Research reveals that various GAs have been used by many researchers in solving the UC problem (Kondragunta, 1997; Kazarlis et al., 1995). However, the algorithm presented here is a modification of a genetic-based UC algorithm for the cost-minimizing monopolist described in Maifeld and Sheblé (1996). Most of the modifications are to the fitness function, which no longer rewards schedules that minimize cost, but rather those that maximize profit. The intelligent mutation operators are preserved in their original form. The schedule format is the same. The algorithm is shown in block diagram format in Fig. 18.8.

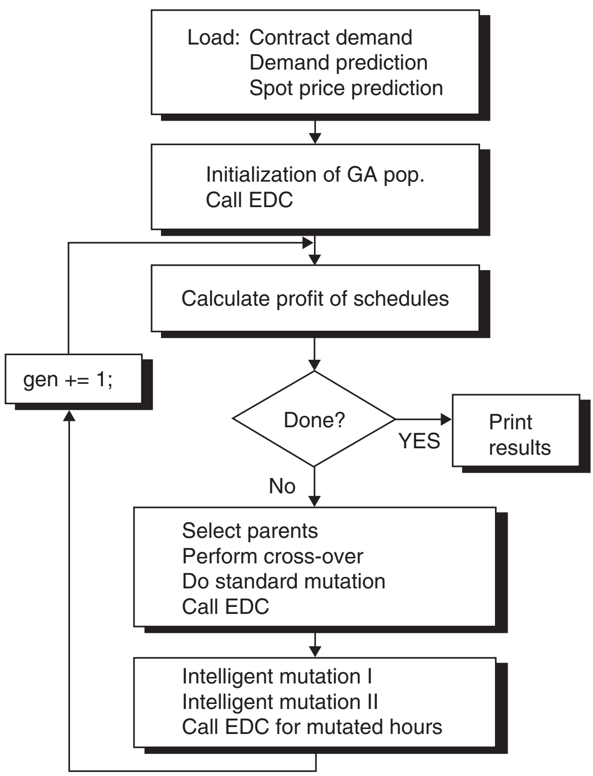


FIGURE 18.8 GA-UC block diagram.

The algorithm first reads in the contract demand and prices, the forecast of remaining demand, and forecasted spot prices (which are calculated for each hour by another routine not described here). During the initialization step, a population of UC schedules is randomly initialized. See Fig. 18.9. For each member of the population, EDC is called to set the level of generation of each unit. The cost of each schedule is calculated from the generator and data read in at the beginning of the program. Next, the fitness (i.e., the profit) of each schedule in the population is calculated. “Done?” checks to see whether the algorithm as either cycled through for the maximum number of generations allowed, or whether other stopping criteria have been met. If done, then the results are written to a file; if not done, the algorithm goes to the reproduction process.

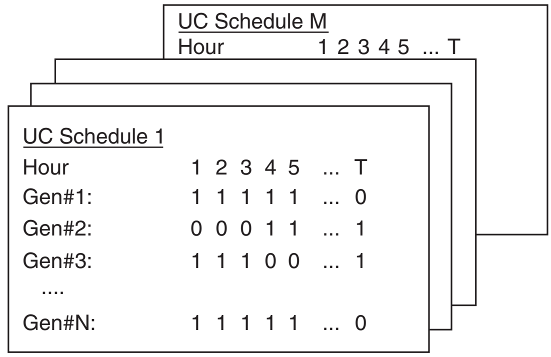


FIGURE 18.9 A population of UC schedules.

During reproduction, new schedules are created. The first step of reproduction is to select parents from the population. After selecting parents, candidate children are created using two-point crossover as shown in Fig. 18.10. Following crossover, standard mutation is applied. Standard mutation involves turning a randomly selected unit on or off within a given schedule.

An important feature of the previously developed UC-GA (Maifeld and Sheblé, 1996) is that it spends as little time as possible doing EDC. After standard mutation, EDC is called to update the profit only for the mutated hour(s). An hourly profit number is maintained and stored during the reproduction process, which dramatically reduces the amount of time required to calculate the profit over what it would be if EDC had to work from scratch at each fitness evaluation. In addition to the standard mutation, the algorithm uses two “intelligent” mutation operators that work by recognizing that, because of transition costs and minimum uptime and downtime constraints, 101 or 010 combinations are undesirable. The first of these operators would purge this undesirable combination by randomly changing 1s to 0s or vice versa. The second of these intelligent mutation operators purges the undesirable combination by changing 1 to 0 or 0 to 1 based on which of these is more helpful to the profit objective.

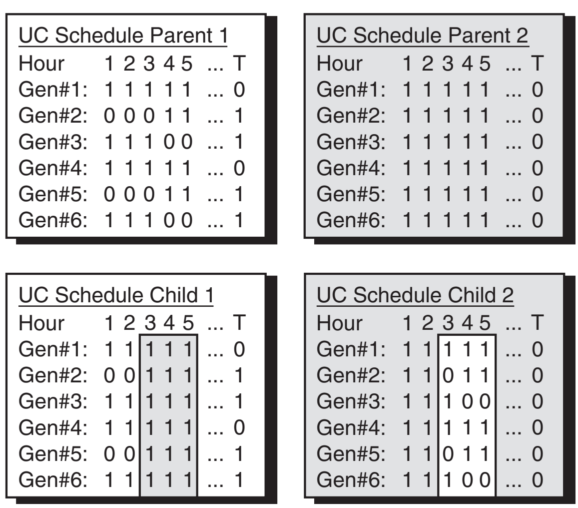


FIGURE 18.10 Two-point crossover on UC schedules.

TABLE 18.2 Forecasted Demand and Prices for 2-Generator Case

Hour	Load Forecast (MWhr)	Price Forecast ($/MWhr)	Hour	Load Forecast (MWhr)	Price Forecast ($/MWhr)
1	285	25.87	8	328	8.88
2	293	23.06	9	326	9.12
3	267	19.47	10	298	8.88
4	247	18.66	11	267	25.23
5	295	21.38	12	293	26.45
6	292	12.46	13	350	25.00
7	299	9.12	14	350	24.00

18.2.6.3 Price-Based UC-GA results

The UC-GA is run on a small system so that its solution can be easily compared to a solution by exhaustive search. Before running the UC-GA, the GENCO needs to first get an accurate hourly demand and price forecast for the period in question. Developing the forecasted data is an important topic, but beyond the scope of our analysis. For the results presented in this section, the forecasted load and prices are taken to be those shown in Table 18.2. In addition to loading the forecasted hourly price and demand, the UC-GA program needs to load the parameters of each generator to be considered. We are modeling the generators with a quadratic cost curve (e.g., $A + B(P) + C(P)^2$), where P is the power level of the unit. The data for the 2-generator case is shown in Table 18.3.

In addition to the 2-unit cases, a 10-unit, 48-hour case is included in this chapter to show that the GA works well on larger problems. While dynamic programming quickly becomes too computationally expensive to solve, the GA scales up linearly with number of hours and units. Figure 18.11 shows the costs and average costs (without transition costs) of the 10 generators, as well as the hourly price and load forecasts for the 48 hours. The data was chosen so that the optimal solution was known *a priori.* The dashed line in the load forecast represents the maximum output of the 10 units.

Before running the UC-GA, the user specifies the control parameters shown in Table 18.4, including the number of generating units and number of hours to be considered in the study. The "popsize" is the size of the GA population. The execution time varies approximately linearly with the popsize. The number of generations indicates how many times the GA will go through the reproduction phase. System reserve is the percentage of reserves that the buyer must maintain for each contract. Children per generation tells us how much of the population will be replaced each generation. Changing this can affect the convergence rate. If there are multiple optima, faster convergence can trap the GA in a local suboptimal solution. "UC schedules to keep" indicates the number of schedules to write to file when finished. There is also a random number seed that is set between 0 and 1.

TABLE 18.3 Unit Data for 2-Generator Case

	Generator 0	Generator 1
Pmin (MW)	40	40
Pmax (MW)	180	180
A (constant)	58.25	138.51
B (linear)	8.287	7.955
C (quadratic)	7.62e-06	3.05e-05
Bank cost ($)	192	223
Start-up cost($)	443	441
Shut-down cost($)	750	750
Min-uptime (hr)	4	4
Min-downtime (hr)	4	4

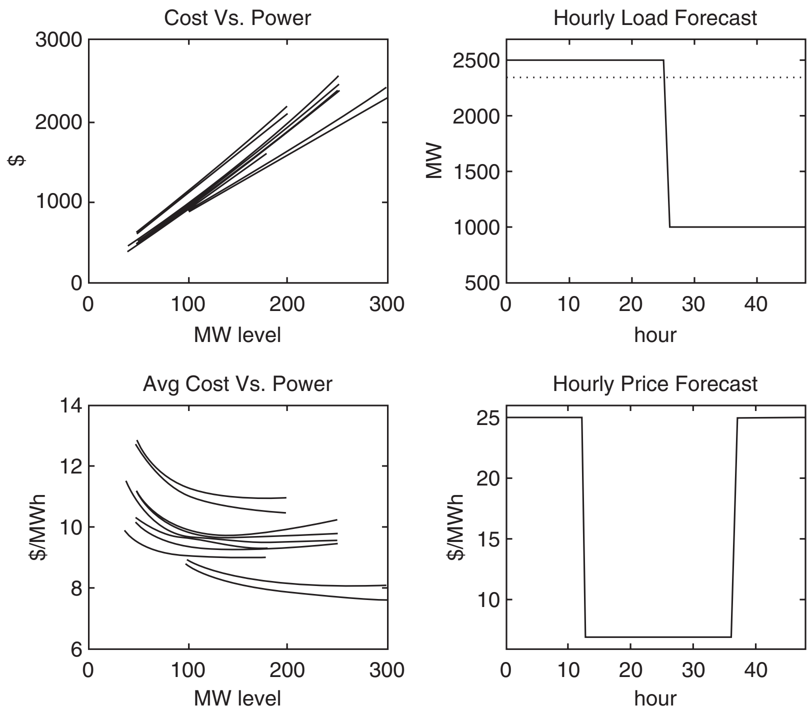


FIGURE 18.11 Data for 10-unit, 48 hour case.

TABLE 18.4 GA Control Parameters

Parameter	Setpoint	Parameter	Setpoint
# of Units	2	System reserve (%)	10
# of Hours	10	Children per generation	10
Popsize	20	UC schedules to keep	1
Generations	50	Random number seed	0.20

In the 2-generator test cases, the UC-GA was run for the units listed in Table 18.3, and for the forecasted loads and prices listed in Table 18.2. The parameters listed in Table 18.4 were adjusted accordingly. To ensure that the UC-GA is finding optimal solutions, an exhaustive search was performed on some of the smaller cases. Table 18.5 shows the time to solution in seconds for the UC-GA and the exhaustive search methods. For small cases, the exhaustive search was performed and solution time compared to that of the UC-GA. Since the exhaustive search solution times were estimated to be prohibitively lengthy, the latter cases were not compared against exhaustive search solutions.

TABLE 18.5 Comparing UC-GA with Exhaustive Search

No. of Generators in Schedule	No. of Hours in Schedule	GA Finds Optimal Solution?	Solution Time for GA (s)	Solution Time Exhaustive Search (s)
2	10	Yes	0.5	674
2	12	Yes	2	6482
2	14	Yes	10	(estimated) 62340
10	48	Yes	730	(estimated) 2E138

TABLE 18.6 The Best UC-GA Schedules of the Population

	Best Schedule for 2-Unit, 10-Hour Case
Unit 1	1111100000
Unit 2	0000000000
Cost	$17,068.20
Profit	$2,451.01
	Best Schedule for 2-Unit, 12-Hour Case
Unit 1	111111000011
Unit 2	000000000000
Cost	$24,408.50
Profit	$4,911.50
	Best Schedule Found by UC-GA for 10-Unit, 48-Hour Case
Unit 1	111111111111000000000000000000000000111111111111
Unit 2	111111111111000000000000000000000000000000000000
Unit 3	111111111111000000000000000000000000000000000000
Unit 4	111111111111000000000000000000000000000000000000
Unit 5	111111111111000000000000000000000000000000000000
Unit 6	111111111111000000000000000000000000000000000000
Unit 7	111111111111000000000000000000000000111111111111
Unit 8	111111111111000000000000000000000000000000000000
Unit 9	111111111111000000000000000000000000111111111111
Unit 10	111111111111000000000000000000000000111111111111
Cost	$325,733.00
Profit	$676,267.00

Cases with known optimal solutions were used to verify that the UC-GA was, in fact, working for the large cases.

Table 18.6 shows the optimal UC schedules found by the UC-GA for selected cases. Figure 18.12 shows the maximum, minimum and average fitnesses (profit) during each generation of the UC-GA on the 2-generator, 14-hour/period case. The best individual of the population climbs quite rapidly to near

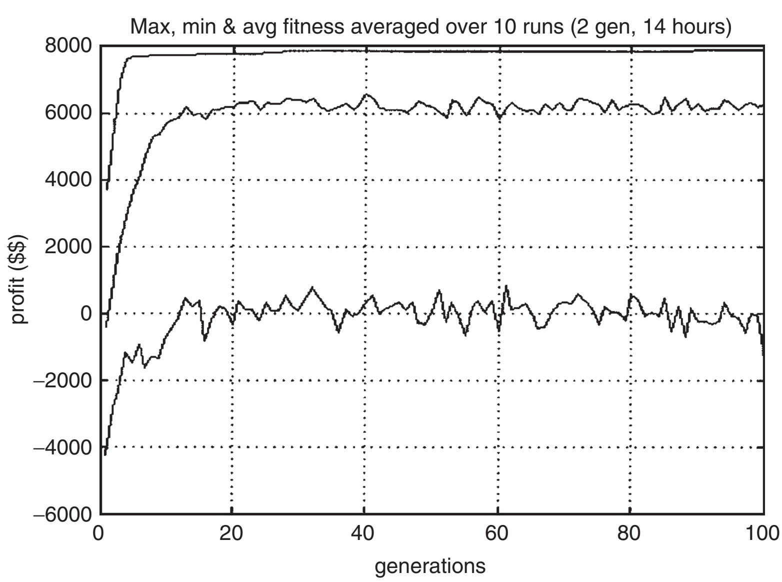


FIGURE 18.12 Max., min., and avg. fitness vs. GA generations for the 2-generator, 14-hour case.

the optimal solution. Half of the population is replaced each generation; often the child solutions are poor solutions, hence the minimum fitness tends to remain low over the generations, which is typical for GA optimization.

In the schedules shown in Table 18.6, it may appear as though minimum up- and downtime constraints are being violated. When calculating the cost of such a schedule, the algorithm ensures that the profit is based on a valid schedule by considering a zero surrounded by ones to be a banked unit, and so forth. In addition, note that only the best solution of the population for each of the cases is shown. The existence of additional valid solutions, which may have been only slightly suboptimal in terms of profit, is one of the main advantages of using the GA. It gives the system operator the flexibility to choose the best schedule from a group of schedules to accommodate things like forced maintenance.

18.2.7 Unit Commitment and Auctions

Regardless of the market framework, the solution method, and who is performing the UC, an auction can model and achieve the optimal solution. As mentioned previously in the section on EDC, auctions (which come in many forms, e.g., Dutch, English, sealed, double-sided, single-sided, etc.) are used to match buyers with sellers and to achieve a price that is considered fair. An auction can be used to find the optimal allocation, and the unit commitment algorithm essentially performs the same allocation that an auction would. Suppose an auctioneer was to call out a price, or a set of prices that is predicted for the schedule period. The auctioneer would then ask all generators how much power they would generate at that level. The generator must consider which units to switch on, and at what level to produce and sell. The reply amounts could be summed to determine the production level at that price. If all of the constraints, including demand, are met, then the most economical combination of units operating at the most economical settings has been found. If not, the auctioneer adjusts the price and asks for the amounts at the new price. This procedure is repeated until the constraints are satisfied. Prices may ascend as in the English auction, or they may descend as in the Dutch auction. See Fig. 18.3 for a graphical depiction of this process. For further discussion on this topic, the interested reader is referred to Sheblé (1999).

18.3 Summary of Economical Generation Operation

Since the introduction of electricity supply to the public in the late 1800s, people in many parts of the world have grown to expect an inexpensive reliable source of electricity. Providing that electric energy economically and efficiently requires the generation company to carefully control their generating units, and to consider many factors that may affect the performance, cost, and profitability of their operation. The unit commitment and economic dispatch algorithms play an important part in deciding how to operate the electric generating units around the world. The introduction of competition has changed many of the factors considered in solving these problems. Furthermore, advancements in solution techniques offer a continuum of candidate algorithms, each having its own advantages and disadvantages. Research continues to push these algorithms further. This chapter has provided the reader with an introduction to the problems of determining optimal unit commitment schedules and economic dispatches. It is by no means exhaustive, and the interested reader is strongly encouraged to see the references at the end of the chapter for more details.

References

Goldberg, D., *Genetic Algorithms in Search, Optimization and Machine Learning*. Addison-Wesley Publishing Company, Inc., Reading, MA, 1989.

Kazarlis, S.A., Bakirtzis, A.G., and Petridis, V., A Genetic Algorithm Solution to the Unit Commitment Problem, *1995 IEEE/PES Winter Meeting*, 152-9 PWRS, New York, 1995.

Kondragunta, S., Genetic algorithm unit commitment program, M.S. Thesis, Iowa State University, Ames, IA, 1997.

Maifeld, T., and Sheblé, G., Genetic-Based unit commitment, *IEEE Trans. on Power Syst.*, 11, 1359, August 1996.

Richter, C., and Sheblé, G., A Profit-Based Unit Commitment GA for the Competitive Environment, accepted for *IEEE Trans. on Power Syst.*, publication forthcoming.

Sheblé, G., *Computational Auction Mechanisms for Restructured Power Industry Operation.* Kluwer Academic Publishers, Boston, MA, 1999.

Sheblé, G., Unit Commitment for Operations, Ph.D. Dissertation, Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University, March, 1985.

Sheblé, G., and Fahd, G., Unit commitment literature synopsis, *IEEE Trans. on Power Syst.*, 9, 128–135, February 1994.

Takriti, S., Krasenbrink, B., and Wu, L.S.-Y., Incorporating Fuel Constraints and Electricity Spot Prices into the Stochastic Unit Commitment Problem, IBM Research Report: RC 21066, Mathematical Sciences Department, T.J. Watson Research Center, Yorktown Heights, New York, December 29, 1997.

Walters, D.C., and Sheblé, G.B., Genetic Algorithm Solution of Economic Dispatch with Valve Point Loading, *1992 IEEE/PES Summer Meeting*, 414-3, New York, 1992.

Wood, A., and Wollenberg, B., *Power Generation, Operation, and Control.* John Wiley & Sons, New York, NY, 1984.

19

State Estimation

Danny Julian
ABB Power T&D Company

An online AC power flow is a valuable application when determining the critical elements affecting power system operation and control such as overloaded lines, credible contingencies, and unsatisfactory voltages. It is the basis for any real-time security assessment and enhancement applications.

AC power flow algorithms calculate real and reactive line flows based on a multitude of inputs with generator bus voltages, real power bus injections, and reactive power bus injections being a partial list. This implies that in order to calculate the line flows using a power flow algorithm, all of the input information (voltages, real power injections, reactive power injections, etc.) must be known *a priori* to the algorithm being executed.

An obvious way to implement an online AC power flow is to telemeter the required input information at every location in the power system. This would require not only a large number of **remote terminal units** (RTUs), but also an extensive communication infrastructure to telemeter the data to the **SCADA** system, both of which are costly. Although the generator bus voltages are usually readily available, the injection data is frequently what is lacking. This is because it is much easier and cheaper to monitor the net injection at a bus than to measure separate injections directly.

Also, this approach presents weaknesses for the online AC power flow that are due to meter accuracy and communication failure. An online power flow relying on a specific set of measurements could become unusable or give erroneous results if any of the predefined measurements became unavailable due to communication failure or due to misoperation of measurement devices. This is not a desirable outcome of an online application designed to alert system operators to unsecure conditions.

Given the above obstacles of utilizing an online AC power flow, work was conducted in the late 1960s and early 1970s (Schweppe and Wildes, Jan. 1970) into developing a process of performing an online power flow using not just the limited data needed for the classical AC power flow algorithm, but using all available measurements. This work led to the **state estimator**, which uses not only the aforementioned voltages but other telemetered measurements such as real and reactive line flows, circuit breaker statuses, and transformer tap settings.

19.1 State Estimation Problem

State estimators perform a statistical analysis using a set of m imperfect redundant data telemetered from the power system to determine the state of the system. The state of the system is a function of n

state variables: bus voltages and relative phase angles, and tap changing transformer positions. Although the state estimation solution is not a "true" representation of the system, it is the "best" possible representation based on the telemetered measurements.

Also, it is necessary to have the number of measurements greater than the number of states ($m \geq n$) to yield a representation of the complete state of the system. This is known as the observability criterion. Typically, m is two to three times the value of n, allowing for a considerable amount of redundancy in the measurement set.

19.1.1 Underlying Assumptions

Telemetered measurements usually are corrupted since they are susceptible to noise. Even when great care is taken to ensure accuracy, unavoidable random noise enters into the measurement process, which distorts the telemetered values.

Fortunately, statistical properties associated with the measurements allow certain assumptions to be made to estimate the true measured value. First, it is assumed the measurement noise has an expected value, or average, of zero. This assumption implies the error in each measurement has equal probability of taking on a positive or negative value. It is also assumed that the expected value for the square of the measurement error is normal and has a standard deviation of σ, and the correlation between measurements is zero (i.e., independent).[1] A variable is said to be normal (or Gaussian) if its probability density function has the form

$$f(v) = \frac{1}{\sigma\sqrt{2\pi}}\, e^{-\frac{v^2}{2\sigma^2}}. \tag{19.1}$$

This distribution is also known as the bell curve due to its symmetrical shape resembling a bell as can be seen in Fig. 19.1. The normal distribution is used for the modeling of measurement errors since it is the distribution that results when many factors contribute to the overall error.

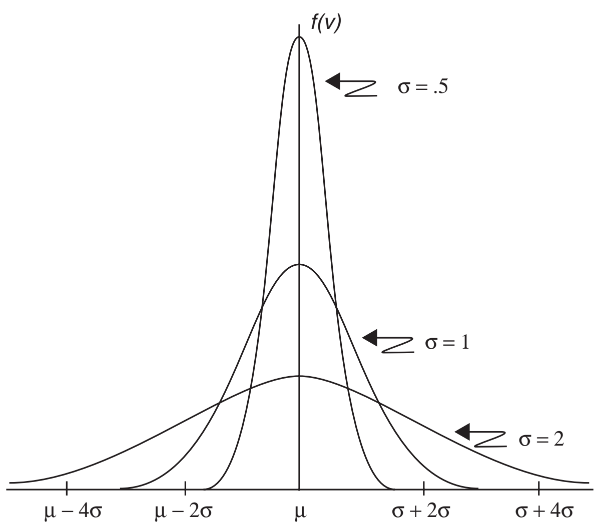


FIGURE 19.1 Normal probability distribution curve with a mean of μ.

[1]In practice, measurements i and j are not necessarily independent since one measurement device may measure more than one value. Therefore, if the measurement device is bad, probably both measurements i and j are bad also.

Figure 19.1 also illustrates the effect of standard deviation on the normal density function. Standard deviation, σ, is a measure of the spread of the normal distribution about the mean (μ) and gives an indication of how many samples fall within a given interval around the mean. A large standard deviation implies there is a high probability the measurement noise will take on large values. Conversely, a small standard deviation implies there is a high probability the measurement noise will take on small values.

19.1.2 Measurement Representations

Since a measurement is not exact, it can be expressed with an error component of the form

$$z = z_T + v \tag{19.2}$$

where z is the measured value, z_T is the true value, and v is the measurement error that represents uncertainty in the measurement. In general, the measured value, as expressed in Eq. (19.2), can be related to the states, x, by

$$z = h(x) + v \tag{19.3}$$

where $h(x)$ is a vector of nonlinear functions relating the measurements to the state variables. An example of the $h(x)$ vector can be shown using the transmission line in Fig. 19.2.

Assuming real and reactive power measurements are being made at bus i in Fig. 19.2, the equations for line flow from bus i to j need to be determined as

$$P_{ij} = \left|\tilde{V}_i\right|^2 \left(g_{ij} + g_{i_{sh}}\right) - \left|\tilde{V}_i\right|\left|\tilde{V}_j\right| \left[g_{ij} \cos\left(\delta_{ij}\right) + b_{ij} \sin\left(\delta_{ij}\right)\right] \tag{19.4}$$

$$Q_{ij} = -\left|\tilde{V}_i\right|^2 \left(b_{ij} + b_{i_{sh}}\right) - \left|\tilde{V}_i\right|\left|\tilde{V}_j\right| \left[g_{ij} \sin\left(\delta_{ij}\right) - b_{ij} \cos\left(\delta_{ij}\right)\right] \tag{19.5}$$

where $|\tilde{V}_i|$ is the magnitude of the voltage at bus i, $|\tilde{V}_j|$ is the magnitude of the voltage at bus j, δ_{ij} is the phase angle difference between bus i and bus j, g_{ij} and b_{ij} are the conductance and susceptance of line i-j, respectively, and $g_{i_{sh}}$ and $b_{i_{sh}}$ are the shunt conductance and susceptance at bus i, respectively.

Using Eqs. (19.4) and (19.5), Eq. (19.3) can now be rewritten as[2]

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{z} &= \bar{h}(x) + \bar{v} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} \left|\tilde{V}_i\right|^2 \left(g_{ij} + g_{i_{sh}}\right) - \left|\tilde{V}_i\right|\left|\tilde{V}_j\right| \left[g_{ij} \cos\left(\delta_{ij}\right) + b_{ij} \sin\left(\delta_{ij}\right)\right] \\ -\left|\tilde{V}_i\right|^2 \left(b_{ij} + b_{i_{sh}}\right) - \left|\tilde{V}_i\right|\left|\tilde{V}_i\right| \left[g_{ij} \sin\left(\delta_{ij}\right) - b_{ij} \cos\left(\delta_{ij}\right)\right] \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} v_{P_{ij}} \\ v_{Q_{ij}} \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned} \tag{19.6}$$

which expresses the measurements entirely in terms of network parameters (which are assumed known) and system states (bus voltage and phase angle).

19.1.3 Solution Methods

The solution to the state estimation problem has been addressed by a broad class of techniques (Filho et al., Aug. 1990) and differs from power flow algorithms in two modes:

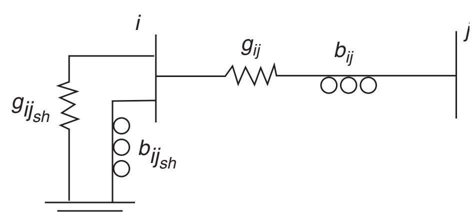


FIGURE 19.2 Transmission line representation.

[2]The superscript ¯ represents a vector.

1. certain input data are either missing or inexact, and/or
2. the algorithm used for the calculation may entail approximations and approximate methods designed for high speed processing in the online environment.

In this section, two different solution methods to the state estimation problem will be introduced and described.

19.1.3.1 Weighted Least Squares

The most common approach to solving the state estimation problem is using the method of weighted least squares (WLS). This is accomplished by identifying the values of the state variables that minimize the performance index, J (the weighted sum of square errors):

$$J = \bar{e}^T R^{-1} \bar{e} \tag{19.7}$$

where the weighting factor, R, is the diagonal covariance matrix of the measurements and is defined as

$$E\left[\overline{vv}^T\right] = R = \begin{bmatrix} \sigma_1^2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \sigma_2^2 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \sigma_m^2 \end{bmatrix}. \tag{19.8}$$

By defining the error, e, in Eq. (19.7) as the difference between the true measured value, z, and the estimated measured value, $\hat{z}$,

$$\bar{e} = \bar{z} - \hat{\bar{z}} \tag{19.9}$$

a new form for the performance index can be written as

$$J = (\bar{z} - \bar{h}(x))^T R^{-1} (\bar{z} - \bar{h}(x)) \tag{19.10}$$

As shown in Eqs. (19.8) and (19.10), the weights are defined by the inverse of the measurements variances. As a result, measurements of a higher quality have smaller variances that correspond to their weights having higher values, while measurements with poor quality have smaller weights due to the correspondingly higher variance values.

In order to minimize the performance index, J, a first-order necessary condition must hold, namely:

$$\left.\frac{\partial J}{\partial \bar{x}}\right|_{x^k} = 0 \tag{19.11}$$

Evaluating Eq. (19.10) at the necessary condition gives the following:

$$H\left(x^k\right)^T R^{-1}\left(\bar{z} - \bar{h}(x)\right) = 0 \tag{19.12}$$

where $H(x)$ represents the $m \times n$[3] measurement Jacobian matrix evaluated at iteration k:

[3] m represents the number of measurements; n represents the number of states.

$$H(x) = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial h_1}{\partial x_1} & \frac{\partial h_1}{\partial x_2} & \cdots & \frac{\partial h_1}{\partial x_n} \\ \frac{\partial h_2}{\partial x_1} & \frac{\partial h_2}{\partial x_2} & \cdots & \frac{\partial h_2}{\partial x_n} \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ \frac{\partial h_m}{\partial x_1} & \frac{\partial h_m}{\partial x_2} & \cdots & \frac{\partial h_m}{\partial x_n} \end{bmatrix}\Bigg|_{x^k} \tag{19.13}$$

A linearized relationship between the measurements and the state variables is then found by expanding the Taylor series expansion of the function $\bar{h}(x)$ around a point x^k:

$$\bar{h}\left(x^k\right) = \bar{h}\left(x^k\right) + \Delta\bar{x}^k \frac{\partial \bar{h}\left(x^k\right)}{\partial \bar{x}} + \text{higher order terms}. \tag{19.14}$$

This set of equations can be solved using an iterative approach such as Newton Raphson's method. At the $(k+1)^{\text{th}}$ iteration, the refreshed values of the state variables can be obtained from their values in the previous iteration by:

$$\bar{x}^{k+1} = \bar{x}^k + \left(H\left(x^k\right)^T R^{-1} H\left(x^k\right)\right)^{-1} H\left(x^k\right)^T R^{-1}\left(\bar{z} - \bar{h}\left(x^k\right)\right). \tag{19.15}$$

At convergence, the solution $\bar{x}^{k+1}$ corresponds to the weighted least squares estimates of the state variables. Convergence can be determined either by satisfying

$$\max\left(\bar{x}^{k+1} - \bar{x}^k\right) \leq \varepsilon \tag{19.16}$$

or

$$J^{k+1} - J^k \leq \varepsilon \tag{19.17}$$

where ε is some predetermined convergence factor.

19.1.3.2 Linear Programming

Another solution method that addresses the state estimation problem is linear programming. Linear programming is an optimization technique that serves to minimize a linear objective function subject to a set of constraints:

$$\begin{aligned} \min\left\{\bar{c}^T \bar{x}\right\} \\ s.t.\ A\bar{x} = \bar{b} \\ \bar{x} \geq 0 \end{aligned} \tag{19.18}$$

There are many different techniques associated with solving linear programming problems including the simplex and interior point methods.

Since the objective function, as expressed in Eq. (19.10), is quadratic in terms of the unknowns (states), it must be rewritten in a linear form. This is accomplished by first rewriting the measurement error, as expressed in Eq. (19.3), in terms of a positive measurement error, v_p, and a negative measurement error, v_n:

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{z} &= \bar{h}(x) + \bar{v} \\ &= \bar{h}(x) + \bar{v}_p - \bar{v}_n \end{aligned} \tag{19.19}$$

Restricting the positive and negative measurement errors to only nonnegative values insures the problem is bounded. This was not a concern in the weighted least squares approach since a quadratic function is convex and is guaranteed to contain a global minimum.

Using the new definition of a measurement described in Eq. (19.19) and the inverse of the diagonal covariance matrix of the measurements for weights as described in the weighted least squares approach, the objective function can now be written as:

$$J = R^{-1}\left(\bar{v}_p + \bar{v}_n\right) \tag{19.20}$$

The constraints are the equations relating the state vector to the measurements as shown in Eq. (19.19). Once again, since $h(x)$ is nonlinear, it must be linearized around a point x^k by expanding the Taylor series, as was performed previously in the weighted least squares approach. The solution to the state estimation problem can then be determined by solving the following linear program:

$$\begin{aligned} &\min\left\{R^{-1}\left(\bar{v}_p + \bar{v}_n\right)\right\} \\ &s.t.\ \Delta\bar{\mathrm{z}}^{\mathrm{k}} - \mathrm{H}\left(\mathrm{x}^{\mathrm{k}}\right)\Delta\bar{x}^k + \bar{v}_p - \bar{v}_n = 0 \\ &\qquad \bar{v}_p \geq 0 \\ &\qquad \bar{v}_n \geq 0 \end{aligned} \tag{19.21}$$

where $H(x^k)$ represents the $m \times n$ measurement Jacobian matrix evaluated at iteration k as defined in Eq. (19.13).

19.2 State Estimation Operation

State estimators are typically executed either periodically (i.e., every 5 min), on demand, or due to a status change such as a breaker operation isolating a line section. To illustrate the relationship of the state estimator with respect to other **EMS** applications, a simple depiction of an EMS is shown below in Fig. 19.3:

As shown, the state estimator receives inputs from the supervisory control and data acquisition (SCADA) system and the network topology assessment applications and stores the state of the system in a central location (i.e., database). Power system applications, such as contingency analysis and optimal power flow, can then be executed based on the state of the system as computed by the state estimator.

19.2.1 Network Topology Assessment

Before the state estimator is executed in realtime, the topology of the network is determined. This is accomplished by a system or **network configurator** that establishes the configuration of the power system network based on telemetered breaker and switch statuses. The network configurator normally addresses questions like:

- Have breaker operations caused individual buses to either be split into two or more isolated buses, or combined into a single bus?
- Have lines been opened or restored to service?

The state estimator then uses the network determined by the network configurator, which consists only of energized (online) lines and devices, as a basis for the calculations to determine the state of the system.

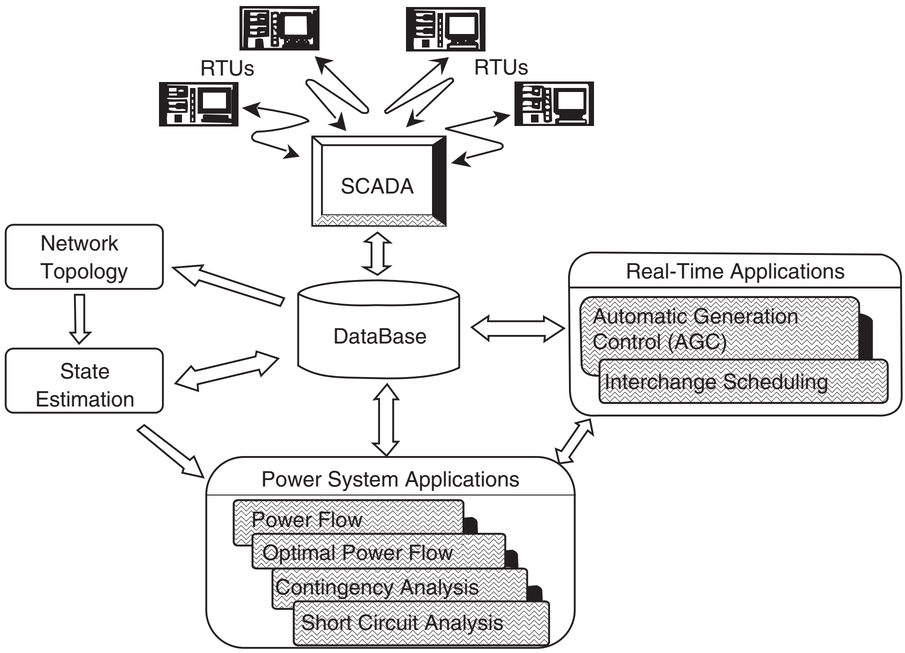


FIGURE 19.3 Simple depiction of an EMS.

19.2.2 Error Identification

Since state estimators utilize telemetered measurements and network parameters as a foundation for their calculations, the performance of the state estimator depends on the accuracy of the measured data as well as the parameters of the network model. Fortunately, the use of all available measurements introduces a favorable secondary effect caused by the redundancy of information. This redundancy provides the state estimator with more capabilities than just an online AC power flow; it introduces the ability to detect "bad" data. Bad data can come from many sources, such as:

- approximations,
- simplified model assumptions,
- human data handling errors, or
- measurement errors due to faulty devices (e.g., transducers, current transformers).

19.2.2.1 Telemetered Data

The ability to detect and identify bad measurements is an extremely useful feature of the state estimator. Without the state estimator, obviously wrong telemetered measurements would have little chance of being identified. With the state estimator, operation personnel can have a greater confidence that telemetered data is not grossly in error.

Data is tagged as "bad" when the estimated value is unreasonably different from the measured/telemetered value obtained from the RTU. As a simple example, suppose a bus voltage is measured to be 1.85 pu and is estimated to be 0.95 pu. In this case, the bus voltage measurement could be tagged as bad. Once data is tagged as bad, it should be removed from the measurement set before being utilized by the state estimator.

Most state estimators rely on a combination of preestimation and postestimation schemes for detection and elimination of bad data. Preestimation involves gross bad data detection and consistency tests. Data is identified as bad in preestimation by the detection of gross measurement errors such as zero voltages or line flows that are outside reasonable limits using network topology assessment. Consistency tests classify data either as valid, suspect, or raw for use in postestimation analysis by using statistical properties of related measurements. Measurements are classified as valid if they pass a consistency test that separates measurements into subsets based on a consistency threshold. If the measurement fails the consistency test, it is classified as suspect. Measurements are classified as raw if a consistency test cannot be made and they cannot be grouped into any subset. Raw measurements typically belong to nonredundant portions of the complete measurement set.

Postestimation involves performing a statistical analysis (e.g., hypothesis testing using chi-square tests) on the normalized measurement residuals. A normalized residual is defined as

$$r_i = \frac{z_i - h_i(x)}{\sigma_i} \tag{19.22}$$

where σ_i is the i-th diagonal term of the covariance matrix, R, as defined in Eq. (19.8). Data is identified as bad in postestimation typically when the normalized residuals of measurements classified as suspect lie outside a predefined confidence interval (i.e., fail the chi-square test).

19.2.2.2 Parameter Data

In parameter error identification, network parameters (i.e., admittances) that are suspicious are identified and need to be estimated. The use of faulty network parameters can severely impact the quality of state estimation solutions and cause considerable error. A requirement for parameter estimation is that all parameters be identifiable by measurements. This requirement implies the lines under consideration have associated measurements, thereby increasing the size of the measurement set by l, where l is the number of parameters to be estimated. Therefore, if parameter estimation is to be performed, the observability criterion must be augmented to become $m \geq n + l$.

19.2.3 Unobservability

By definition, a state variable is unobservable if it cannot be estimated. Unobservability occurs when the observability criterion is violated $(m < n)$ and there are insufficient redundant measurements to determine the state of the system. Mathematically, the matrix $H(x^k)^T R^{-1} H(x^k)$ of Eq. (19.15) becomes singular and cannot be inverted.

The obvious solution to the unobservability problem is to increase the number of measurements. The problem then becomes where and how many measurements need to be added to the measurement set. Adding additional measurements is costly since there are many supplementary factors that must be addressed in addition to the cost of the measuring device such as RTUs, communication infrastructure, and software data processing at the EMS. A number of approaches have been suggested that try to minimize the cost while satisfying the observability criterion (Baran et al., Aug. 1995; Park et al., Aug. 1998).

Another solution to address the problem of unobservability is to augment the measurement set with pseudomeasurements to reach an observability condition for the network. When adding pseudomeasurements to a network, the equation of the pseudomeasured quantity is substituted for actual measurements. In this case, the measurement covariance values in Eq. (19.8) associated with these measurements should have large values that allow the state estimator to treat the pseudomeasurements as if they were measured from a very poor metering device.

19.3 Example State Estimation Problem

This section provides a simple example to illustrate how the state estimation process is performed. The WLS method, as previously described, will be applied to a sample system.

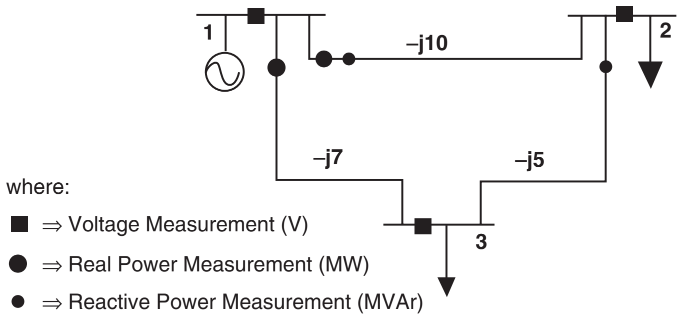


FIGURE 19.4 Sample three-bus power flow system.

19.3.1 System Description

A sample three-bus system is shown in Fig. 91.4.

Bus 1 is assumed to be the reference bus with a corresponding angle of zero. All other relevant system data is given in Table 19.1.

19.3.2 WLS State Estimation Process

First, the states (x) are defined as the angles at bus 2 and bus 3 and the voltage magnitudes at all buses[4]:

$$\bar{x} = \begin{bmatrix} \delta_2 \\ \delta_3 \\ |\tilde{V}_1| \\ |\tilde{V}_2| \\ |\tilde{V}_3| \end{bmatrix}$$

This gives a total of seven measurements and five states that satisfy the observability criterion requiring more measurements than states.

Using the previously defined equations for the WLS state estimation procedure, the following can be determined:

TABLE 19.1 Sample System Data

Measurement Type	Measurement Location	Measurement Value (pu)	Measurement Covariance (σ)
$\lvert\tilde{V}\rvert$	Bus 1	1.02	0.05
$\lvert\tilde{V}\rvert$	Bus 2	1.0	0.05
$\lvert\tilde{V}\rvert$	Bus 3	0.99	0.05
P	Bus 1 – Bus 2	1.5	0.1
Q	Bus 1 – Bus 2	0.2	0.1
P	Bus 1 – Bus 3	1.0	0.1
Q	Bus 2 – Bus 3	0.1	0.1

[4]The angle at bus one is not chosen as a state since it is designated as the reference bus.

$$R = \left[\sigma_i^2\right]$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} (.05)^2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & (.05)^2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & (.05)^2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & (.1)^2 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & (.1)^2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & (.1)^2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & (.1)^2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\hat{\bar{z}} = h(\bar{x})$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} x_3 \\ x_4 \\ x_5 \\ -10x_3x_4 \sin x_1 \\ 10x_3^2 - 10x_3x_4 \cos x_1 \\ -7x_3x_5 \sin x_2 \\ 5x_4^2 - 5x_4x_5 \cos(x_1 - x_2) \end{bmatrix}$$

$$H(x) = \left[\frac{\partial \bar{h}}{\partial \bar{x}}\right]$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ -10x_3x_4 \cos x_1 & 0 & -10x_4 \sin x_1 & -10x_3 \sin x_1 & 0 \\ 10x_3x_4 \sin x_1 & 0 & 20x_3 - 10x_4 \cos x_1 & -10x_3 \cos x_1 & 0 \\ 0 & -7x_3x_5 \cos x_2 & -7x_5 \sin x_2 & 0 & -7x_3 \sin x_2 \\ 5x_4x_5 \sin(x_1 - x_2) & -5x_4x_5 \sin(x_1 - x_2) & 0 & 10x_4 - 5x_5 \cos(x_1 - x_2) & -5x_4 \cos(x_1 - x_2) \end{bmatrix}$$

Using zero as an initial guess for the states representing voltage angles (x_1 and x_2) and the measured voltages as given in Table 19.1 for the states representing voltage magnitudes (x_3, x_4, and x_5):

$$\begin{bmatrix} x_1^0 \\ x_2^0 \\ x_3^0 \\ x_4^0 \\ x_5^0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1.02 \\ 1.00 \\ 0.99 \end{bmatrix},$$

the state values at the first iteration are determined by Eq. (19.15) to be

$$\begin{bmatrix} x_1^1 \\ x_2^1 \\ x_3^1 \\ x_4^1 \\ x_5^1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -0.147 \\ -0.142 \\ 1.022 \\ 1.003 \\ 0.984 \end{bmatrix}.$$

After four iterations, the state estimation process converges to the final states:

$$\begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \\ x_4 \\ x_5 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -0.147 \\ -0.143 \\ 1.016 \\ 1.007 \\ 0.987 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Using the solved voltages and angles from the state estimation process, the line flows and bus injections can now be calculated. With the state of the system now known, other applications such as contingency analysis and optimal power flow may be performed. Notice, the state estimation process results in the state of the system, just as when performing a power flow but without *a priori* knowledge of bus injections.

19.4 Defining Terms

Remote Terminal Unit (RTU)—Hardware that telemeters systemwide data from various field locations (i.e., substations, generating plants) to a central location.

State estimator—An application that uses a statistical process in order to estimate the state of the system.

State variable—The quantity to be estimated by the state estimator, typically bus voltage and angle.

Network configurator—An application that determines the configuration of the power system based on telemetered breaker and switch statuses.

Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition (SCADA)—A computer system that performs data acquisition and remote control of a power system.

Energy Management System (EMS)—A computer system that monitors, controls, and optimizes the transmission and generation facilities with advanced applications. A SCADA system is a subset of an EMS.

References

Schweppe, F.C., Wildes, J., Power System Static-State Estimation I,II,III, *IEEE Trans. on Power Appar. Syst.*, 89, 120–135, January 1970.

Filho, M.B.D.C. et al., Bibliography on power system state estimation (1968-1989), *IEEE Trans. on Power Syst.*, 5, 3, 950–961, August 1990.

Baran, M.E. et al., A meter placement method for state estimation, *IEEE Trans. on Power Syst.*, 10, 3, 1704–1710, August 1995.

Park, Y.M. et al., Design of reliable measurement system for state estimation, *IEEE Trans. on Power Syst.*, 3, 3, 830–836, August 1998.

20

Optimal Power Flow

Mohamed E. El-Hawary
Dalhousie University

An Optimal Power Flow (OPF) function schedules the power system controls to optimize an objective function while satisfying a set of nonlinear equality and inequality constraints. The equality constraints are the conventional power flow equations; the inequality constraints are the limits on the control and operating variables of the system. Mathematically, the OPF can be formulated as a constrained nonlinear optimization problem. This section reviews features of the problem and some of its variants as well as requirements for online implementation.

Optimal scheduling of the operations of electric power systems is a major activity, which turns out to be a large-scale problem when the constraints of the electric network are taken into account. This document deals with recent developments in the area emphasizing optimal power flow formulation and deals with conventional optimal power flow (OPF), accounting for the dependence of the power demand on voltages in the system, and requirements for online implementation.

The OPF problem was defined in the early 1960s (Burchett et al., Feb. 1982) as an extension of conventional economic dispatch to determine the optimal settings for control variables in a power network respecting various constraints. OPF is a static constrained nonlinear optimization problem, whose development has closely followed advances in numerical optimization techniques and computer technology. It has since been generalized to include many other problems. Optimization of the electric system with losses represented by the power flow equations was introduced in the 1960s (Carpentier, 1962; Dommel and Tinney, Oct. 1968). Since then, significant effort has been spent on achieving faster and robust solution methods that are suited for online implementation, operating practice, and security requirements.

OPF seeks to optimize a certain objective, subject to the network power flow constraints and system and equipment operating limits. Today, any problem that involves the determination of the instantaneous "optimal" steady state of an electric power system is referred to as an Optimal Power Flow problem. The optimal steady state is attained by adjusting the available controls to minimize an objective function subject to specified operating and security requirements. Different classes of OPF problems, designed for special-purpose applications, are created by selecting different functions to be minimized, different sets of controls, and different sets of constraints. All these classes of the OPF problem are subsets of the general problem. Historically, different solution approaches have been developed to solve these different classes of OPF. Commercially available OPF software can solve very large and complex formulations in a relatively short time, but may still be incapable of dealing with online implementation requirements.

There are many possible objectives for an OPF. Some commonly implemented objectives are:

- fuel or active power cost optimization,
- active power loss minimization,
- minimum control-shift,
- minimum voltage deviations from unity, and
- minimum number of controls rescheduled.

In fuel cost minimization, the outputs of all generators, their voltages, LTC transformer taps and LTC phase shifter angles, and switched capacitors and reactors are control variables. The active power losses can be minimized in at least two ways (Happ and Vierath, July, 1986). In both methods, all the above variables are adjusted except for the active power generation. In one method, the active power generation at the swing bus is minimized while keeping all other generation constant at prespecified values. This effectively minimizes the total active power losses. In another method, an actual expression for the losses is minimized, thus allowing the exclusion of lines in areas not optimized.

The behavior of the OPF solutions during contingencies was a major concern, and as a result, security constrained optimal power flow was introduced in the early 1970s. Subsequently, online implementations became a new thrust in order to meet the challenges of new deregulated operating environments.

20.1 Conventional Optimal Economic Scheduling

Conventional optimal economic scheduling minimizes the total fuel cost of thermal generation, which may be approximated by a variety of expressions such as linear or quadratic functions of the active power generation of the unit. The total active power generation in the system must equal the load plus the active transmission losses, which can be expressed by the celebrated Kron's loss formula. Reserve constraints may be modeled depending on system requirements. Area and system spinning, supplemental, emergency, or other types of reserve requirements involve functional inequality constraints. The forms of the functions used depend on the type of reserve modeled. A linear form is evidently most attractive from a solution method point of view. However, for thermal units, the spinning reserve model is nonlinear due to the limit on a unit's maximum reserve contribution. Additional constraints may be modeled, such as area interchange constraints used to model network transmission capacity limitations. This is usually represented as a constraint on the net interchange of each area with the rest of the system (i.e., in terms of limits on the difference between area total generation and load).

The objective function is augmented by the constraints using a Lagrange-type multiplier lambda, λ. The optimality conditions are made up of two sets. The first is the problem constraints. The second set is based on variational arguments giving for each thermal unit:

$$\frac{\partial F_i}{\partial P_i} = \lambda \left[1 - \frac{\partial P_L}{\partial P_i} \right] \quad i = 1, \ldots, N \tag{20.1}$$

The optimality conditions along with the physical constraints are a set of nonlinear equations that requires iterative methods to solve. Newton's method has been widely accepted in the power industry as a powerful tool to solve problems such as the load flow and optimal load flow. This is due to its reliable and fast convergence, known to be quadratic.

A solution can usually be obtained within a few iterations, provided that a reasonably good initial estimate of the solution is available. It is therefore appropriate to employ this method to solve the present problem.

20.2 Conventional OPF Formulation

The optimal power flow is a constrained optimization problem requiring the minimization of:

$$\boldsymbol{f} = (\boldsymbol{x},\boldsymbol{u}) \tag{20.2}$$

subject to

$$\boldsymbol{g}(\boldsymbol{x},\boldsymbol{u}) = 0 \tag{20.3}$$

$$\boldsymbol{h}(\boldsymbol{x},\boldsymbol{u}) \leq 0 \tag{20.4}$$

$$\boldsymbol{u}^{\min} \leq \boldsymbol{u} \leq \boldsymbol{u}^{\max} \tag{20.5}$$

$$\boldsymbol{x}^{\min} \leq \boldsymbol{x} \leq \boldsymbol{x}^{\max} \tag{20.6}$$

Here **f**(**x**,**u**) is the scalar objective function, **g**(**x**,**u**) represents nonlinear equality constraints (power flow equations), and **h**(**x**,**u**) is the nonlinear inequality constraint of vector arguments **x** and **u**. The vector **x** contains dependent variables consisting of bus voltage magnitudes and phase angles, as well as the MVAr output of generators designated for bus voltage control and fixed parameters such as the reference bus angle, noncontrolled generator MW and MVAr outputs, noncontrolled MW and MVAr loads, fixed bus voltages, line parameters, etc. The vector **u** consists of control variables including:

- real and reactive power generation
- phase-shifter angles
- net interchange
- load MW and MVAr (load shedding)
- DC transmission line flows
- control voltage settings
- LTC transformer tap settings

Examples of equality and inequality constraints are:

- limits on all control variables
- power flow equations
- generation/load balance
- branch flow limits (MW, MVAr, MVA)
- bus voltage limits
- active/reactive reserve limits
- generator MVAr limits
- corridor (transmission interface) limits

The power system consists of a total of N buses, N_G of which are generator buses. M buses are voltage controlled, including both generator buses and buses at which the voltages are to be held constant. The voltages at the remaining (N − M) buses (load buses), must be found.

The network equality constraints are represented by the load flow equations:

$$P_i(V,\delta) - P_{gi} + P_{di} = 0 \tag{20.7}$$

$$Q_i(V,\delta) - Q_{gi} + Q_{di} = 0 \tag{20.8}$$

Two different formulation versions can be considered.

(a) *Polar Form*:

$$P_i(V,\delta) = |V_i| \sum_1^N |V_i| |Y_{ij}| \cos(\delta_i - \delta_j - \phi_{ij}) \tag{20.9}$$

$$Q_i(V,\delta) = |V_i| \sum_1^N |V_j| |Y_{ij}| \sin(\delta_i - \delta_j - \phi_{ij}) \tag{20.10}$$

$$Y_{ij} = |Y_{ij}| / \underline{\varphi_{ij}} \tag{20.11}$$

where

P_i = Active power injection into bus i.
Q_i = Reactive power injection into bus i.
$|\tilde{V}_i|$ = Voltage magnitude of bus i.
δ_i = Angle at bus i.
$|\tilde{Y}_{ij}|, \varphi_{ij}$ = Magnitude and angle of the admittance matrix.
P_{di}, Q_{di} = Active and reactive load on bus i.

(b) *Rectangular Form*:

$$P_i(e,f) = e_i \left[\sum_1^N \left(G_{ij} e_j - B_{ij} f_j \right) \right] + f_i \left[\sum_1^N \left(G_{ij} f_j + B_{ij} e_j \right) \right] \tag{20.12}$$

$$Q_i(e,f) = f_i \left[\sum_1^N \left(G_{ij} e_j - B_{ij} f_j \right) \right] - e_i \left[\sum_1^N \left(G_{ij} f_j + B_{ij} e_j \right) \right] \tag{20.13}$$

e_i = Real part of complex voltage at bus i.
f_i = Imaginary part of the complex voltage at bus i.
G_{ij} = Real part of the complex admittance matrix.
B_{ij} = Imaginary part of the complex admittance matrix.

The control variables vary according to the objective being minimized. For fuel cost minimization, they are usually the generator voltage magnitudes, generator active powers, and transformer tap ratios. The dependent variables are the voltage magnitudes at load buses, phase angles, and reactive generations.

20.2.1 Application of Optimization Methods to OPF

Various optimization methods have been proposed to solve the optimal power flow problem, some of which are refinements on earlier methods. These include:

1. Generalized Reduced Gradient (GRG) method.
2. Reduced gradient method.

3. Conjugate gradient methods.
4. Hessian-based method.
5. Newton's method.
6. Linear programming methods.
7. Quadratic programming methods.
8. Interior point methods.

Some of these techniques have spawned production OPF programs that have achieved a fair level of maturity and have overcome some of the earlier limitations in terms of flexibility, reliability, and performance requirements.

20.2.1.1 Generalized Reduced Gradient Method

The Generalized Reduced Gradient method (GRG), due to Abadie and Carpentier (1969), is an extension of the Wolfe's reduced gradient method (Wolfe, 1967) to the case of nonlinear constraints. Peschon in 1971 and Carpentier in 1973 used this method for OPF. Others have used this method to solve the optimal power flow problem since then (Lindqvist et al., 1984; Yu et al., 1986).

20.2.1.2 Reduced Gradient Method

A reduced gradient method was used by Dommel and Tinney (1968). An augmented Lagrangian function is formed. The negative of the gradient $\partial L/\partial u$ is the direction of steepest descent. The method of reduced gradient moves along this direction from one feasible point to another with a lower value of f, until the solution does not improve any further. At this point an optimum is found, if the Kuhn-Tucker conditions (1951) are satisfied. Dommel and Tinney used Newton's method to solve the power flow equations.

20.2.1.3 Conjugate Gradient Method

In 1982, Burchett et al. used a conjugate gradient method, which is an improvement on the reduced gradient method. Instead of using the negative gradient ∇f as the direction of steepest descent, the descent directions at adjacent points are linearly combined in a recursive manner.

$$\Gamma_k = -\nabla f + \beta_k \Gamma_{k-1} \quad \beta_0 = 0 \tag{20.14}$$

Here, r_k is the descent direction at iteration "k."

Two popular methods for defining the scalar value β_k are the Fletcher-Reeves method (Carpentier, June 1973) and the Polak-Ribiere method (1969).

20.2.1.4 Hessian-Based Methods

Sasson (Oct. 1969) discusses methods (Fiacco and McCormick, 1964; Lootsma, 1967; Zangwill, 1967) that transform the constrained optimization problem into a sequence of unconstrained problems. He uses a transformation introduced by Powell and Fletcher (1963). Here, the Hessian matrix is not evaluated directly. Instead, it is built indirectly starting initially with the identity matrix so that at the optimum point it becomes the Hessian itself.

Due to drawbacks of the Fletcher-Powell method, Sasson et al. (1973) developed a Hessian load flow with an extension to OPF. Here, the Hessian is evaluated and solved unlike in the previous method. The objective function is transformed as before to an unconstrained objective. An unconstrained objective is formed. All equality constraints and only the violating inequality constraints are included. The sparse nature of the Hessian is used to reduce storage and computation time.

20.2.1.5 Newton OPF

Newton OPF has been formulated by Sun et al. (1984), and later by Maria et al. (Aug. 1987). An augmented Lagrangian is first formed. The set of first derivatives of the augmented objective with respect to the control variables gives a set of nonlinear equations as in the Dommel and Tinney method. Unlike in the Dommel and Tinney method where only a part of these are solved by the N-R method, here, all equations are solved simultaneously by the N-R method.

The method itself is quite straightforward. It is the method of identifying binding inequality constraints that challenged most researchers. Sun et al. use a multiply enforced, zig-zagging guarded technique for some of the inequalities, together with penalty factors for some others. Maria et al. used an LP-based technique to identify the binding inequality set. Another approach is to use purely penalty factors. Once the binding inequality set is known, the N-R method converges in a very few iterations.

20.2.1.6 Linear Programming-Based Methods

LP methods use a linear or piecewise-linear cost function. The dual simplex method is used in some applications (Bentall, 1968; Shen and Laughton, Nov. 1970; Stott and Hobson, Sept./Oct. 1978; Wells, 1968). The network power flow constraints are linearized by neglecting the losses and the reactive powers, to obtain the DC load flow equations. Merlin (1972) uses a successive linearization technique and repeated application of the dual simplex method.

Due to linearization, these methods have a very high speed of solution, and high reliability in the sense that an optimal solution can be obtained for most situations. However, one drawback is the inaccuracies of the linearized problem. Another drawback for loss minimization is that the loss linearization is not accurate.

20.2.1.7 Quadratic Programming Methods

In these methods, instead of solving the original problem, a sequence of quadratic problems that converge to the optimal solution of the original problem are solved. Burchett et al. use a sparse implementation of this method. The original problem is redefined as simply, to minimize,

$$f(x) \tag{20.15}$$

subject to:

$$g(x) = 0 \tag{20.16}$$

The problem is to minimize

$$g^T\ p + \frac{1}{2} p^T\ Hp \tag{20.17}$$

subject to:

$$Jp = 0 \tag{20.18}$$

where

$$p = x - x_k \tag{20.19}$$

Here, g is the gradient vector of the original objective function with respect to the set of variables "x." "J" is the Jacobian matrix that contains the derivatives of the original equality constraints with respect to the variables, and "H" is the Hessian containing the second derivatives of the objective function and a linear combination of the constraints with respect to the variables. x_k is the current point of linearization. The method is capable of handling problems with infeasible starting points and can also handle ill-conditioning due to poor R/X ratios. This method was later extended by El-Kady et al. (May 1986) in a study for the Ontario Hydro System for online voltage/var control. A nonsparse implementation of the problem was made by Glavitsch (Dec. 1983) and Contaxis (May, 1986).

20.2.1.8 Interior Point Methods

The projective scaling algorithm for linear programming proposed by N. Karmarkar is characterized by significant speed advantages for large problems reported to be as much as 50:1 when compared to the simplex method (Karmarkar, 1984). This method has a polynomial bound on worst-case running time that is better than the ellipsoid algorithms. Karmarkar's algorithm is significantly different from Dantzig's simplex method. Karmarkar's interior point rarely visits too many extreme points before an optimal point is found. The IP method stays in the interior of the polytope and tries to position a current solution as the "center of the universe" in finding a better direction for the next move. By properly choosing the step lengths, an optimal solution is achieved after a number of iterations. Although this IP approach requires more computational time in finding a moving direction than the traditional simplex method, better moving direction is achieved resulting in less iterations. Therefore, the IP approach has become a major rival of the simplex method and has attracted attention in the optimization community. Several variants of interior points have been proposed and successfully applied to optimal power flow (Momoh, 1992; Vargas et al., 1993; Yan and Quintana, 1999).

20.3 OPF Incorporating Load Models

20.3.1 Load Modeling

The area of power systems load modeling has been well explored in the last two decades of the twentieth century. Most of the work done in this area has dealt with issues in stability of the power system. Load modeling for use in power flow studies has been treated in a few cases (Concordia and Ihara, 1982; IEEE Committee Report, 1973; IEEE Working Group Report, 1996; Iliceto et al., 1972; Vaahedi et al., 1987). In stability studies, frequency and time are variables of interest, unlike in power flow and some OPF studies. Hence, load models for use in stability studies should account for any load variations with frequency and time as well. These types of load models are normally referred to as dynamic load models. In power flow, OPF studies neglecting contingencies, and security-constrained OPF studies using preventive control, time, and frequency, are not considered as variables. Hence, load models for this type of study need not account for time and frequency. These load models are static load models.

In security-constrained OPF studies using corrective control, the time allowed for certain control actions is included in the formulation. However, this time merely establishes the maximum allowable correction, and any dynamic behavior of loads will usually end before any control actions even begin to function. Hence, static load models can be used even in this type of formulation.

20.3.2 Static Load Models

Several forms of static load models have been proposed in the literature, from which the exponential and quadratic models are most commonly used. The exponential form is expressed as:

$$P_m = a_p V^{b_b} \qquad (20.20)$$

$$Q_m = a_q V^{bq} \qquad (20.21)$$

The values of the coefficients a_p and a_q can be taken as the specified active and reactive powers at that bus, provided the specified power demand values are known to occur at a voltage of 1.0 per unit, measured at the network side of the distribution transformer. A typical measured value of the demand and the network side voltage is sufficient to determine approximately the values of the coefficients, provided the exponents are known. The range of values reported for the exponents vary in the literature, but typical values are 1.5 and 2.0 for b_p and b_q, respectively.

20.3.3 Conventional OPF Studies Including Load Models

Incorporation of load models in OPF studies has been considered in a couple of cases (El-Din et al., 1989; Vaahedi and El-Din, May 1989) for the Ontario Hydro energy management system. In both cases, loss minimization was considered to be the objective. It is concluded by Vaahedi and El-Din (1989) that the modeling of ULTC operation and load characteristics is important in OPF calculations.

The effects of load modeling in OPF studies have been considered for the case where the generator bus voltages are held at prespecified values (Dias and El-Hawary, 1989). Since the swing bus voltage is held fixed at all times (and also the generator bus voltages in the absence of reactive power limit violations), the average system voltage is maintained in most cases. Thus, an increase in fuel cost due to load modeling was noticed for many systems that had a few (or zero) reactive limit violations, and a decrease for those with a noticeable number of reactive limit violations. Holding the generator bus voltages at specified values restricts the available degrees of freedom for OPF and makes the solution less optimal.

Incorporation of load models in OPF studies minimizing fuel cost (with all voltages free to vary within bounds) can give significantly different results when compared with standard OPF results. The reason for this is that the fuel cost can now be reduced by lowering the voltage at the modeled buses along with all other voltages wherever possible. The reduction of the voltages at the modeled buses lowers the power demand of the modeled loads and will thus give the lower fuel cost. When a large number of loads are modeled, the total fuel cost may be lower than the standard OPF. However, a lowering of the fuel cost via a lowering of the power demand may not be desirable under normal circumstances, as this will automatically decrease the total revenue of the operation. This can also give rise to a lower net revenue if the decrease in the total revenue is greater than the decrease in the fuel cost. This is even more undesirable. What is needed is an OPF solution that does not decrease the total power demand in order to achieve a minimum fuel cost. The standard OPF solution satisfies this criterion. However, given a fair number of loads that are fed by fixed tap transformers, the standard OPF solution can be significantly different from the practically observed version of this solution.

Before attempting to find an OPF solution incorporating load models that satisfies the required criterion, we deal with the reason for the problem. In a standard OPF formulation, the total revenue is constant and independent of the solution. Hence, we can define net revenue R_N, which is linearly related to the total fuel cost F_C by the formula:

$$\boldsymbol{R}_N = -\boldsymbol{F}_C + \boldsymbol{constant} \tag{20.22}$$

The constant term is the total revenue dependent on the total power demand and the unit price of electricity charged to the customers. From this relationship we see that a solution with minimum fuel cost will automatically give maximum net revenue. Now, when load models are incorporated at some buses, the total power demand is not a constant, and hence the total revenue will also not be constant. As a result,

$$\boldsymbol{R}_N = -\boldsymbol{F}_C + \boldsymbol{R}_T \tag{20.23}$$

where "R_T" is the total demand revenue and is no longer a constant.

If instead of minimizing the fuel cost, we now maximize the net revenue, we will definitely avoid the difficulties encountered earlier. This is equivalent to minimizing the difference between the fuel cost and the total revenue. Hence we see that, in the standard OPF, the required maximum net revenue is implied, and the equivalent minimum fuel cost is the only function that enters the computations.

20.3.4 Security Constrained OPF Including Load Models

A conventional OPF result can have optimal but insecure states during certain contingencies. This can be avoided by using a security constrained OPF. Unlike in the former, for a security constrained OPF, we can incorporate load models in a variety of ways. For example, we can consider the loads as independent of voltage for the intact system, but dependent on the voltage during contingencies. This can be justified by saying that the voltage deviations encountered during a standard OPF and modeled OPF are small compared to those that can be encountered during contingencies. Since the total power demand for the intact system is not changed, fuel cost comparisons between this case and a standard SCOPF seem more reasonable. We can also incorporate load models for the intact system as well as during contingencies, while minimizing the fuel cost. However, we then encounter the problem discussed in the previous section regarding net earnings. Another approach is to incorporate load models for the intact case as well as during contingencies, while minimizing the total fuel cost minus the total revenue.

20.3.5 Inaccuracies of Standard OPF Solutions

It was stated earlier that the standard OPF (or standard security constrained OPF) solution can give results not compatible with practical observations (i.e., using the control variable values from these solutions) when a fair number of loads are fed by fixed tap transformers. The discrepancies between the simulated and observed results will be due to discrepancies between the voltage at a bus feeding a load through a fixed tap transformer, and the voltage at which the specified power demand for that load occurs. The observed results can be simulated approximately by performing a power flow incorporating load models. The effects of load modeling in power flow studies have been treated in a few cases (Dias and El-Hawary, 1990; El-Hawary and Dias, Jan. 1987; El-Hawary and Dias, 1987; El-Hawary and Dias, July 1987). In all these studies, the specified power demand of the modeled loads was assumed to occur at a bus voltage of 1.0 per unit. The simulated modeled power flow solution will be same as the practically observed version only when exact model parameters are utilized.

20.4 SCOPF Including Load Modeling

Security constrained optimal power flow (abbreviated SCOPF) takes into account outages of certain transmission lines or equipment (Alsac and Stott, May/June 1974; Schnyder and Glavitsch, 1987). Due to the computational complexity of the problem, more work has been devoted to obtaining faster solutions requiring less storage, and practically no attention has been paid to incorporating load models in the formulations. A SCOPF solution is secure for all credible contingencies or can be made secure by corrective means. In a secure system (level 1), all load is supplied, operating limits are enforced, and no limit violations occur in a contingency. Security level 2 is one where all load is supplied, operating limits are satisfied, and any violations caused by a contingency can be corrected by control action without loss of load. Level 1 security is considered in Dias and El-Hawary (Feb. 1991).

Studies of the effects of load voltage dependence in PF and OPF (Dias and El-Hawary, Sept. 1989) concluded that for PF incorporating load models, the standard solution gives more conservative results with respect to voltages in most cases. However, exceptions have been observed in one test system. Fuel costs much lower than those associated with the standard OPF are obtained by incorporating load models with all voltages free to vary within bounds. This is due to the decrease in the power demand by the reduction of the voltages at buses whose loads are modeled. When quite a few loads are modeled, the minimum fuel costs may be much lower than the corresponding standard OPF fuel cost with a significant decrease in power demand.

A similar effect can be expected when load models are incorporated in security constrained OPF studies. The decrease in the power demand when load models are incorporated in OPF studies may not be desirable under normal operating conditions. This problem can be avoided in a security constrained OPF by incorporating load models during contingencies only. This not only gives results that are more comparable with standard OPF results, but may also give lower fuel costs without lowering the power demand of the intact system. The modeled loads are assumed to be fed by fixed tap transformers and are modeled using an exponential type of load model.

In Dias and El-Harawy (1990), some selected buses were modeled using an exponential type of load model in three cases. In the first, the specified load at modeled buses is obtained with unity voltage. In the second case, the transformer taps have been adjusted to give all industrial-type consumers 1.0 per unit at the low-voltage panel when the high-side voltage corresponds to the standard OPF solution. In the third case, the specified power demand is assumed to take place when the high-side voltages correspond to the intact case of the standard security constrained OPF solution. It is concluded that a decrease in fuel cost can be obtained in some instances when load models are incorporated in security constrained OPF studies during contingencies only. In situations where a decrease in fuel cost is obtained in this manner, the magnitude of decrease depends on the total percentage of load fed by fixed tap transformers and the sensitivity of these loads to modeling. The tap settings of these fixed tap transformers influence the results as well. An increase in fuel cost can also occur in some isolated cases. However, in either case, given accurate load models, optimal power flow solutions that are more accurate than the conventional OPF solutions can be obtained. An alternate approach for normal OPF as well as security constrained OPF is also suggested.

20.4.1 Influence of Fixed Tap Transformer Fed Loads

A standard OPF assumes that all loads are independent of other system variables. This implies that all loads are fed by ULTC transformers that hold the load-side voltage to within a very narrow bandwidth sufficient to justify the assumption of constant loads. However, when some loads are fed by fixed tap transformers, this assumption can result in discrepancies between the standard OPF solution and its observed version. In systems where the average voltage of the system is reasonably above 1.0 per unit (specifically where the loads fed by fixed tap transformers have voltages greater than the voltage at which the specified power demand occurs), the practically observed version of the standard OPF solution will have a higher total power demand, and hence a higher fuel cost, and total revenue, and net revenue. Conversely, where such voltages are lower than the voltage at which the specified power demand occurs, the total power demand, fuel cost, total and net revenues will be lower than expected. For the former case, the system voltages will usually be slightly less than expected, while for the latter case they will usually be slightly higher than expected.

The changes in the power demand at some buses (in the observed version) will alter the power flows on the transmission lines, and this can cause some lines to deliver more power than expected. When this occurs on transmission lines that have power flows near their upper limit, the observed power flows may be above the respective upper limit, causing a security violation. Where the specified power demand occurs at the bus voltages obtained by a standard OPF solution, the observed version of the standard OPF solution will be itself, and there will ideally be no security violations in the observed version.

Most of the above conclusions apply to security constrained OPF as well (Dias and El-Hawary, Nov. 1991). However, since a security constrained OPF solution will in general have higher voltages than its normal counterpart (in order to avoid low voltage limit violations during contingencies), the increase in power demand, and total and net revenues will be more significant while the decrease in the above quantities will be less significant. Also, the security violations due to line flows will now be experienced mainly during contingencies, as most line flows will now usually be below their upper limits for the intact case. For security constrained OPF solutions that incorporate load models only during contingencies, the simulated and observed results will mainly differ in the intact case. Also, with loads modeled during contingencies, the average voltage is lower than for the standard security constrained OPF solution and hence there will be more cases with a decrease in the power demand, fuel cost, and total and net revenues in the observed version of the results than for its standard counterpart.

20.5 Operational Requirements for Online Implementation

The most demanding requirements on OPF technology are imposed by online implementation. It was argued that OPF, as expressed in terms of smooth nonlinear programming formulations, produces results that are far too approximate descriptions of real-life conditions to lead to successful online implementations. Many OPF formulations do not have the capability to incorporate all operational considerations into the solutions. Moreover, some operating practices are occasionally incompatible with such OPF formulations. Consequently, many proposed "theoretical optimal solutions" are of little value to the operators who are almost constantly presented with simultaneous events that are outside the scope of OPF definition. These limitations, if properly addressed, do not have to prevent OPF programs from being used in practice, especially when the operational optimal solution may also not be known. Papalexopoulos (1996) offers some of the requirements that need to be met so that OPF applications are useful to, and usable by, the dispatchers in online applications.

20.5.1 Speed Requirements

Fast OPF programs designed for online application are needed because under normal conditions, the state of the power system changes continuously and can change abruptly during emergency conditions. The changes involve the evolution of bus active and reactive power generation and loads with time, control variables moving to and off their limits as time changes, and topology changes due to switching operations and other planned or forced outages. The need for fast OPF solutions is especially true when an excessive amount of calculations due to modeling of contingency constraints or repeated OPF runs is involved.

In general, an online OPF calculation should have been completed before the state of the power system has changed to another state that is appreciably different from the earlier state. Determining the optimal execution frequency to maximize the benefits of the computations depends on the specific situation and is limited by finite computing resources. It may be preferable to develop incrementally correct and flexible algorithms to offer fast and more frequent scheduling. This leads us to conclude that conventional formulations and algorithms characterized with quadratic convergence that give very accurate and "mathematically optimal" solutions, but neglect operational realities are not appropriate for online implementation. Fast and frequent scheduling requires "hot start" OPF capabilities developed to take advantage of the optimal status of previously optimized operating points. The hot start option is significant when the rate of change of system state is small and previously optimized points are still "relevant" to the current operating conditions.

20.5.2 Robustness of OPF Solutions with Respect to Initial Guess Point

An OPF program needs to produce consistent solutions and thus must not be sensitive to the selected initial guess used. In addition, changes in the OPF solutions between operating states need to be consistent with the changes in the power system operating constraints. The OPF solutions will never be exactly the same when starting from different initial guess points because the solution process is iterative. Any differences should be within the tolerances specified by the convergence criterion, and of a magnitude that would be considered insignificant to the operator. First-order OPF solution methods were not well received because noticeably different solutions could be obtained when an OPF algorithm was initialized from different initial guess points, with only one (or even none) of the solutions actually constituting a local optimum. Theoretically, if the objective function and the feasible region can be shown to be convex, then the optimal solution will be unique (Gill et al., 1981). Unfortunately, the complexity of the nonlinear equations and inequality constraints involved in OPF problems make it untenable to rigorously prove convexity. If multiple local minima actually exist, then additional computational or heuristic methods must be used to resolve the issue.

A normally feasible OPF solution space may become nonconvex (thus leading to multiple OPF solutions) due to two considerations. The first is due to use of discontinuous techniques to model specific operating practices and preferences, and the second is due to modeling of local controls. The conventional power flow problem with local control capability, whose implicit objective is feasible with respect to a limited set of inequalities, does not have a unique solution. Nevertheless, solutions of the same problem from different starting conditions usually match quite closely. Occasionally, different initial guess solutions can lead to different solutions. This takes place when two or more feasible voltage levels can satisfy nonlinear loads. OPF applications, however, should be able to overcome this type of ambiguity.

20.5.3 Discrete Modeling

Discrete control is widely used in the electric network. For example, transformers are used for voltage control, shunt capacitors and reactors are switched on or off to correct voltage profiles and to reduce active power transmission losses, and phase shifters are used to regulate the MW flows of transmission lines. An efficient and effective OPF discretization procedure is needed to assist the operators in utilizing discrete controls in a realistic and optimal or near-optimal manner. Discrete elements to be included in the OPF formulation are branch switching; prohibited zones of generator cost curves; and priority sequence levels for unfeasibility handling. OPF algorithms designed for online applications should be able to appropriately handle the discrete aspects of the problem.

Using both discrete and continuous controls converts the OPF into a mixed discrete-continuous optimization problem. A possible accurate solution using a method such as mixed-integer nonlinear programming would be orders of magnitude slower than ordinary nonlinear programming methods (Gill et al., 1981). Linear programming-based OPF algorithms allow substantial recognition of discrete controls by setting the cost curve segment break points at discrete control steps. However, most methods that solve for a nonseparable objective function by nonlinear programming methods do not properly model discrete controls.

Current OPF algorithms treat all controls as continuous variables during the initial solution process. Once the continuous solution is obtained, each discrete variable is moved to the nearest discrete setting. This produces acceptable solutions, assuming that the step sizes for the discrete controls are sufficiently small, which is usually the case for transformer taps and phase shifter angles (Papalexopoulos et al., 1996). Approximate solutions that can produce near-optimal results appear to be a reasonable alternative to rigorous solution methods. One such scheme (Liu et al., 1991) uses penalty functions for discrete controls. The object is to penalize the continuous approximations of discrete control variables for movements away from their discrete steps. This scheme is well suited for Newton-based OPF algorithms. The scheme consists of a set of rules to determine the timing of introduction and criteria of updating the penalties in the optimization process. This heuristic algorithm is of limited scope. Substantially more work is needed to effectively resolve all problems associated with the discrete nature of controls and other discrete elements of the OPF problem.

20.5.4 Detecting and Handling Infeasibility

As the requirements for satisfactory system operation increase, the region of feasible solutions that satisfy all constraints simultaneously may become too small. In this case, there is a need to establish criteria to prioritize the constraints. For OPF applications, this means that when a feasible solution cannot be found, it is still very important for the algorithm to suggest the "best optimal" engineering solution in some sense, even though it is infeasible. This is even more critical for OPF applications that incorporate contingency constraints.

There are several approaches to deal with this problem. In one approach, all power flow equations are satisfied and only the soft constraints that truly cause the bottlenecks are allowed to be violated using a least squares approximation process. An LP approach introduces a weighted slack variable for each binding constraint. If a constraint can be enforced, the slack variable will be reduced to zero and the constraint will be satisfied. The constraints causing infeasibility will have non-zero slack variables whose magnitudes are proportional to the amounts they need to be relaxed to achieve feasibility. Usually, all binding constraints of a particular type are modeled as if they have identical infeasibility characteristics. That is, all slack variables corresponding to these binding constraints share the same cost curve, and their sensitivities are scaled by a weighting factor associated with the type of the corresponding constraint. Using Newton's method, if the OPF does not converge in the first specified set of iterations, the constraint weighting factors, corresponding to the penalty functions associated with the load bus voltage limits and the branch flow limits, will be reduced successively until a solution is reached. This normally results in all constraints being met except for those load bus voltage and branch flow limits that contribute to infeasibility. Special care should be taken in selecting the proper weighting factors to avoid numerical problems and produce acceptable solutions.

Another approach develops hierarchical rules that operate on the controls and constraints of the OPF problem. The rules introduce discontinuous changes in the original OPF formulation. These changes include using a different set of control/constraint limits, expansion of the control set by class or individually, branch switching, load shedding, etc. They are usually implemented in a predefined priority sequence to be consistent with utility practices. The decision as to when to proceed to the next priority level of modifications to achieve feasibility is critical, especially when it involves radial overloads, normally overloaded constraints and constraints known to have "soft" limits. The selection of a final optimal solution among all the others in the set is achieved with the implementation of a "preference index." An application of the preference index approach that minimizes postcontingency line overloads due to generator outages is given in (Yokoyama et al., 1988).

20.5.5 Consistency of OPF Solutions with Other Online Functions

Online OPF is implemented in either study or closed-loop mode. In study mode, the OPF solutions are presented as recommendations to the operator. In closed-loop mode, control actions are implemented in the system via the SCADA system of the EMS (*IEEE Trans.*, June, 1983). In closed-loop mode, OPF is triggered by a number of events, including an operator request, the execution of the real-time sequence and security analysis, structural change, large load change, etc. A major concern for an OPF in closed-loop mode is the design of its interface with the other online functions, which are executed at different frequencies. Some of these functions are unit commitment, economic dispatch (ED), real-time sequence, security analysis, automatic generation control (AGC), etc. To reduce the discrepancy between ideal and realistic OPF solutions, emphasis should be placed on establishing consistency between these functions and static optimal solutions produced by OPF. This requires proper interfacing and integration of OPF with these functions. The integration design should be flexible enough to allow OPF formulation modifications consistent with the ever dynamic and sometimes ill-defined security problem definition.

20.5.6 Ineffective "Optimal" Rescheduling

Production-grade OPF algorithms use all available control actions to obtain an optimal solution, but for many applications it is not practical to execute more than a limited number of control actions. The OPF problem then becomes one of selecting the best set of actions of a limited size out of a much larger set of possible actions. The problem was identified but no concrete remedies were offered. It is not possible to select the best and most effective set of a given size from existing OPF solutions that use all controls to solve each problem. The control actions cannot be ranked and the effectiveness of an action is not related to its magnitude. Each control facility participates in both minimization of the objective function and enforcement of the constraints. Separation of the two effects for evaluation purposes is not feasible. The problem is difficult to define analytically and existing conventional technologies are not adequate. It is important to note that emerging computational intelligence tools such as fuzzy reasoning and neural networks may offer some resolution. The problem of ineffective rescheduling is related to but is not identical to the "minimum number of controls" objective. It is also closely linked to the problem of discrete control variables, since methods that recognize the discrete nature of some control facilities tend to decrease the number of control actions by keeping inefficient discrete controls at their initial settings.

20.5.7 OPF-Based Transmission Service Pricing

OPF programs are capable of computing marginal costs. Information about the optimal states with respect to changes, such as load variations, operating limit changes, or constraint parameter changes, can be used in many practical applications. Specifically, the sensitivities of the production cost of generation with respect to changes in the bus active power injections are called Bus Incremental Costs (BICs). BICs can be used as nodal prices for pricing transmission services, as they reflect the transmission loss and the congestion components for transferring power from one point to another. In a lossless network with no binding constraints, all BICs should be equal. However, when an operating limit is reached, the congestion component takes effect and all BICs in the network can be different. This means that nodal price differences across uncongested lines can be much larger than marginal losses. Extensive experience has shown that it is possible for power to flow from a bus with higher nodal price to a bus with lower nodal price, resulting in negative transmission charges. Failure to properly account for this effect can lead to unacceptable incentives for transmission users. The same applies in the case of transmission reinforcements to mitigate congestion. If as a result of the upgrades, the incremental transmission rights (positive or negative) are not accounted for properly, similar distortions are possible.

20.6 Conclusions

A review of recent developments in optimal economic operation of electric power systems with emphasis on the optimal power flow formulation was given. We dealt with conventional formulations of economic dispatch, conventional optimal power flow, and accounting for the dependence of the power demand on voltages in the system. Challenges to OPF formulations and solution methodologies for online application were also outlined.

References

Abadie, J. and Carpentier, J., Generalization of the Wolfe reduced gradient method to the case of nonlinear constraints, *Optimization*, R. Fletcher, Ed., Academic Press, New York, 1969, 37–47.

Alsac, O. and Stott, B., Optimal load flow with steady-state security, *IEEE Trans. Power App. Syst.*, PAS-93, 745–751, May/June 1974.

Benthall, T.P., Automatic load scheduling in a multiarea power system, *Proc. IEE*, 115, 592–596, April 1968.

Burchett, R.C., Happ, H.H., Vierath, D.R., and Wirgau, K.A., Developments in optimal power flow, *IEEE Trans. Power App. and Syst.*, PAS-101, 406–414, February 1982.

Burchett, R.C., Happ, H.H., and Vierath, D.R., Quadratically convergent optimal power flow, *IEEE Trans. Power App. and Syst.*, PAS-103, 3267–3275, November 1984.

Carpentier, J., Contribution a l'etude du dispatching economique, *Bull. Soc. Francaise Electriciens*, 8, 431–447, 1962.

Carpentier, J., Differential Injections Method: A general method for secure and optimal load flows, in *IEEE PICA Conference Proceedings* Minneapolis, MN, June 1973, 255–262.

Concordia, C. and Ihara, S., Load representation in power system stability studies, *IEEE Trans. Power App. and Syst.*, PAS-101, 1982.

Contaxis, G.C., Delkis, C., and Korres, G., Decoupled optimal power flow using linear or quadratic programming, *IEEE Trans. Power Syst.*, PWRS-1, 1–7, May 1986.

Dias, L.G. and El-Hawary, M.E., A comparison of load models and their effects on the convergence of Newton power flows, *Inter. J. of Electr. Power and Energy Syst.*, 12, 3–8, 1990.

Dias, L.G. and El-Hawary, M.E., Effects of active and reactive modelling in optimal load flow studies, *IEE Proceedings*, 136, Part C, 259–263, September 1989.

Dias, L.G. and El-Hawary, M.E., Effects of load modeling in security constrained OPF studies, *IEEE Trans. on Power Systems*, 6, 1, 87–93, February 1991.

Dias, L.G. and El-Hawary, M.E., Security constrained OPF: influence of fixed tap transformer loads, *IEEE Trans. on Power Systems*, 6, 1366–1372, November 1991.

Dommel, H.W. and Tinney, W.F., Optimal power flow solutions, *IEEE Trans. Power App. and Syst.*, PAS-87, 1866–1876, October 1968.

El-Din, H.M.Z., Burns, S.D., and Graham, C.E., Voltage/var control with limited control actions, in *Proceedings of the Canadian Electrical Association Spring Meeting*, Toronto, Ontario, March 1989.

El-Hawary, M.E., Power system load modeling and incorporation in load flow solutions, in *Proceedings of the Third Large Systems Symposium*, University of Calgary, June 1982.

El-Hawary, M.E. and Dias, L.G., Bus sensitivity to model parameters in load-flow studies, *IEE Proceedings*, 134, Part C, 302–305 July 1987.

El-Hawary, M.E. and Dias, L.G., Incorporation of load models in load flow studies: form of model effects, *IEE Proceedings*, 134, Part C, 27–30 January 1987.

El-Hawary, M.E. and Dias, L.G., Selection of buses for detailed modeling in load flow studies, *Electric Machines and Power Syst.*, 12, 83–92, 1987.

El-Kady, M.A., Bell, B.D., Carvalho, V.F., Burchett, R.C., Happ, H.H., and Vierath, D.R., Assessment of real-time optimal voltage control, *IEEE Trans. Power Systems*, PWRS-1, 98–107, May 1986.

Fiacco, A.V. and McCormick, G.P., Computational algorithm for the sequential unconstrained minimization technique for nonlinear programming, *Management Sci.*, 10, 601–617, 1964.

Fletcher, R. and Powell, M.J.D., A rapidly convergent descent method for minimization, *Computer Journal*, 6, 163–168, 1963.

Gill, P.E., Murray, W., and Wright, M.H., *Practical Optimization*, Academic Press, New York, 1981.

Glavitsch, H. and Spoerry, M., Quadratic loss formula for reactive dispatch, *IEEE Trans. Power App. and Syst.*, PAS-102, 3850–3858, December 1983.

Happ, H.H. and Vierath, D.R., The OPF for operations planning and for use on line, in *Proceedings of the Second International Conference on Power Systems Monitoring and Control*, July 1986, 290–295.

IEEE Committee Report, System load dynamic simulation, effects and determination of load constants, *IEEE Trans. Power App. and Syst.*, PAS-92, 600–609, 1973.

IEEE Current Operating Problems Working Group Report, On-line load flows from a system operator's viewpoint, *IEEE Trans. on Power Appar. Syst.*, PWRS-102, 1818–1822, June 1983.

IEEE Working Group Report, The effect of frequency and voltage on power system loads, Paper 31 CP 66-64, IEEE Winter Meeting, New York, 1966.

Iliceto, F., Ceyhan, A., and Ruckstuhl, G., Behavior of loads during voltage dips encountered in stability studies, *IEEE Trans. Power App. and Syst.*, PAS-91, 2470–2479, 1972.

Karmarkar, N., New polynomial-time algorithm for linear programming, *Combinatorica*, 4, 1984, 00.373–395.

Kuhn, H.W. and Tucker, A.W., Nonlinear programming, in *Proc. of Second Berkeley Symposium on Mathematical Statistics and Probability*, University of California, Berkeley, 1951, 481–492.

Lindqvist, A., Bubenko, J.A., and Sjelvgren, D., A generalized reduced gradient methodology for optimal reactive power flows, in *Proceedings of the 8th PSCC*, Helsinki, Finland, 1984.

Liu, E., Papalexopoulos, A.D., and Tinney, W.F., Discrete shunt controls in a Newton optimal power flow, *IEEE Winter Power Meeting 1991*, Paper 91WM 041-4 PWRS.

Lootsma, F.A., Logarithmic programming: a method of solving nonlinear programming problems, *Philips Res. Repts.*, 22, 329–344, 1967.

Maria, G.A. and Findlay, J.A., A Newton optimal power flow program for Ontario hydro EMS, *IEEE Trans. Power Syst.*, PWRS-2, 576–584, Aug. 1987.

Merlin, A., On optimal generation planning in large transmission systems (The Maya Problem), in *Proc. of 4th PSCC*, Grenoble, paper 2.1/6, September 1972.

Momoh, J.A., Application of Quadratic Interior Point Algorithm to Optimal Power Flow, EPRI Final report RP 2473-36 II, March 1992.

Papalexopoulos, A.D., Challenges to an on-line OPF implementation, in *IEEE Tutorial Course Optimal Power Flow: Solution Techniques, Requirements, and Challenges*, Publication 96 TP 111-0, IEEE Power Engineering Society, 1996.

Papalexopoulos, A.D., Imparato, C.F., and Wu, F.F., Large-scale optimal power flow: effects of initialization, decoupling and discretization, *IEEE Trans. on Power Appar. Syst.*, PWRS-4, 748–759, May 1989.

Peschon, J., Bree, D.W., and Hajdu, L.P., Optimal solutions involving system security, in *Proc. of the 7th PICA Conf.*, Boston, MA, 1971, 210–218.
Polak, E. and Ribiere, G., Note sur la convergence de methods de directions conjugees, *Rev. Fr. Inform. Rech. Operation*, 16-R1, 35–43, 1969.
Sasson, A.M., Combined use of the Powell and Fletcher-Powell nonlinear programming methods for optimal load flows, *IEEE Trans. Power App. and Syst.*, PAS-88, 1530–1537, October 1969.
Sasson, A.M., Viloria, F., and Aboytes, F., Optimal load flow solution using the Hessian matrix, *IEEE Trans. Power App. and Syst.*, PAS-92, 31–41, Jan/Feb 1973.
Schnyder, G. and Glavitsch, H., Integrated security control using an optimal power flow and switching concepts, in *IEEE PICA Conf. Proc.*, Montreal, Canada, May 18–22, 1987, 429–436.
Shen, C.M. and Laughton, M.A., Power system load scheduling with security constraints using dual linear programming, *IEE Proceedings*, 117, 2117–2127, Nov. 1970.
Stott, B., Alsac, O., and Monticelli, A.J., Security analysis and optimization, *Proc. IEEE*, 75, 1623–1644, Dec. 1987.
Stott, B. and Hobson, E., Power system security control calculations using linear programming. Parts 1 and 2, *IEEE Trans. Power App. and Syst.*, PAS-97, 1713–1731, Sept./Oct. 1978.
Sun, D.I., Ashley, B., Brewer, B., Hughes, A., and Tinney, W.F., Optimal power flow by Newton approach, *IEEE Trans. Power App. and Syst.*, PAS-103, 2864–2880, Oct. 1984.
Vaahedi, E. and El-Din, H.M.Z., Considerations in applying optimal power flow to power systems operation, *IEEE Trans. Power Syst.*, PWRS-4, 694–703, May 1989.
Vaahedi, E., El-Kady, M., Libaque-Esaine, J.A., and Carvalho, V.F., Load models for large scale stability studies from end user consumption, *IEEE Trans. Power Syst.*, PWRS-2, 864–871, 1987.
Vargas, L.S., Quintana, V.H., and Vannelli, A., A tutorial description of an interior point method and its applications to security-constrained economic dispatch, *IEEE Trans. on Power Systems*, 8, 1315–1323, 1993.
Wells, D.W., Method for economic secure loading of a power system, *IEE Proceedings*, 115, 1190–1194, Aug. 1968.
Wolfe, P., Methods of nonlinear programming, *Nonlinear Programming*, J. Abadie, Ed., North Holland, Amsterdam, 1967, 97–131.
Yan, X. and Quintana, V.H., Improving an interior-point-based OPF by dynamic adjustments of step sizes and tolerances, *IEEE Trans. on Power Systems*, 14, 709–717, 1999.
Yokoyama, R., Bae, S.H., Morita, T., and Sasaki, H., Multiobjective optimal generation dispatch based on. probability security criteria, *IEEE Trans. on Power Appar. Syst.*, PWRS-3, 317–324, 1988.
Yu, D.C., Fagan, J.E., Foote, B., and Aly, A.A., An optimal load flow study by the generalized reduced gradient approach, *Electric Power Systems Research*, 10, 47–53, 1986.
Zangwill, W.I., Non-linear programming via penalty functions, *Management Sci.*, 13, 344–358, 1967.

21
Security Analysis

Nouredine Hadjsaid
Institut National Polytechnique de Grenoble (INPG)

The power system as a single entity is considered the most complex system ever built. It consists of various equipment with different levels of sophistication, complex and nonlinear loads, various generations with a wide variety of dynamic responses, a large-scale protection system, a wide-area communication network, and numerous control devices and control centers. This equipment is connected with a large network (transformers, transmission lines) where a significant amount of energy transfer often occurs. This system, in addition to the assurance of good operation of its various equipment, is characterized by an important and simple rule: electricity should be delivered to where it is required in due time and with appropriate features such as frequency and voltage quality. Environmental constraints, the high cost of transmission investments and low/long capital recovery, and the willing of utilities to optimize their network for more cost effectiveness makes it very difficult to expand or oversize power systems. These constraints have pushed power systems to be operated close to their technical limits, thus reducing security margins.

On the other hand, power systems are continuously subjected to random and various disturbances that may, under certain circumstances, lead to inappropriate or unacceptable operation and system conditions. These effects may include cascading outages, system separation, widespread outages, violation of emergency limits of line current, bus voltages, system frequency, and loss of synchronism (Debs and Benson, 1975). Furthermore, despite advanced supervisory control and data acquisition systems that help the operator to control system equipment (circuit breakers, on-line tap changers, compensation and control devices, etc.), changes can occur so fast that the operator may not have enough time to ensure system security. Hence, it is important for the operator not only to maintain the state of the system within acceptable and secure operating conditions but also to integrate preventive functions. These functions should allow him enough time to optimize his system (reduction of the probability of occurrence of abnormal or critical situations) and to ensure recovery of a safe and secure situation.

Even though for small-scale systems the operator may eventually, on the basis of his experience, prevent the consequences of most common outages and determine the appropriate means to restore a secure state, this is almost impossible for large systems. It is therefore essential for operators to have at their disposal, efficient tools capable of handling a systematic security analysis. This can be achieved through the diagnosis of all contingencies that may have serious consequences. This is the concern of **security analysis**.

The term contingency is related to the possibility of losing any component of the system, whether it is a transmission line, a transformer, or a generator. Another important event that may be included in this definition concerns busbar faults (bus split). This kind of event is, however, considered rare but with (serious) dangerous consequences. Most power systems are characterized by the well-known N – 1 security rules where N is the total number of system components. This rule is the basic requirement for the planning stage where the system should be designed in order to withstand (or to remain in a normal state) any single contingency. Some systems also consider the possibility of N – 2/k (k is the number of contingencies), but mostly for selected and specific cases.

21.1 Definition

The term security as defined by NERC (1997) is the ability of the electric systems to withstand sudden disturbance such as electric short-circuits or unanticipated loss of system elements. (See Appendix A).

Security analysis is usually handled for two time frames: static and dynamic. For the static analysis, only a "fixed picture" or a snapshot of the network is considered. The system is supposed to have passed the transient period successfully or be dynamically stable. Therefore, the monitored variables are line flows and bus voltages. Hence, all voltages should be within a predefined secure range, usually around $\pm 5\%$ of nominal voltage (for some systems, such as distribution networks, the range may be wider). In fact, if bus voltages drop below a certain level, there will be a risk of voltage collapse in addition to high losses. On the other hand, if bus voltages are too high compared to nominal values, there will be equipment degradation or damage. Furthermore, overload of transmission lines may be followed by unpredictable line tripping that accelerates the degradation of the voltage profile.

Line flows are related to circuit overload (lines and transformers) and should keep below a maximum limit, usually settled according to line thermal limits. The dynamic security is related to loss of synchronism (transient stability) and oscillatory swings or dynamic instability. In that case the evolution of essential variables are monitored based upon a required time frame (transient period).

Normally, system security is analyzed differently whether it is considered for planning studies or for monitoring and operational purposes. The difference comes from the type of action that should be initiated in case of expected harmful contingencies. However, for both stages, all variables should remain within the bounded domain defining or determining system normal state (Fink, 1978).

21.2 Time Frames for Security-Related Decision

There are generally three different time frames for security-related decisions. In operations, the decision-maker is the operator, who must continuously monitor and operate his system economically in such a way that the normal state is appropriately preserved (maintained). For this purpose, he has specific tools for diagnosing his system and operating rules that allow the required decisions to be made in due time. In operational planning, the operating rules are developed recognizing that the bases for the decision are reliability/security criteria specifying minimum operating requirements, which define acceptable performance for the credible contingencies. In facility planning, the planner must determine the best way to reinforce the transmission system, based on reliability/security criteria for system design, which generally adhere to the same disturbance-performance criteria specified by minimum operating requirements.

One may think that since these systems are designed to operate "normally" or in "a secure state" for a given security rule (N – k), there is nothing to worry about during operations. The problem is that, during the planning stage and for a set of given economical constraints, a number of assumptions are made for operating conditions that concern topology, generation, and consumption. Since there may be several years between the planning stage and the operations, the uncertainties in the system's security may be very significant. Therefore, security analysis is supplemented by operational planning and operations studies.

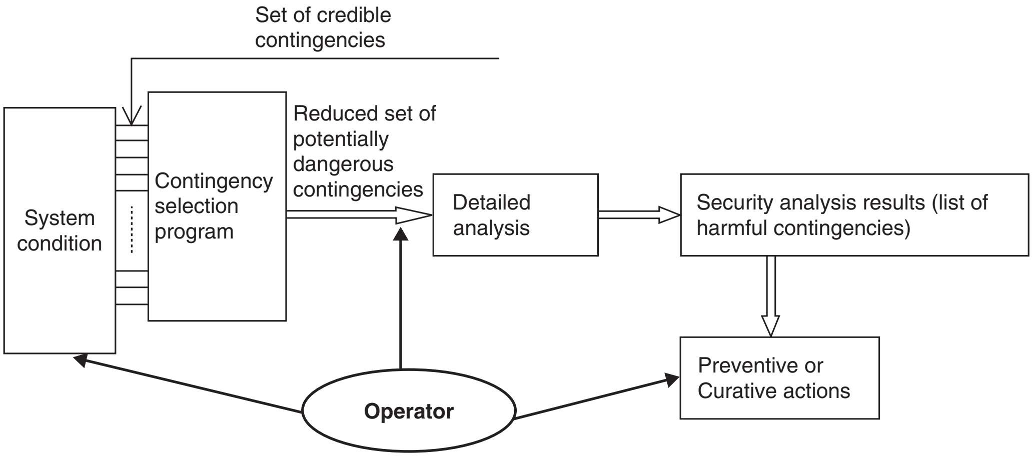


FIGURE 21.1 Contingency analysis procedure.

The decision following any security analysis can be placed in one of two categories: preventive or corrective actions. For corrective actions, once a contingency or an event is determined as potentially dangerous, the operator should be confident that in case of that event, he will be able to correct the system by means of appropriate actions on system conditions (generation, load, topology) in order to keep the system in a normal state and even away from the insecure region. The operator should also prepare a set of preventive actions that may correct the effect of the expected dangerous event.

In operations, the main constraint is the time required for the analysis of the system's state and for the required decision to be made following the security analysis results. The security analysis program should be able to handle all possible contingencies, usually on the N − 1 basis or on specific N − 2. For most utilities, the total time window considered for this task is between 10 min and 30 min. Actually for this time window, the system's state is considered as constant or quasi-constant allowing the analysis to be valid within this time frame. This means that changes in generation or in consumption are considered as negligible.

For large systems, this time frame is too short even with very powerful computers. Since it is known that only a small number of contingencies may really cause system violations, it has been realized that it is not necessary to perform a detailed analysis on all possible contingencies, which may be on the order of thousands. For this purpose, the operator may use his engineering judgment to select those contingencies that are most likely to cause system violation. This procedure has been used (and is still in use) for many years in many control centers around the world. However, as system conditions are characterized by numerous uncertainties, this approach may not be very efficient especially for large systems.

The concept of contingency selection has arisen in order to reduce the list of all possible contingencies to only the potentially harmful. The selection process should be very fast and accurate enough to identify dangerous cases (Hadjsaid, 1992). This process has existed for many years, and still is a major issue in all security studies for operations whether for static or dynamic and transient purposes.

21.3 Models

The static security analysis is mainly based on load flow equations. Usually, active/angle and reactive/voltage problems are viewed as decoupled. The active/angle subproblem is expressed as (Stott and Alsac, 1974):

$$\Delta\theta = [dP/d\theta]^{-1}\Delta P \tag{21.1}$$

where $\Delta\theta$ is a vector of angular changes with a dimension of $Nb - 1$ (Nb = number of buses), ΔP a vector of active injection changes ($Nb - 1$) and $[dP/d\theta]$ is a part of the Jacobian matrix. In the DC approach, this Jacobian is approximated by the B' (susceptance) matrix representing the imaginary part of the Ybus matrix. This expression is used to calculate the updated angles following a loss of any system component. With appropriate numerical techniques, it is straightforward to update only necessary elements of the equation. Once the angles are calculated, the power flows of all lines can be deducted. Hence, it is possible to check for line limit violation.

Another approach that has been, and still is used in many utilities for assessing the impact of any contingency on line flows is known as shift factors. The principle used recognizes that the outage of any line will result in a redistribution of the power previously flowing through this line on all the remaining lines. This distribution is mainly affected by the topology of the network. Hence, the power flow of any line ij following an outage of line km can be expressed as (Galiana, 1984) (see Appendix B for more details):

$$P_{ij/km} = P_{ij} + \alpha_{ij/km} * P_{km} \tag{21.2}$$

where

$P_{ij/km}$ is the active power flow on line ij after the outage of line km

P_{ij}, P_{km} is the active power previously flowing respectively on line ij and km (before the outage)

$\alpha_{ij/km}$ is the shift factor for line ij following the outage of line km

Equation (21.2) shows that the power flow of line ij ($P_{ij/km}$) when line km is tripped, is determined as the initial power flow on line ij (P_{ij}) before the outage of line km plus a proportion of the power flow previously flowing on line km. This proportion is defined by the terms $\alpha_{ij/km} * P_{km}$.

The shift factors are determined in a matrix form. The important features of these factors are the simplicity of computing and their dependency on network topology. Therefore, if the topology does not change, the factors remain constant for any operating point. The main drawback of these factors is that they are determined on the basis of DC approximation and the shift factor matrix should be updated for any change in the topology. In addition, for some complex disturbances such as bus split, updating these factors becomes a complicated task.

A similar method based on reactive power shift factors has been developed. Interested readers may refer to Ilic-Spong and Phadke (1986) and Taylor and Maahs (1991) for more details.

The reactive/voltage subproblem can be viewed as (Stott and Alsac, 1974):

$$\Delta V = [dQ/dV]^{-1} \Delta Q \tag{21.3}$$

where

ΔV is the vector of voltages change ($Nb - Ng$, Ng is the number of generators)

ΔQ is the vector of reactive power injections change ($Nb - Ng$, Ng is the number of generators)

$[dQ/dV]$ is the Jacobean submatrix

In the well-known FDLF (Fast Decoupled Load Flow) model (Stott and Alsac, 1974), the Jacobian submatrix is replaced by the B'' (susceptance) matrix representing the imaginary part of the Ybus matrix with a dimension of $Nb - Ng$, where Ng is the number of voltage regulated (generator) buses. In addition, the vector ΔQ is replaced by $\Delta Q/V$.

Once bus voltages are updated to account for the outage, the limit violations are checked and the contingency effects on bus voltages can be assessed.

The most common framework for the contingency analysis is to use approximate models for the selection process, such as the DC model, and use the AC power flow model for the evaluation of the actual impact of the given contingency on line flows and bus voltages.

Concerning the dynamic security analysis, the framework is similar to the one in static analysis in terms of selection and evaluation. The selection process uses simplified models, such as Transient Energy Functions (TEF), and the evaluation one uses detailed assessing tools such as time domain simulations.

The fact that the dynamic aspect is more related to transient/dynamic stability technique makes the process much more complicated than for the static problem. In fact, in addition to the number of contingencies to be analyzed, each analysis will require detailed stability calculations with an appropriate network and system component model such as the generator model (park, saturation, etc.), exciter (AVR: Automatic Voltage Regulator; PSS: Power System Stabilizer), governor (nuclear, thermal, hydro-electric, etc.), or loads (non-linear, constant power characteristics, etc.). In addition, integration and numerical solutions are an important aspect for these analyses.

21.4 Determinist vs. Probabilistic

The basic requirement for security analysis is to assess the impact of any possible contingency on system performance. For the purpose of setting planning and operating rules that will enable the system to be operated in a secure manner, it is necessary to consider all credible contingencies, different network configurations, and different operating points for given performance criteria. Hence, in the deterministic approach, these assessments may involve a large number of computer simulations even if there is a selection process at each stage of the analysis. The decision in that case is founded on the requirement that each outage event in a specified list, the contingency set, results in system performance that satisfies the criteria of the chosen performance evaluation (Fink and Carlsen, 1978). To handle these assessments for all possible situations by an exhaustive study is generally not reasonable. Since the resulting security rules may lead to the settlement and schedule of investment needs as well as operating rules, it is important to optimize the economical impact of security measures that have to be taken in order to be sure that there is no unnecessary or unjustified investment or operating costs. This has been the case for many years, since the emphasis was on the most severe, credible event leading to overly conservative solutions.

One way to deal with this problem is the concept of the probability of occurrence (contingencies) in the early stage of security analysis. This can be jointly used with a statistical approach (Schlumberger et al., 1999) that allows the generation of appropriate scenarios in order to fit more with the reality of the power system from the technical point of view as well as from the economical point view.

21.4.1 Security under Deregulation

With deregulation, the power industry has pointed out the necessity to optimize the operations of their systems leading to less investment in new facilities and pushing the system to be exploited closer to its limits. Furthermore, the open access has resulted in increased power exchanges over the interconnections. In some utilities, the number of transactions previously processed in one year is now managed in one day. These increased transactions and power exchanges have resulted in increased parallel flows leading to unpredictable loading conditions or voltage problems. A significant number of these transactions are non-firm and volatile. Hence, the security can no longer be handled on a zonal basis but rather on large interconnected systems.

Appendix A

The current NERC basic reliability requirement from NERC Policy 2- transmission (Pope, 1999) is:

Standards

1. Basic reliability requirement regarding single contingencies: All control areas shall operate so that instability, uncontrolled separation, or cascading outages will not occur as a result of the most severe single contingency.
   1.1 Multiple contingencies: Multiple outages of credible nature, as specified by regional policy, shall also be examined and, when practical, the control areas shall operate to

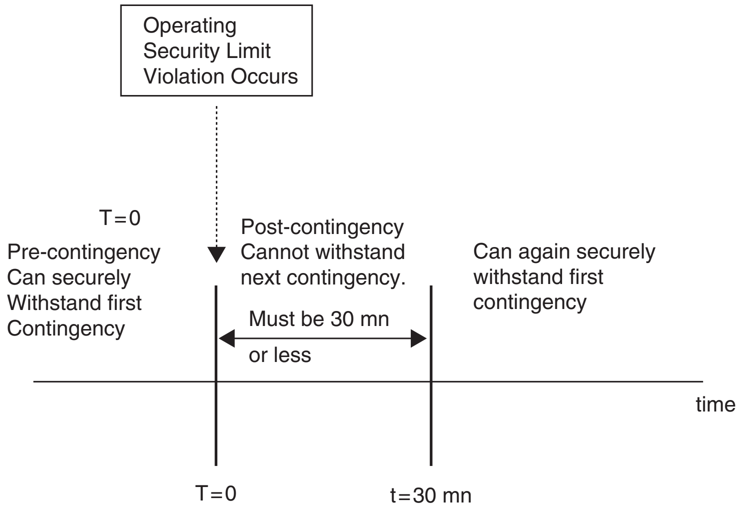


FIGURE 21.2 Current NERC basic reliability requirement. (Pope, J.W., Transmission Reliability under Restructuring, in *Proceedings of IEEE SM 1999*, Edmonton, Alberta, Canada, 162–166, July 18–22, 1999. With permission.)

protect against instability, uncontrolled separation, or cascading outages resulting from these multiple outages.

1.2 Operating security limits: Define the acceptable operating boundaries

2. Return from Operating security limit violation: Following a contingency or other event that results in an operating security limit violation, the control area shall return its transmission system to within operating security limits soon as possible, but no longer than 30 minutes.

Appendix B

Shift factor derivation (Galiana, 1984)

Consider a DC load flow for a base case:

$$[B']\underline{\theta} = \underline{P}$$

where

θ is the vector of phase angles for the base case

$[B']$ is the susceptance matrix for the base case

P is the vector of active injections for the base case

Suppose that the admittance of line jk is reduced by ΔY_{jk} and the vector ΔP is unchanged, then:

$$\left[[B'] - \Delta Y_{jk}\ \underline{e}_{jk}\ \underline{e}_{jk}^{T}\right]\underline{\theta} = \underline{P}$$

where e_{jk} is the vector (Nb − 1) containing 1 in the position j, −1 in the position k and 0 elsewhere T is the Transpose

Now we can compute the power flow on an arbitrary line lm when line jk is outaged:

$$\begin{aligned} P_{lm/jk} &= Y_{lm}(\theta_l - \theta_m) = Y_{lm}\ \underline{e}_{lm}{}^{T}\underline{\theta} \\ &= Y_{lm}\underline{e}_{lm}^{T}\left[[B'] - \Delta Y_{jk}\ \underline{e}_{jk}\ \underline{e}_{jk}^{T}\right]^{-1}\ P \end{aligned}$$

By using the matrix inversion lemma, we can compute:

$$P_{lm/jk} = Y_{lm}\ e_{lm}{}^{T}\left[[B'] + \left([B']^{-1}\ e_{jk}\ e_{jk}{}^{T}[B']^{-1}\right)\Big/\left((\Delta Y_{jk}) - 1 - e_{jk}^{T}[B']^{-1}\ e_{jk}\right)\right]\ P$$

Finally:

$$P_{lm/jk} = P_{lm} + \alpha_{jk/jk} * P_{jk}$$

where

$$\alpha_{jk/jk} = Y_{lm} * \left(\Delta Y_{jk}/Y_{jk}\right) * \left(e_{lm}^{T}[B']^{-1}\ e_{jk}\right)\Big/\left(1 - \Delta Y_{jk}\ e_{jk}^{T}[B']^{-1}\ e_{jk}\right)$$

References

Debs, A.S. and Benson, A.R., Security Assessment of Power Systems, in *System Engineering for Power: Status and Prospects*, Henniker, New Hampshire, 144–178, Aug. 17–22, 1975.

Fink, L. and Carlsen, K., Operating Under Stress and Strain, *IEEE Spectrum*, 15, 48–53, March, 1978.

Galiana, F.D., Bound estimates of the severity of line outages in power system contingency analysis and ranking, *IEEE Trans. on Power Appar. and Syst.*, PAS-103(9), 2612–2624, September 1984.

Hadjsaid, N., Benahmed, B., Fandino, J., Sabonnadiere, J.-Cl., and Nerin, G., Fast contingency screening for voltage-reactive considerations in security analysis, *IEEE Winter Meeting*, 1992 WM 185-9 PWRS.

Ilic-Spong, M. and Phadke, A., Redistribution of reactive power flow in contingency studies, *IEEE Trans. on Power Syst.*, PWRS-1(3), 266–275, August 1986.

McCaulley, J.D., Vittal, V., and Abi-Samra, N., An overview of risk based security assessment, in *Proceedings of IEEE SM'99*, Edmonton, Alberta, Canada, 173–178, July 18–22, 1999.

The North American Reliability Council, NERC Planning Standards, approved by NERC Board of Trustees, September, 1997.

Pope, J.W., Transmission reliability under restructuring, in *Proceedings of IEEE SM'99*, Edmonton, Alberta, Canada, 162–166, July 18–22, 1999.

Schlumberger, Y., Lebrevelec, C., and De Pasquale, M., Power system security analysis: New approaches used at EDF, in *Proceedings of IEEE SM'99*, Edmonton, Alberta, Canada, 147–151, July 18–22, 1999.

Stott, B. and Alsac, O., Fast decoupled load flow, *IEEE Trans. on Power Appar. and Syst.*, PAS-93, pp. 859–869, May/June 1974.

Taylor, D.G. and Maahs, L.J., A reactive contingency analysis algorithm using MW and MVAR distribution factors, *IEEE Trans. on Power Syst.*, 6, 349–355, February 1991.